



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### **Usage guidelines**

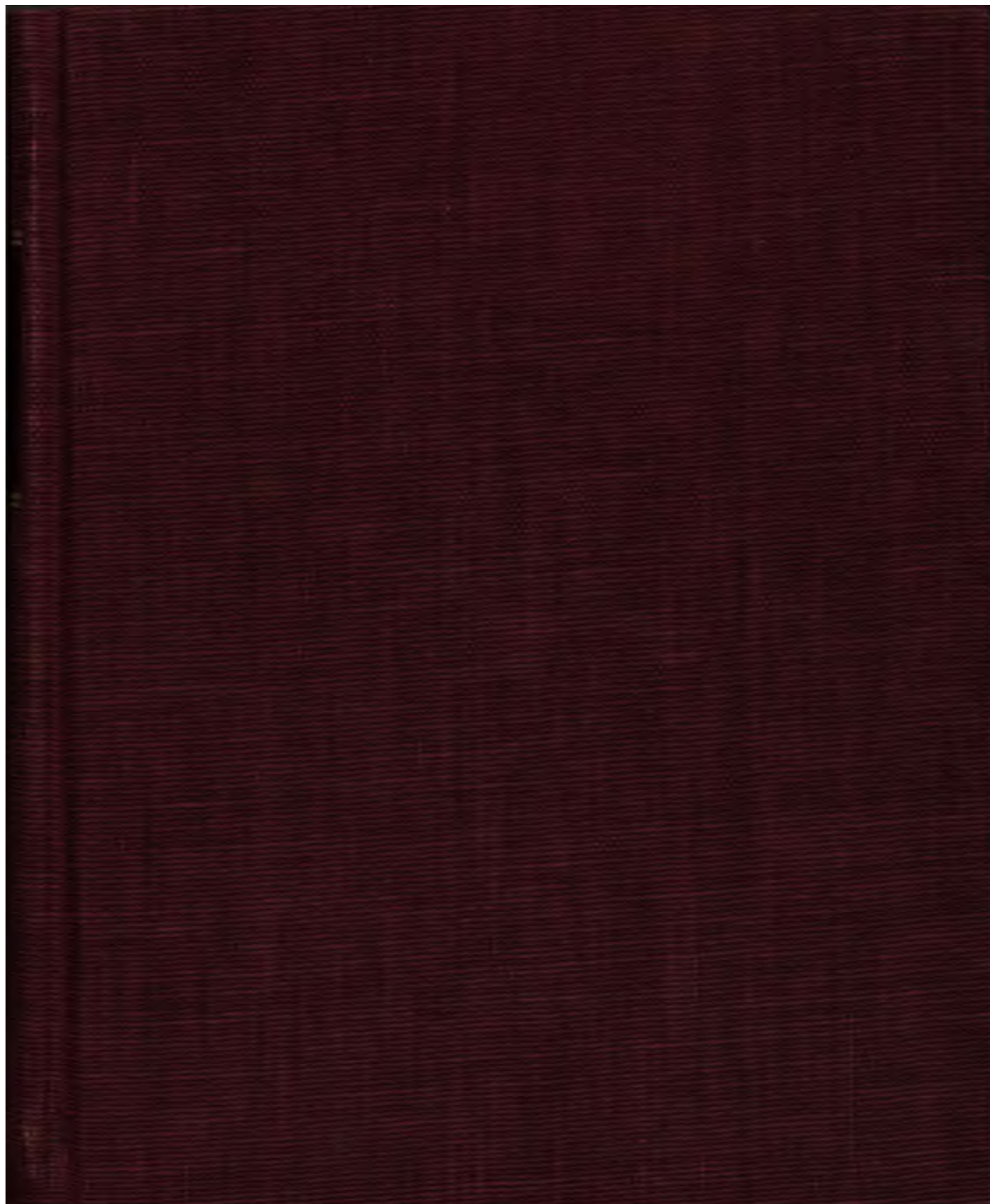
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### **About Google Book Search**

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY





HARVARD  
COLLEGE  
LIBRARY















**THE RECUYELL OF THE  
HISTORYES OF TROYE**



# THE RECUYELL OF THE HISTORIES OF TROYE

WRITTEN IN FRENCH BY RAOUL LEFEVRE

TRANSLATED AND PRINTED BY WILLIAM CAXTON

(ABOUT A.D. 1474)

THE FIRST ENGLISH PRINTED BOOK, NOW FAITHFULLY REPRODUCED  
WITH A CRITICAL INTRODUCTION, INDEX AND GLOSSARY  
AND EIGHT PAGES IN PHOTOGRAPHIC FACSIMILE

BY H. OSKAR SOMMER, PH.D.

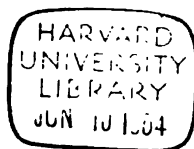
VOL. II.

LONDON  
PUBLISHED BY DAVID NUTT IN THE STRAND

1894

27282.67.4  
L

(2)



*Printed by BALLANTYNE, HANSON & Co.  
At the Ballantyne Press*

## CONTENTS

|  | PAGE    |
|--|---------|
| THE TEXT . . . . .                               | 321-704 |
| EIGHT PAGES IN PHOTOGRAPHIC FACSIMILE CONTAINING |         |
| MATTER RELATING TO WILLIAM CAXTON, ENGLAND'S     |         |
| FIRST PRINTER . . . . .                          | 705     |
| LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES—                        |         |
| A. BOOKS I. AND II. (TEXT, PP. 1-503) . . . . .  | 719     |
| B. BOOK III. (TEXT, PP. 505-701) . . . . .       | 766     |
| GLOSSARY . . . . .                               | 801     |





right grete affamblee of Secyliens that halowed the  
feste of her goddes . whan pluto sawe this feste . he dide  
do arme . xx . of his felawshypp vnder their robes and  
garnementes . And wente in this maner for to see the  
feste / for to wete yf he myght synde ony proie / this plu- 5  
to was the grettest theef and the moste lecherous man  
of all the world And had with hym a geant named  
Cerberus . ynowh ylyke vnto pluto of condiciōns and  
of corage / but he was moche more strenger and puyf-  
fant of body . Alle the other were grete as geantes . and 10  
had lerned to do no thyng ellis but for to do harme and  
euyll And coude none other wife doo / Whan than the se-  
cilyens sawe pluto come and his felawes they suppo-  
sed that hit had be some of their neighebouris that cam  
for to see their playes and esbatementis for as moche 15  
as they cam clothed in theyr garnementis and sawe  
none of their armour ne harnoyis And they enforced  
them to synge & daūce / but certes their songes and their  
daunces were not pardurable ner dured not longe . for  
in comyng vnto them there . The kynge pluto caste his 20  
eyen a side and sawe there the quene of that marches  
that beheld the feste. And byher/her doughter that made  
a Chapelet of flowres . The moder was named Sera  
And the doughter was callid Proferpyne and was  
maried vnto a noble man named Orpheus that sat 25  
beside her and played on the harpe / This proferpyne  
was passyng mervailous fayr . Anone as pluto had  
seen her he desired and coueyted her And aduertised his  
folke secretyly of her / And after cam nyhe and by her  
And felte hym self so surmounted in coueytise of her 30  
beaulte . that he sette handes on her And leyde her on his

back and bare her a way : : .

**W**Han Orpheus and Sera sawe proserpine so  
rauiſſhid they eſcricd pietouſly & anguyſſhouſ-  
ly vpon pluto / with this crye the cecyliens leſte  
5 their feſte and ran after pluto in grete nombre men & wo-  
men hoping to haue reſcowed proſerpine / but whan cer-  
berus and his complices ſawe the murmure / they drewe  
out their ſwerdes & ſhewid their armes and ſmote vp-  
on them that approchid them and ſleyng them largely /  
10 recuyellid and wente vnto the porte maulgre the cecy-  
liens and orpheus / theyguyded pluto in to his ſhippe and  
after they entrid / and than difancrid & caried a way  
proſerpine . The cecyliens were than diſpourueid of ar-  
mes / they coude not withſtand the rauiffement of pro-  
15 ſerpine / At the departyng fro the porte was made the  
moſte aſpre doeill & ſorowe that coude be / Proſerpyne  
wepte ſore on that on ſide & pietouſly / and cryed right  
hyhe and lowde / Sera on that other ſide with the cecy-  
liens made no ſkarcete of teeres / and certes orpheus fay-  
20 lid not to furnyſſhe his teeres with parfound ſighes /  
for he loued proſerpine / And ſhe loued hym alſo / At  
the departyng their hertes were put in a hard & greuous  
diſtreſſe / ſo harde anguyſſh that proſerpine fill down a  
ſwone / and orpheus was ſo rauiffhid with anger / that  
25 he retorned in to his palais whan he had loſte the ſight  
of proſerpine / And helde hym cloos in hys chambre  
with out ſpeche two dayes : .

**A**T the end of two dayes ſera cam to viſite orpheus  
that wold nether ete ne drynke / and ſayd to hym  
30 that ſhe knewe wel the rauiffhour of her doughteer / &  
that hit was pluto þ<sup>e</sup> kyng of meloſe / & that he dweld

in a partie of theffaylle in a lowe and basse Cite that  
was callid helle for as moche as this yle . Kynge plu-  
to and his complices dide fo moche harme and euyll .  
that they were compared and lykened vnto deuylles  
and their Cite was named Helle . Whan Orpheus vn- 5  
derftode that proserpyne was in helle he toke a lityll  
hope in hym self and ete & dranke . and made a vowe  
that he wold neuer reſte in place vnto the tyme that he  
had ben in helle for to ſee proſerpine . After that he had  
eten he ſente for his maronnars And bad hem to make 10  
redy a ſhipp . whan the ſhypp was garnyſhid of all  
that hit behouyd . after the leue and congie taken of the  
quene ſera . In habite diſguyfed he entrid allone in to his  
ſhipp with his harpe . And maad his mariners to faile  
forth on the ſee . in ſuche wiſe that they arryued at oon 15  
of the poortes of theſſayll . Orpheus wente there a  
lande . & after comanded his maryners that they ſhold  
abide hym in the ſame place . vnto a certayn tyme that  
he named . After he departed and wente fro contre to  
contre ſo longe for to ſpede his mater / that he came to 20  
the yate of helle whiche Cerberus kepte . And there he  
began to plaie on his harpe right ſwetli & melodiouſly .

**W**Han Cerberus herde the ſowne of the harpe . he  
lyfte vp his hede on hyghe . and cam out of the  
gate . for to knowe who was he that pleyed 25  
ſo melodiouſly And by the ſoune of the harpe he fond  
Orpheus . And thynkynge that pluto wold gladly  
here hym . for to reioye proſerpine that allewey wepte  
he maad hym entre in to the Cyte . And brought hym  
before the kynge . Orpheus than began to playe agayn 30

on his harpe / whan the kynge pluto had herd hym / he  
toke therin grete pleasir / and so dide all they that were  
ther by hym / Than pluto sente for to seke proserpyne /  
whan she was come & herde hym playe with his harpe  
5 by his plaie she knewe wel that hit was her husbond  
she was fore abasshid / and yf she had fore wepte to  
fore / she wepte moche more after / Pluto was fory  
for the forowe that proserpine made / and sayd to or-  
pheus / that yf he coude so playe with his harpe that the  
10 lady shold sesse of her wepyng / that he wold gyue  
hym that he wold axe of hym Orpheus promysid and  
made hym seure that he wold doo hit / And pluto sware  
to hym that he wold holde & kepe his promesse yf he  
so dide / And than orpheus setted & entuned his harpe  
15 and playd dyuerce songes / so swetely / that the Infer-  
nal cerberus & many fill a slepe / and also proserpine  
by the mene of certayn tokenes and signes that orpheus  
maad with his eyen / made her to cesse of her wepyng :

20 **W**Han pluto sawe proserpine so cessing her we-  
pyng he was passing Ioyous / he awoke than  
cerberus & the other that slepte / After he spack  
to orpheus and sayd to hym that he had so well har-  
ped that no man coude do better / And that he wold  
that he shold demande som thyng / And he wold gyue  
25 hit hym with out ony faute . Orpheus heeryng the wor-  
des of pluto / had a grete debate in hym self for to knowe  
what thyng he myght beste demande / In the ende he  
sayd to hym / Syre I am orpheus the husbond of this  
ladye / that for her loue I haue enterprysed to come  
30 hether in thys aduenture / I praye and requyre yow

that ye will gyue and rendre her agayn to me . that I  
 may brynge her agayn vnto her moder that dyeth for  
 forowe / whan pluto had herd the requeste that orphe-  
 us had made / he was passing angry / and also esmaied  
 of the hardynesse that orpheus had don . how be hit / he 5  
 answerd to hym . Orpheus ye haue demanded of me  
 proserpyne / she is the lady that I moost loue of all the  
 world / Neuertheles for to accomplissh the promesse  
 that I haue maad to yow / I gyue her vnto yow by con-  
 dicyon that ye brynge her out of this Cyte with oute 10  
 lokyng or beholdyng after or behynde yow And yf hit  
 happen that ye ones loke behynd yow ye shall lose her  
 Of this answer orpheus was contente . And hym sem-  
 med þ<sup>t</sup> his wyf was as good as recoured or wonne  
 he and proserpyne passid ouer that nyght in good 15  
 hope / whan the morn was comen / pluto delyuerid pro-  
 serpyne vnto orpheus by the condicion afore reherced  
 orpheus and proserpyne toke leue of kyng pluto and  
 thanked hym / fyn they wente on their waie / but he had  
 not goon half way to the gate . whan orpheus pryuely 20  
 looked behinde hym . for to see yf ony man folowed hym  
 And than he fonde at his heles Cerberus that toke pro-  
 serpyne away fro hym And yelded and delyuerid her  
 agayn vnto the kyng &c : . .

**O**Rpheus seeyng that by his vnhappynes had 25  
 lost his wif / began to curse the day that he was  
 born . And cam after and folowed proserpyne  
 and began agayn to harpe and to offre grete yestes for  
 to recoure her agayn / but hit was said to hym for con-  
 clusion that he shold neuer haue her agayn . And also 30  
 that yf he had vsyd the feet of Armes as he had the

strenges of the harpe / he shold by armes haue dyed /  
with this conclusion orpheus departed fro hell full of  
forowe & anguyfsh . and retorned in to secylle vnto the  
quene sera tellyng to her his auenture . The quene acer-  
5 taynd that her doughter was in hell / as she that was  
aduertised that in thefayll shold be halowed the feste  
of the weddyng of pirothus / and that ther were many  
knyghtes of grete name / she wente to the see / and cam  
so apoynt to thessalonycque that the feste yet endured  
10 In approching the cyte . on an after none as pirothus and  
theseus were in the feldes / they mette her / Her exerfite  
was grete / Theseus & pirothus salewed her / And she  
sawewed & greted them agayn / and after axed them  
thefstate of the feste of the weddyng / They told and re-  
15 counted her all . After she demanded of them yf ther were  
there no knyghtes of grete name and hye enterpryfes  
whan they vnderfode that she enqueryd so ferre / they  
wold wete what she was and demanded her name  
I am sayd thys lady seres of cecyll / Than spake theseus  
20 and said madame ye be well come / ffor what occasion  
demande ye yf in the feste ben ony knyghtes of entreprife  
I can well saie to yow that ther be truly / but not with-  
fstandyng that I so aduertyse yow / I pray yow and  
also requyre that ye telle and aduertyse vnto vs the  
25 caufe why ye haue so demaunded &c : .

**S**yre said the lady syn hit pleasith yow tenquere  
of myn estate so ferre / knowe ye for certayn  
that I haue maad to yow my demaunde for as  
moche as pluto the kynge of helle hath rauysshid  
30 my doughter Proferpyne by whyche I am hurte

vnto the deth . And so I wold fayn fynde som knyght  
 that by his courtosie wold emploie hym for to gete her  
 agayn And yelde her to me . And for to assaylle the  
 curfid tyraūt . whiche I pray the goddes may be damp-  
 ned and confounded pardurably for his demerites 5  
 wherfore I pray yow yf ye knowe ony that to me be  
 propice that hit plese yow for charite for to adresse me  
 vnto hym . Madame Anſwerd Theseus be ye no more  
 bely to fynde fuche a knyght as ye seke . ffor in the fa-  
 uour of all ladies I shal be your knight in this werke 10  
 And promyse yow vpon myn honour / that I shall  
 transporte me in to helle . And the kyng pluto shall  
 neur haue peas with me vnto the tyme that he hath  
 restored your doughter &c :

**W**Han pirothus herde thenterprife of these<sup>9</sup> he be- 15  
 gan to breke his wordes and said to hym . My  
 broder what thynke ye to doo . whan ye enter-  
 pryse for to goo in to helle . ye knowe not the termes ner  
 the situacion of that place . helle stondest behynde the In-  
 ner see betwene montaignes and roches so highe that 20  
 the Citezeyns that dwelle ther in ben in contynuell vm-  
 bre and shadowe . And the Entre is so stronge that hit  
 is Inposible to come with in the Cyte . but yf the por-  
 ter consente . for here to fore tyme many haue goon the-  
 der that ben there leste and bleuen . ther goth no man 25  
 theder that euer cometh agayn . hit is right an helle And  
 eche man nameth hit helle as well for the situacion  
 therof in so derke and tenebrous a place / as for the In-  
 humanyte and terrybilite of the habitans and Indwel-  
 lars . that allway wacche and wayte to do euyll and 30  
 displayfir to alle the world / Theseus anſwerd vnto



pirothus and sayd / ther is no thyng Impossible vnto  
a vailliant herte / The kyng pluto is cruell and stronge  
his folke and peple tyrannyse / His cyte standeth in a  
contre enuyronned with mortall paretles / Notwith-  
5 stondyng certes the dowtance and fere of these thinges  
shall neuer rebowte ne withdrawe my corage / but that  
I shall do my deuoyr to achycue this emprynse / And  
shall dye in the payne / or shall haue reproche / shew-  
yng to all maner knyghtes/that a man to kepe his ho-  
10 nour and worfhippe ought not to doubtte ony paryll  
what that euer hit bee / &c : .

**W**Han pyrothus had herd the noble answr of  
theseus / he allowed hit gretely and said to hym  
that his wordes were to hym right agreable &  
15 so acceptable / that he wold hold hym companye in  
thys aduenture / The quene Seres thanked the two  
knyghtes / they brought her in to the Cyte and in to  
the palays / She was there resseyued and feested as  
hit apperteyned / thauenture of her doughter was told /  
20 And thenterpryse of the two knyghtes / By the re-  
porte of this aduenture and of thenterprife that theseus  
and pyrothus had maad / Alle the ffeeste was trow-  
blyd agayn on a newe / Amonge alle other ypodame  
confydering that her husband that was so newly  
25 maryed vnto her wold goo in this paryllous voyage  
of helle/her herte began to gyue oute wepyng of teeres/  
And myghte gyue no fouldas ne comfort vnto her eyen  
what shall I saye the ffeeste ended in grete sorowe /  
Iafon and hercules wold gladly haue goon with the-  
30 seus & pirothus / & spake therof to them / but they wolde

not suffre hem / Than departed hercules and entrid in to  
 a shippe as he wold haue goon in to his contrey . Eche  
 man in lyke wyse departed . And also theseus and pi-  
 rothus toke theyr way for to goo vnto helle / & than  
 aboute their departing wherof hercules was aduertifed 5  
 hercules made for to conduyte his shippe vnto the mar-  
 ches of hell / And ther descended a lande allone . Con-  
 cludyng in hym self that he wold goo after pirothus  
 and theseus his loyall and true felawe . And betoke  
 to philotes the charge for to brynge lyncus vnto thebes 10  
 And for to put hym there in prifon vnto his retornyng  
 and comyng agayn . after he departed / And philotes  
 shipped in the see . where he had a dolorous auenture . as  
 hit shall be said here after / but at this tyme I muste ta-  
 ry of that mater / And shall recouente of hercules how 15  
 he wente in to hell &c : . .

¶ How hercules fonde pirothus ded at the yates of  
 hell And Theseus in daunger and how hercules vayn-  
 quysshid Cerberus . And how he conquerd profer-  
 pyne vpon pluto &c : . . 20

**I**N this paas hit ought be sayd that whan the-  
 seus and pirothus were departed fro theffalo-  
 nyque for to goo and assaie yf they myght re-  
 coure the fayr proferpyne they did so moche that by  
 their diligence in shorte tyme they aryued in the valeye 25  
 where was proferpyne / In the valeye full of synnes  
 and cursidnesse . Pirothus that knewe the contre fond  
 the straite way that wente to the cyte / and entrid first  
 therin / this way was so frayte that ther myght no  
 man but oon allone goon neyther on the right syde ney- 30  
 ther on the lyfte side / the roches were so highe . that no

man myght goo on nether fyde / whan they had paf-  
fed this waye they fonde a rooche entaillid and cutte  
in to fteyers or grees maad and hewyd out with chy-  
felles / And than they fawe benethe lowe Helle as a  
5 cyte ftronge enuyronned with waters that fyll down  
Inpetueufly and ferd full fro the roches and maad a  
terryble noyfe and rooryng / ffor they fyll from right  
hyhe in to a lowe fwalowe or abyfme in the erthe /  
This Cyte was all enclofid with montaygues / ffor  
10 to fpeke properly hit was a right helle / And hit had  
no more but oon entre and oon yate / ffor than to come  
down to the yate pirothus and thefeus defcended down  
by the degrees made in the roche / Than in the defcendyng  
fodaynly they fawe fpryng fro the gate a grete geant  
15 oute of mefure / that had an heed meruaylloufly myf-  
fchapen / fyers blacke and owggly / He had his nofe  
hyhe and wyde / hys Chyn longe / his teth grete as  
hors teth / His eyen grete lyke vnto an oxe / His eeres  
hangyng lyke as an hound / His fholdres large and  
20 brood . Hys bely fwollyn and grete bolned . his legges  
and his Thyes were paffyng ftrongly boned and  
myghty . Thys terryble geant was Cerberus . wherof  
is touched and reherfed aboue . The poettes named  
hym the hound with thre heedes . Concideryng his right  
25 greuous and vnhappy lyuyng whiche is replyed and  
lyckende vnto thre fynguler vyces . That is to wete  
to pryde . to auaryce . And to luxurye or lecherye . by  
pryde he gloryfied hym felf and enhaunced hym aboue  
all the men of the worlde for hys force and ftrengthe  
30 ffor he was fo ftronge that no man myght wyftande  
hym : By Auaryce and Couetyfe he had an apetyte

Insacyable for to gadre to gyder tresours . And toke  
and bare away all that he myghte haue or coude fynde  
By luxurye ther was noman lyuyng of more fowle  
lyff than he was . ffor he had neuer doon other thyng  
in alle his lif than for to fowle and rauiffhe women 5  
and maydens . ladyes & damoyfelles And so by good  
right the poettes named hym an hownd with thre hee-  
des . ffor he was fowle as an hound that lyueth in mul-  
tiplicacōn of fynnes and dooth his felicyte / O greuous  
felicyte / wharr thefeus and pirothus had espyed this 10  
enemye cerberus come vnto them alle armed makyng  
the whele in marchyng prowldy vnto them . Pirothus  
said to thefeus . My broder beholde what enemye this  
is / he that putteth hym in fuche parillis for the loue of  
ladyes setteth but lityll of his lyf / vs behoueth now 15  
to lyue or dye . late vs now achieue Ioyoufly our em-  
prife To thende that ye thynke not that I had leuyr dye  
than to haue reproche I shall be the firfte that shall be-  
gynne the bataylle . thefeus had no space ne leyzer to  
answer / ffor Cerberus cam to them and ascryed hem 20  
fayng . what seeken these felaws in hell / we come said  
thefeus for to seche proserpine . whom pluto hath taken  
away fro the quene Sera . we shall neuer retorne in  
to our contrey . vnto the tyme we brynge her with vs  
Truly answerd Cerberus whan ye shall retorne in to 25  
your contre / ye shall rendre & yelde agayn proserpyne  
but I shall deffende yow the retourn . And this day I  
shall presente vnto proserpine my glayue died in your  
blood . And here ye shall be buryed . ye shall neuer see  
proserpine . ner come more nerrer than ye be now / with 30  
these wordes he enhaunfed his glayue And gaf fo

grete a strook to thefeus vpon his shelde that he bare  
away therof an half quarter &c : .

5 **W**Han pirothus fawe his felawe smeten he toke  
his glayue and smote cerberus on that oon fyde  
Thefeus smote hym on that other side / and they  
gaf hym two right grete strokes so grete that they made  
cerberus to be efmeuyd fo fore that he began the bataill  
fo difmefurably that he all to fruffhid and brake their  
sheldes & their harnoys / and also made his glayue to be  
10 died with their noble blood as he had afore said / The  
bataill was hard & mortall at the begynnyng / thefeus  
and pirothus refseyuyd many woundes / by aspre stro-  
kes / their armes were all to hewen & broken / The ba-  
tayll endured longe / And pirothus dide right well in  
15 auaunfyng hym self / but cerberus smote vpon hym fo  
difmefurably / that after many woundes gyuen to hym  
he all to brafte hys helme and cleuyd his heed in two  
peces vnto the stomake &c : .

20 **W**Han thefeus fawe his felawe dye / he enhauced  
his glayue by grete anger and smote cerberus fo  
fermli that he made hym auale & goo aback two  
paas . cerberus wold auenge hym of this strook & smote  
vpon thefeus a strook by fo grete force . that yf the noble  
knyght had not torned a back cerberus had born & smy-  
25 ten hym vnto the erthe . This strook of cerberus fill vpon  
the erthe & entrid therin / and thefeus smote agayn vpon  
his enemye whiche had the herte fo grete / that he began  
to rore as an olde lyon / And smote thefeus fo fierfly  
with his fwerd that he all to brakke his shelde / and  
30 all to ffruffhyd his helme / that he was all afonyed  
of the strook / But allewey thefeus abood in his place

and than cerberus shold haue brought hym vnto vtterance folowyng the euyl auenture of pirothus . yf that fortune had not brought theder hercules whyche cam so apoynt to the rescouffe that theseus knewe not how to faue hym . At this poynt than that theseus was so  
 5 astonyed / hercules that was departyd fro the see . as sayd is cam vnto the steyses that were cutte and made in the rooche . And beholdyng theseus all couerd with blood And pirothus ded . he began to descende down cryeng to theseus that he shold not be aferd ner take no  
 10 drede / whan cerberus sawe ande herd hercules he began to rebruyre and rore and assaylled theseus asprely for to be quyte of hym . Theseus myght no more / how well that he was recomforted with the voys of hercules he began to renne now here & now there to fore cerberus : . .  
 15

**S**O moche than hasted hercules for to goo down the steyses or degrees In entryng the place as hastely as he myght be escryed to cerberus and faid to hym . Tyrant cruell late the knyght renne and come to me / Thou hast put to deth vpon the erthe my  
 20 good frende pirothus . wherof I am sory certayn . And yf I may I shall take vengeance on the for hym Cerberus heeryng the sentence of hercules Ran no more after theseus . but taryed and behelde hercules with a fyers looke and answerd to hym . so weneth he to auenge  
 25 his shame that so beleueth / I haue deuoured thy ffelaw vnto the deth And but yf thou excede hym in mestier of armes and in bodily strength an honderd fold double hit is folye to the to come hether / ffor I am Cerberus the porter of helle that of recorde of my name all  
 30

the world tremblith . thus endyng his answer / hercules  
was at the fote of the roche . he had his clobbe vpon his  
sholdre/cerberus cam agaynst hym/they smote echeother  
rudely/and thus they began a right hard batayll / And  
5 than theseus that was passyng wery fatte at oon side  
by · out of the way And rested hym in dreyng & clenfing  
his woundes of the blood that had comen out of them : ·

**H**ercules behelde than on that oon syde & feeyng  
theseus purgyng & clenfyng his parfond and  
10 grete woundes/he began to employe the excesse  
of his strength and myght by suche meruayll / that of  
a strook that he gaf hym vpon his helme vpon the right  
side that he maad hym to bowe and lowte vnder his  
clobbe and to knele to the ground with his lyfte knee  
15 and at the second strook in poursuyng hym hastely he  
made his swerd to flee out of hys handes and that he  
made hym to falle on his armes to the ground / & with  
the thyrde strooke as cerberus wende to haue releuyd  
hym and gotten his swerd / hercules smote hym vpon  
20 the body that he made hys hede to hurtle agayn a grete  
stone that was ther by/after that he sprange vpon hym  
and bonde his legges with the strength and force of his  
handes / maulgre the geant/he tare of the helme of his  
hede and wold haue slayn hym / but theseus praid hym  
25 that he wold not put hym to deth there / And that he  
wold brynge hym in to thessalonycque for to dye by  
the sentence of the quene ypodame &c : .

**C**erberus was not than putte to deth at the re-  
queste of theseus / Notwythstandyng hercules  
30 bond his handes behynde his backe/and after he

maad hym aryse and toke hym by the berd and made  
 hym goon vp an hyghe on the roche And there he leyde  
 hym doun And boond his feete his handes & his necke  
 to geder in suche wise that he myght not ner durst not  
 remeue/whan he had doon soo . he wente doun and en- 5  
 trid in to the yate of helle and leuyng there theseus/he  
 wente so ferre that he fonde the palais of kyng pluto  
 and that he cam in to the same halle where pluto was  
 with proserpine . Alle they that were there meruaylid  
 of hym whan they sawe hym entryd . ffor they knewe 10  
 nothyng of the ouercomyng of cerberus . as they that  
 leste all the charge and kepyng of their cyte with cer-  
 berus . with out to haue ony doubte or suspecion / And  
 also they were so ferre from the gate / that they myght  
 not here of the bataile . ner knewe no thing what was 15  
 befall to their porter / Than whan hercules had founde  
 pluto and proserpine . he had grete Ioye and knewe be  
 tokens & enseyngnes of them there beyng that hit was he  
 he adressid hym to pluto and said . Pluto by thy ma-  
 lyce Secille is now alle full of wepyng of teeres for 20  
 the rauysshing of this lady . whiche hast not willed  
 to yelde and rendre agayn to her husbond Orpheus I  
 wote neuer what pleasir thou haste therin . but I shall  
 saie to the/that thou shalt receyue grete displaisir in fo-  
 lowyng the euyll auenture of Cerberus whom I haue 25  
 vaynquysshid and ouercome &c : : .

**W**Hyth this worde hercules lyfte vp his clobbe  
 and gaf suche a strook to pluto that he ouer-  
 threwe hym to the erthe . that he ne meued ne-  
 ther hande ne foot . whan he had so beten pluto wenyng 30  
 that he had be ded . he assailid all them that were there



that made grete murmure & put them all to deth lightly  
wyth his clobbe in the presence of proserpine whiche  
tremblid for fere / Than he confortd proserpine & sayd  
to her / that he was come vnto that place for to deliure  
5 her / and for to brynge her agayn to her moder / and that  
she shold sewe and folowe hym herdely / Proserpine  
assured her & was confortd with the wordes of her-  
cules and folowyd hym &c : .

10 **H**ercules opend the halle & wente out and pro-  
serpine with hym / After he adressid hym vnto  
the yate of the palays / And hit happend hym  
that he fond there a right grete companye of Citezeyns  
that were aduertised of this affraie and they ran vpon  
hym dismesurably escrieng hym to deth / whan hercules  
15 sawe that / he said to proserpine that she shold drawe  
her a parte / After that he enhaunfed and lyfte vp his  
clobbe / And began to medle with his enemyes ryght  
vertuesly and by so highe prowesse that he couerid al  
thentre of the palais with these myserable tirantes that  
20 he slewe smote down & all forfruffhid them / And putte  
to deth more than foure honderd / finably he wrought  
soo that the other fledde & gaf hit ouer / and than whan  
he sawe his euill willars ded & disparclde he toke pro-  
serpine by the hand & ladde her out of þ<sup>e</sup> gate of the cyte .

25 **T**Heseus that abode & taried at this gate as said  
is / was gretly reioysed whan he sawe hercules  
come agayn with proserpine / he aroos & went  
agayn them / and salewed the lady / And presented to  
hercules a chayne of ademont yron / that he had found  
30 at the yate and many prifonners bounden that cerberus  
had bounden with all / hercules vnbond the prifoners &

toke the Chayne and bonde Cerberus wyth all / And  
 whan he had buryed pirothus he departed from thys  
 hell And toke his waie with proserpine . thefeus and  
 cerberus . And with oute grete aduenture for to specife  
 maad so his Iourneyes that he arryued in theffalony- 5  
 que And delyuerid proserpine to the quene Sera / and  
 to ypodane he presented cerberus . reherfyng to her and  
 the ladyes how he had slayn pirothus . ypodane deme-  
 ned so grete forowe for the deth of pyrothus that for  
 to recouente and telle / hit is not possible . All they of theff- 10  
 saylle semblably maad grete mornyng and forowe  
 and fore bewailed their lord / what shall I saie for to  
 contreuenge his deth / ypodane did do bynde cerberus to  
 a stake in the theatre of the Cyte . And there yonge and  
 olde noyed and pyned hym thre dayes longe contynu- 15  
 elly / drawynd hym by the berde and cracchyng hym in  
 the visage and after slewe hym Inhumaynly and hor-  
 ribly . And than whan hercules and thefeus . sera and  
 proserpine had taried there a certayn space of tyme in  
 comfertyng ypodane . they toke leue to gyder And her- 20  
 cules wente acompanied of thefeus toward the cyte  
 of thebes / but of hym I will now tarie and shall come  
 to speke of the auentures of lyncus &c : : .

¶ How Andromadas deliuerid lincus of his enemy-  
 es And how he slewe in bataill the kynge Creon and 25  
 toke the cyte of thebes &c . : .

**W**Han philotes had receyuyd in to his garde and  
 kepyng lyncus And hercules was goon to the  
 focours of Theseus and pirothus as afore is  
 said . the maronnens toke their shippe and wente to 30

the see / And saylled all that day with oute fyndyng  
of ony aduenture / But on the morn by tyme in the mor-  
nyng / ffortune that alleway torneth with oute ony ref-  
tyng brought to them a grete shypppe that drewe hys  
5 cours vnto the same place that they cam fro / Of thys  
shypppe or galleye was capitayn and chief Andromada-  
das kyng of Calcide / This andromadas was cofyn  
vnto lyncus / whan he had espyed the shypppe where  
lyncus was inne / he maad to vyre hys galey a bord  
10 And said that he wold knowe what peple were ther-  
in / In approchyng the shippe of thebes / lyncus behelde  
the galey of andromadas and knewe hit by then-  
signes and tokenes that hit bare / In this knowleche  
andromadas spack and demanded of the maronniers  
15 to whom the shippe belongeth / Anone as lyncus sawe  
and herde andromadas / he brake thanswere of the  
maronniers / And escryed to hym all on highe / Andro-  
madas lo here thy frende lyncus . yf thou gyue me no  
focours and helpe me thou mayste lose a grete frende in  
20 me . ffor I am a prysonner / And hercules hath sente me  
in to Thebes &c : : . .

**A**Ndromadas heeryng lyncus had grete anger  
ffor he louyd well lyncus . And escryed them  
that brought hym and sayd to hym that they  
25 were all comen vnto theyr deth . And also that they  
were vnder his warde . Philotes and hys folke were  
garnysshid with theyr armes and harnoys and made  
hem all redy for to defende hem self . And wyth lytyll  
langage they of Calcide assayllyd phylotes . And  
30 philotes and his folke employed them at their defence

The batayll was grete and hard . but the maleheure  
and myshappe tourned in fuche wise vpon the felawes  
of philotes that they were all slayn and dede Andro-  
madas had two . C . men in his companie . all robeurs  
and theues of the see / These theues and robeurs smote 5  
hard and fierfly vpon philotes and all to hewe his ar-  
mes . worchyng and gyuyng to hym many woundes  
and he buried many of them in the see . but the stronge  
resistence prouffited them but lityll . ffor in the ende he  
was taken and bounde . and lyncus was delyuerd 10  
and vnbounden of the bondes of hercules &c : : .

**L**yncus had grete Ioye of his deliuerance . he than-  
ked his good frende andromadas . After this  
he tolde hym how he was take . and how hercu-  
les had discipate and destroyed the centaures . And a- 15  
monge other he named many of his frendes that were  
ded / wherof Andromadas had so grete yre and fuche  
desplaifir that he sware incontynent that he wold auen-  
ge hit . And that as hercules had slayn his frendes in like  
wise he wold destroye his cofyns and kynnesmen / lin- 20  
cus toke grete plesir to vnderstonde the oth of andro-  
madas whyche wold venge the deth of his kynnes-  
men . he sayd to hym that hercules was goon in to helle  
And after demanded hym how he wold auenge hym  
vpon the frendes of hercules . And there vpon they were 25  
longe thynkyng . In the ende whan they had longe take  
aays . Andromadas concluded that he wold goo af-  
sayle the Cyte of thebes / and yf he myght gete hit by  
assault he wold doo flee the kynge Creon and all  
them of his blood &c : : . 30

**W**yth this conclusion cam theder alle the galeyes  
of Andromadas whiche folowed in whom  
he had eyghte thousand fightyng men / Andro-  
madas maad hem to torne toward thebes / And also  
5 hastely as he myghte he entrid in to the royame In was-  
tyng and destroyng the contrey by fyre and by swerd  
so terribly that the tydynges cam vnto the kyng Creon  
whan the kyng Creon knewe the comyng of the kyng  
andromadas / And that with oute deffiance he maad  
10 hym warre / He fowned to armes and assembled a  
grete puyffance / And knowyng that Andromadas  
was comen in to a certayn place / he yffued oute of the-  
bes all armed / and brought hys peple vpon his ene-  
myes / that had grete Ioye of theyr comyng / And than  
15 they sette hem in ordenance agayn them in fuche wyse  
that they cam to smytyng of strookes / the Cryes and  
noyse was grete on bothe sydes / Glayues . swerdes .  
dartes . guyfarnes . arowes and polhaxes were put  
forth and sette awerke / Many nobles were beten doun  
20 and ded / Lyncus and Andromadas wrought mor-  
tally / the kynge Creon and Amphitriion faylled not /  
there was blood largely shedde on that oon side and on  
that other / And the bataylle was so felonous and  
aspre than: that in lytyll whyle after Andromadas  
25 and hys peuple gate and wan vpon them of thebes  
And constraynd them to recuyell and for to goo a back  
wherof the kynge Creon had ryght grete sorowe . And  
wenyng for to haue putte hys men agayn in araye /  
Putte hym self in to the grettest prees of the bataylle  
30 wher he wrought mortally / And made so grete slaugh-  
ter and betyng doun of hys enemyes / that lyncus and

Andromadas herd the affraye / And so than they cam  
theder & as lincus saw the kinge Creon doo meruailles  
of armes . he gaf hym thre strokes with his fwerd oon  
after an other / And with the fourthe strook he all to  
brake his helme from his hede and flewe hym . wherof 5  
they of thebes were so affrayed . and dispayred . that  
they were put in defcomfiture / and fledde / whiche fle-  
yng Amphitriton myght not remedie . how be hit that  
he was stronge and of grete corage &c . . .

**O**.F this euyll aduenture thebes was right haste- 10  
ly aduertysed . Megera was goon vp . vpon  
oon of the hyghe toures of the palais / & sawe  
and behelde the bataylle . from that place she sawe  
them of thebes slayn with oute remedie . and also torne  
their backes . the tokene of the betyng doun of the kyng 15  
her fader And the recongnossances of the slaugther of  
other maad her to ascrye and sayd / ffortune fortune  
what meschyef / where is hercules . Alas where hast  
thou brought hym / Alas that he is not here for to de-  
fende the metes of his natiuyte and for to kepe his wif 20  
full of annoye And for to put his hand and sholdres  
for to bere the grete fetes & dedes of this batayll . whan  
she had sayd this . she fylle afwoune And so laye a  
grete while . Neuertheles the kyng Andromadas and  
lincus folowed hastely them of thebes that they entrid 25  
the Cite with them . And for as moche as the thebans  
were with out heed and put out of araye / And that  
amphitriton had so many woundes vpon hym that alle  
his membres faylled at this werke . The vnhappy lyn-  
cus and Adromadas toke the Cyte / and flewe alle 30  
them that myght bere armes / Referuyd Amphytrion

whom they fonde not in the hete . After they wente vp in  
to the palays and ther they fonde megera & amphitriion  
in grete defolacōn with many ladyes and damoyfelles :

5 **A**S fone than as lincus had espied megera / she  
was fo fair & plaifant that he becam amorous  
of her / and cam to her & said / lady wepe no more  
hercules the bastard sone of Iupiter is goon in to hell &  
ther he is ded / ye haue ben wyf of a man gotten in auoul-  
trye / from hens forth ye shal be felawe & wyf of a man  
10 legitisme & born in lawful mariage / ffor I shall wedde  
yow . And shall doo you more good & pleasir than euer  
ye had . Megera answerd fals traitre weneft thou that  
I be fo folifhe as to gyfe fayth & beleue to the wordes  
of the homycide of my fader & to the enemy of my lorde  
15 hercules / know thou that I am his wyf And that I shal  
neuer haue other hufbond but hym . he is no bastard / but  
sone of my lord amphitriion / and the moſte noble man  
that is in all the world / Lady answerd lincus I am  
kyng of this cyte / ye be now at my comandement / will  
20 ye or will ye not / I shall do my will of you / but I shall  
put hit in respyte & in my souffrance till to morn / After  
these wordes lincus sente megera in to a tour / and made  
her to be kepte ther / After he sente philotes in to a lowe  
pryson / And amphitriion in to a nother pryson / And  
25 syndyng there in seruage & myserye pryant the sone of  
kyng laomedon / he had pytye of hym and sente hym  
agayn to Troyes where he was after receyued wyth  
grete Ioye of the Troyans &c . .

¶ How hercules entrid in to Thebes in vnknownen ha-  
30 byte / And how he put to deth the geant lyncus and his  
complices and his wyf megera &c : : .

**B** I the glayue of lyncus than and of andromada-  
 das Thebes was trowblid doloroufly . Lyn-  
 cus exercised there many tyrannyes and wic-  
 kednesses In thys Infortune Andromadas departed  
 and wente to doo his thynges . leuyng there lincus with 5  
 foure honderd men of warre for to kepe the cyte and to  
 hold hit in his obeyffance. Thus was taken the venge-  
 ance of the centaures . In the tyme of this vengeance . the  
 quene Iuno cam in to thebes and had grete Ioye whan  
 she fonde hit in defolacion and full of wedowes and 10  
 orphelins . and in the enemyes handes of hercules / than  
 were grete the teeres and lamentacions of megera Am-  
 phitriou was nyghe her that vnderstood all her dolean-  
 ces and comforted her / Lincus cam many tymes vnto  
 her in to the prifoun And requyred her fwetely to haue 15  
 her loue . And in the most fayrest maner / Alleway his  
 fwete and faire wordes auailed not . ffor he fond her  
 constant and ferme . and alleway kepyng in rigour  
 her chafte . And gaf hym many vertuous answers  
 wherof foloweth oon . whiche was the lafte / Lincus 20  
 thou hast now the hande stronge . and hast brused the-  
 bes . ffortune and yll happe haue gyuen vnto the . the ty-  
 rannye . wherof thou hast enryched thy self with vy-  
 ces . thou hast furthermore the puyffance for to comette  
 in me murdre . but thy power ne thy fynnes ben not so 25  
 stronge ne of myght for to make my vertu to bowe ne  
 to folde . Megera alleway bewayled hercules . She  
 bewayled hym so moche on a day that she becam alle  
 rauyffhed and in a traunce And that same day hercu-  
 les that was departed from theffalonyque a good 30  
 whyle to fore made fo his Iourneyes that he entryd in



to the roiaime of thebes accompanied with many noble  
men / And entryng in to these marches he fonde the con-  
tre all destroyed / And he had not goon ferre / whan hyt  
was told hym how lincus was lord of thebes / And  
5 how he had slayn in bataill the kynge Creon and how  
he had enprifoned megera &c : .

**W**Han hercules had receyuid these tidings. he was  
enplenysshid with grete anger / and said that he  
wold auenge hym yf he myght / Than he cladde  
10 hym aboute his armours with a mantel & disgyfed hym  
self as moche as he myght / whan he had so don . he leste  
there his felawes . And entrid hym self in to thebes vn-  
knownen and passid thurgh the gate & bare hym so wel  
that the porters lete hym passe forth / and in like wyse  
15 entrid in to the palais / At the entre of the palais a foul-  
diour cam to hercules & demanded hym what he soughte  
ther / hercules caste a way his mantell a ferre and toke  
his sward that was stronge / And wyth oute ony  
worde he gaf so grete a strook to the fouldiour that  
20 was not armed . that he clefted his heed fro the hyghest  
parte down to the ground . Many other fouldiours that  
were there by feeyng the strook / Cryed and affrayed  
ran to their axes and clubbes / And some were of them  
that auanced hem self for to take hercules / but her-  
25 cules smote of theyr heedes and bete hem down . And  
than began to ryse a grete bruyt & so grete a noyse that  
lincus herd hit / And wenyng that hit had ben his por-  
ters that affrayed . he cam rennyng down all vnarmed  
for to make pees / Assone as hercules aperceyuyd and  
30 sawe hym comyng out of the halle / he drewe vnto hym

with his swerd haunced in his hand Cryeng hercules  
hercules . and smote hym so that he cutte of the right ar-  
me and with the strook he fyll down to ground . And  
after he smote vpon oon and other that had no helmes  
on her heedes ne haubercs on her backes . and than they 5  
knewe that hit was hercules / he slewe them so largely  
that of the blood that ran down was made a right grete  
ruffhyng as hit had ben a ryuer &c : .

**A** Monge these thynges the damoyfelles of me-  
gera yssued out of the palays And wente in 10  
to the stretes Cryeng with hie and clere voys  
that hercules was comen agayn and that he had slayn  
lincus / by these cries all the Cite was meuid . the good  
men olde and yonge the wedowes wyues and may-  
dens ran vnto armes by grete corage . and assailed all 15  
aboutes the men of lincus . there was a terrible batayll  
gaderd to geder of the women ayenst their enemyes / In  
a lityll while all the Cyte was trowblid whan her-  
cules had put to deth all them that he fonde in the cloos  
of the palays referuyd lyncus whyche he put in the 20  
garde and kepyng of the quene Iuno and of many da-  
moyfelles that cam vnto hym . he sprange vpon the stre-  
tes And shewid his swerd and smote down ryght on  
all sides in skarmowshyng so mortally the men of lyn-  
cus all aboute where he myght fynde hem . that by the 25  
helpe of them of thebeshe made hem all to passe the tren-  
chyng and cuttyng of his swerd . And than was the-  
bes all reioised And hercules retourned into the palais  
vnto the place where the ladies kepte lyncus . Than her-  
cules sente for to breke vp the dore of the chambre wher 30  
megera was in . ffor as moche as they coude not fynde

the keyes / for they that kepte her were ded · Megera  
than ful of gladnesse cam vnto her lord / hercules aroos  
vp to her and wold haue embraced her & kyfte her / but  
lincus that thought on no thyng but for to do euyll / by  
5 the secrete Introduccōn of Iuno torned hym fro hyt / say-  
yng .hercules late be my concubine I haue take my flessh-  
ly desires with her / she is of myn acqueyntance And the  
moſte luxurio<sup>s</sup> lady that euer I was acquainted with all

10 **W**Han megera herd the right grete Iniurye and  
wronge that the trayttre chargid her with / she  
fill bacward for angre furyo<sup>s</sup> with oute ſaing  
of ony word . hercules was all full of angre & hoot and  
full of grete yre / wenyng that lincus had ſaid trouth /  
he ſmote of the heed of linc<sup>s</sup> . And with the ſame ſwerd  
15 that he had ſlayn the trayttre / he put to deth megera  
whiche was with chylde / how be hit the cronycques  
of ſpayne telle that hercules ſlewe not his wyf / but  
that he put her in to a religion that he ordeined in thebes  
in the temple of dyane / In renounſyng her companye .  
20 and that thys was the firſt religyon that euer was in  
thebes . Theſe thinges accompliſhed in that oon manere  
or in that other / hercules toke out of pryſon Amphitri-  
on and philotes . and departed from thens all anoyed and  
fore greuyd at that tyme and longe after that he ſpack  
25 not . And wente his way at all auenture accompanied  
only of theſeus and philotes wyth grete bewaylynge  
of them of thebes . whyche than after hys departyng  
crowned vpon them Layus the ſone of kynge Agenor  
of Affirie for as moche as he had wedded the daughter  
30 of kynge Creon named Iocasta &c : : : .

¶ How hercules put to deth the kynge laomedon And destroyed Troye the seconde tyme.

**H**ercules thefeus and philotes departed from thebes and wente in to many dyuerce landes fe-  
chyng their aduentures . And paffyng by Licie 5  
where hercules was maad kynge / on a day they cam in  
to myrodonne vnto the palays of kynge Efon where  
Iafon was. whiche had than enprised for to faile to  
the yle of Colcos / And maad his thynges redy / Whan  
hercules had be fefted of Iafon and of duc pelleus and 10  
that he knewe of thenterpryfe that Iafon wold goo &  
conquere the flees of gold / he vowed and promyfed  
that he wold accompanye hym . And yf fortune wold  
be wyth hym he wolde aduenture to brynge his em-  
pryfe vnto an ende / what fhall I make longe proceffe 15  
Iafon and hercules made redy a right gode fhippe / and  
wente to the See And renewed not her vitayll tyll  
they cam to the porte of Troyes . But yet they renewid  
not hem at this poort / ffor the kynge Laomedon was  
than in troye whiche had fortiefied meruayllofly the 20  
Cyte agayn . And knowyng that ther was descended  
at his porte a fhipp full of grekes / he fente doun a man  
that comanded them rudeli that they fhould departe thens  
and that he was enemye vnto the grekes / Iafon as  
Capitayn of the Armee answerd courtosli the meffan- 25  
ger of kynge laomedon . and prayed hym that he might  
haue vitayll for his monoye / the meffanger answerd  
hym that he fhould none haue there but yf they gate hit  
with the fwerd / than hercules myght no lenger tarie  
but fware to the troiane that yf he myght retorne from 30  
the viage that he had enprised / that he fhould yet ones

agayn deftroie Troyes and that he shold not leue oon  
stone vpon another / wyth this conclusion hercules and  
Iafon departed fro troyes / And by fortune they were  
brought to the poort of Lenos / wherof was a wo-  
5 man lady and quene named yfiphyle / whiche waxe  
amerous of Iafon / as hyt is conteyned in the historye  
of Iafon / In this poort of lenos hercules was aduer-  
tyfed that there by was a kynge named Phyneus  
whiche suffrid hym to be gouerned of an auaricyous  
10 woman / Phyneus had ben maryed to a nother wo-  
man to fore / and had by her two fones . These two  
fones were vnrightfully by theyr stepmoder put in ex-  
yle / ffor to faye veray trouthe this seconde wyf / was  
corrumpid wyth auaryce / that she tooke fro the kyng  
15 his rycheffe and helde gretter astate than he / Whan than  
hercules had knowleche herof / he wente and spack  
to the kynge phyneus and to the quene / And shewid  
vnto them theyr vyces in so good maner and facion /  
that the two children were repelled fro their exyle / and  
20 that the kynge helde his astate royall . Than returned  
hercules in to lenos And toke the see wyth Iafon and  
wente in to the yle of Colcos . where Iafon by the ler-  
nyng and Industrie of medea conquered the sheep with  
the flees of gold whiche he bare with hym in to grece /  
25 Than hercules recomaunded strongly Iafon amonge  
hys parents and frendes / And tolde hem of the ryght  
grete vnkyndenes of the kynge laomedon . And how  
that he had sworn for to deftroie troyes for the ruyde-  
nes that the kynge laomedon had doon vnto them / They  
30 swore alle to gyder wyth hercules the destruccyon of  
Troyes and concluded the day of their departement

and after maad redy their shippis and alle that was  
necessarie for them / And than hercules held so well  
his hand in their exercyte . that at the day concluded a-  
monge them . they entred in to the see / And did so moche  
that they descended at the porte of troyes with so grete 5  
an Ooft that laomedon durst not deffende hem the porte

**I** Ason was at that tyme in a ferstrange contre . Hercu-  
les had with hym many noble men And amonge all  
other ther were with hym the kynge thelamomax the  
duc Nestor . Castor . pollux . thefeus and many kynges 10  
and dukes / At the descence of this porte / whiche was  
of stronge entree . hercules that nothyng doubted his  
enemyes . made to sowne and blowe vp trompes and  
tabours . and made so grete noys and bruyt / that the  
walles of troyes and of the pallays redounded therof 15  
and that laomedon seeyng out at oon of his wyndowes  
the Ooft of his enemyes . was right a grete while in a  
thought whether he myght goo to batayll agayn them  
or non / hit happend hym that as he was thus penyf  
that he behelde toward the market place he sawe there 20  
more than thretty thousand Armed men . whiche en-  
flamed his herte in suche wise that he wente and did  
hym do arme And all his thoughtis and penfees put  
aparte cam to his peple . whom he warned and desired  
them to do her parte and deuoyr / And after hym self 25  
trustyng in fortune / yffued out in to the felde in batayll  
arenged by good ordenaunce / And how well he suppo-  
sed that hercules was in the Armee descended at the  
porte . whom he doubtid . he marched vnto his enemies  
whyche Ioyed of his comyng / And than began the 30

troyanes and the grekes a right hote skarmuffhe / with  
fo grete occyffion & manlaughter / that at the Ioynnyng  
ther was many a man ded & hurte / hercules ne failed  
not to smyte and trowble his enemyes / he caste his eyen  
5 on high and sawe the banyer roiall of troies . he fought  
and smote down on the right fyde and on the lyfte fyde  
And wyth hys clubbe he smote down defmesurably  
that he cam to the banyer / And fyndyng there laomedon  
that dide there mervaylles of armes vpon the gre-  
10 kes / he smote hym wyth his clubbe often tymes vpon  
his helme in fuche wyse that he myght not saue hym /  
And that he enbarryd his clubbe with in his heed and  
brayn / that with the strook he flewe hym amonge plente  
of grekes lyyng ded on the sand eendyng there the  
15 ende of hys lyf / After he smote vpon them that bare  
the banyer and flowe them / And alle to rente the banyer  
/ And than were the troyans alle difcomforted  
and cryed / Late vs fle . late vs fle / And wyth this  
crye that was Impetuous they began to recuyelle and  
20 goo back vnto the cyte / wenyng to saue them self / But  
the grekes conueyed them wyth the poyntes of theyr  
fwerdes and cuttynges of theyr sharpe glayues so  
mortally / that in fleyng and kyllyng the moſte paart  
lyke as the tempeſt had ronne among them / They toke  
25 the Cyte ſo trowblyd wyth the deth of the kynge laomedon  
that there was none or right lytyll defence  
amonge them / In entryng in to the yate of Troyes /  
Thelamon was the fyrſte man / And hercules was  
the ſeconde / An than hercules fonde well that he dide  
30 ryght hyghe Cheualryes / Pryant was not at that  
tyme in troyes / But he was goon in to the Oryente

by the comandemēt of kyng laomedon after his retourn  
fro thebes / what shall I saye . ffortune hauyng caste  
doun the kyng Laomedon as sayd is by the stronge  
hand of hercules / About that / she put in troyes hercules  
and his peple whiche broughte hem alle to the hew- 5  
yng of her swerdes / they entrid in to ylion and pillyd  
hit / and after did do Crye hauok vpon all the tresours  
of troyes . In like wise they toke Exiona the daughter  
of the kyng . whom hercules gaf vnto thelamon requy-  
ryng hym to take her for as moche as he was the firste 10  
that entrid the Cyte / And whan they had taken alle  
that they fonde good in troye . ffor synable vengeance  
hercules bete doun the tours and edyfices / and put the  
fyre therin in fuche wyse . that there abode not a stone  
vpon an nother &c : : . 15

¶ How hercules and Affer assaillyd by batayll the  
geant Antheon and how they vaynquysshid hym in  
batayll the first tyme &c : : : : .

**A**.fter this generall destruccion of troye . whan  
the grekes were departed and hercules had 20  
leste hem / The grekes retorned in to grece with  
grete glorye . And hercules wente by the see sechyng  
his aduentures accompanied of theseus and philotes  
And hit happend hym . that he arryued at the porte of  
Alexandre / he fonde in this porte a right grete armee / 25  
whan the Capitayn of tharmee sawe hym come to an-  
cre / he knewe by the enseyngnes of hercules / that hit  
was hercules . And that he had herde hym recomanded  
about all maner men what som euer they were / And  
so than he cam vnto hym all full of Ioye . and sayd to 30  
hym / Lorde of nobleffe / and tresour of vertu . amonge



the peple moſte myghty / and amonge the kynges moſte  
reſplendant in all gloryous vertue / I ſawe yow / and  
you requyre that I may be your ſeruant & frende / And  
this ſayng he was on his knees to fore hercules and in  
5 ſigne of humylite he kyſſed the erthe / whan hercules  
ſawe the ſalutacōn & the maner of the doynge of this  
man / he toke hym by the hande / And liſtyng hym vp fro  
the ground ſawed hym / and after demaunded of hym  
his name / and to whom that armee belonged that he  
10 ſawe ther / he anſwerd hym that he was named Affer  
ſone of madyam the ſone of habraham / and that in that  
armee was none other capytayn ne chief but hym ſelf  
and that the egipciens had ordeyned hym duc & ledar of  
this Ooſte / for to goo in to libye for to deſtroye the con-  
15 tre in vengeance of the euyll and harmes that the tyrant  
buſire that was of libye had doon to them in ſuche wiſe  
as he well knewe &c : .

**W**Han hercules had receuyd the name and the  
affaires of affer / he toke hym for his frende. and  
20 ſaid to hym that he wolde accompanye hym to  
conquerre lybye / Affer thanked hym and brought hym  
in to a ryght ryche ſhypp where he feſted hym as  
moche as to hym was poſſible / They had not longe  
abyden there / but they wente vnto the ſee wyth grete  
25 gladneſſe / ffor the egypcyens were ſo Ioyous and  
ſo gladde to haue hercules with hem / that they thought  
and beleuyd verly that there myghte none myſhappe  
ne euyll come to them / Hercules ſonde in the ſayd  
ſhippe of Affer / the wyf and alſo the daughter of Affer  
30 Thys daughter had to name Echee. She was oon  
the moſte fayre damoyſell of alle the worlde and

yonge and fresshe / By the dayly sight of her / hercules  
 becam amerous of her And requyred her to be his wyf  
 Echce answerd that of her self she myghte not acorde  
 to his demande / but she sayde . yf fortune gyue me so  
 grete a grace that I myghte be your wyf / I schold haue 5  
 more cause to thanke the goddes . than ony wyf liuyng  
 hercules was right well content with the damoyfell  
 and by her introduccion callyd Affer / and requyred  
 hym that he wolde gyue to hym his doughter to be hys  
 wif Affer thanked hercules of that he vouchidfauf to 10  
 demande his doughter he that was the most excellent of  
 noblis / and said to hym that he shold take her and doo  
 with her his wyll & pleasir / hercules espowfyd and  
 weddid echce . by the consente of affer / and laie to gider  
 payyng the due dette of maryage in suche wyse that 15  
 echce conceyuyd of the seed of hercules / what shall I  
 make longe processe . hercules & affer sayllid so longe  
 that they fonde the porte of libye . where now standeth  
 cartage / and there they arryued and toke land . In a  
 nyght whiche was clere / and after they entrid hasteli 20  
 in to the contrey . and beseged the Cyte of libye wyth  
 oute resistence or gaynsayng &c : : .

**I**N this Cyte was than a grete geant named Antheon  
 grete aboue mesure of other geantes . the moste stronge  
 and the most conqueryng that was in all the parties of 25  
 europe and libye / Cirene . Trypolyn . Montaigne and  
 all the yles enhabited in this contres vnto the yles fortu-  
 nate / this kynge than aduertysed of the comyng of the  
 egipcyens was passyng angry and fware that neuer  
 none of them shold retorne agayn in to egipte / Assone 30  
 than as he might he dide do his men arme them & yssued

out of the Cyte with a grete companye of libyens / And  
had so grete haste to renne vpon the egypciens that he  
fette no ordenance amonge hys peple wherof he toke  
grete harme / ffor whan he cam to the batayll he fonde  
5 that hercules had renged hys peple and fette hem in  
two bataylles / of whyche he lad and conduysed the  
fyrst bataylle / Hit happend so that they of the sayd  
felawshyp of hercules by force of shotte mayntenyd  
hem self so vayllyantly and wyth strokes that they  
10 brought to deth more than fyften honderd libiens . whan  
the shotte sayllid Antheon sprange in to the grettest  
prees as the mooste vaylliant And supposyd well to  
haue scarmeshyd his enemyes / but anone as hercules  
fawe hym come . he seafid his clubbe and put hym forth  
15 afore / And gaf hym so grete a strook that he made his  
hede to bowe on the lyfte side / Antheon had hys swerd  
lyfte vp for to haue smyten hercules whan he resseyuyd  
the strook that hercules gaf hym by whiche his strook  
was broken / Neuertheles he sayd betwene his teth  
20 that he wold auenge hym / he lifte vp his swerd again  
and smote hercules so dysmesurably that wyth the  
strook he brake his shelde / Than knewe hercules that  
the geant was a man of grete strength / this notwyth-  
standing he smote hym the seconde tyme with his clubbe  
25 And thus hercules and Antheon gaf eche other grete  
strokes that ther cam betwene hem the two parties . liby-  
ens & egipcyens / there was grete noyse of clynkng of  
swerdes and fownyng of the sheldes and helmes that  
were broken / and hawberks that were dismaillid shel-  
30 des quarterd and glayues broken / ther was the blood  
largely shedd on both partyes / hercules & antheon were

departyd by force of the prees / Antheon by grete yre  
 fmote with oute cessyng vpon the fiers egipcyens / her-  
 cules forruffhed the helmes largely with his Clubbe  
 and maad of the libyens all his pleasir / and brought  
 so many to deth with his clubbe / that in lityll space he 5  
 passid thurgh oute the puyffance of kyng antheon  
 many tymes / and that in his waye he couerid the erthe  
 and the waie that he held all with dede libyens / This  
 firste scarmuffhe was stronge and domaigiable to an-  
 theon . ffor agayn oon egipcyen that he slewe with his 10  
 glayue / hercules maad dye with his clubbe ten libyens  
 Aboute hercules was no thyng but blood / hercules  
 made the montaynes redounde of the Cryes / the renges  
 to tremble . the libyens to flee and goo a back / & wyne  
 lityll gayne / what shall I saye more also longe as the 15  
 day endured he held the bataill in vigeur / and aboute  
 theuen as affer and thefeus cam to the medlee . he enuer-  
 tued hym self in fuche facion ayenst antheon . that he  
 made hym flee alle charged with horions and strokes  
 and than in like wise fledde alle the libyens : : . 20

**¶** How hercules toke the kyng Athlas . and how he  
 began to studie the scyence of astronomye and the feuen  
 sciences lyberall &c : : .

**W**Han hercules sawe the Lybyens torne in to  
 flighte/hedidedofowne the retrayte for as mo- 25  
 che as hit was late/and wyth grete glorye re-  
 turned in to the place that he had chofen for to holde  
 his siege / his wyf Echee cam agaynst hym with open  
 armes and beclipped and kyssed hym / she halpe to vn-  
 arme hym & brought hym fresfh water for to refreshe 30  
 his visage / And ther was maad right good chiere of

all the egipcians / At thoppofite of this right good chiere  
the libyens were in their Cyte and made grete sorowe /  
ffor they had well lofte thretty thousand men . Soue-  
rainly Antheon demened fymple chiere for he had gode  
5 caufe . ffor hercules had fo beten hym with hys clubbe  
that he myghte not fufteyne hym felf / but wente with  
grete payne to bedd . And with sorowe fente for hys  
medicynes and furgiens . whiche cam and vifited hym  
and fonde hym all to brofid And faid to hym that hit  
10 wold be well a moneth or they coude hele hym . Anthe-  
on confideryng his caas fente and defired of the egypci-  
ens trewes for a moneth . Offryng to them for to fende  
hem dayly certayn nombre of beftiall And a right grete  
quante of vetayll / Hercules agreed and graunted  
15 hym this trewes be caufe of the vetayll / Than he made  
oute his mandementes and fente vnto all the kynges  
and prynces that were his tributaries / And alfo vnto  
his neygheours prayyng them that they wold come  
and focoure hym with all their men of armes the moft  
20 hafty wyfe that they myght / This trewes fo made her-  
cules began to remembre than / that to fore tyme he had  
herd philotes fpeke of a kyng that regned there by na-  
med Athlas / And that he was the moft wife man and  
connyngest of all the world / And furthermore that  
25 he dwelte in a caftell standyng on the toppe of a ryght  
hye montaygne named Athlas after the name of the  
fame kyng / In this remembrance hercules beyng couey-  
tous of the fcyence of Athlas callid philotes and faid  
to hym / that he wold goo in to the royaume of kyng  
30 athlas / And that his entente was to feke there hys  
adventure / Philotes anwerd and faid that he coude

well lede and brynge hym in to that Royame ffor he  
knewe the contre / Than hercules callid affer & thefeus  
and chargid them that they fhold allweye make good  
wacche / And after toke leue of them and of his wyf  
fayng that he wold haftely retorne . this doon he and <sup>5</sup>  
thre maryners wyth philotes wente vnto the fee In a  
galeye fublyle and lyght / and fayled and rowed in  
to the fee medyterane / they had good wynde and redy  
and fortune was good to them . In lityll whyle they  
cam vnto the ftrayt of gybaltar / And than philotes <sup>10</sup>  
fhewid vnto hercules the montaigne & Castell where  
as Athlas was abidyng : : .

**W**han hercules fawe the montaigne and the caftel  
he wente and toke lande Ioyoufly / after he  
toke his Clobbe and comanded philotes and <sup>15</sup>  
his maryners for to abide hym there / after that he went  
toward the montaigne . and hit happend that he mette  
with a man that defcended doun fro the hyll . and he  
adreffid hym toward the faid man for to here some  
tidynges / and demanded hym fro whens he cam / he faid <sup>20</sup>  
I come from the caftell that ye maye fee yonder a hye /  
whyder go ye fayd hercules . vnto the cyte of marcely  
anfwerd the ftranger / the kynge Athlas to whom I  
am feruant . hath fente me theder for to publyfthe hys  
comandement vnto the Cytezeyns that wythin fixe <sup>25</sup>  
dayes they be garnyffhid with their harnoys & armes  
for to accompanye hym to goo vnto the warre of the  
grete kynge of Libye . whiche hath required Instantli  
to haue his focours / wherfore yf ye will ferue hym in  
this armee . & be his foldyour / goo vp & ye fhall fynde <sup>30</sup>  
hym in his caftell studyyng the fcyence of aftronomye

The seruant of kynge Athlas with thise wordes wente  
forth on his waye . and hercules wente vp in to the mon-  
taine & cam to the gate of the castell / where he fonde  
four knyghtes that demanded hym what he wold haue  
5 hercules answerd that his will was for to speke to the  
kynge for certayn maters that touched hym / The foure  
knyghtes not thynkyng but good brought hercules  
within a grete halle where in were all the men of kyng  
athlas assaying them with swerdes and axes for as  
10 moche as they had herd saye that they shold go to the  
warre / And they were all armed &c : : .

**W**Han these knyghtes had brought theder hercu-  
les / they gaf knowlege vnto the kynge that a  
strange geant axid after hym And wold not  
15 telle hem the cause why / Than Athlas wente doun and  
fonde hercules armed wyth his skyn of the lyon / And  
axid hym what he was / Than he answerd & said I am  
hercules that haue conquerd philotes and the gardyn  
with the sheep of thy doughters / I am come nowe hether  
20 for to conquere the with thy scyences . So behoueth the  
that thou do to me obeyffance / And gyue ouer to helpe  
the grete Antheon myn enemye and that thou come with  
me / And yf thou wolte not so do / Arme the hastely and  
deffende the wyth armes of that I demande the / ffor yf  
25 thou wilt not assente therto by loue / I shall make the  
accorde hit by force / Athlas was strongly discouragid /  
whan he knewe by the mowthe of hercules that it was  
he that had late conquerd philotes & had slayn his ge-  
ant his felaw . taken his sheep / and also newly had af-  
30 faillid by warre Antheon to whom he had promysid to  
gyue socours / & also considerd þ' he wold that he sholde

yelde hym to hym / the herte began in hym to swelle for  
 anger and pryde . And by grete felonnye fayd to hym  
 O thou presumptuous hercules how art thou so hardy  
 to come allone to fore me . thou that I may not loue  
 knowe thou that I haue had many a displeasir by thyn 5  
 outrage / ffor philotes was my right grete frende . And  
 now thou art come to renewe this dysplayfance and  
 wylt that I shold yelde me vnto the . That is not myn  
 Intencion &c : . . .

**A**Thlas with thise wordes wente in to a cham- 10  
 bre ther faste by and comanded that euery man  
 shold arme hym . as they dyde / hercules had all  
 wey his eye vpon hym . to the ende that he shold not es-  
 cape hym . whan he was armed he cam ayenst hercules  
 and escryed hym to the deth / after gaf hym a strook 15  
 with his glayue fierfly . with the Crye and with the  
 strook all they of the fortresse affaylid hercules / Than  
 hercules put hym self to deffense myghtly by the rigour  
 of his Clobbe / And with . xij . strokes he slewe . xij . of  
 his enemyes / After he hurted & wounded many other 20  
 and sparyd longe the blood of Athlas . but in the ende  
 for as moche as athlas gaf grete strokes to hercules /  
 Hercules smote hym vpon the helme withoute employ-  
 yng of all his strength / and gaf hym a wounde in the  
 hede that alle astonyed he bare hym to the erthe . from 25  
 than forthon they of the fortresse durst no more assaile  
 hercules / ner they aduentured hem not for to rescowe ne  
 to releue Athlas . but fledde thens out of the castell / and  
 hercules abode there allone with athlas and the dede bo-  
 dies . So in the ende whan hercules sawe that they had 30  
 gyuen hit ouer / he toke Athlas and maad hym to Crye



hym mercy After he wente in to his studie & toke all his  
bookes whiche he ladid vpon a chamell and after re-  
torned vnto athlas & constraynd hym to folowe hym .  
And whan hercules had don in the castell all his plaifir  
5 he departed acompanied with athlas & with his booke-  
kes And brought hym doun vnto the see syde to the  
place where philotes abode hym &c :

10 **W**Han philotes sawe hercules come with athlas  
and his bokes/he had grete Ioye/& made know-  
leche & acqueyntance with athlas whiche was  
so sorowful that he myght not speke / and than they en-  
trid in to her galey & wente vnto the see / Athlas was  
forowfull & woo begon of the wounde that he had in  
the heed / hercules requyred hym Instantly that he wold  
15 teche hym his scyence / Athlas wold in no wise do hit in  
the begynnyng of his sorowe / but whan he had conuer-  
fid & taried with hercules / what for the bounte that he  
sawe in hym as for the Introduccōn of philotes / whiche  
affirmed that hercules was the moſte noble & vertuous  
20 man that euer had ben/he began to teche hym all his sci-  
ences / wherein he lerned and prouffited by quyk and  
sharp engyne in suche wise that he comprifed all / And  
that afterward he becam the beste philosopher and the  
moſt parfyt astronomyen of all the world / Thus stu-  
25 dyng than hercules retourned with grete honour in to  
the ooſte of Affer / And fonde at his comyng that hys  
wyf had brought forth a fair ſone / whiche the egypcy-  
ens had crowned kyng of egypte where he regned af-  
terward and was callid dedoum &c : .

30 **W**Han Affer ſawe Athlas and knewe how her-  
cules had vaynquyſſhid and conquerd hym

he meruayllid moche of his prowesse whiche was  
 so grete / and of his wysedom that attayned to so hye  
 thynges / hercules put alle his engyne & studeye to conne  
 scyence . In the menewhile a litill and a lityll the tyme  
 passid / and Antheon assamblid a right grete Ooste / 5  
 and was alle helyd of his woundes / And than the  
 triews fayllid and exspyred . wherof the egyptiens  
 had grete Ioye . ffor yet they hoped to haue victorye of  
 her enemyes . And the libyens hoped to auenge them  
 of the shame that hercules had made hem reffeyue / whan 10  
 than the triews were exspyred the day folowyng her-  
 cules maad redy his batayllis of that oon fyde / And  
 antheon ordeynyd his on that other fyde / Antheon made  
 thre batayllis . the fyrst of . xij . thousand fightyng men  
 the seconde of . xx . thousand / and the thirde batayll of 15  
 . xxx . thousand . he ordeyned hym self kynge and chief  
 of the first batayll / In the seconde he ordeyned the kyng  
 of ghetulye . and in the thirde the kyng of Cothulye  
 And than whan he had right well sette them in arraye  
 and renged them in a mornyng he made to marche 10- 20  
 yously ayenst his enemyes / and demandyd no thyng  
 but their comyng on . and to see the oure whan that her-  
 cules wold charge on hem &c : : .

¶ How hercules assamblid his batayll ayenst Anthe-  
 on kyng of the libyens . the whiche he put to flyght & 25  
 slewe the kyng of Cothulie : : .

**H**ercules had made of his folke two bataylles  
 wherof he conduyted and ledde the first / Affer  
 and thefeus conduytd and gnyded that other  
 whan than he sawe the libyens marche whiche made 30  
 the gretteft bruyt and noyse of the world / he wente

forth afore and hys companye folowed / Than began  
the trompettes to sowne & tabours to make grete noise  
the crye was grete / they began sharpely the batayll  
wherof hercules & antheon made the assaye by a swifte  
5 cours And with sharp swerdes smote so fore to geder /  
that Antheon brake his glayue . And the yron of the  
glayue of hercules perfyd the sheld of Antheon and  
his armes on his right side by whiche he had a wound  
whereoute sprange the blood . Antheon wende to haue  
10 dyede for sorowe whan he felte the strook . and sawe  
that his glayue had but lytyll doon to hercules / he toke  
than his swerd . and hercules toke his also And smote  
eche other so hard that hercules bare antheon vnto the  
erthe with oon strook / And had slayn hym . ne had the  
15 libyens haue ben whiche ran vpon hercules on all sides  
And they delyuerid to hym oon so grete assault that he  
wyste not to whom he myghte attende . Than hercules  
employed his swerd vpon the lybyens / The egypciens  
assemblid them aigrely vpon their enemyes / Antheon  
20 releuyd hym self all ashamed of his falle . Applied all  
his puyffance and strength for to auenge hym not vp-  
on hercules but vpon them of his partye / Thus Antheon  
smote on that oon syde and hercules on that other / An-  
theon foughte by grete fyerste and angre . And hercules  
25 by prowesse . The fierfnes of Antheon was grete . but  
the prowesse of hercules was so excesssiuely grete that  
the lybyens fledde hym as the deth / And where they  
sawe hym they tremblyd for grete feer / At this bataill  
to fore the swerd of hercules alle bloody . Than the  
30 grete rowtes of the lybyens were right fore affrayed  
And keppte none araye / he smote of heedes and leyde

hem down to the erthe/his folke that were difroyed by  
antheon he gadrid to geder agayn . he made fuche werke  
that the libyens had the worfe and that antheon fente  
haftely to the kyng of Cothulye that he fhould come to  
his helpe &c : : .

5

**T**He kyng of Cothulye that at the fendyng of  
antheon deytid / wenyng to come to the medlee  
But whan Affer and thefeus fawe hym meue  
they wente ayenft hym . and lettyd hym of his waye  
And there began the ftour fo grete and fo mortall that 10  
thefeus and Affer flewe the kyng of Cothulye bete  
down his banyers / his reconnoiffances and his cotuly-  
ens / And fmote fo fore the yron vpon their bodies that  
they wente aback and were conftroyed to crye after  
helpe / the kyng of ghetulie feeyng this euyl aduenture 15  
cam vnto the refcouffe and fonde the Cothulyens alle  
difconfited . At his comyng the Cryes . the noyfe . the  
tempefte / the ftrokes began to renewe / many vaillance  
and many a prowefse were fhewyd there / Many  
fhewyd there theyr vertu & ftrength and many were 20  
flayn there / Thefeus dide there meruailles . but allwey  
the ghetulyens held hem to gider and fought ayenft the-  
feus by the fpace of thre houres / and loft but fewe of  
their peple vnto the tyme that hercules brought them of  
the bataill of kyng Antheon to difconfiture / and made 25  
them to flee to faue hem felf with the ghetulyens / that  
than difcoraged hem felf in fuche wyfe that after they  
had feen the batayll of kyng antheon difrenged and  
broken they myght not lifte vp their armes to dyffend  
them but were flayn a lityll and a lityll / And fynably 30  
they were brought to fo ftrayte metes and boundes

[leaf 181]

363

that they wiste neuer where to faue hem . And than they  
 fledde out of the place / sparklid by the felde & cham-  
 payns . with out ledars conduyteurs and capitaynes /  
 And than hercules put hym forth in the prees all afore  
 5 amonge them that fledde firste of the libyens that he cam  
 to the gate of the cyte with hem / And there he began to  
 smyte so dismefurably that he put to deth the libiens fle-  
 yng theder and the porters & them that wold resiste hym  
 Also he made the egypciens to entre in to the toun / And  
 10 Antheon seeyng fortune ayenst hym in alle poyntes  
 fledde not in to his palays ne accompanied as a kynge  
 but at large in to the felde in the conduyte of foure moo-  
 res only that after brought hym in to Moryane : .

**¶** How hercules fought agayn . ayenst kynge Antheon  
 15 and putte hym vnto the deth &c : .

**B**y this manere hercules and the egypciens en-  
 tryd in to lybye and subiuged hyt by force of  
 armes / And Antheon was fledde in to mau-  
 ritayne . where he assemblid newe folk hastely / They  
 20 of lybye putte hem alle in the mercy of hercules / whan  
 hercules had thus dauntyd them of lybye . And theyr  
 neyghbours sechyng Antheon . he made Affer kynge  
 And named hyt after hym Affryque . And sayd that  
 he fought not for hys synguler prouffit and couetyse /  
 25 but for lyberalite and for to enhaunce vertue / O mooste  
 vaillyant and noble hercules . there was neuer man  
 born amonge the paynems more large . more noble ne  
 more vertuous / he wold not be kynge of all the world  
 He was lyberall and employed hys conquestes right  
 30 well and wyfely . and also gaf his yestes aduyfedly

whan he had maad Affer kyng / he enquired what  
lawes they helde and establiſhid amonge hem the ſacre-  
ment of maryage / ffor at that tyme the women were  
there all comune / & whan hit happend that the women  
had children . they gaf hem to þ<sup>e</sup> men after their piſono- 5  
myes / and thus telleth Ariſtotell in his politycques  
Aboue this ſacrement hercules ordeyned vnto the affri-  
quans that they ſhold hold the lawes of grece / and by  
right meure and rype conduyt maad the affrycquans  
lyue rayſonably and vertuouſly / and aboue all other 10  
thynges he made hem haue the ordre of maryage in grete  
reuerence / whan hercules had ordeynd all this / tidynges  
cam to hym that Antheon was come agayn to Chaffe  
hym with many moryans that folowed hym . than he  
retorned vpon antheon and vpon the moryans / and 15  
there fmote hem doun with his clubbe ſo mortally that  
he maad hit reed with their blood and ſlewe hem all  
and putte hem to flyght ſo cruelly that antheon abode  
allone ayenſt hercules and fought ayenſt hym body  
to body by grete ſtrength and gaf hym many ſtrokes 20  
hard to bere / But hercules gaf to hym ſo many and ſo  
largely that the geant wyſte neuer how to ſaue hym /  
and wende to haue fledde / but hercules þ<sup>e</sup> rān alſo ſwif-  
tely as an hors ranne after hym . and embraced hym in  
his armes with alle his myght / and lyfte hym vp in 25  
the ayer and bare hym vnto the ooſte of the maurita-  
nyes / and whan he cam nyghe hem . he caſte hym doun  
diſpitouſly to the erthe that all to brufed and forfruf-  
hed abode there dede antheon / and his deth torned vnto  
the moores ſo grete abaffhement that they loſt all their 30  
ſtrength & puyſſance / and were ſlayn by grete exceſſe

without remedye / they losfe there the kynge Antheon  
the kyng of moritane . the kyng of tingye & many other  
kynge & the honour of the bataill . and in the ende they  
fledde / in whiche flighte was taken & subiuged to the  
5 feignourye of Affricque the cyte of mauritaine : .

¶ How hercules and Theseus fought to geder ayenst  
the two damoyfelles of Sythye &c : .

**I**N remembrance of this victorye/herculesdidedo make  
in the felde the statue or ymage of a man slepyng in the  
10 place where he had putte to deth antheon And ther vn-  
der he dide do burye the body of antheon / And anone as  
the ymage whyche was made of the boon of an elle-  
phant was fette vp there / the neck of the ymage began  
to fowne like as hit had ben a man slepyng wherfore  
15 the mores had afterward the sepulcre in grete reuerence  
And worshipid the ydole . After this statue thus accom-  
pliffhid by hercules / he wente by tyngie & ampulesie &  
by many other contrees and c<sup>o</sup>querd all the contrey that  
now is callid Affricque . and gaf all to affer / and affer  
20 retorned in to libye . and there he sonde Echee his wyf  
ded by a greuous sekene / he toke and made sorow so  
grete that hit was meruaill . Than for to forgete this fo-  
row . he toke leue of kynge affer and the egypciens . and  
had supposid to haue departid thens . but as he was in ta-  
25 kyng leue . a damoifell strangely arayed cam vnto hym  
and faid . lord of libye the quenes of sithie ladyes of e-  
gipte of capadoce and of asye haue sente me vnto yow/  
whiche ladies haue late conquerd the said contrees in ta-  
king vengeance of þ<sup>e</sup> Infortune of their husbandes now  
30 late ded : And abandonnynd their contrey by cause of the  
grete outrage that vexofes kyng of egipte made in sithie

And for as moche as ye be of the lygnage of the egypt-  
cyens / they fende to yow that ye submette yow vnto  
theyr obeyffance for to do wyth yow that . that shall  
plese hem / or elles that ye come ayenst hem in batayll  
or elles for to eschewe theffufyon of blood they late 5  
yow wete that they haue good right to subiugue yow  
and that yf there be amonge yow two knyghtes that  
agayn two of them wolle doo armes at vtterance / they  
shall delyuere to yow two ladyes in place couenable  
by condicion / that yf the ladyes vaynquyssh and ouer- 10  
come yow / ye shall be holden as vaynquysshid / and  
be at theyr comandement / And yf your men ouercome  
the ladyes / they shall be reputed as ouercomen . and  
shall be fuggettis vnto yow &c : .

**H**ercules heeryng this mandement & message 15  
of the ladyes Answerd vnto the messanger /  
Damoysell syn that the ladyes of sithee ben so  
cheualereufes that they haue conquerid the grete roya-  
mes of egypte of capadoce and of asye/they ben fore for  
to doubte / Neuerthelasse for to eschewe theffufion of 20  
blood & for to deffende the affrycans fro their seruage  
ye shall retorne vnto them and saye / that the batayll  
of the two knyghtes ayenst two ladies is acorded and  
agreed vnto them for to be don to morn by the condicion  
that ye haue sayd . Than hercules affer and many other 25  
swore and promysid to hold thyse thynges / and dyde  
grete honour and reuerence vnto the damoysell : :

**T**He damoysell hauyng don her message as said  
is / returned vnto the ladyes / whiche were en-  
tred a grete way in Affrycque / & tolde to them 30  
word for word the answer of hercules . The ouerest



or maistresse of all these ladies was named Synope  
And had two susters so experte and stronge in armes  
that they dredde no knyght of the world/that oon was  
named menalipe & that other ypolite / Anone as these  
5 ladies had receyuid thise tidynges of the affrycans they  
had grete Ioye / And holdyng oppynyon that affrycque  
was wonne by the strength of ypolite and menalipe /  
whiche dide meruailles in armes/they ordeind that they  
shold fight with the two knyghtes . And so for to  
10 doo thay made redy ypolite and menalipe . whiche were  
on the morn redy vpon the felde : .

**A**T the oure that was ordeyned / hercules & theseus  
sittyng on two stronge horses with grete siewte of  
affricans . rood in to the place that the ladies had chosyn  
15 for to doo armes / There were the two ladies abidyng  
in a fayre place armed & well mounted on good stedes  
And by them were the ladies in grete nombre/Also sone  
than as hercules & theseus had aspyed the two damoy-  
felles . they made them that folowed to stand & come no  
20 nere/And sente vnto the damoyfelles to wete what they  
wold doo / The damoyfelles answerd that they abode  
the two knyghtes & that they were redy to doo armes  
agayn them vnder the condicions of their querele / And  
yf they were come they shold come forthe . .

25 **H**Ercules and theseus wyth thys answere toke  
their speres / and spored their horses and made  
signe vnto the damoiselles / and they garnysshid  
of sheldes & of speres ran agayn them so cheuaulourly  
that hyt semed that they ne helde of heuen ne of erthe  
30 And that at the copyng of theyr sharp speres the stro-  
kes were so huge & grete on bothe sydes that ypolyte

and thefeus bare eche other vnto the erthe / and in lyke  
wyfe dide menalipe and hercules / the affrycans mer-  
uaillid moche to fee the two prynces fo born down / and  
yet the ladyes of Sythea meruaylled moche more of  
the damoyfelles &c : : .

5

**W**Han the knyghtes of the oon fyde and the da-  
moyfelles of that other fonde them self lyyng  
oon the erthe / Shame and vergoyne smote hem  
vnto their hertes Neuertheles eche of them releuyd hem  
lightly and by grete corage toke their fwerdes . and ap- 10  
prochid eche other / and chargyng and smytyng that  
oon vpon that other fo radely that the armes of the la-  
dyes and of the knyghtes felte the strookes / ypolyte  
pourfiewed her man thefeus / And menalype helde her  
vnto hercules / The strookes of ypolite were grete and 15  
dide grete gryef vnto thefeus / thefeus enforced hym self  
strongly to auenge hym . and myght not well come to  
his purpose / hercules put vnder and ouercome mena-  
lype lightly with his fwerd and put her in his mercy  
but ypolyte mayntenyd her force fo myghtely ayenft 20  
thefeus / that she had put hym to vtterance ne had hercu-  
les had ben that sayd to hym / Broder what shall this  
bee / where is the prowesse of thefeus . shal that be daun-  
ted by the chyualerye of a damoyfell . yf hit be fo . cer-  
tainly all men shall haue shame of your difhonoure : . 25

**T**hyfe wordes began to quycquen and to wake  
agayn the blood of thefeus that was afore a  
flepe / and lyghte the courage in fuche wyfe  
that he recouerd a newe force and strengthe / and put  
hym forth and began to smyte by fuche prowesse that 30  
he maad the damoyfell recreante / and toke fro here / her

fwerd / And surmounted her / wherof the ladyes were  
right doleant & forouful and in especiall the quene Si-  
nophe / whiche than sente to hercules her armes in token  
that she was vaynquiffhed / prayng hym . that he wold  
5 yelde ayen & rendre the two damoyfelles / And hercules  
toke the armes of the quene . and sente to her menalipe  
and made the pees with her for the affrycans by condy-  
cion that she shold gyue ypolite in mariage to theseus  
whiche was amerous of ypolite / So than the wed-  
10 dyng was made in affryque with grete honour and wor-  
ship / And than the ladyes heeryng telle the meruailous  
feetes and dedes of hercules . preifid hym alle / And helde  
hem happy and ewrous to be vaynquyffhid of hym : .

¶ How hercules began to waxe amerous of deyanira  
15 And how achelous & hercules had bataill that oon a-  
yenft that other / and how achelous was vainquiffhid .

**A** .Fter the conquefte of these ladies . Theseus toke  
leue of hercules and of affer and returned in to  
his contre for to brynge home his lady / And her-  
20 cules wente to the see for to goo in to calcedonye whiche  
lyeth in thopofite of Achaye and of Archade for to see  
a fayr lady by excellent beawte / that he had herd gretly  
recomanded by a calcedonien that was in his companye  
he dide so moche what by see and by lande / that he cam  
25 in to calcedoyne / The kynge of that place had to name  
Oeneus and had two daughters that oon named Dey-  
anyra / And that other Gorge / Deyanyra was the  
fayrest . And that was she that hercules cam for to  
see . whan Oeneus had vnderftandyng & knowleche  
30 that hercules cam in to hys contrey . he had grete Ioye /  
And wente ayenft hym & refseyued hym in enbrafing fo

honourably as was to hym possible / In entryng in to  
hys pallays the quene and hys two doughters gorge  
and dyanyra wellcomyd hercules / Incontynent as her-  
cules caste his eyen vpon dyanira that was the moſte  
ſayreſt thyng that euer he ſawe / And that by on deſire 5  
right depe was enrachyned and roted in the moſt hole  
place of his herte / he felte hym ſelf rauyſſhyd meruayl-  
louſly . This deſire entrid in to hercules all full of rayes  
of loue and entryd in to his herte alſo ſodeynly as the  
rayes of the ſonne paſſe thurgh the glaſſe &c : : . 10

**D**Eyanira had ſo moche beaute & was ſo well  
accompliſſhid / and ſo reſufed & ſhooon amonge  
the ladyes that to her / myght be maad no com-  
paryſon / not allonly in beaulte / but with þ<sup>r</sup> in wyſedom  
and bounte . She was the moſt precious treſour of cal- 15  
cedonye / and ther cam many ladyes and damoyſelles  
and other / hys neyghbours were all amerous of her /  
and ſoueraynly the kyng Achelous that was ſtrong  
and puyſſant / This kyng had grete feygnourye and  
marchyd on the royame of calcedonye / whan than her- 20  
cules had ben there a ſpace in paſſyng the tyme Ioyouſ-  
ly and in beholdyng the conduyt of deyanira / hyt hap-  
pend on a day that the meſſanger of kyng Achelous  
cam to Oeneus and ſaid to hym . that achelous deman-  
ded of hym yf he wold gyue hym his doughter / and yf 25  
he wold not gyue her to hym at thys tyme / he wold  
moleſte and greue his contre & wold make hym warre  
Of this mandement Oeneus was ſtrongly troublid  
and anſwerd the meſſanger that on the morn he wold  
gyue hym an anſwer / All that day oeneus was pen- 30  
ſy and ſymple and abode allone / and for to paſſe his

melancolie he cam to hercules / whan hercules sawe hym  
so pensyf / he coniured hym in suche wyse that he shold  
telle hym the cause of his pensifnes / whiche told hym  
and said . Lord hercules syn hit pleseth yow to knowe  
5 of myn anoyance and greef / I shall anon telle yow  
the cause / Ther is here by a kynge my neyghebour na-  
med Achelous grete and fiers and prowde / whyche  
by many tymes hath requyred of me to haue to his wyf  
deyanira my doughter / I haue not ben in will to accorde  
10 the maryage / ffor as moche as I knowe this kynge a  
man of ryght euyll lyf . And for this cause I haue had  
many menaces of hym . And also this day his messan-  
ger is yet comen agayn to me and hath sayd to me that  
yf I gyue hym not my doughter at this tyme . that he will  
15 make me warre / Certes hercules yf ye see me pensyf /  
Hyt cometh to me by this occasion . ffor I haue not yet  
gyuen hym hys answer / But I muste gyue hit hym to  
morn / Neuerthelesse I haue concluded in my self that  
I wyll not gyue vnto hym my doughter / And than  
20 whan I see veryly that by the reffuse of my doughter  
hyt muste nedes bee that the warre be open betwene  
the forsayd kynge Achelous and me I knowe well  
that I am dysplefyd . ffor warre is the eternall exyl-  
lement of the contre / Perdycion and waaste of the  
25 peple and of goodes &c .

**S**Ire sayd hercules hyt is force vnto a man that  
he take and bere alle that fortune wyll . As ye  
saye warre is not encrefyng of peple but dymunycion  
allewaye by that hole hyt behoueth to passe / Hyt is  
30 expedyent that a man reioyse hys ryght . Ryght con-  
forteth the courage of a man . And also the corage of a

man confortd bryngeth hym ofte tymes to gloryous  
victorye / A beste rurall disgarnysshyd of rayfonable  
engyne fighteth for his hole and neste with his clawes  
with his feet teeth and wyth his becke / what shall a  
man sensible and endowed with entendement & rayfon 5  
doo yf ony assault and namely in his owen land and  
terrytorye come / Nature wyll and enseygneth that  
where corperall force saylleth / vygour and vertue of  
courage werken / and that they fyghte for their contrey  
Take courage than in yowr right / and late saye your 10  
entente vnto your enemyes . ye haue receyuyd me wor-  
shipfully / and in my receyuyng thise tydynges ben come  
I shall helpe yow yf hit be nede / and I suppose yf ache-  
lous assaylle yow he shall repente hym : . .

**B**y these wordes the kynge Oeneus confortd 15  
hym self gretly / the day drewe ouer / On the  
morn oeneus called the messanger of achelous  
and said to hym . that he come nomore to demande his  
doughter / and that he was not auysed to gyue her to  
his mayster / & furthermore yf he meuyd warre ayenst 20  
hym for this cause . he had Intencōn to defende hym vnto  
the deth of the last man of all hys peple . The messan-  
ger retorned with these wordes and told hem to ache-  
lous and all that he fonde . Achelous was euyll con-  
tent with kynge oeneus / & as he that was ouer moche 25  
smyten with the loue of deyanira . began to assemble his  
men of armes in Intencion to make warre on kynge oe-  
neus . and to take fro hym his doughter / hercules was  
than in calcedonye and ofte tymes he was with deyani-  
ra in gracious deuyses . he fonde her so well adressed in 30  
all honeste manners . that all day he was the most

parte with her And in the nyghte he dide not but dreme  
 and thynke on her / how be hit he said no thyng to her  
 that touched his amerous desires / willyng fyrst to  
 shewe there his power in armes / hit happend on a day he  
 5 opend a wyndowe that was on the gardyn of deianira  
 And castyng his eyen a doun he sawe deyanira that sat  
 vpon a grene place acompanied of many ladyes and  
 damoyfelles / Than he fette all his entendement to con-  
 templare the excessiue beaulte of her / After he desired her /  
 10 And in coueytyng & desiryng he said . O deianyra that  
 haue not the prerogacion to knowe the hertes and the  
 thoughtes of the men / yf I shold saie to yow the tenthe  
 parte of the loue & desires that I haue in yow / ye mighte  
 not beleue hit / I haue goon many a contre. and seen many  
 15 a royame . and many a tresfour I haue desired & many a  
 thyng . But of all for to come to myn aboute / I was ne-  
 uer in so grete thought as I am for to gete your grace : .

**T**He same oure that hercules spack by hym self /  
 Deyanyra was not ydell . She that had hercu-  
 20 les in her mynde and remembrance in her herte  
 than beyng ryche wyth the poyntes of loue sowne by-  
 twene variacions of hope and despayr / was espryed  
 in alle her vaynes wyth the heete of fyre that brenneth  
 amerous hertes / the fire brennyng was stronge & right  
 25 hard to quenche the right Percyng sparckle / she leyde her  
 doun vpon the grasse / And began to saye in her engyne /  
 Alas hercules what shal deianira doo she may not come  
 and attaine vnto your loue / I was wonte not longe syn  
 not dayne to behold the men / & than said . þ' neuer prince  
 30 ne kynge shold haue my loue / now I am all of another

nature / and ne desyre other thyng but that I myght be  
 your wyf / I had supposed to haue remayned and con-  
 tynued a stable virgine / and only disdaineuse of þ<sup>e</sup> men  
 agayn the requestes and amonycions of the ladyes /  
 These ben now well other tydynges / with thyse wor- 5  
 des she cesed a litil and began to thynke on many other  
 thynges / At this poynt as she thought on hercules . and  
 hercules on her Tidinges cam theder that Achelous cam  
 theder for tassiege the Cyte by lande and by see / and  
 that he was right nyghe by / ffor these tidynges aroos 10  
 in the pallays a ryght grete murmure / that cam to the  
 eeres of hercules and of deyanyra . their spyrites were  
 trauerfyd in suche facion that hercules leste to beholde  
 deyanyra / and the damoyfell leste to thynke on hercu-  
 les . and bothe two wente vnto the kyng oeneus : . 15

**A** None as hercules cam vnto the kyng / and that  
 the kyng sawe hym . he wente ayenst hym and  
 said to hym that his enemyes were right nyhe  
 the Cyte / hercules answerd Ioyoufly / that hyt beho-  
 ueth to goo feste hem . and that he doo putte hys peple in 20  
 armes / at the answere of hercules the kyng dyde do  
 fowne to armes / and with the fowne all calcedonye  
 was meuyd and eche man adoubed hym . hercules and  
 his grekes were redy in a lityll space / The calcedonyens  
 assemblid by grete companyes in the palais / whan they 25  
 were assemblid the kyng and hercules brought them  
 in to the ffelde / and hercules put hem in ordonaunce / that  
 doon he dide hem marche / and so exploitied the calcedo-  
 nyens & grekes on an after dyner / that they cam & fond  
 their enemyes and approchyd them so nyhe that ther 30  
 was nothyng to doo but to smyte and laye on / hercules



had maad two bataylles / oon and the fyrste of his pe-  
ple / and that other of the calcedonyens whan they cam  
to the poynte to mete . Hercules wente to the calcedo-  
nyens and in the presence of the kynge fayd to them / lo  
5 here ye may see your enemyes that sette lytill by yow  
ffor they ben come in to your lordshypp to assaill yow  
I pray yow that the grete outrage of them abate ne  
mynuffhe youre corages / ye oughte here to haue the fy-  
erfte of a lyon the puyffance of an ellephant and appe-  
10 tyte of a gryffon for to delyuere yow wyth oute ende  
fro the enemyte of kyng Achelous . in keping your con-  
tre . your domynacōn . your honour / your tresours . your  
wyues . your chyldren . and that more is your lyues  
Bee ye than enuyous to do well / be ye aglouted wyth  
15 defyre of vengeance / be ye coueytous to gete worfhypp  
and glorye / yf ye esuertue not your self at this tyme / ye  
may not haue but mendicyte or seruytude or deth / ffor  
your enemyes shall doo vnto yow all the euyll of the  
world / yf they haue victorie ouer yow . Thise wordes  
20 wroughte in the hertes of the calcedonyens and gaf to  
them corage merueylously / And all full of oon ryght  
good will desired the medlee / whan hercules had achie-  
uyd his exortacōn he wente to the bataill / for hit was  
at the point to fighte . Than were ther grete cryes on that  
25 oon side & on that other / Tabours . trompettes . clarions .  
hornes & busynes began to sowne . knyghtes began to  
meue at thentree of the bataill . hercules and the grekes  
shotte & drewe largely vpon their enemyes / And made  
achelous all abaffhid for as moche as he hoped not  
30 to haue found so grete resistence with the calcedonyens  
Than they casted her eyen vpon the banyer of hercules / &

seeing the grete lyon that was paynted therin / they began to ymagyne that there myght be hercules of whom was spoken thurgh oute all the world for his vertues and his strengthe : : .

**W**Han they were thus ymagenyng the shotte 5  
failled with grete occision of them of the party  
of Achelous / whan the shotte was so faylled  
hercules toke his swerd / and fourroied amonge them  
of Athaye . that were in the first fronte of the batayll  
of achelous / and there maad an hoole so grete that the 10  
calcedonyens and yconyens wan vpon them at the first  
Ioynnyng / and made that other partye to recule and go  
a backe . wherof achelous had grete sorowe / and he  
toke to hym . xx . knyghtes whiche were chofen and  
cam and rengid with them there . where hercules defra- 15  
yed and brake the batayll of achayens / There he ap-  
prouuyd his corage Amorous this stronge geant . and  
his cheualerye so vayllyantly that the grekes entryng  
taryed and abode / and also hercules . ffor they dyed  
their swerdes and the erthe with their blood . and bete 20  
doun many yconyens . And there was the stryff so grete  
that men myght see nothyng ellys but heedes and ar-  
mes flice in to the ffelde . hercules smote no strook but  
hit coste to achelous the deth of a man . Achelous in like  
wyse strook for strook smote doun oon of his enemyes 25  
The residue of their folke dide the best they cowde / now  
before now behynde / and yet myght neuer thachayens  
confounde and put aback theyr aduersaryes howe be  
hit they were allwey fowre agaynst oon and the ycho-  
nyens also myght not preuaill vpon the achayens for 30  
as moche as they were in grete nombre . And they had

alleway fresfh peple and newe / In this maner the two  
puiffances fought to geder more than foure oures / loue  
wrought fore there in hercules & in achelous . bothe two  
made their fwerdes to floriffhe couerid with blood / they  
5 mette ofte tymes and smote eche other / but neuer durft  
achelous abide to fore the fwerd of hercules for the or-  
rible strookes that he fawe hercules gyue / but he putted  
hym in the prees as fone as he had smyten hym or had  
greuyd hym : .

10 **I**N this bataill herculesdide wondres & meruailles . Oe-  
neus tokea grete playfir to behold hym . And thachay-  
ens had therindisplaifir / ffor they that feyghe hym were  
no more affewrid to efcape the deth / than he that feleth  
the fwerd in his nekke in the hand of a tyrant . There ref-  
15 feyuid no man a strook of hym but he abood in the place  
he made fo grete slaughter that no man can well write  
In the ende kyng oeneus with all his calcedoniens cam  
to the bataill / In his comyng the achaiens refeyuid losse  
vpon losse & parill vpon parill . The kyng oeneus made  
20 many of his enemyes to dye / hercules shewid his puyf-  
fance more and more / By his well doyng he putte tha-  
chayens alle oute of araye . and after in to flyghte /  
And the losse of the felde torned gretly vnto the dom-  
mage of kyng Achelous . ffor hercules chaffed hym  
25 hountoufly in to hys shyppys and maad hym to lefe  
twelue thoufand Achayens &c . .

**¶** How hercules put to vtterance the kyng Achelous  
And how he espowfed deyanyra &c : .

30 **A**.Fter this victorye whan hercules fawe that the  
kyng Achelous fauyd hym felf by the fee / He  
called the kyng oeneus and fayd to hym that

he wold pourfiewe his enemye / and that he wold de-  
lyuere the world of hym . and after toke two honderd  
of his chofen men . and toke leue of the kynge oeneus  
and wente to the fee / folowyng after Achelous reco-  
mandyng hym to gorge and to deyanira . In this nyght 5  
oeneus after the departyng of hercules returned in to cal-  
cedonye / and tolde his wyf and his daughters the hye  
prowes that hercules had doon in the batayll / and how  
he had chaced his enemyes / and how he was goon af-  
ter with two honderd men . The ladyes gorge and dey- 10  
anyra were right Ioyous of the victorye / but hit anoy-  
ed hem fore that hercules wyth fo lytyll a companye  
pourfycued achelous / and aboue alle other deyanira  
was gretly anoyed and greuyd of thempryse of hercu-  
les fo fore that she wente in to her chambre and was 15  
constrayned to wepe and not to haue Ioye in herte vn-  
to the retorne of hercules / ffor to retorne vnto the pur-  
poos of hercules / whan he was put vnto the pourfiewt  
of achelous as faid is he entrid in to his royame . and  
fiewed hym fo nyhe that he was constraynd to wyth- 20  
drawe hym in a ryght stronge castell standyng by the  
fee / hercules afeged achelous in this castell / whan ache-  
lous sawe that hercules pourfiewed hym with fo lityl  
companye as wyth two honderd men only / he callid  
hys frendes and hys conduytours / and amonge other 25  
thynges told hem that hit was shame to them to suffre  
to be affeged wyth fo lytyll nombre of peple . They  
answerd that he had sayd trouthe / And concluded  
that the same oure they wold yssue out and reyse and  
breke the syege / and forthwith they fowned to armes 30  
wyth shorte counceyll / hyt was not longe after that

they yffued out of the castell / hercules aspyed hem and  
knewe that they cam to the bataylle / he sette hys men in  
araye / After he wente allone to fore vnto his enemyes  
as he that dowted of no thyng / whan Achelous sawe  
5 hym come he began to make a grete fighe / And escryed  
his peple vpon hym / sayyng that hit was he with the  
clubbe that had chassed hym out of calcedonye / and pro-  
mysed grete yestes vnto them that beste furnysshid hym  
with strokes / but whan his folk knewe that hit was  
10 hercules / they made curtoisie eche to other for to go afore  
And tremblyng as the leef on the tree they durst not a-  
bide the weight of the clubbe / but withoute smytyng of  
ony strook torned their backes & fledde vnto the castell .

15 **A**Chelous See yng the poure conduyte of hys  
folke And the drede and feer that they had of  
hercules / wende he shold haue deyed for so-  
rowe / wente and entryd agayn wyth them in to the  
castell . And hercules retorned wyth his peple lawgh-  
yng of the poure guydyng of his enemyes / Hercules  
20 began than to thynke on deyanyra . And Achelous be-  
gan to ymagyne how he myghte adommage the calce-  
donyens . he had there oon of hys captayns that sayd  
vnto hym . Syre ye knowe well that your strength  
may not compare vnto the strength of your enemyes /  
25 we ben ten agaynste oon but that may no thyng helpe  
vs . ffor allonly the clubbe of the myghty geant that is  
wyth them is ynowh for to burye vs alle and also  
for to destroye your royame . Confydere ye than syn hit  
is so that open puiffance and playn descouerte strength  
30 at eye may not be vsed at this tyme . hyt is expedyent

to ymagyne some subtylte for to greue the calcedony-  
 ens / and hyt is myn aduys that there shall be maad a  
 grete flamyng light in the see fuche as I shall well de-  
 uyse / that by that moyen they that haue beseged vs may  
 ben deceyuyd lightly . This flamyng light muste be by 5  
 nyght / and hit shall be grete and Inpetuous we shall  
 make hit secretly / anone as oure enemyes shall see hit  
 they shall lepe oute of their tentes . and they shall goo  
 vnto the see for to see that meruaille / paraenture with  
 oute ony armes / ffor they drede ne fere vs not . And than 10  
 we shall spryng on them and shall fynde them disgarn-  
 nysshid and vnpurueyed of theyr armes . and conse-  
 quently hyt may ensiewe that of them alle we shall  
 make a notable delyuerance &c : .

**W**Han Achelous herd this counceyll / hyt semed 15  
 to hym good / and wolde that hit were put in  
 effecte in fuche wyse as he had deuysed . The de-  
 uyser dide do make an honderd torches . whiche were  
 achyeuyd in fyften dayes / Duryng thyse fyften dayes  
 hercules assaylled many tymes the castell . where ache- 20  
 lous was in / but he myght neuer do no thyng therto  
 ffor the fortresse stode vpon the see and in a stronge con-  
 tree / & myght not be goten by assault / And achelous  
 myght haue no focours fro no parte / ffor betwene this  
 castell and Achaye was a grete contrey / whan the fyf- 25  
 ten dayes were passid and the torches were maad /  
 on a night whan hit was paisible of wynd & of storme  
 They that conduyted the torches yssued out of the cas-  
 tell four of them vnto the hauen wher as was left but  
 oon lityl boot whiche was a ground . and had not in 30  
 longe tyme afore be put to the see / And yf ye demande

where the shippes were become that Achelous brought  
to this poort / I faye yow that hercules had do take them  
and sente hem in to the see / to thentent that Achelous  
shold not ascape hym ner take away the shippys by  
5 nyght / The Achayens than comen to this lityll boot ly-  
yng on the ground . dide so moche that they brought hit  
a flote on the see also secretly as they coude . and entrid  
therin with all / that to them was necessarye / And the  
kyng Achelous putte hym self in a buffhement with a  
10 thousand of his men In a place nyghe where as hym sem-  
med that the calcedonyens wold goo out for to see the  
lyght that shold be made . Than whan they that were  
in þ<sup>e</sup> see knewe that hit was tyme to lighte their torches  
they sette them a fire / And sette them round a bouthe  
15 maste where in were made as many hooles as were tor-  
ches / And so as they had ymagyned they dyde / Anone  
the knyghtes that kepte the wacche of the Oost of her-  
cules sawe hit . And all fore ameruaylled of this light  
awooke hercules and his felawes . and shewed them  
20 the light and clerte &c : .

**A** None as hercules sawe the resplendiffour of  
the torches / he wold knowe what hit was /  
And than he approched the ryue of the see & his  
felawship with hym . he had not ben longe there / whan  
25 the kyng Achelous dide do lyghte an honderd torches  
that he had pourueyed . and after he sprange out of his  
enbuffhement wyth his thousand men / and ran vpon  
hercules and assailed hym & all his men fierfly / But  
whan hercules sawe them discourere / he sette his peple in  
30 ordenance the beste wise he might . by the light of the ster-  
res / and receyuid his enemies frely wherof began a right

dolorous bataill / ffor that oon smote on that other right  
felonfly / and ther were many wounded and deed / the  
scarmouffhe was grete / Achelous wende to escar-  
mouffhe / but he was scarmouffhid hym self vnto thef-  
fufion of hys blood / ffor hercules amonge alle other 5  
smote hym on the helme / that he foundrid & gaf hym  
a wounde on his heed that the blood ruffhed out / and  
more ouer he toke hym . and delyuerid hym to twelue  
of his men to kepe / ther were grete Cryes and grete ha-  
bondance of strokes of fwerdes / Than were the torches 10  
quenched and put out by the Inpetuofyte of the fmy-  
tyng on the achayens whyche desired strongly for to  
refcowe their kynge / they abandoned their lyues in the  
heet / But whan their torches were quenched lityll &  
a lityll they began to coole them and wythdrewe them 15  
for they fawe not a drope / whan they were wyth-  
drawen / hercules assemblid his folke and faid to them  
that he wold goo affaye yf he myghte take the caftell  
in this trowble / And that they fhold folowe hym har-  
dily and fierfly / and anone after he fawe his enemyes 20  
retorne vnto the caftell / he ran after and retayned hem  
And putte hym self in the thikkeft of them . and fmyting  
wyth his clubbe on the right fyde and on the lifte fyde  
that he made a right large place and way / and by this  
waye he ladde hys peple vnto the yate of the caftell / 25  
where he entrid with them that fledde / and there maad  
fo grete occyfon of his enemyes that wyth lityll refif-  
tence that fame nyght he putte to deth twelfe honderd  
and the other fledde in to the cyte of patrace fro whens  
they were / In this batayll and in the batayll that had 30  
ben in calcedonye / Alle the men of achaye were flayn /



Referuyd aboute a foure honderd whiche faued them  
by fleeyng / ffor Achelous had taken all his men with  
hym / His contre and hys cyte of patrace was all dest-  
royed / whan hercules had taken the castell After he  
5 wente in to the contre and in to the cyte of patrace / And  
entryng in all places with oute ony resistence / he tran-  
lated this roiaime in to the hand of kyng Oeneus / And  
he abood not longe after that he had subdued this roy-  
ame but he departed & returned in to calcedonie as hasteli  
10 as he myght for to see deyanira / And there he was recey-  
uyd with so grete glorye . Ioye & tryumphe that noman  
can reherce ne write . The poetes escryue & write this con-  
quest that hercules made vpon achelous / ffaynyng that  
Achelous fought first in guyse of a man . and that than  
15 he was vaynquysshid / After he chaungyd hym self in  
guyse of a serpent / this is to vnderstande in subtyllesse  
and in malyce as he dide in assailling hercules by night  
ffinably he fought in the guyse of a booll / And that her-  
cules brak his oon horne / That is to vnderstand that at  
20 the laste Achelous was fiers as a booll / ffor he deyde  
well nyhe for pryde and sorowe that he was taken /  
And that hercules brake hys horne / that is to vnder-  
stande that he brak his royame and destroyed hit : .

¶ How Nessus rauysshid deyanira fro hercules whan  
25 he passid wyth her ouer the ryuer / And howe hercules  
slewe Nessus with an Arowe .

**G** Rete was the ffeste than . that the kyng Oene-  
us maad for the victoryes that hercules had a-  
cheyeuoyd vpon kyng Achelous / ffor he doub-  
30 ted hym passyng fore Hercules at hys comyng presen-  
ted to hym Achelous and his royame and said to hym

that he shold haue hit with oute ony reffuse / The kyng  
 oeneus sente kyng achelous in exyle / And helde hym  
 self gretly bounden and beholden to hercules whom he  
 honoured meruailously / than hercules toke to his herte  
 agayn the ryght amorows regards . and also in like 5  
 wyfe dide deyanira . she had souerayn Ioye to see hercu-  
 les / and desired none other thyng but for to see hym /  
 what shall I make longe processe / whan hercules had  
 ben there a space / he requyred kyng Oeneus that he  
 wold gyf hym his doughter to wyue / Oeneus wyth 10  
 right good will agreed and acorded to hym / and deya-  
 nyra consented with better wyll / The weddyng was  
 solempnyfed pompeusly and solempnly . and wente  
 to bedde and laye to geder / And sone after whan hercu-  
 les sawe that his fader in lawe had his roame in peas 15  
 he toke leue of the kyng oeneus and departed fro cal-  
 cedonie with deyanira and his peple for to goo by lande  
 in to his royaume of yconye / hercules had allwey in his  
 Iourney deyanira by hym . he louyd her fore and had  
 grete solas in her beaute / and yf he had not studied with 20  
 athlas / he could not haue absteyned hym for to beholde  
 her beaute / In passyng the tyme plefauntly in the ma-  
 nyer that folke do that ben newe maryed . hercules Iour-  
 neyed so ferre that he cam to a quarter of theffaylle /  
 where as the ryuer of hebenus renneth / and arryued on 25  
 this ryuer / whiche was depe and brood rennyng In-  
 petuouusly . and had nether brigge ne plancke to passe  
 ouer / But there was a centaure named Nessus that  
 practyqued there his lyf by the mene of a lityll boot In  
 the whiche he lad the peple ouer the ryuer &c : . 30

**W**Han hercules had founde this passager Nessus

he cam to hym and demaunded hym how he and hys  
folke myght passe the Ryuer / Nessus that knewe her-  
cules syn the tyme that he had vaynquyffhyd his fe-  
lawis at the weddyng of pyrothus Answerd to hym  
5 that he myght not passe the ryuer but by his lityll boot  
And yf he wold passe / he wold wyth a good will  
do hym the pleasir to fette hym ouer / Hercules thanked  
nessus / And for as moche as he sawe that the boote  
was but lityll And that the tyme was disposed to  
10 rayne / he wold that deyanyra and her damoyfelles  
shold passe fyrst / Deyanyra and her maydens entryd  
in to the boote / whan they were therin / Nessus rowed  
And in the rowyng he behelde deyanyra / And he sawe  
her so moche that her beawte deceyuid hym . ffor as sone  
15 as he was come ouer on that other syde / he toke deyany-  
ra / and sayd that she shold be his wyf / And than in  
the rauyffhyng of her he toke her on hys sholders and  
bare her a way / wherfore deyanyra & her damoyfelles  
made grete cryes / And hercules feeyng that the olde ge-  
20 ant bare away deyanira . whiche he wold resiste to his  
power / bende his bowe and shotte an arowe vpon the  
geant with so grete myght and connyng / that he smote  
hym on the ryght syde vnto the herte . And gaf hym the  
dethes wounde : Thee bowe of hercules was so grete  
25 and stronge that no man coude bende hyt but hym self /  
how be hyt that nessus by hys wounde that hercules  
gaf hym began to fele thappchyng of the deth & to suffre  
sharp anguiffh / all way he ran a grete while after vnto  
a valeye . where he ouerthrewe . and confidering that his  
30 lyf had no rescows / he emploied þ<sup>e</sup> ende of his lyf to yma-  
gine how he might do displaifir to hercules / & remembrid

that he had terryble poyfen vpon hym & mortall / And  
fayd to deyanyra by grete malyce / Lady the loue of  
yow hath caufed me to refseyue the deth / whyche me  
difplefeth not fo fore / as doth that cruel hercules shall  
reioyffe yow / whyche are worthy to haue a worthy 5  
man / hercules is no trewe hufbonde / but the vntrewest  
to his wyf that euer was / and for as moche as I haue  
fynguler pyte of yow / and that your beaulte conftroy-  
neth me to do yow pleafyr / I fhall gyue yow here a pre-  
cious thyng / and hauyng fuche vertu / that yf ye boyll 10  
hit with oon of the fhertes of hercules with the blood  
that renneth out of my wounde / and yf than ye gyue  
the fherte to hercules and that he were hit / he fhall ne-  
uer after loue other woman ner lady but yow : : .

**A**nd with thife wordes the geant toke the poifon 15  
and temprid hyt wyth his blood and wonde  
hit in a lynnyn cloth and gaf hyt to deyanyra /  
The folifh deyanyra adiouftyng credence to the geant  
toke the poyfon / the geant charged her that no man  
fhould towche hit bare / fayng that than hit fhould lofe 20  
his vertu after the towchyng . and with that he gaf vp  
his gofte and dyed pytoufly / And deyanyra afcapyd  
fro his handes . pourpofyng that fhe wold kepe that  
poyfon fecretly at alaenture for to helpe her felf / yf hit  
were nede / In the mene whyle that thefe thynges befell 25  
betwene deyanyra and the geant / hercules was not  
at hertes eafe for deyanyra / he was in grete dystrefse  
whan he fawe neffus bere away his wyf / Affone as  
he had smyten hym on the right fide with his arowe as  
faid is / he vnclouted and defpoilled hym felf / and cafte 30  
his gowne his harnoys and his clobbe ouer the water

by grete strength And after he sterte in to the water / and  
 swamme ouer vnto that other side / And than as he dide  
 on his arayment agayn / Deyanira acompanied with  
 her damoysselles that folowed her cam agayn to the ry-  
 5 uer garnysshid with the curfid poyson / whan hercules  
 sawe deyanira retorne / he ymagyned anone that he had  
 slayn the geant / And wente ayenst her and demanded  
 where the traytre was / Deyanira answerd not at the  
 fyrst to thys demande / but sayd to hym / Alas my lord  
 10 in what parill haue I ben . what oppression what destruc-  
 cion of Ioye hath deftrayned myn herte / The traches of  
 myn armes where yet is seen the prynte of the handes of  
 the geant shewe in what displaifir I haue been . The cur-  
 fed glouton geant bare me vnto the depthe of a depe va-  
 15 leye . where the deth procedyng of the strook of your  
 arowe made hym to falle down . And he wold neuer  
 late me goo vnto the laste syghe of deth . Certes I haue  
 suffrid a grete Ieoparde / but thankyng be to the goddes /  
 syn I haue found yow agayn . And knowe ye veryly  
 20 that I am auenged of myn enemye . whom I haue seen  
 deye miserably / wherof I am all reioyed & glad agayn : .

¶ How hercules fought agaynst the serpent of palu  
 of lerne and slewe hym &c : .

25 **D**Eyanira & hercules kyssid eche other by right  
 grete loue / After hercules wente in to the place  
 where the geant laye ded . and for as moche as  
 he fond hym priued of his lyf / he lete hym lye there to the  
 bestes & to the birdes and toke his arowe þ<sup>r</sup> laie by hym  
 And thys was the arowe that Achilles was slayn  
 30 with after in y<sup>e</sup> temple of phebus in troie for þ<sup>e</sup> loue of po-  
 lixene / Than hercules & deianira cam agayn to the ryuer &

hercules fette ouer his men and wente fro that place in  
to the Cyte of lerne / The kynge of thys Cyte dide grete  
honour to hercules and receuyd hym as honourably  
as he myght and cowde / Amonge dyuerce deuyses her-  
cules demaunded hym of hys tydynges / the kynge an- 5  
swerd and sayd that he knewe none other / but that  
in a grete palus there dwellyd and abood a monstre  
half man and half serpent that wasted and destroyed  
all his royaume by comun murdre / ffor he said that all  
the men women and Chyldren that thys monstre can 10  
fynde he sleeth hem with his tayll that is enuenymed  
and with his hande armed / he deuoureth and destroy-  
eth them with his teth / and ther escapeth none And so  
hit behoueth that thys contre be deserte / ffor the labou-  
reurs ne marchans dare not go by the contre lasse acom- 15  
panyed than two honderd men / And yf they be lasse  
the monstre assaylleth them and destroyeth them lyke  
as he hath doon many other &c : : .

**H**ercules was passyng glad and Ioyous of  
these tidynges and sayd to the kynge . Syre I 20  
haue labourd yet hederto for the comyn wele of  
many royames / yet haue I the wyll to perseuere and  
to do the werkes of vertu / knowe ye than syn that I am  
here arryued / that I shall do somewhat for the wele of  
this contre / lyke as I haue doon for many other / and I 25  
haue entencion for to putte me in deuoyr to morn on the  
waye toward the monstre / and for to abyde thauen-  
ture for to vaynquyssh the hym or to be vaynquysshid of  
hym / This monstre was called ydre for as moche as  
he dwellyd in the waters / Whan deyanyra herde then- 30  
treprise of hercules that he wold go allone abandonne

hym self in so grete parill she began to wepe & make so  
 grete sorowe / that no man myghte peafe her / ner make  
 her stynte her wepyng / hercules confortd her the beste  
 wyfe he coude / Athlas & philotes confortd her in lyke  
 5 wife . and shewed to her the right hye and glorious  
 dedes of hercules / ffor to gyue her hope in hys aduenture  
 All that myght not helpe ner auaylle / she louyd hercu-  
 les with all her herte wyth all her myght & puyffance  
 She required hym with her eyen charged full of teeres  
 10 that he wold abfteyne hym fro so hye an enterpryse /  
 faying þ<sup>t</sup> hit was no wisedom a man to expose hym self  
 to so euydent terryble daungers / And that the goddes  
 had sente the monstre in to the contre for to corryge and  
 chastyce the peple / Alleway how be hyt that hercules  
 15 was fore ardaüt in the loue of her / yet her teres that she  
 wepte ne her prayers ne her remonfrances myght not  
 caufe hercules to breke his pourpose for to achyeue his  
 aduenture / But on the morn erly adoubyd hym . And  
 departyd fro lerne and toke his way toward the pa-  
 20 lus where as was the monstre : .

**T**Hys palus was longe and thre myle in compaas  
 as the croniques of spayne reherce And all enuyro-  
 ned with fontaynes that sprang out of the hye mon-  
 taynes / In myddis of this palus was a grete lake or  
 25 ponde / wherin dwellyd the ydre on drye lande / whan  
 than hercules was come to this palus / The ydre þ<sup>t</sup> neuer  
 slepte wyth bothe eyen and that had alewey the nekke  
 stracchid on hihe & the eeres open . had anone aspied hym  
 and sodainli cam ayenst hym rennyng by a grete radeure  
 30 hercules abode whan he aspyed the meruailous monstre

and had grete playfir to see hym . he was ten foote of  
 heyghte / and as longe a taylle / he was fowle & couerd  
 with heer / he had the body armed / & in his right hande  
 helde a naked glayue / and in the lyfte hand he bare a  
 shelde / hercules thus beholdyng hym suffryd hym to 5  
 come to hym . Than the monstre spack to hym and sayd  
 Poure geant whyder goste thou · behold this glayue  
 sharp on bothe sydes cuttyng / yet was ther neuer man  
 that herde me speke / but he dyed by the poynt of thys  
 glayue / ffor as moche as I am the moſte wyſe creature 10  
 that euer nature maad . and that I am acustomed to  
 make a queſtyon to ſuche men as I fynde / and them deſ-  
 troye yf they can not anſwer therto . and for as moche  
 as I ne fynde in my royame / but peple as beſtes & with  
 oute entendement / I haue therfore deſtroyed their blood 15  
 and ſo ſhall I do thyn yf thou canſte not aſſoylle or ſo-  
 phyme that I ſhal make to the . O thou man ſerpentyne  
 ſayd hercules / thyn eloquence . thy prudence . thy cruell  
 glayue foule and pollute of infinytes homycides make  
 me no thyng abaiffhed ne diſcorage me / I ſeke the and 20  
 am comen hether for to deſtroye the . And I ſhall not  
 aſſaylle oonly oon of thy ſophymes / but as many as  
 thou canſt thynke / and wole well that thou knowe  
 that yf by force of thy ſophymes and fallacious argu-  
 mentes thou make me Innocent / I ſhall doo vnto the 25  
 lyke as thou woldeſt do to me / and yf hit happe that thy  
 ſcyence may not ouercome me / yet woll I well that  
 thou defende the with armes . and that thou kepe thy lyf  
 as well as thou canſt &c : : .

**W**yth theſe wordes the monſtre maad vnto hercules 30  
 ſeuē ſophymes oon after an other ſo fallacio<sup>9</sup> and



so subtyll / that whan hercules had gyuen solucion to  
 oon / the monstre replyed by feuen argumentes / All way  
 hercules that was full of philosophie and expert in all  
 scyence . Anwerd so solempnly to all his fallacious  
 5 argumentes that he surmoüted hym / And for this cause  
 the poetes fayne that this ydre had feuen heedes as hyt  
 appereth in the first tragedye of seneca / and sayen that  
 whan hercules had smiten of oon of his heedes . that feuen  
 other heedes cam agayn in the same place / In the ende than  
 10 for to pourfiewe this matere whan hercules had so de-  
 puted ayenst the serpent that he yelded hym to hercules  
 in suche wyfe as he wist not what to faye / than hercu-  
 les sayd to hym : Serpent Inhumayn we haue fough-  
 ten longe ynowh wyth the tonge / Take thy glayue I  
 15 may no lenger wythholde my hand for smytyng vpon  
 the And assaye yf thou art as subtyll in armes as thou  
 arte subtyll in langage . Poure fooll said the serpente  
 whiche was full of pryde / knowest not thou that by  
 my partie serpentyne I haue effected all this contre / and  
 20 I shall this day drynke thy blood and deuoure thy bo-  
 dy wherfore make good wacche / and kepe the well :

**W**ith oute more wordes hercules enhaunfed hys  
 glayue for to haue smyten hys aduerfarye . but  
 he coude not so fore haste hym but the serpent  
 25 gaf hym fyrste two stokes oon wyth hys glayue and  
 that other wyth his tayll / wherwith he had almoste  
 smyten hym down to the ground / Alleway hercules a-  
 bode standing / And with his swerd that he had enhaun-  
 ced he smote the monstre vpon þ<sup>e</sup> helme by suche strength  
 30 that he all to frusshed the helme & made hym a wounde

in his heed · of this strook that the serpente felte he was  
full of furour and with his glayue smote hercules the  
second tyme vpon the helme with so grete myght that  
the sparklis & the fyre flewe out / And the helme was  
broken / Hercules that neuer to fore had receyuyd so 5  
grete a strook / escryed hym that he wold auenge hit /  
And smote hym right yroufly / their strokes were grete  
and mortell / they smote eche other longe / and they  
were bothe two of grete corage / But whan fortune  
had ynowh cheriffhid hem bothe / she torned ayenst 10  
the serpent so certainly / that after many strokes hercu-  
les smote his trenchyng sward wyth in the helme in to  
his heed and bare hym doun dede vnto the erthe ·

**H**ercules had grete ioye whan he sawe the mon-  
stre put to vttrance / he wente for to secche the 15  
kinge of lerne / deyanira / & his folke & brought  
hem for to see this monstre / whan he had shewid hem  
the monstre / he made a grete fyre / and lyghte hit / and  
made sacrefyse vnto the goddes · And by the fyre he con-  
sumed the monstre ydre / werfore there were gyuen to 20  
hym grete and right hyghe louynges & thankynges ·  
And was brought in to the cyte of lerne wyth grete  
glorye of ladyes & of damoyfelles · whiche conueyed  
hym vnto the kynges palays syngyng melodyously ·  
Deyanyra than loyed gretly in the tryumphant victo- 25  
rie · of her noble husbonde · whan hercules had abiden  
there a while / he departed & wente to athenes where  
theseus receyuid hym gloriously · Than hercules and  
Athlas helde skole in athenes / for as moche as they  
of athenes were quyk of engyne and of witte / and gaf 30  
hem all to lerne science & there they were a grete while

Introdufying & enformyng them of Athenes in phylo-  
fophie & in aftronomye . And fingulerly In aftronomye  
hercules prouffited in fuche wyfe / that the eftudyents  
fayd that he fuffeyned & bare the heuen on his fholders  
5 O noble and vertuous man / whan he had vaqued there  
and ftudied fo longe that his doctryne had gyuen light  
vnto the athenyenfes / he departid fro thens with grete  
bemenyng and brought his wyf vnto the cyte of lycye  
And than he was fo gretly renommed / that fro all the  
10 royames of grece there cam daily to hym noble men and  
other / for to prouffite in vertue . in nobleffe . in honour  
in armes . in phylofophie . in aftronomye and in alle  
other perfeccion &c : .

¶ How hercules wente in to fpaigne / & how he fought  
15 in the fee ayenft kyng Gerion & vaynquiffhid hym and  
how he toke the cyte of megeda and entrid therin : .

I N the tyme that hercules flouryffhed in vertue  
And that his name was born from royame to  
royame by gloryous renomee / as rehercen the  
20 cronyques of fpaygne . There was a kynge of the cyte  
of megeda that ftandeth vpon the ryuer of Gawdyane  
whyche began to make hys name to haue grete bruyt  
by fo many malefices and tyrannyes that no man coude  
telle the thyerde parte . Thys tyrant had to name Ge-  
25 ryon / He was kynge of Andolofye / and Deftrema-  
dure and alfo of the montaygues of galyce and of por-  
tyngale / The poetes faygnen of thys tyrant that he  
had thre heedes / ffor as moche as he had two brethern  
grete geantes the whiche were all of oon nature and of  
30 oon complexion . And that they were fo vnyed to geder

that alle that / that oon wolde / that other wolde / And  
they were neuer in discord · Geryon was the worste  
of hem alle / he dide do make a temple in the cyte of me-  
gida / and ordeyned there / that alle they that were no-  
ble sholde haue her ymage and sepulture / and that men 5  
shold make there the remembrances of alle the men of  
name / that he shold flee / to the ende that ther shold be a  
memorye of them in tyme comyng / what shall I faie of  
his dedes / he and his brethern tyrannyfed not all only  
vpon the estrangers / but also vpon his neyghbours · 10  
And had pyte on no man In suche wise that they gate  
hem an euyll name · And that the affricquans whom  
they persecuted more than ony other / wente for to com-  
playne to hercules by the comandement of affer / as to  
the fouerayn destroyar of tyrantes and of monstres / 15  
And prayde & requyred hym gretly / that he wolde de-  
lyuere hem of this trybulacion .

**W**Han hercules vnderstood the complaynte of  
the affricans / and was aduertysed of the ty-  
rannyes that geryon and his brethern made / he 20  
enterprysed for to go in esperye / and promysed to the  
affricans that they shold haue right shortly tydynges  
of hym And after axed them of the astate of kynge  
affer / And whan they had told alle that they knewe  
they returned wyth grete Ioye in to theyr contrey · Her- 25  
cules fro than forth on disposed hym for to goo in to  
esperye wherfore his wif deyanira made grete forowe  
The renomee of this vyage was anone spredde in alle  
the contre · In shorte tyme ther cam moo men of armes in  
to lycye for to serue hercules than he sente fore / he was 30  
so good large and wyse · And also so vayllyant and

so free that he gaf all way all his conquestes / wherfore  
euery man wold folowe hym / And good cause why /  
ffor no man folowed hym ne feruyd hym / but that he  
rewarded and amendid hym in all hyghe maner and  
5 facion . whan than his excersite was redy / he toke leue  
of his wyf deyanira / And departed out of the royame  
of licye . Many a teer was maad at his departyng as  
well of deyanira as of hys escolyers that lerned of  
hym / Theseus and hispan . Athlas and phylotes were  
10 with hym . Duryng this vyage / he studyed ofte tymes  
wyth Athlas / And was neuer ydle / with oute ony  
aduenture that ought to be remembrid / he aryued in Af-  
frycque / where he fonde affer / whyche receyuyd hym  
worshipfully / fro Affrycque hercules passid by the  
15 strayt of gybaltar / And wente in to gades . that now  
we calle gallyce And peplid the contre . for as moche  
as he fonde there good lande / and delyueryd this peple  
for to gouerne vnto a noble man named phylistenes  
This philistenes as bochace reherceth in the genelagie of  
20 goddes was sone of phenys kynge of phenyce / And  
this phenys was sone of kynge Agenor sone of kynge  
belus / Philistenes than regned in galyce . and was after  
named the preest of hercules / for as moche as whan her-  
cules had vaynquysshid the tyrants of esperye . he foun-  
25 ded there a temple whyche he helde after in grete reue-  
rence / Alleway as hercules peupled and enhabited this  
land . he dide do make pylers or colompnes hyghe and  
meruayllously grete . And sette them vpon the see / And  
vpon euery pilar or columpne he did do make an ymage  
30 of hard stoon in the semblance and likenes of a knyght  
lyke vnto hercules alle clad wyth the skyn of a lyon

And there was oon of the ymages that helde a table  
wherin was wreton wyth letters of gold / Passe no  
further for to seke lande / ne goo for to conquere further  
ony Royames in the weste / ffor thou shall fynde no  
more lande &c :

**T**He noble hercules wente than in to the contre /  
where as stondeth now the Cyte of Seuyle  
whiche was not than founded / And fonde by  
hys scyence that there shold be founded a cyte of grete  
renome / wherfore in memorye therof he edefyed in that  
place a pilar of hard stoness / and thervpon sette an yma-  
ge holding in his hand wreton that said / that ther shold  
be maad oon of the grettest cytees of the world / Thys  
lande of galyse apperteyned to geryon / But than whan  
hercules had maad this pilar aboue sayd and sette hyt  
where as now stondeth Seuyle / he had grete will for  
to begynne to bylde the Cyte / ffor the contrey was pas-  
fying good and comodious / But Athlas by the scyence  
of Astronome councellid hym contrarye / shewyng  
hym by certayne signes that hit was destyne that ano-  
ther shold make the Cyte / And therefore nyghe the py-  
lar / he dide do make a columpne of whyte marble / vpon  
whiche stode the ymage of hercules grete and riche / that  
helde oon hand ayenst the Oryent wherin was wreton  
here hath ben hercules / And with the other hand he she-  
wid the wrytyng that . that other ymage helde : .

**T**Hese thynges accompliffhid hercules departed  
fro thens / And leste to enhabyte and kepe the  
contre eyghte honderd men of his of the Contrey  
of sithye that were stronge and experte in armes / And  
wyth good wylle abood there for the bounte of the

contre . Than wente hercules by the ryuage of the see in  
to the lafte and furthermeft partye of Europe And fay-  
lid fo ferre that he entrid in to the Ryuer of guadiana  
where as the terant gerion dwelde and abode in the cyte  
5 of megida / The fame tyme that hercules entrid in to the  
ryuere . Geryon wente vp in to the toppe of an hyghe  
tour where he myght see all aboute the contre for to see  
yf ony perfone cam . vpon whom he myghte excersite his  
tyrannye . He had not ben longe there whan he behelde  
10 vpon the ryuer and fawe the armee of hercules . And  
feeyng this armee / he had grete Ioye . ffor hym femed  
well that in all hafte he fhold fubdue and ouercome  
hem . With oute other delay he affemblid his complyces  
and fowned to armes / In a lityll while all his men  
15 were redy and garnyffhid with their armes cam vnto  
hym for to knowe what he wolde / Gerion was than  
all armed . and redy for to go & entre in to the batayll  
He declared to his peple his entenciōn . after he entrid in  
to his galeyas as hafte as he myght / and wente fro me-  
20 gida en approchyng the grekes / Thus rowyng forth hit  
happend hym that he mette a litill boot / And fro as ferre  
as he fawe hit come / he wente ayenft hit & arefted hit .  
In this boot were no moo but two maryners & hyspan  
Gerion than callid hifpan & demanded hym whyder he  
25 wente & what he was / Certes fure answerd hifpan I am  
a greek / and haue entencōn to go vnto þ<sup>e</sup> kyng gerion / that  
is now in his cyte of megida for to accompliffh a meff-  
fage that I am charged with / Meffanger faid the kyng  
yf ye feke gerion / ye nede for to go no further forth . ffor  
30 I am he to whome ye fpeke vnto . Syre answerd hif-  
pan fyn þ<sup>t</sup> ye be he to whom my meffage apperteyneth / I

lete yow haue knowleche and were / in the name of the  
vertuous hercules that he is enemye of your vices / And  
for to correcte your grete and right abhomynable tref-  
paces and synnes / he is descended in to your domynacōn  
Messanger answerd geryon / how is hercules so pre- 5  
sumptuous as for to come vpon me for to entende to cor-  
recte my vices / he wote lytyll with whom he hath to  
doo / Goo to hym and telle hym / that he shall not so late  
fynde me / but that hit shall be to soone for his helthe /  
And that I shall sefte hym in suche wyse er he escape 10  
me / as I haue ben accustomed to sefte strangers : .

**H**yspan departed wyth these wordes . and retor-  
ned vnto hercules also hastely as he myght / and  
tolde to hym word for word that geryon had  
sayd to hym / and more ouer he said that he shold mete 15  
with hym right soone all prest and redy for to begynne  
the batayll / whan hyspan had furnysshid his message  
The galeyces of kynge geryon apperid and were seen fro  
ferre / Hercules and the grekes had grete Ioye and began  
a right grete shoutyng in fownyng trompettes . busines 20  
and tabours / Geryon and his folke feeyng & heeryng  
their enemyes / semblably they began to shoute and to  
make a meruaylous bruyt / The Ayer was than smyten  
with a right grete and a Ioyous noyse / In this bruyt &  
in this noyse . The two Oostes approched eche other / 25  
At the approchyng were not spared dartes ne rounde  
stones ne arowes. They of esperye had abondance of  
dartes whiche they vsed and caste hem on the grekes as  
hit had ben rayne / The cryes redoublid on that oon syde  
and on that other / ther were many ded and hurte . They 30  
were all men of warre . eche man bare hym vailliantly



And amonge all other hercules hauyng alleway the  
bowe in hand flewe as many of hys enemyes as he  
shotte arowes . The shotte dured longe / Whan hit fail-  
led they fought hand on hand Tho began the bataill ey-  
5 gre and hard / Gerion shewid hym self a man . boystous  
and well experte in armes & put to deth many grekes  
but ayenst oon that he flewe hercules flewe ten of the  
esperyens &c : .

**A**T the Ioynyng that the galeyes made ther were  
many hurte & strokes gyuen / hercules toke his  
10 clubbe . and in smytyng one of the galeyes / that  
wende to haue hurtlid & borded hys . he smote with so  
grete force . that he made hit to foundre and that the wa-  
tre cam In sodaynly that the most part of them that were  
15 in that galeye were drowned & periffhid with oute  
strook smytyng . After this hercules came to another ga-  
leye . and there dide he meruaylles of armes Alle they  
that he raught with his clubbe were ded or fore hurte /  
Some he smote the braynes out of the heed . And other  
20 he brack legges & armes . hyt femed the thondre with  
hym/he dide so moche that eche man fledde fro hym . and  
there was no man that withstode hym ner durst abyde  
hym : Whan he sawe this he putte hym furth to serche  
the grete affrayes / He leep fro galeye to galeye / And  
25 made so grete occisions . that his peple by his good en-  
sample habounded in valour of corage & of puyffance /  
And the esperyens dymynuffhed & lassed And also  
they had so moche damage . that all thyng wente aga-  
ynst them And than gerion consideryng . that he myght  
30 not but lose and that fortune was enemye vnto hym  
He sowned the retrayte / And so leste the batayll .

¶ Howe gerion assaylled hercules the fecond tyme to fore megida . and how hercules flewe his brethern and vaynquysshid his bataylles / And constraynd geryon to flee &c :

**W**Han hercules sawe hys enemyes attende to withdrawe hem / he fowned the retrayte also for as moche as hit was nyghe euen And also for as moche as he had enclosed the galeyes of geryon in suche wyse·as they myghte not retorne to his Cyte with oute passyng by hym / whan the two oostes were withdrawen . Geryon in the derkeft of alle the nyght shipped and wente in to the see / And wente to the cyte of valeryte wherof oon of hys brethern was kynge / And put hym there in faeste / in entencion to make the gretteft armee that he cowde for to come vpon hercules Hercules after the retrayte he ankred his galeyes vpon the ryuer of gaudiana / And passed there that nyght / On the morn whan he sawe that gerion and hys folk were fledd / & were not vpon the see with in kennyng he rowed vp vnto the Cyte of megida . There he toke lande and assayllid fierly the cyte / Thassault was aygre and sharpe / And deffended hem well the megydains / but they were so disgarnysshid of men of warre that they myght not holde hit / but opend the toun to the grekes and yelded hem all in the will of hercules . Thus was hercules lord and maistre of the pryncipall cyte that gerion had / he entrid in to hit and the grekes with hym . There had they good dayes / the Cyte was well garnysshid wyth vytayll Syn they departed out of grece . they fonde nowhere so good fortune / What shall I saie / hercules helde hym there a space of tyme serching

in what place he might fynde gerion / During this tyme  
he wente vnto the temple . for to thanke the goddes / In  
this temple were many sepultures garnysshid of right  
meruayllous historyes . Amonge alle other ther was  
5 oon passyng riche / ffor the remembrance of gerion was  
there . as of a kyng of fyn gold and was enuyroned  
with . xxx . kynges whos heedes were smyten of . Her-  
cules abode at this sepulture and demanded of the cyte-  
zeyns wherof seruyd the statues and ymages so ryche  
10 A Cytezeyn said to hym that there were the sepultures  
of the noble men of their royaume . And that the kyng ge-  
rion had brought vp that custome to make these sepul-  
cres . for to haue remembrance of them that were vaylli-  
ant in armes . fforthermore said that same man as sone  
15 as in thys contre a man putte ony noble man to deth /  
Than he doth do make a remembrance of that dede man  
on hys sepulture : And for as moche as kyng geryon  
in hys tyme hath flayn thretty kynges . he hath do make  
thys sepulture that ye see in entencion to be buryed here  
20 in the ende of hys dayes / Whan hercules had herd this  
that the Cytezeyn sayde / he answerd that he helde hym  
self happy . that he had so escaped the swerd of suche  
a tyrant . that had putte so many kynges to deth / And  
maad hys Orysoūs and hys prayers vnto the goddes  
25 After thys he retorned to the palays / And there cam  
vnto hym the messanger of kyng geryon / that by  
the Auctoryte and power of his Maystre comanded  
hym to voyde the cyte and the royaume . or ellis to make  
good wacche / Hercules answerd that he was entrid  
30 in to the royaume and also in to the Cyte wyth strength  
of Armes . And that he wold not goo oute therof

vnto the tyme that oon had taken from hym his swerd  
and armes by force of Armes / or vnto the tyme that  
he had put all the contre in his obeysfance .

**T**He messanger returned fro megida with this  
answer vnto gerion . And tolde hym that hercu- 5  
les had answerd to hym / Geryon was wyth  
his two brethern / they toke the wordes of hercules in-  
paciently / And sware that they wold auenge hem / ffor  
to make short werke they wente to the see with a right  
grete excerfite of men of armes they rowed and sayl- 10  
led with all the strength they myght vnto megida / the  
wynde and fortune suffrid them in fewe daies to come  
and arryue at the porte of megida / And hercules that  
was aduertysed of their comyng suffrid them to take  
lande / And let hem reste that day that they cam there / 15  
they were well fyfty thousand men / That tyme that  
they cam a lande hit was late / Whan they sawe that the  
grekes made no defence at their landing / they said oon to  
an other that they durste not come & assaylle hem / And  
wenyng all to haue wonne of auantage / And thervp- 20  
on concluded that on the morn they wolde assaylle the  
cyte right erly Vpon this conclusion gerion and his bre-  
thern pourueyed them of thynges apperteynyng to the  
assault / And manassed gretly hercules and the grekes  
for to sle them villaynfly / Hercules & his grekes were 25  
than in megida thynkyng on theyr thynges / not only in  
the entencon for to deffende them fro their enemyes / but  
for to yssue oute the next day folowyng and for to as-  
saylle hem by bataill as sone as the nyght were passed  
Than a lityll to fore the sonne ryfyng on the morn / her- 30  
cules made two batailles / In the first he put a thousand

fightyng men And enterprised to conduyte hem . In the  
seconde he put the residue of his armee And made these<sup>9</sup>  
capitayne of them After this whan he had right well  
renged his peple and sette hem in right good ordeñnce  
5 He amonested hem to do well her deuoyr / And had en-  
tencion to saye hem certayn thynges . but he myght not  
furnysshē hem / ffor that same tyme gerion & his brethern  
and their folk made their Approchis to assaille the cyte  
And maad so grete a bruyt and noyse that all aboute  
10 hit redounded &c .

**W**Han hercules herd this bruyt / he dide do opene  
the yate . for to beholde & see what newe thyng  
was there . And at þ<sup>e</sup> yssue out he sawe his ene-  
mies that hasted hem to come vnto the murail & wallis  
15 with ladders & other habillemes propyce & necessarie  
to make an assaulte / Than he began to lawhe in hym self  
And badd his men to folowe hym / & he wente alway  
forth for to begynne the scarmuffhe And assone as the  
porter had open the yates / Hercules marched vnto the  
20 heferiens bringyng his clubbe with him . Gerion sawe  
hercules come fro ferre / he knewe hym by his skyn of the  
lyon & by his clubbe / And shewid hym to his brethern .  
that fore meruailled of hym be cause he cam allone vpon  
hem . so here is oure mortall aduerfarie said gerion . he is  
25 full of ouer moche pride / and lityll fetteth by vs . Late  
vs assaylle hym all thre & destroye hym hit is tyme / alle  
the gold of the world shall not saue hym / Hercules  
wyth these wordes cam so nyghe the thre geantes / that  
he myght well speke vnto them : And escryed them  
30 and said . ye euill tyrantes . leye down your engyns apper-  
teynyng to assault / hit is now no time to assaill y<sup>e</sup> cyte

but hit behoueth yow to dispose yow to entre into ba-  
 tayll / The bataill is redy / begynne at me and I at yow  
 And late vs fighte to geder tyll moo come / wyth thys  
 wordes he enhaunfed his clubbe . and discharged the  
 stroke so fore vpon oon of the thre brethern that caste his 5  
 shelde to fore the strook / that all astroyed he bare hym  
 to the erthe / Whan gerion and his other brother sawe  
 her broder so born down and beten . they smote with their  
 glayues vpon hercules by grete maltalent And so en-  
 ployed her strength that they brake parte of his armes 10  
 with these two strokes of the glayues hercules recey-  
 uyd more than an honderd dartes vpon his body / how  
 be hit the glayues ne the dartes were not so hard tem-  
 prid that they myghte perce . entre ne hurte the armes  
 of hercules / Ne hercules lefte not to werke wyth hys 15  
 clubbe / but he lyfte hit vpon heghte at that tyme And  
 employed hit vpon the second broder of gerion so acer-  
 taynly that comyng down fro the coppe of the helme / he  
 all to fruffhid and brusid hym . and smote hym down to  
 the ground right as an hard and grete roche had falle 20  
 on his heed &c .

**G**Erion was all affrayed for to see so grete a  
 strook / with a wood . yrous and fiers herte / he  
 ascryed vpon hercules And gaf hym so grete a  
 strook vpon his helme with his swerde . that he maad 25  
 the fire sprynge out / but the helme was so hard that the  
 swerd might not entre / Than was hercules enuyroned  
 with his enemyes / he was smyten in many a place vp-  
 on his body / the hisperiens desired fore to see her swerdes  
 and glayues reed with the blood of hercules / but hercu- 30  
 les put hym to defence / Ioyous of that he myght employe

his strength vpon them And when he proued hym thus  
vpon oon and other / And wold suffre none come nere /  
than his Arme and Clubbe myght a reche / And that  
his enemyes more and more cam about hym . Malion  
5 that was neuewe of vlixes yffued out of megida with  
the thousand men of the batayll of hercules / And se-  
eyng so grete a peple aboute hercules and were adcerte-  
ned that he fought there . He and his peple adreffid  
them thederward in bryngyng so grete a bruyt and set-  
10 tyng on so vaylliantly . that in brekyng down all a fore  
them . cam & fonde hercules that he had slayn moo than  
fixe honderd of his enemyes / And that he marched vp-  
on non other thyng . They that bare ladders and other  
engyns were constrained to caste hem down to þ<sup>e</sup> ground  
15 and to goo to the bataille . the batyll was there felon-  
nous and hard / And there were knyghtes ynowhe  
slayn . Gerion prouyd hym self terribly . his broder that  
was first beten . after that he was born out of the prees  
cam vnto the felde agayn . And in his comyng he maad  
20 a grete place amonge the grekes . he was stronge and  
puyffant / And bare a right heuy guyfarme that the  
cuttyng was thre grete foot longe / He dide meruaylles  
with this guyfarme . And bete down so many of the gre-  
kes . that the noyse aroofe gretly aboute hym . And thys  
25 noyse flewe to the eeres of hercules . Than leste hercules  
them that he fought with . And drewe vnto the noyse  
that proceded by cause of the geant / Assone as he sawe  
the geant / that dyde wyth the grekes as he wolde / He  
was not well contente with that guyfarme . And he  
30 enhaunfed his clubbe & smote the geant vpon the sholdre  
employng his strength in suche manyere / that þ<sup>e</sup> sholdre &

the fyde he all to brake & bare hym down to the ground  
not fully ded . but in worfe estate than ded / for he might  
not releue hym . And muste nedes dye vnder the feet of  
the men of armes right myserably :

**A**T this tyme Theseus and hispane with the resi- 5  
due of the grekes cam vnto the bataill right Io-  
yously / they fonde their enemies with oute arai-  
and withoute conduyte / they fourroyed amonges them  
playnly / they slewe so many that alle the place was  
couuerte / Hispan and theseus ceste the heedes of many 10  
knyghtes vnto the teth / they were right expert in the feet  
of armes / At their comyng they maad their enemies to  
recule / And wan vpon them with so good fortune / that  
by their cause and well doyng / Gerion loste moo than  
thertty thousand men . In short tyme the batayll was 15  
fuche a boute hercules / that hys enemies wyfte neuer  
where to saue them . And that gerion aduertysed of the  
deth of the second broder / tornd the back and flewe  
vnto the see / blowyng his horne / whan the hisperyens  
herde the horne / anone they entended sodaynly to putte 20  
hem to flight / they that might saue them self sauid them  
with oute delaye Hercules theseus and hispan wyth a-  
boute twelue honderd grekys folowyd them swyftly  
they entrid into some of their shippes . and poursiewed  
gerion . but they had not maryners so redy as the other 25  
had / wherfore they were a lityll taryed / how be hit as  
ferre as they myght see hercules poursiewid hem only  
with his twelue honderd men .

**¶** How hercules poursiewyd geryon . And how he  
wente and vaynquysshid hym . and put hym to the deth 30  
at the poort of the Corongne .



**T**Hus ffinyfhid the batayll for this day to the  
 grete damage & dishonour of gerion And all to  
 the honour and prouffit of hercules . Malion  
 abode in megida by thordenance of hercules for to kepe  
 5 the grekes that abood there and for to take the despoill  
 of their enemyes / Hercules on that other fide faillid and  
 rowed after gerion . Gerion perceyuyd hym and was  
 fore a ferd & fledd all that euer he myght / The flight  
 dured thre daies / Gerion had good maryners / they kepte  
 10 hem foueraynly fro the abordyng on the fhippe of hercu-  
 les / And they fayllid by the fee mediterrane fro ryuage  
 to ryuage / fro flood to flood . now afore & now behinde  
 But the ende was fuche that on the fourthe day . they  
 were conftreyned to abyde hercules at the bataill vp-  
 15 on the fee. or defcende to lande at the Courongne in galyce  
 . For to flee alway the deth wherof they were in doubtte  
 they lefte the fee and toke the lande at a porte ymage-  
 nyng that they fhould well deffende hem ayenft hercules  
 ffor they were ten ayenft oon . Anone as they had take  
 20 land at the poort of the Curongne / they toke & renged  
 hem aboute the poort for to defende the ryuage / whiche  
 was ftronge for to take / And than gerion warned his  
 men fayyng / fo nowe is here the oure or the day that we  
 muſte dye or ouercome oure enemyes . fortune hath don  
 25 to vs the worſte ſhe can . She was wonte to make  
 all eſtrangers to tremble to fore oure glayues . Now  
 ſhe maketh vs to tremble to fore a right litill nombre of  
 peple / Alas what ſhame is this / Trewly the ſhame is  
 grete & we ought to haue right grete reproofe fo to doo/ſyn  
 30 we be in this poynnt ther is no way but for to auenge this  
 ſhame / yf we auenge vs at this tyme / we ſhall recouere

our worship and honour / In our feet lieth right good  
hoope . for fortune hath brought vs in to a right good  
poort / and me semeth that she wole reyse vs a gayn &  
make vs vayncuers of our aduerfaries / late vs now  
defende the poort . Auenge we our blood . auenge we 5  
our sorowe . auenge we our damage / hit muste nedes  
be doon &c : .

**I**N the mene while that gerion encoraged thus  
his folke . Hercules and his felawship rowed  
so nyghe the poort . that they were come to stro- 10  
kes smytyng . The hisperiens caste vpon hercules than  
round stones . dartes with sharp yrons on the ende . spe-  
res and glayues . Agaynst thys the grekes toke theyr  
sheldes and couerd them and put hem in deuoyr for to  
wynne the poort . But the castyng of the hisperyens 15  
was so mortall . that hit constrayned their enemyes to  
abyde and not to aproche the poort . They had at this  
poort grete habondance of stones . The hisperiens kepte  
well the entree more than thre oures that the grekes  
coude fynde no way ne facion to remedye hit / At the 20  
ende of thre oures hercules right forofull to see his men  
taryed so / he thoughte that he wold entre in to a lityll  
boot . and auenture hym self allone to wynne the poort  
Than he that doubted no strook of ony mortall man en-  
trid in to the lityll boot . And stered hit hym self wyth 25  
helpe of the wynde that he had at hys auantage and  
pullid vp the sayll / And puttyng all in aduenture / as  
faste as he myght he brought the boot vnto the poort  
where he cam by his hardynesse / but this was at fuche  
tyme as he receuyyd moo than a thousand strokes with 30  
stones / And that his sayll that stode ouer ende by force

of the wynde / was smyten full of hooles and the cordes  
broken the maste ouerthrowen . & the boot well nyghe  
fyld with stones / Notwithstandyng all these thynges  
hercules blemysfhid not at all fro his entreprise / he pas-  
5 fed by all the strokes of his enemyes . He dide so mo-  
che that he toke lande And that he put hym amonge the  
hisperiens . and there he began to smyte with his clubbe  
on the right syde and on the lyfte syde endlonge & ouer-  
thwart in fuche habondance of prowesse that alle the  
10 place was reed of their blood & of their braynes / These<sup>9</sup>  
and hispan and fifty of the grekes best armed by the  
example of hercules toke a light boot and aduentured  
hem self to wynne the poort / Hercules was right at  
the mouth of the poort / he sawe theseus come And for  
15 to make hym haue passage he ran hether & theder / And  
dide so grete hurte to the hisperiens / that with oute grete  
daunger / they toke lande and sprange out of the boote .  
Than was thassault hoot and boyllyng . Geryon cam  
to the descence of theseus and well thre honderd of his  
20 men that folowed hym / Alle they smote and leyde vp-  
on the grekes . of the syfty they slewe ten . Whan these<sup>9</sup>  
and hispan sawe that their hertes began to swelle / They  
encoraged hem self And perfid thassamble of geryon :  
Ayenst oon man that was slayn of theyres they slewe  
25 fifty of the hesperiens And theer they vsed so her pro-  
wesses / that they dide there the grettest meruaylles of  
the world by armes : .

**G** Eryon deyde for sorowe of that he myght not  
come to hys aboue of the grekes He and hys  
30 men were Aygre as tygres enfamysshid . The  
grekes were ryght ferme and stronge as olyphantes /

Their strokes were grete they ne doubted deth ne swerd  
 but put all in aduerture / The bataill was stronge / the  
 grekes resseyuyd many a wound / Alleway thefeus &  
 hispan by their meruayllous prowesses fauyd them fro  
 the deth / And maad hem passe by the grete prees where 5  
 as was hercules . Hercules that leste not to smyte . had  
 grete gladnesse in hym self whan he sawe thefeus and  
 hispan and their fourty felawis / their comyng coste to  
 gerion the deth of a thousand men and more . ffor hercu- 10  
 les for to encorage his men and for to be to hem an en-  
 sample of well doing / he adiousted to his dedes strength  
 vpon strength and prowesse vpon prowesse confoun-  
 dyng his enemyes so dredfully and terribly / drawyng  
 hem toward the see . that they that sawe hym / wold 15  
 well that they had ben in their moders wombes / And  
 that in fleyng they were in haste destressid they bete eche  
 other in the see / And so they slewe eche other them self  
 Than was gerion smyten to the herte with grete yre med-  
 lid with Inpaciencie / he put hym self in the prees / And  
 smote not only vpon hercules / but vpon the felawis of 20  
 thefeus / he smote the firste vpon the helme that he cleft  
 his hede vnto the teth . After he assaylled another and  
 bare hym to the erthe so astonyed that he wyste neur  
 where he was / Consequently he deliuerid there a right  
 grete assault sodaynly to the grekes . that he dyed hys 25  
 swerd with their blood . and that the grekes were con-  
 strayned to make a right grete crye for to haue socours :

**A**T thys poynte the grekes that were leste in the  
 galeyes / entrid in to the poort & toke land light-  
 ly / Whan than hercules and his folke herd the 30  
 crye that his men made / he ran theder to therescouffe / and

made aboute hem a newe noyse grete and anguyffhous  
Gerion knewe anone that the noyse cam be cause of her-  
cules . ffor he sawe hym come and smyte in the thikkeft  
of the prees / ffor to faue hym self than he toke his folk  
5 and fefted hem in encoragyng and had there fo grete pa-  
yne / that for oon strook that hercules gaf hym with his  
clubbe by auenture / he was conftreyned to departe fro  
the prees . and to withdrawe hym a parte with them  
that were wery / for to take his breth : Gerion brought  
10 to his extremyte . cafte his eyen vpon the medle & fygh-  
tyng & fawe the grekes mounte vpon the porte And ex-  
pofe them vnto the batayll / After he fawe how they  
brought many of his men to vttrance . and þ<sup>t</sup> he myght  
not refifte hit / Alle his losses cam to fore hys eyen . And  
15 than he began to fyghe and fayd with a dolorous herte  
alas what is the mutabilite of fortune . and what fhall  
be the ende of mydaies / flateresse fortune what haft thou  
thought / All the honours that thou haft gyuen vnto me  
here to fore / redoūde now to my fhame . whan thou haft  
20 fente & parted to me fo many goodes / Wherfore haft thou  
fente to me hercules this is the enemye of all my glorye  
now all quenched / & fro a fhynyng name hath brought  
me vnto a name all full of derknes At lefte yf thou haft  
gyuen hym fuffifance / late hym not come after me by his  
25 horrible dedes all my vaynes be repliffhid with feures.  
myn herte murdrith in esboilling of yre / O what grete vn-  
happ fyn hit muſte nedes be that I be Infortunat / I fhall  
verily dye of the clubbe that I haue ſeen my brethern dye  
of / or I fhall take vengeance / Gerion alle out of hys  
30 witte with theſe wordes putte hym in the prees cryyng  
geryon . geryon . for to make his men to corage hem ſelf

Thus cryng and fekyng hercules he put to deth many  
 grekes / he was all furious his glayue was died with  
 the blood of his enemyes / In the ende he cam vnto hercu-  
 les And with his swerd so dyed he smote hym fore .  
 hercules was all wery . ffor with oute cessing he had 5  
 holde the batayll by the space of foure owres And had  
 receyuid vpon his armes so many strokes that no man  
 cowde telle . This notwithstanding he fledde not at all  
 gerion but cam to hym Ioyously And fought agaynst  
 hym wyth so grete force that alle they that sawe hyt 10  
 meruaylled / And that after many strokes smyten of ge-  
 rion and of hercules / Hercules smote hym oon strook  
 so grete that he all to frusshed gerion and smote oute the  
 brayn of his heed and smote the helme vpon his shol-  
 ders that he syll doun ded amonge the ded men in suche 15  
 wife arayed that he abood there ded : .

**¶** How Hercules founded the Cyte of the Coroigne  
 vpon the tombe of gerion : .

**S**Vche was the ende of the vnhappy lyf of gerion  
 the tyrant / he deyde in like wyse as the two bre- 20  
 thern dide by the clubbe of hercules . whan the  
 hisperyens sawe hym brought to that sorowe as for  
 to taste the bitter morfell of deth / alle leste their armes  
 All they escried sorofully the deth of gerion . And fill  
 all in desperance / that oon lete hym to be slayn and that 25  
 other fledde by desertes by montaignes by ryuage of the  
 see And torned alle in disconfyture / whan hercules had  
 espied hem so difrayed . he thanked the goddes / And be-  
 gan for to pourfiewe hys enemyes / The pourfuyte du-  
 red vnto the euen . The grekes fylde the felde the mon- 30  
 taignes / and the ryuage of the see wyth the blood of

them that fledde/Whan the nyght was come hercules &  
the grekes withdrewe hem in to their galeyces And ete  
and dranke fuche as they had and made Ioyous chere  
The hurte men were remembrid and comforted them in  
5 their victorye / the werye men forgate the labour that  
they had doon . They rested hem after their trauayll . and  
passed the nyght ouer / Whan hit was day on the morn  
hercules yffued out of his galeyce / And beholdyng the  
porte . hym femed that a cyte shold stande well there  
10 And fayd that he wold make oon there / And conclu-  
ded to begynne hit / He fente vnto all places where he  
wiste that ony peple were there aboutes . And gaf to  
eche man in knowleche that he was in will to make  
a cyte there And that the first persone that wold come  
15 for to put hand therto shold haue the domynacōn This  
thyng was knowen in all galyce / Many cam theder .  
but a woman named coroigne was the fyrst that cam  
And therefore hercules gaf vnto her the domynacōn and  
made to begynne the cyte & named hit coroigne/In remē-  
20 brance of the victorye that he had there / vpon the body  
of gerion he founded a tour / And by his arte composed  
and made a lampe brennyng contynually day & nyght  
wyth oute puttyng of ony thyng therto . Whiche bren-  
nyd afterward by the space of thre honderd yere / more-  
25 ouer vpon the fomette or toppe of the tour / he maad an  
ymage of copre lokyng in to the see and gaf hym in his  
hand a myrroure hauyng fuche vertue . that yf hit hap-  
pend that ony men of warre were on the see in enten-  
cion to do ony harme to the Cyte / sodaynly their Ooft  
30 and theyr comynge shold appere in thys said myrroure  
And that dured vnto the tyme of Nabugodonosor

that was aduertysed of the properte of the myrroure /  
fyllyd hys galeyces wyth whyte thynges and grene  
bowes and leeuces / that hyt semed a wode and that in  
the myrroure ne apered none other thyng but a wood  
Wherefore the Coroignyens not knowyng but that her  
myrroure shewyd to hem garnysshid not them wyth  
men of armes . like as they had ben accustomed to doo  
whan their enemyes cam / And thus Nabugodonosor  
toke the cyte in a morenyng and destroyed the myrroure  
and the lampe / Whan than this tour was maad . hercu- 10  
les made than to come theder all the maydens of the con-  
tre And dide hem domake a solempne feste in the remem-  
brance of the deth of gerion / And after he departed fro  
thens . and wente vnto megida where were presentyd  
to hym an honderd oxen the fayrest of the world . 15

¶ How hercules assaylled the kynge Cacus and had  
bataill ayenst hym . and ouercam hym / And how cacus  
began to tyrannysse in Italye &c : .

**A**.fter this conqueste as hercules entended to pe-  
ple & enhabite this newe contrey / tydynges cam 20  
to hym . that in the cyte of Cartagene / A kynge  
and geant regned . named Cacus whiche was pas-  
syng euyll and full of tyrannye / and had slayn by his  
curfides the kynges of Aragon and of Nauerre . their  
wyues & their children And possessid her seignouryes 25  
and also helde in subieccion alle the contrey in to ytaly :  
Hercules receuyd right loyously these tydynges / and  
sayd that by the playfir of the goddes he shall assaye  
yf he may take vengeance of the deth of the kynges of  
arragon and of nauare / Than he disposed hym vnto this 30  
werkes . and hauyng an appetite to correcte the kynge



cacus / as fone as his exerfite myght be redy . he wente  
vnto the royame of castylle . Where as was the kynge  
cacus in the cyte of cartagene . that stood beside a mon-  
taigne named monchaio . And passid by many roiames  
5 that dide hym obeyffance . for his vertuous renomee :  
but whan he cam to approche cartagene . the kynge ca-  
cus cam agaynst hym with difobeyffance . and in armes  
ffor he had ben aduertysed of his comyng : And as he  
entred in to the frontiers . he sente vnto hym oon of his  
10 knyghtes that sayd to hym these wordes that folowe  
Hercules open tyrant that haste the herte gretter than thy  
body And that thou woldest affaille the heuenes for to  
conquere : yf the goddes had gyuen the wynges for to  
flee as the byrddes haue : yf thou seke pees and loue  
15 vnto the kynge cacus thy semblable in complexion and  
fortune . I salewe the in his name / and yf thou come  
otherwyse vnto hym as his enemye / I the deffye in hys  
name . And in no wyse be thou so hardy to entre in to  
his contrey . And yf thou entre . knowe thou . that thou  
20 shalt fynde in cacus and in the castyllyens oon so hard  
an encountre that of the euyll aduenture shall no man  
of thy companye be quyte &c .

**K** Nyght answerd hercules what som euer ye be  
ye shewe not that ye haue the herte of nobleffe /  
25 ffor hit is foule to alle men . and in especyall  
to a noble man to myssaye or speke euyll of another  
man : ye haue callyd me an open and a tyrant publicque  
And also ye haue compared me vnto the tyrant cacus /  
I answer yow to thys Artycle . that I am no tyrant /  
30 But a destroyer of tyrantes / And therefore ye shall  
retorne agayn vnto Cacus And sygnefye to hym that

I haue Intencion for to shewe what hate we haue vnto  
 tyrantes / And that in fewe dayes he may proue vpon  
 vs the hard encountre / wherof I haue now receyuid the  
 menaces / With this answer the castylian departed fro  
 the presence of hercules . and returned vnto the kynge 5  
 cacus / And tolde hym worde for worde what hercules  
 had sayd to hym / Whan Cacus had herde alle thys / he  
 was all abaisshid / Notwithstanding that he was a  
 stronge geant and a puyffant / and that he had neuer  
 founden a man stronger than he was hym self / ffor the 10  
 renome of hercules was than so grete by the vnyuersel  
 world / that the moste stronge the moste assweyrd in  
 armes and moste happy . doubtyd hym and tremblyd  
 heryng speke of his dedes / how be hit cacus toke corage  
 in hym self / And in musyng the abaisshement In the pre- 15  
 sence of his nobles he said / Blessid be these next hasty  
 dayes that nature and fortune shall brynge to vs / for  
 to make the proof of our force and strength So beho-  
 ueth that Castyle and secyllle shewe the excessse of their  
 armes for to deffende the kyng cacus fro the clawes of 20  
 his enemyes / And hit is of necessite seemblably that the  
 kynge cacus for his peple desploye and putte forth the  
 abisme of his strength Now forth on my brethern and  
 frendes we ben comen to the warre . The grekes come  
 vpon castile with oute ony quarele / late vs goo agaynst 25  
 hem and fighte for our contre / the birdes fyght that oon  
 ayenst that other for her nestes . and the dombe bestes  
 for her cauernes Nature entroduceth hem so for to doo /  
 yf we haue the same nature . the tyme is come that we  
 oughte so to doo &c : . 30

**W**Hen the castelians and the aragonnoys that were

[leaf 208]

3 D

417

there herd cacus so speke they preyfid gretly his corage  
And anwerd all by oon voys / that they were redy to  
assaylle their enemyes . With this answer the kynge  
cacus dide dislogge his Ooft that he had there on the fel-  
5 des / And wente forth ayenft hercules the strayttest way  
that he cowde / The kynge cacus than putte on the way  
desiryng fore to synde hercules . Hercules on that other  
side cam than ayenft cacus / they wente so longe that oon  
ayenft that other . that sone after they sawe eche other  
10 nyghe a place where hercules founded after a Cyte whi-  
che was named Terracene . Assone as they sawe eche  
other they began to make grete Ioye And to make show-  
tes & cries / After they renged hem in ordenance of bataill  
and marched that oon ayenft that other / hootly and  
15 sharply . that they fillid the ayer sodaynly with shotte  
of arowes caste of stones and of dartes . At the begyn-  
nyng of this bataylle the castelyens bare hem valiantly  
And there were many of theyr partye slayn . moo by  
hardynes than for drede . ffor they put hem to fer forth  
20 And they doubted not þ<sup>e</sup> shotte of the grekes / that shotte  
on hem so fore and so thykke that all the ground was  
made reed of their blood . And that the casteliens whiche  
were so ferre goon and fore chauffid muste nede reforte  
back agayn to theyr felawis . Whan the kynge Cacus  
25 sawe his folke so fore bestad & so hard . that they recu-  
led fro the shotte of the grekes / he had grete sorowe in  
his herte And with neuer where to entende for to entre-  
tene & holde his bataill / Some fledde / and other reculid  
and wente aback And other fill down to the erthe ded  
30 or fore hurte / The batayll dured longe in thys poynt  
all way to the sorowe of kynge cacus / but in the ende

the shotte of the grekes faylled / And the Castelyens  
with cacus recouerid newe strength in this maner / that  
they cam to fyghte hand of hand with swardes / And  
that they shedde and spradde largely the blood of them  
of tyre and of ancone whiche were in the firste fronte 5  
of the batayll of hercules : .

**T**He noyse aroofe grete there / ther were many  
sheldes broken and many skynnes of lyons  
cutte in peces . There as cacus approchid hyt fe-  
med that the tempest was / he was grete . stronge and 10  
fiers and oultragious in smytyng / eche of his strokes  
was the deth of a greke / In the ende . he dide so moche  
that the cryes of them that were a boutte hym mountyd  
so hyghe in the ayer / that the casteliens had well wende  
to haue wonne all . And began to make Ioye for their 15  
good fortune in escryng the grekes to the deth . But  
euen in like wyse as a right clere day is otherwhile tro-  
blid by an auenturous black clowde . semblably by the  
allonli comyng of hercules that cam than to the rescouffe  
All her Ioye was troblid and torned in to mortall 20  
losse . ffor the mortall arme of hercules enuertued than  
so terribly that he bete down the casteliens like as a mow-  
ar with a sithe bete down the grasse in a medowe / whan  
cacus sawe hercules so foundre and bete down his men  
All the blood in hym changed . Than his blood so me- 25  
uyd and as a coragious man presentid hym self to fore  
the fronte of hercules And smote hym with his glayue  
so fore and harde that he clefted his shelde in two partis  
The casteliens seeyng the shelde of hercules flee by peces  
thought anon that cacus had slayn and put to deth her- 30  
cules / and than made a crye for Ioye / but hit dured not

longe / ffor hercules lyfte vp his armes with his clubbe  
 And smote cacus vpon the comble of his helme by suche  
 strength / that hit semed to cacus that he sawe an hon-  
 derd thousand candellis . or that he had be smyten doun  
 5 with the gretteste roche of spayne . This notwithstanding  
 cacus abood standyng in his place / and escryed  
 hercules vnto the deth / & smote hym with all his myght  
 At this assaillng the castelyens hopyng in the fortune  
 of cacus : all they assaillid hercules / Hercules was gon  
 10 so ferre amonge his enemyes . that he was allone from  
 all his companye / Whan he herd that cacus escryed hym  
 to deth And sawe that the casteliens assayllid hym and  
 cam to hym fro all sides . He had his herte all fyld with  
 solas / and abandoned the durete & hardnes of his skyn  
 15 of the lyon to the swerdes of them all / withoute reuen-  
 gyng hym faue only ayenst cacus . Thus began the ba-  
 tayll betwene hercules & cacus . their strokes were grete  
 and ferdfull with oute mesure . Cacus foughte in the  
 spyrite of a tyrant chauffid . and desyred fore to ouer-  
 20 come hercules for to tyrannysse & tryumphe aboue hym /  
 Hercules fought in a vertuous herte founded and nou-  
 rishid in vertu / and as enemye of vyces . he assayllid  
 this vicyous kynge / Bothe two were grete & fyers and  
 stronge of grete corages / But certes whan they had both  
 25 tasted ynowh eche other / atte longe the strokes of her-  
 cules were so grete and so peyfant . that the sholdres  
 of cacus ne hys heed myght not bere ne had the puyf-  
 fance to susteyne them So the ende was suche that af-  
 ter their batayll had dured two oures . Cacus leste hym  
 30 for he myght no more suffre hym but fledde and wente  
 his waye &c .

**W**Han hercules sawe that cacus fledde / he day-  
 ned not to folowe after / This notwythstan-  
 dyng for to haue the victorye of this Iourney  
 he began to hewe on the castelians . aragonnoys and  
 fuche other as he might fynde / for he leste no man a lyue 5  
 to fore hym yonge ne olde . feble ne stronge . Hyspan &  
 the other of his side made her feetes of armes to floryssh  
 and shyne . The batayll was sharp than / the grekes  
 dowblid and redoublid their strokes and slewe many  
 of their enemyes / In the ende whan cacus had take hys 10  
 breth . he put hym agayn to medlee at oon side where  
 his folk fledd and maad hem to tarye . smytyng and  
 betyng the grekes more terribly than he had doon to fore  
 wherof the cryes aroos so highe there that hercules than  
 fightyng on an other syde herd the crye And than he ran 15  
 theder at alle auenture And anone he espyed cacus  
 he wente a fore hym and brake the prees and smote  
 doun so fore / that cacus knewe hercules / but he durst not  
 abide hym . but fledde agayn with euyl happe And than  
 the grekes maad a crye and a Ioyous noyse . that alle 20  
 the castelians fledde . some here & some there to the grete  
 hurte and losse of cacus / ffor of all his peple . ther left  
 no moo but fifty whiche sauyd hem self vpon þ<sup>e</sup> mount  
 of Monchayo whiche stood ther by . But that was  
 with grete effusion of blood of them of castile . that wend 25  
 to haue mounted vp wyth the other / that semed that  
 there had ben a grete sprynge of blood . that the cauernes  
 in the valeye were replenesshid wyth blood / how be  
 hit cacus for to flee well / sauyd hym self and fyfty of  
 his men vpon the montaigne as the cronicles of spaigne 30  
 reherce / whan he was aboue & in sewr place / he returned

and sawe down to the foot of the hyll / He sawe there  
so many castelyans · that with oute nombre were ded  
or in danger for to dye / he had grete sorowe than at his  
herte not for pyte / but for dispyte And for the daūger  
5 that he sawe redy where by he muste passe . Anone after  
he sawe fro ferre in the champaigne and eche quarter  
and place there all couert of them of his party & of their  
blood . Also he sawe them that fledde taken and brought  
to the pestelence of the other / These termes consideryd .  
10 the defolacōn of his domynacōn and the punycōn of hys  
tyrannye was to hym all euydent / he thought than that  
hercules shold lightly conquere all the contrey . ffor they  
obeyed hym by tyrannye and not by naturell loue / this  
notwithstandyng . he despaired not . how well that he  
15 sawe all the puyffance of his men destroyed by the  
clubbe of hercules And knewe that he myght no more  
regne in that contrey / for all was ded in the bataill / but  
than he returned vnto his scyence And thus as sorow-  
full as he was he entrid in to a hows that he had there  
20 But first he cōmyfed twelue of his men to kepe the pas-  
sage of this mounte whiche was also straye & narrow  
that there myght goo vp but oon man at ones : .

**W**Han than hercules and his men had putte to deth  
alle their enemyes / Hercules wold assaylle  
25 the roche . And began to mounte and goo vpon  
the degrees or steyres / but than sodaynly they that kepte  
the paas. caste vpon hym grete stones. In so grete habon-  
dance that of force he was constrayned to descende /  
Whan hercules sawe that he muste withdrawe hym / he  
30 obeyed fortune / but notwithstandyng he made there a-  
vowe þ<sup>t</sup> he wold neuer departe fro the foot of the roche

vnto the tyme that he had confrayned cacus to descende  
 and come down by famyne or other wise / This auowe  
 made . hercules cam vnto the foot of the hille / where the  
 occision and slaughter had ben And made the place to  
 be made clene and purgid of the ded bodyes and of the 5  
 blood of them that there laye ded / After he dide do make  
 his tente of bowes and leeuës And his bedd of fresfh  
 grasse And comanded that eche man shold logge there  
 At that tyme the nyght cam and the day faillid . The  
 grekes were wery of that that they had all day labou- 10  
 red in armes And wold fayn haue reste . and maad  
 good chiere of that they had . And after that they had  
 ordeyned and sette their wacche . as well for to kepe  
 the oost as for to kepe the roche . that cacus come not  
 down / they leyde hem down vpon the grasse in suche wyse 15  
 as they were acustomed whan they were in warre / and  
 so slepte and passid that nyght : .

**I**N the morn hercules depteð his ofte in tweyne  
 And sente hispan with oon of them in to arra-  
 gon and nauarre / And he abode there with the 20  
 other / Hispan in the name of hercules was Ioyously  
 receyuyd of the nauarroys & of the aragonnoys / And  
 they made to hym all obeyffance . knowlechyng hercu-  
 les to be their lord and the moste vertuous prynce that  
 was in the weste / whan hispan had all subdued as 25  
 sayd is he retorned vnto hercules / Hercules laye yet  
 styll to fore monchayo And there helde cacus in suche  
 subieccion that he myght not yssue / Cacus and his folk  
 were than in grete myschief of vytayll And they wist  
 not what to ete ne to drynke / they deferryd as longe as 30  
 they myghte / hopyng that hercules shold anoye hym to



be there so longe / But in the ende whan their vytaill fay-  
led / and they sawe that they muste nedes aventure hem  
self to come doun / Cacus by his scyence made certayn  
secrete thynges to go doun in to their stomakes And af-  
5 ter put therto the fyre and taught all the other to do soo  
And than sodaynly as they felte the fyre yssue out of  
their mowthes and the fumee & smoke in fuche habon-  
dance that hit semed alle on a lyght fyre / Than by the  
counceyll of cacus . they aduentured hem self to descende  
10 a doun in rennyng & castyng fyre and fumee so Impetu-  
ousement / that hercules and the grekes wende that hyt  
had ben an orage of lyghtnyng of the heuen And had  
brente the montaigne So they made hym place / ffor hit  
was a thyng for to make men asore basshid / And thus  
15 they escaped the daunger of hercules at that tyme . ffor  
duryng all that day the roche was full of smoke and  
fumee that cacus had made / And the smoke was so  
materyell . that hit semed tenebres or derkenes .

20 **W**Han cacus and his folk were thus escaped and  
passid the oost of hercules and of the grekes /  
Hercules was than the moste wyse Clerk that  
was in the world . And that all his passetemps he en-  
ployed in studye he toke his bookes And began to prac-  
tyse howe and by what rayson he was descended from  
25 the roche . he redde and torned many leeves / But alle  
thynges well considerid he fonde not that this fumee cam  
of naturell thynges / Wherof he had grete meruayll / Than  
he sente for Athlas that allway was loggyd behynde  
the ooste for to be solytayre . Whan Athlas was come  
30 he shewid hym the smoke and fumee that yet dured

Than he tolde of the lyghtnyng that was passid by the  
 oost / And demanded hym his oppynyon / Athlas knewe  
 incontynent the fumee / and answerd to hercules / Cer-  
 tes my sone thou arte more sharpe in scyence than I . for  
 myn age may not atteyne to so hyghe thynges as thy  
 5 yougthe / Now be hyt for as moche as I knowe the  
 growyng of this thyng longe tyme paste . I shall telle  
 the / that I shall saie / thou shalt fynde trewe as I suppose  
 Thou shalt vnderstande that thys fumee is a thyng  
 artesfiall and maad by the crafte of wican that was  
 10 fader of cacus / Whiche was an excellent maystre in this  
 scyence / And was the Inventour therof . He maad  
 certayn montaignes in cecylle to brenne . and shall alle-  
 way contynuelly brenne vnto the ende of the world .  
 Cacus whiche can the arte and crafte of his fader / hath  
 15 maad this fumee : And for to escape fro thy handes .  
 he is descended wyth hys felawship in the forme of a  
 lyghtnyng or tempest / And thus thy strength is decey-  
 uyd by his scyence .

**W**Han hercules vnderstood this that Athlas had  
 20 said to hym . He was gretly esmeruailled of the  
 scyence of cacus / and myght not beleue hit / Than  
 for to knowe the trouthe / he toke his clubbe / And wente  
 vp thurgh the smoke or fumee . vnto the toppe of the  
 roche . Sekyng cacus / but he fonde there nether beste  
 25 ne man : Than he returned vnto Athlas . And lawgh-  
 yng confessed to hym that he hadd sayd trouth . And  
 sayd that he wold make no poursiewt after hym / for  
 as moche as he was so gentylmanly escaped / This day  
 they passid ouer in spekyng and comynyng of Cacus  
 30 and of hys fader wican / The day folowyng whan

the smoke and fume was goon and vanysshd away  
Hercules began to beholde the Contre / And sawe that  
hit was comodious and ffertyle . And to the ende that  
there shold euer be remembrance and memorye of hym  
5 He founded there a cyte / whiche he named Teracone/  
for as moche as he gaf thys contrey to the sone of the  
kynge of Ancone / And there he made hym dwelle with  
his peple and with them of Tyre . Hercules after this  
foundacion wente to the Cyte of Salamanque / and  
10 for as moche as hit was well enhabited and peupled  
He wold make there a solempnell estudye . And dide  
do make there in the erthe a grete rounde holl in maner  
of an estudye And he sette there in the vii scyences lybe-  
rall with many other bookes . After he made them of the  
15 contre to come theder for to studye / but they were so rude  
and dulle . that their wyttes coude not compryse ony  
connyng of scyence / And than for as moche as hercu-  
les wold departe on his voyage : And wold also that  
this studye were mayntened . He dide do make an yma-  
20 ge or statue of gold vnto his semblance and lykenes .  
Whyche he dide do sette vp on heyght in the myddes of  
his studye vpon a pyller . And made so by hys crafte  
and Arte / that all they that cam to fore this ymage for  
to haue declaracion of ony scyence . To alle pourposes  
25 And of alle scyences the ymage answerd and enseygned  
and taught the scoliers and estudients / in suche  
wise as hit had ben hercules in his propre personne / The  
renomee of this Studye was grete in alle the Contree  
And this estudye dured after vnto the tyme that faynt  
30 Iaques convertyd Spayne vnto the Crysten fayth .

.Fro salamanque hercules departed and wente in to  
 cateloygne / And fouëd there the cyte of Barfeloyne /  
 whiche is a right good cyte / And fynably whan he had  
 accompliffhid all these thynges . He sente Athlas home  
 agayn to hys contrey / but he helde by hym alle hys 5  
 wryters . ffor he louyd bookes aboue all the Rycheffe  
 of the world . After he wold gyue leue vnto philotes  
 for to retorne vnto his contrey . But philotes refused his  
 congie and leue And sayd to hym that he wold serue  
 hym alle his lyf / And that he reputed his felycyte more 10  
 grete to be in his seruyse / than for to gouerne the contre  
 that fortune had putte in his hand . Hercules after this  
 callid hispan and sayd to hym . Hispan I knowe thy  
 wytte and thy vaylliance . I haue founde the alleway  
 wyse and trewe . Thou arte a man of auctoryte & well 15  
 knowen in these marches . I make and constitute the  
 kyngue ouer all this contrey / And gyue vnto the none o-  
 ther charge but to loue vertue and to ensiewe honour &  
 worshippe / Whan Hispan herde the gyfte that hercules  
 made to hym / He fyll down at his feet . and thankid hym 20  
 And after excused hym of so grete worhipp / But her-  
 cules sayd to hym that he wold that hit shold be soo /  
 And delyuerid to hym certayn nombre of peple of hys  
 felawshyp for to serue hym . After he maad hym to de-  
 parte wyth grete fyghys and forowe / And Hispan 25  
 wente than by all the contrees þ<sup>t</sup> hercules had conquerd  
 there vpon geryon and vpon cacus . And fro than forth-  
 on the contrey was named Spaigne after hys name  
 Wherof I wole now tarye of this conqueste of spaigne /  
 And shall come to speke of the armes that hercules dide 30  
 in lombardy and of the deth of Cacus .

¶ How Hercules fought ayenst the enleuen geantes,  
of Cremone And how he vaynquysshid them .

**T**Here ben now the kynges . the Emperours . the  
fowdans and the Prynces that men may speke  
5 of the vertuous liberalite of them . semblable or  
lyke vnto that of hercules / The men at this day fyght  
oon ayenst another And make conquestes ynowhe / but  
they attribue them vnto their synguler profit . They  
resemble not vnto hercules / that neuer fought but for  
10 the comyn wele of the world / O noble Hercules / ffor  
to folowe and poursiewe my mater . Whan he maad  
hispan kynge of all the regyon of hisperye / that now is  
named espayne . He sente for his Oxen his kyen and  
Calues And after departed fro barfelone and toke his  
15 waye vnto Lombardye . He wente so longe on hys  
Journey that he cam nyghe vnto the cyte of Cremone /  
Whiche is but a daye Journey fro Melane . Ther were  
than in this Cyte . xi . geantes grete out of mesure / These  
xi . geantes were all brethern And fones of Neleo the  
20 sone of Saturne / And they callid hem self alle kynges  
of this Cyte . They helde all estate royall / how be hyt  
their renomes were but smale and lytyll / And for that  
cause they were theuys and robbid their neyghebour  
And made hem all day warre . Whan than they knewe  
25 that hercules approchid theyr Cyte Anone they assem-  
blyd their counceyll to geder / And demaüded that oon /  
that other / yf they shold suffre hercules for to entre in  
to theyr Cyte / Alle were of oon oppynyon that they  
shold not Resseyve hym / And that they wold sende  
30 vnto hym oon of them whiche was named Nestor that

he shold not entre in to cremone / but yf he first had vanyquffhid in batayll the xi brethern / Nestor at the comandement of the geantes departed fro Cremone & wente vnto hercules . whom he fonde with his lytyll armee but thre myle fro cremone . Than he spake to hercules & sayd to hym Syre I haue ten brethern kynges of cremone / that haue sente me vnto the for as moche as they be aduertysed that thou entrest in to their domynacion And charge the by me . that they will gyue vnto the no passage of cremone . but yf thou first ouercome them oon after an other in batayll / And therefore chese whether thou wilt haue the batayll or ellis to retorne agayn and leue this viage / I aduertyse the that they be alle geantes more grete and more puyssant than I am / Syre knyght ansverd hercules I haue taken my way for to passe by cremone / Late the geantes knowe that hercules hath Intencion to speke to them more ner / as he that dredeth not ne fereth their accustomed tyrannyes / whiche I muste delyuere the world of by feet of armes And for as moche as to the ende that they presume not that I haue ony doubte or drede of them in ony manner / ye shall saye to them that I wyll not fighte wyth them ten . oon after another / but alle attones to gyder and yow with hem / yf ye will accompanye yow with hem . And for to do so they shall fynde me redy to morn erly by the morow : .

**H**ercules with these wordes made his peple to abyde and reste there for that nyght / And Nestor returned to his brethern and sayd to them / My brethern I haue spoken to hercules and haue exposed to hym your comandement / he hath ansverd to me

of a right hyghe and playn corage that he woll fyghte  
with vs to morn Not oon after another / but with vs  
all attones / And for to speke playnly of hym He hath  
the femblante of a man to be vertuous in Armes and  
5 garnysshid with prowesse he is a prynce mewre & of  
grete conduyte / Dispose yow well hit behoueth to fur-  
nyssh hym the batayll . Certes the batayll shall be pery-  
lous . ffor he is myghtely membrid and as grete as oon  
of vs / but me thynketh that he may not compare ne pre-  
10 uaylle ayenst vs . xi . / and that he may not escape fro  
our forces / but that we shall perffhe hym wyth our  
glayues what fom euer force or strength is in hym . The  
geantes so heeryng hym preyfe hercules . had grete mer-  
uayll of hym And myght not beleue nestor of that / that  
15 he had reported that he wold fighte with alle to geder  
attones . ffor there was none of them all . but he thought  
hym self stronge ynowhe for hercules . Than they axed  
of Nestor . And demaunded hym yf he were sewer to  
haue well vnderstand that / that hercules sayd vnto  
20 hym that he wold fyght ayenst hem alle attones / Nes-  
tor answerd ye / And that he had herde hym saye hit in  
his propre perfone . Wyth this answer they conclu-  
ded that on the morn they shold Arme them alle / And  
that they wold goo to the felde for to fyghte ayenst her-  
25 cules yf he cam agaynst hem . Oon of the geantes sayd  
than vnto his brethern . To morn shall be the day of  
our glorie and worshypp / We shall vaynquyssh .  
the vaynquysshour of the Monstres : Late vs make  
good chiere / Broder answerd Nestor ther in is no  
30 doubt but that we shall ouercome and brynge to vtte-  
rance hym þ' ye speke of / but so moche shall our glorie

be the lasse that we shall be . xi . ayenst oon . well  
 said that other yf in fightyng ayenst vs . xi . we shall  
 haue the lasse honour / late vs euery man fight for hym  
 self . Broder answerd nestor yf ye had seen and herde  
 hym as I haue / ye shold not be so hardy as ye shewe 5  
 semblant / he is all anoder man than ye wene / Kepe  
 yow at the offre that he hath maad at the leste hit is  
 better to haue the moste prouffit & lasse honour in suche  
 a caas . In these deuyses they passed all that day / After  
 they wente to reste / Whan the oure was come on the 10  
 morn erly / they aroos and adoubed them the beste wise  
 they coude . After they fente oon of their men vnto hercu-  
 les for to wete yf he wold saye ony thyng / But as-  
 sone as the messanger yssued out of the gate . the first  
 thyng that he sawe . was a geant armed meruayl- 15  
 lously . the messanger abode than & auysed hym a lityll  
 After he had auysed hym he wente vnto the geant ar-  
 med . And axid hym what he was / I am hercules said  
 the geant / what wole ye saie or haue / said the messan-  
 ger / I wyll saye said hercules that the geantes of Cre- 20  
 mone haue no cause for to lette me the passage of their  
 cyte And for as moche as they dide me to wete yester-  
 daye that yf I wold haue passage / hit behoued me to  
 vaynquiffh them oon after another in the felde by bataill  
 I am comen hether in hope to wynne the paas . And ne 25  
 demande other thyng but for to see them in armes for  
 to fight with them all to gider attones to thende to haue  
 sooner doon . Wherfore I pray yow to goo to them / and  
 signefie to hem my comyng . And that they haste them : .

**T**He messanger with these wordes returned vnto 30  
 the geantes And tolde them what he had founde



whan the geantes knewe that hercules was all redy in  
the felde they all toke their glayues & their habillmens  
of warre / And departed fro the cyte / Adressyng them a-  
yentst hercules . Hercules was than allone in the place .  
5 The men & women of cremone wente vpon the wallis  
and towres for to see the batayll And philotes with  
other noble men of the grekes were vpon an hyll ferre  
ynowh fro the place where hercules was abidyng the  
geantes Certes hit was a fair fight to see the comyng of  
10 the . xi . geantes . they were all well apoynt and well  
garnysshid of helmes enryched with gold and stones  
They were grete & stronge all of oon mesure . they were  
berded and had fiers contenances they cam on & marchid  
sharply . And by aspre corage whan they cam nyghe to  
15 hercules vpon half a bowe shotte / they escryed hym all  
to deth . and made a crye so grete that the walles of the  
cyte redounded After they ran ayentst the assewrid prynce  
lyke as they had ben lyons Hercules heeryng these cryes  
and seeyng their course on foot fermly he abode them lyf-  
20 tyng vp his clubbe ouer his heed / Whan hit cam to thaf-  
famble . hit semed well that the geantes shold haue all  
to fruffhid hym with their glayues . ffor they smote vp-  
on hym so desmesurably / that their tronchons & the peces  
flewe in to the ayer / Their strokes were grete / hercules  
25 suffred hem & beheld what power they had But whan  
they had made their assayes vpon hym / hercules made  
his assaye vpon hem And with his clubbe smote oon of  
the geantes vpon his helme . that he all to fruffhid not  
only his helme but also his heed þ̄ he fill down sodayn-  
30 ly ded / Whan the other ten geantes sawe that her bro-  
der was so ded of oon strook . they had grete forowe

and their blood was strongly meuyd . Nature amo-  
 nsted them to take vengeance . They dide that in hem  
 was / And assayllid eygrely on all sides hercules . And  
 thus began the batayll betwene hercules & the geantes  
 Hercules ne dredde not / strook of glayue . of spere . ne 5  
 of polaxe . his skyn of the lyon was hard and stronge  
 his strengthe was stable / his clubbe bare all And so  
 hit was nede / grete were the strokes that they gaf eche  
 other . The geantes dide all their myght . and gaf stro-  
 kes ynowhe to hercules . but they coude neuer perce the 10  
 skyn of the lyon hit was so hard / But yet was his  
 clubbe more harder / The geantes meruailled of the con-  
 stance and puyffance of hercules . Assone as hercules  
 lyfte vp his clubbe for to smyte on them . hys enemyes  
 that were subtyll lepe a side . and other while brake 15  
 his strookes / how be hit he dide so moche that in lasse  
 than an oure he slewe foure of them and the other seuen  
 fought afterwards by suche vigour / that the more he  
 smote hem with his clubbe / the more mortall he fonde  
 hem and fiers &c : . 20

**T**He batayll was terryble and harde . ffor the  
 geantes were stronge and well had vsed the  
 mestier of armes And grete payn had they to  
 saue them . and to auenge the blood of their brethern  
 and for to haue worship of the batayll . And they said 25  
 that they were Infortunat whan they myght not ouer  
 come oon man allone . ne mate hym . In fightyng they  
 helped & confortd eche other and they had alle good  
 corage / But what prouffited them the grete nombre of  
 brethern . and what auailed hem their coragious stro- 30  
 kes whan they were approchyng their deth / Hercules

was alway hercules . He reioyffed hym in the flote of  
his enemyes / He confortd hym self in fortune /ffortune  
helped hym he dide meruaylles on all fydes . Well coude  
he fighte / & well defended he hym All that he dide was  
5 well doon . Alle that the other dide and brassid was  
nought worth . Notwithstandyng they were myghty  
and hardy / But the lukke & good happe of hercules was  
not to be broken . ne his clubbe coude not be destroyed .  
But he tryumphed & more was his puyffance to suf-  
10 teyne the fureurs of his aduerfaries . than their myght  
was to charge hym with their strokes . O meruaillo<sup>9</sup>  
strength & myght of a man His puyffance was not of  
a man but of an ellephant His skyn of the lyon semed  
that hit had ben tempred with quyk and harde stele / his  
15 body semed more constant ayenft the cuttyng glayues  
of all his euyll willars / than is an andueld or a stedy a-  
yenft the strokes of many hamers or marteaulx / There  
was no strook of his enemye that hym greuyd / he toke  
grete playfir in the batayll seeyng hym self amonge fo  
20 many geantes . He was gretly reioyffed And ther was  
no thyng hym greuyng but the declynyng of the day /  
whiche began to faylle / At this oure whan the sonne  
withhelde her rayes and torned in to the weste / hercules  
wold make an ende and spedde his batayll / The geantes  
25 began to cesse ffor to smyte . ffor fro the mornyng vnto  
the euenyng they had foughte wyth oute ony cessyng .  
And hercules envertued hym self in fuche wyse that  
smytyng vpon oon and other beyng aboute hym hard  
and sharply . Wherof hyt befell so that of some he en-  
30 foundred and fruffhid helmes and heedes And of the  
other he brake the Armes and Sydes meruayllously

and gaf so many grete strokes that fynably he bete  
doun / & all to fruffed hem all / referuid nestor whiche  
fledde away when he sawe the disconfiture / and ther in  
dide he wisely . ffor alle his brethern were there slayn  
by the hande of hercules &c .

5

**W**Han they of Cremone sawe their lordes ded /  
they had sone maad an ende of their wepyng  
and sorowe . for they had ben to hem hard and  
troublous At the ende of this bataill they assemblid to  
counceyll / whan they sawe that hercules had wonne 10  
the batayll . And concluded to geder / that they wold  
yelde hem to hercules and put them in his mercy / With  
this conclusion they yssued out of the gates in grete nom-  
bre . And cam vnto hercules whiche was thoo vayn-  
queur of his enemyes / ffirst they kneled to fore hym 15  
doun to the ground . Secondly they prayd and requy-  
red of hym mercy : And thirdly they abandoned to  
hym their Cyte and their goodes / and sayd to hym that  
they wold hold hym for lord duryng their lyf / hercules  
that was pietous and gentyll vnto them that were 20  
meke and humelid them self / receyuyd the Cremonyens  
in to his grace and maad hem to ryse and stande vp .  
And after sente for them of his ooste . whan they were  
come he brought hem in to cremone . where grete Ioye  
was maad vnto them . ffor they were glad of the deth 25  
of the geantes . And there ne was man . woman . ne  
childe / that ne thanked the goddes : .

**B**y this manner was hercules kynge of cremone  
and enriched with newe tittle of victorye / The  
ffirst nyght that he entrid in to this cyte he restid 30  
hym & his people : And also were they well refresshid

and right well fested and feruyd of vitayll / On the  
morn he dide do brynge in to the cyte the bodyes of the  
geantes that were ded And dide do burie them worship-  
fully / And syn founded vpon them a right grete tour &  
5 hyghe : And vpon the tour he sette . xi . ymages or sta-  
tues of metall after the facōn of the geantes that he had  
flayn in remembrance of his victorye :

**A**.Fter the edificacōn of this tour / Hercules lefte  
in Cremone folk for to gouerne them And depar-  
10 ted thens for to goo further forth in to the con-  
tre / He studyed alway and was neuer ydle / he studied  
so moche that he coude make the fyre artificiall as well  
as cacus / and fonde the remedies ayenst the same / What  
by armes as by his scyence he gate a right grete loos &  
15 preysyng in ytalye . He wente in to many places / And  
ouerall where he cam or wente / mē dide hym honour  
and reuerence . What shall I make longe processe / with  
oute grete auenture . he wente so ferre that he cam vnto  
a cyte standyng nyghe the mounte Auentyn . where reg-  
20 ned a kynge named Euander / whiche receyuyd hym  
solempnly . Hit is to wete that whan Cacus fledd fro  
monchayo as sayd is vnto this mounte . he cam in  
to ytalie all displaisant to haue lost his feignourie Than  
he gaf leue to depte fro hym to all his seruantes / and all  
25 despaired allone he wente to the mounte Auentyn in an  
euenyng / Where he was constrained to withdrawe hym  
theder for he doubted moche hercules . Whan he was comen  
aboue on this hyll / he fonde there a grete caue And there  
he wente in with oute soper And than he began to be dif-  
30 confortd gretly & bitterly / and said Alas now am I exil-  
led & banysshid out of all my feignouries & lordshippis

Now haue I no focours ne comfote of perfone / I dare  
 not name me kyng . where I was wonte by my name  
 make kynges to tremble . Alas all is torned and reuer-  
 fid / I haue no thyng to ete / ne wote not where to logge  
 but yf hit be with the bestes . O poure kyng . where is 5  
 ony man so vnhappy as I / I am so Infortunat and vn-  
 happy . that I dare not be seen ne beknowen . with these  
 wordes he leyde hym down vpon the bare ground . and  
 leyde a stoon vnder his heed . And with right grete pa-  
 yne fill a slepe whiche dured not longe for his vay- 10  
 nes were strongly meuyd . his herte was not quyete  
 And his body was right euyll susteyned . Anone than  
 he awoke and wente out of the caue for to loke yf hit  
 were nyhe day . for the nyght anoyed hym and was  
 hym to longe / But whan he was comen in to the ayer 15  
 he sawe no day appere . ne sterres ne mone shyne . but  
 he fonde hit alle derke and tenebres thikke and grete  
 And sawe all the region of the ayer couerid with clow-  
 des / wherof he was gretly anoyed and greuyd . Than  
 he wente in to the caue agayn not in to the deppest but 20  
 at the mouth therof / And there sorofull and pensif a-  
 bood with oute ony more slepyng tyll hit was daye .

**W**Han the day apperid cacus yffued agayn out  
 of the caue . and wente vp vnto the toppe of the  
 hyll . and began to beholde and see the contre 25  
 aboute / The contre femed to hym good and sayr for  
 to lyue there . After grete pensifnes and many thought-  
 tes / he concluded in hym self that he wold abyde there  
 vnto the tyme that his Infortune cessed . and wold  
 lyue there of proyes . rauayn and theste / After he be- 30  
 thought hym . that he wold goo to the kynges pryncus of

calidoine / whiche was his cofyn . and for to haue com-  
panye to lede his wyf with that he had chofen / he wold  
axe and demande in mariage oon of his daughters / With  
this conclusion he departed fro the mounte auentyn and  
5 toke the waye vnto calidoine he wente fo longe that he  
cam theder / Some faye that calidoine is the contre that  
we calle nowe Calabre . Whan cacus was come to cali-  
doine the kynge Prycus reffeyued hym as hit appertey-  
ned to a kynge / for as moche as he knewe hym & was  
10 of his lignage / And after demanded hym of his tidynges  
Cacus began to fyghe . Whan he fawe that he muste telle  
his myfhappe . And than tolde hym & recounted fro the  
begynnyng to thende how hercules had taken from hym  
his royames And how he had ben befieged / & how he  
15 was efcaped / And for as moche as I dar not abide in  
myn owen contrey / I am comen hether vnto yow for re-  
fuge and to telle & counte my forowes / And I haue en-  
tencion to holde me on the mount auentyn in a Cauerne  
that is there vnto tyme that myn enemye hercules shall  
20 departe fro myn herytage And I will kepe me there fo  
secrete that no man in the world shall haue knowleche  
therof / to thende that hercules knowe hyt not . ffor as  
mocheashehathmeingretehate / and he hath more gretter  
happe & fortune in armes than I haue / And yf he knewe  
25 that I were in ony place I am certayn that he wold come  
theder for to destroye me . This confiderid I haue chofen  
this cauerne for to hyde me as I haue sayd . But for fo  
moche as I haue more sorowe in felyng . than my taste  
requyreth hyt is fo that the eyen of a man beyng in grete  
30 trouble . Reioyffen in the vyfage and fyght of a wo-  
man : ffor the woman is the gladnes & comfort of a man

I requyre yow and praye yow that ye will gyue me  
to wyf oon of your daughters / And yf hit plese yow  
so to doo / certes ye shall do to me a grete plaisir and the  
moste ease that I may haue for this presente tyme . The  
kynge pryus answerd and said Cacus ye ben comen 5  
and extrayt of hyghe gentylnes . and haue grete lord-  
ship and feignourye in hisperye / yf fortune were agayn  
yow this day . your hyenes ought not therfore be vn-  
knownen / At this day I haue foure daughters . of whom  
that oon is named yolee . Take whome hit pleseth you 10  
referuid yolee : ffor I will not yet marye her / And yf ye  
haue ony will to make ony armee ayenst hercules . telle  
hit me playnly and I shall socoure yow as a trewe  
frende . Cacus was right well content with the an-  
wer of the kynge / and thanked hym sayyng that he 15  
wold make none armee for this seafon . but he wold  
passe his tyme in the caue like as he had purposid and  
concluded . Than the three daughters of kynge pryus  
were sente fore . and cacus cheffe oon of them whiche  
he wedded and after laye with her / and abode there 20  
two dayes / At thende of two dayes / he wold departe  
and toke leue of the kynge . The kynge wold haue de-  
lyuerid to hym ten knyghtes & ten squyers for to haue  
conueyed hym . but he reffused hem and wold none /  
Than he wold hane deliuerid to hym certayn ladies and 25  
damoyfelles / but of all them he toke none . faue the two  
susters of his wyf . Whiche wold by force goo wyth  
hym / Thus than he departed fro Calidonie . accompa-  
nyed wyth thre susters / he was all way sorofull and  
pensif / And fro than forth on thus beyng in Inpacyens 30  
of his unhapp . and castyng oute of royallte / he began to



renne out . And bathed his Axe in the blood of the men  
women and Children that he mette and putte hem alle  
to deth &c.

5 **C**Acus began to exercyse the werkes of furour and  
of tyrannye / in goyng vnto the mounte auentyn .  
Anone as he was come he entred in to the caue the beste  
wife he coude with his wyues . And the moſte ſecretly .  
And of this place he made a neſte of theſte and a pytte  
of fynnyſ / ffor the firſt nyght / that he had logged hys  
10 wyues / he wente hym in to the village that ſtood there  
faſt by . And behelde the fayreſt howſe . wherin he en-  
tred by a wyndowe that was open . And ſlewe alle  
them that was therin : and after toke all the goodes as  
moche as he myghte bere vpon his ſholdres and bare  
15 hem in to the caue / where as were his wyues .

**¶** How Cacus ſtale away the Oxen & kyen longyng  
to hercules / And how hercules fought with hym ther-  
fore and ſlewe hym : .

20 **I**N the morn cacus ſonde a right grete ſtone of  
marble / whiche he toke and bare hit vnto his  
caue / And made therwith his dore . The moſte  
parte of the tyme Cacus helde hym in hys caue / And  
wente neuer out but whan he wold do harme or euyll .  
When he wente in to the feldeſ as ſayd is . he ſlewe all  
25 them that he mette : He robbed euery man / he defow-  
lid women / he brent howſes and townes And ſhortly  
maad and dyde ſo moche harme in Italy / that they  
that paſſyd in the contre ſuppoſid to be behated of the  
goddes . And coude not knowe wherof ne fro whens  
30 cam thyſe perfecutions that Cacus maad vnto them .

ffor to retorne than to oure purpose of hercules he cam  
vnto the Cyte of kynge Euander in the tyme that cacus  
bedewed ytalye with blood of men . And fyllid hys  
caue of contynuelle stolen goodes . After the comyng of  
hercules and of his men of armes / his beefs or Oxen 5  
were brought in to the cyte be cause the kynge euander  
shold feen hem . The kynge toke grete plaisir to beholde  
and see hem . for they were hyghe and passyng fayre  
After that the kynge had feen hem . hercules demanded  
hym / whether he myght sende for to pasture them for 10  
that nyght / In trowth sire sayd euander / yf ye will be-  
leue my counceyll ye shall lete them abyde in this cyte  
And not to sende hem in to the felde / Wherfore sayd  
hercules . Euander answerd and said for as moche as  
whan we sende oute our bestes / We knowe not where 15  
they become . They ben stolen and dryuen awaye And  
we can not knowe who ben the robbours / oure seruantes  
ben murdrid . the howses ben brent . the peple that  
shold laboure in the felde ben slayn . the women and  
maydens ben villonyed and put to shame . And we 20  
cannot remedye hit . ffor we can not haue knowleche  
of the Actours ne doars therof . wherfore some men  
faye and wole mayntene . that they ben the goddes that  
thus punyssh vs for oure synnes . wherfore I pray you  
late your bestes abide in this cyte to thende that they ben 25  
not robbed . Syre sayd hercules ye recounte and telle  
to me a grete meruayll . I beleue well that tho thinges  
that ye faye ben veritable . But this notwithstanding  
syn that the goddes haue faued hem vnto this day . they  
shall kepe them yet yf hit plese them . ffor yf they will 30  
haue them . also well they will take them in the cyte

as in the felde And yf ther be a robbeur or thief in the  
 contre that will take hem away / I suppoſe I ſhall fynde  
 hym And ſhall make ytalye quyte of hym : With theſe  
 wordes hercules ſente his beſtes in to the paſture / and  
 5 there leſte hem wyth oute ony kepars / the day paſſid  
 ouer the nyght cam / In this nyght cacus yſſued oute of  
 his caue / And wente in to the Contrey for to pylle and  
 robbe yf he myght fynde ony proye . Thus as he that  
 is vnhappy ſecheth euyll / In the ende he is paid attones  
 10 for his trespaces . The vnhappy aventure broughte hym  
 in to the medowe . where as paſtured the oxen and  
 kyen of hercules / hit was nyghe the morenyng / he had  
 with hym his thre wyues / Aſſone as he ſawe the beſtes  
 by the lyght of the mone that ſhone cleer / he knewe hem  
 15 Anone he was all abaffhid . and his blood changed  
 in his viſage . and not wyth oute caufe . ffor ſodaynly  
 alle his ſorowes began to ryſe in hym and cam to the  
 quyknes of the herte . that he coude not ſpeke . His wy-  
 uys ſeeyng that he ſpake no word / And that he beheld  
 20 the beſtes / As all awondred . cam to hym And deman-  
 ded hym whaat he had / Alas anſwerd Cacus ſyn  
 hyt is ſo that ye muſte nedes knowe / I telle yow for  
 certaynte that alle the ſorowe of the world aryſeth in  
 my ſtomacke : and environneth myn herte . ffor I ſee  
 25 here the Oxen of the Tryumphe of myn Enemye Her-  
 cules And in beholdyng them . ſo renewe in me the loſſes  
 that I haue had by hym . and the honeurs & worſhippis  
 that he hath maad me for to leſe / And alſo the royames  
 that he hath taken away fro me / And the grete myſerye  
 30 that I am now in / He muſte nedes be here by in ſome  
 place . Curſyd be hys comynge : ffor I wote neuer

what to doo but in signe of vengeance I shall flee his oxen and his kyen :

**W**Han the thre susters had herd that Cacus forowd . they counceyllid hym that he shold not flee the bestes . Sayng that yf he slewe 5 hem . hercules shold lese no thyng . for he shold ete them hit were better sayd his wyf that ye take and lede away as many as ye may And brynge them in to our caue . ffor yf ye do soo . hercules shall haue damage and displayfir / And ye shall haue plaisir and prouffit / Ca- 10 cus beleuyd that his wyf sayd to hym . yet he loked in the medowe all aboutes yf ony man had ben there to kepe them . but he fonde no man ne woman . And than he cam to the bestes . And toke eighte of the beste that he coude chese foure oxen and foure kyen After he bonde 15 them to geder with a corde by the taylles / And put the corde aboute his nekke / and drewe hem so in that manyer vnto his caue / how well that the bestes resisted strongly to goo backward in that manyere / Cacus brought in this manyere reculyng & goyng backward 20 all tho bestes that he staall / to thende þ' no man shold folowe hym by the traches of the feet of the bestes : .

**W**Han he had putte in his caue the bestes of hercules as said is . he shette the doore so well . that a man shold neuer haue knowen ne parcey- 25 uyd that there had ben ony dore . Than wenyng that he had ben sewer he layd hym doun and slepte / Anone after the sonne rysing . and that hit was day / hercules that desired moche to here tydynges of his bestes arose vp / and dide so moche that the kyng Euander brought 30 hym vnto the place where as his oxen and kyen were

Whan they were comen in to the medowe /hercules fonde  
that hym lacked foure oxen & as many kyen . wherfore  
he was fore troblid . And for to knowe yf the goddes  
had taken them . or ony theuys had stolon them . He co-  
5 manded that they shold aspye alle aboute the medowe /  
And see yf the traches or thempryntes of the feet of the  
bestes myght be seen or knowen . At his comandemēt oon  
and other began to seche / Some there were that behelde  
toward the mounte auentyn . And fonde the paas and  
10 foot of the oxen . but them thoughte that by that paas  
that the bestes were descended fro the mount for to come  
in to the medowe / Whan alle they had fought longe /  
And sawe that they fonde no thyng they maad their  
reporte vnto hercules and said to hym . that they cowde  
15 not perceyue on no syde where these oxen were yssued  
out / And that on no syde theycoude fynde none ensignes  
ne tokenes of bestes goyng out of the pasture / But right  
well sayd oon I haue founde the paas & feet of certayn  
oxen and kyen that ben descended from this mountaigne  
20 in to this medowe / Whan hercules herde saie that fro the  
montaigne were comen oxen in to the medowe . He cal-  
led euander / And demanded hym what peple dwellid  
on the montaigne : Euander sayd to hym that ther on  
ne dwellid man ne beste . And that the montaygne  
25 was Inhabited / Hercules wold goo to see the paas /  
and wente theder / And hym thoughte well that theder  
myght haue passid eyghte grete bestes in that nyght /  
.For the traces of the feet were grete and newe / Than  
hee wold wete where they were become / But he fonde  
30 well that the foot of the bestes toke theyr ende there as  
they pastured / He was than ryght fore esmeruayllid

for as moche as there were no strange bestes . And began to thenke / whan he had a lityll thoughte he behelde the mounte . he said hit muste nedes bee that the goddes haue rauysshed my oxen / or ellis that ther is a thief in this montaigne . that is come and hath stolen hem / And 5 hath ledde hem away reculyng backward . But for as moche as I haue lasse suspecion to the goddes than vpon the thief / I shall neuer departe from hens vnto the tyme that I haue serched this montaigne from oon side to an other . ffor my herte Iugeth me that the bestes 10 ben here. &c : .

**W**ith this conclusion hercules didedo take diuerse calues that were there and maad hem to faste tyll none . This whyle duryng he sente for his harnoys and armes by philotes . and adoubed & made 15 hym redy to fighte / Anone after mydday as the calues began to crye and blete for hunger he dide than them to be brought aboute the montaygne . Than as they passid by the place where the caue was and cryed . hyt happend that the kyen that were in the caue herde them / 20 And answerd cryyng so lowde that the sowne passid by the hoolis of the caue . and cam to the eeres of the caues and also of hercules and of other / whan hercules herde the crye of his kyen . He abood there . his calues began to crye agayn . But his kyen cryed no more . for 25 cacus by force of their cryes was awaked . And as he that allway doubted for to be accused roose vp and cutte the throtes of the kyen . The calues than naturelly knowyng their moders cryed sore lowde and brayed as they that desired the mylk for to lyue by . how be hit 30 they coude not so lowde crye / that her moders answerd

them . herof meruaylled moche hercules . Than he appro-  
chid the mounthe and wente vnto the place where hym  
femed that he had herde the kyen . And was there well  
thre owres seechyng yf he coude fynde ony hoole or caue  
5 or reduyte / But how be it that he passid many tymes  
the entree of the caue / he coude neuer perceyue hit Some  
sayd that the bruyt and brayyng that they had herde of  
the kyen . was comen of Illusion / The other sayd that  
hercules loste his labour and payne And prayd hym to  
10 leue to seke ony more / for they thoughte it not recouera-  
ble . In the ende whan hercules had herd oon and other  
and sawe that he myght not come to the ende of his de-  
fire . In a grete anger he toke in both Armes a grete tree  
that grewe there / And shoke hit thre tymes with so grete  
15 force / that at the thirde tyme he ouerthrewe hit rote and  
alle in fuche wyse that the roote that cam oute of the  
erthe maad a right grete large hoole so parfounde / and  
depe / that the botom of the caue was seen playnly : .

20 **W**Han hercules sawe the grete hoole that the root  
of the tree had maad . He was ryght Ioyous  
and glad / and sayd . Trewly hit is here that the  
grete thief dwellith / I muste see yf he be here and what  
marchantes enhabite in this place / In fayyng these wor-  
des hercules bowed down hys heed and beheld on the  
25 oon side of the caue where he sawe cacus . Assone as he  
sawe the thief He knew hym anone / wherof he was  
more Ioyous than he was to fore and escryed hym / Ca-  
cus I see thee / Thou haste to fore this tyme troblyd the  
Royames of hesperye by Innumerable delyctes and  
30 grete synnes that thou madeste openly and apperte .  
This was the cause of the pardicion of thy feignourye /

Now thou tröblest the ytaliens by tyrannyes hyd &  
 vnknownen / I knowe thy lyf / Thou mayste not denye  
 hit ne forsake hit / Hit behoueth that thou dye therfore  
 And that I make the ytalyens franke and free of thyn  
 horrible & odious thestes · O curfid man yf thy Crow- 5  
 nes . thy diademes . thy septres . thy bruytes / thy ryall  
 men myghte not focoure the / why than and wherfore  
 arte thou wrappid in synnes And amendest the not ne  
 correcte the for the pugnycion that thou hast suffred / but  
 yet in the stede and place that thou sholdest dispose the 10  
 to that / that apperteyneth to a kyng & a prynce / thou  
 haste ben a theef . In stede to do Iustyce thou haste ben a  
 murderer / and a putter in of fyre to brenne villages and  
 howses And where thou sholdest haue kept and sauyd  
 women . thou hast defowled them and don hem vilon- 15  
 nye . O kaytyf kyng / with oute coniuryng or pynng  
 of the . certes I see well that thou art he that the ytaly-  
 ens knowe not that thou hast perfecuted hem . Thy ma-  
 lyce hath ben grete and thy subtylte / whan vnto thys  
 day thou were neuer accused . And hast doon a grete 20  
 thyng . But hit is not so grete / ner hast not so hidde the  
 but thou arte right nyghe perill / ffor thou shalt yelde to  
 me agayn my oxen . And ffinably thou shalt put me to  
 deth / or thou shalt deye by my hand . And thou shalt  
 not escape by rennyng ne by thy subtyll fyres . 25

**W**Han Cacus vnderstode this sentence : he was  
 strongly affrayed . neuerthelesse he lyfte vp his  
 hede And seeyng that he was founde by hercu-  
 les the man of the world that he moste hatid . he sayd  
 to hym / Alas hercules man all corrupted with coue- 30  
 tyse . what curfid fortune hath made the to drawe oute



the tree wherof the parfonde and depe rootes hath disco-  
uerid the repofayll of kynge Cacus late regnyng / But  
now pryued fro regnyng & bannyfshid fro all worldly  
profperite . Suffifeth not to the / that I may haue the  
5 chierte of my naturell goodes . whan thou haft taken  
alle away fro me . And that hit is force that I lyue  
of robberye and proye / Wherof the culpe and synne  
ought to redonde vpon the / Why fuffrest thou not me to  
lyue & drawe forth the refidue of my poure lyf / amonge  
10 the ftones amonge the rokkes . and amonge the wor-  
mes of the erthe . Confidere now what thou hafte do  
to this kynge / And feke hym no more . thou hafte hurted  
and greuyd hym ynowhe / Hercules anwerd / Cacus  
yf thou were in the abyfmes of wrecchidnes and myfe-  
15 ryes . thy demerytes wole accuse the / And I am ryght  
fory and dolant to fee a kyng in fo hountous and fha-  
mefull eftate . But whan thou canfte not Aourne thy  
dayes paffid ne thefe prefente with one only good dede  
What remedye / thou haft dayly exercyfed tyrannye as  
20 well in profperyte as in aduerfite . I wote well that  
thou art the newe perfecutour of the ytaliens / And that  
thy hand is all fowll of their blood . I feke the not / ne  
the ytalyens can faye no thyng of the . And for as moche  
as they complayne not of the . to their preiudyce . This  
25 tree hath fpoken for them . And by hys rootes he hath  
discouerd thyn enbufshe : So behoueth hyt that thou  
chefe . wheder thou wilt come and fyght with me here  
in the Ayer / at large . or ellis that I come and affaylle  
the there with Inne : ffor yf hit be to me poffible I fhall  
30 delyuere the world of thy tyrannyes &c

**B**y this answer cacus knewe that ther was no  
 respite in his feet / Than he supposid to saue hym  
 as he had doon afore tyme And maad by his  
 crafte so grete a smoke and fumee / that hit semed come  
 oute of the hoole that the tree had maad . that hit had 5  
 ben a right pytte of helle . And this fumee was larded  
 with flames brennyng as meruayll . ffor this fumee  
 hercules abandoned neuer cacus / but leep in to the caue  
 in the myddell of the flames and fumee as he that was  
 maistre of this crafte / and was anone pourueyed of 10  
 remedies that therto apperteined / And wente hym  
 playnly and assaylled Cacus in suche wyse as he  
 felte no fumee ne enpeffement . And than he gaf hym  
 so grete a strook vpon the helme with his clubbe / that  
 he maad hym to hurtle his heed ayenst oon of the wal- 15  
 lis of the caue . Cacus with the resseyuyng of this stro-  
 ke . lete the fumee disgorge out of his stomach . Se-  
 eyng that by that maner he coude not escape . And toke  
 his right grete axe that stode by hym for to deffende hym  
 with / Hercules suffrid hym to take his axe . Cacus 20  
 smote vpon hym ffor the caue was not large . they fou-  
 ght longe therein . vnto the rescous of cacus cam the thre  
 susters that made grete sorowe And casted stonnes vpon  
 hercules in grete habondance And wepte bitterly . These  
 thre damoyfelles louyd fore well cacus . Hercules & 25  
 cacus fought more than a longe oure wyth oute cessing  
 At the ende of the oure . they were bothe so fore chau-  
 ffid that they muste reste them Than cacus toke in hym  
 a grete pryde . ffor he was stronge of body And hym se-  
 med whan he restid that hercules was not so stronge 30  
 as he had ben afore tymes . And that he myght neuer

vaynquyffhe hym / for as moche as he had not ouer-  
come hym at the begynnyng / By this presumption he  
demanded of hercules yf he wold achieue the batayll  
wyth oute the caue / Hercules answerd that he was  
5 contente . With this answer cacus toke away the stone  
that fhette the caue and wente oute . And in goyng  
oute after hym . hercules espied hys kyen that were ded  
in a Corner / And his oxen that were bounden by the  
mosels vnto a piler / he was fory whan he sawe hys  
10 kyen in that poynt . Neuertheles he passid forth and  
pourfiewed cacus / that racchid oute his armes And  
maad hym redy / And sayd to hym . thou curfid theef  
thou haste doon to me grete displayfir to haue slayn my  
kyen / ye curfid theef thou thy self answerd cacus / yet  
15 haste thou doon to me more displayfir / to haue slayn my  
men and taken away my Royames . thou art only cul-  
pable of the euyll that I haue doon and of the deth of thy  
kyen / I wold hit plesyd the goddes that I had the as  
well in my mercy . as I had them . be thou sewer that  
20 thou sholdest neuer take away Royame fro no mān  
And now late vs achieue oure batayll : At these wor-  
des Hercules and Cacus smote eche other right fore  
and by grete felonnye / their strokes cleuyd to their har-  
noys . and fowned . At this fownyng the kyng euan-  
25 der & the grekes cam to the bataill for to see hit . whiche  
they maad to fore thentre of the Caue : Where as were  
the thre susters passyng desolate : Cacus enforced hym  
wyth alle his puyffance . ffor he sawe hit was tyme  
thoo or neuer to shewe and put forth all that he myght  
30 He handled his axe right myghtly And well was hym  
nede so to doo . He was harde & boyfous . he gaf many

a strook to hercules . And hym femed otherwhile that  
 he sholde confounde hym vnto the depe abyfme of the  
 erthe / But hercules on his fyde faylled not yf he had  
 ftronge partye ayenft hym . He was alfo fstronge at  
 auenant and more fstronge certayn than was good for 5  
 the helthe of cacus / he smote neuer cacus but he tornd  
 the eyen in his heed . or made hym to ftoupe or knele on  
 that oon fide or that other or goo aback fhamefully /  
 This batayll by longe duryng anoyed the beholdars  
 they fought eche other and taffted harde on bothe fides 10  
 .Fynably they did fo moche that hit was nede to reffe  
 them And that all their bodies fwette all aboutes / than  
 hercules fawe that yet was not the pryfe gyuen / And  
 that the nyght approched he had grete fhame in hym  
 felf . that he had hold fo longe batayll . Than he began 15  
 to feche cacus fo nyghe . and redowblid his strokes by  
 fuche vigour vpon cacus fo fierfly . that at lafte he bare  
 hym down to the ground all afonyed And made hym  
 to lefe his axe And fyn toke of his helme . The thre fuf-  
 ters fledde than in to a forefte named Octa all full of 20  
 teeris and of cryes . Many grekes wold haue gon af-  
 ter . But hercules made hem to retorne . After he callid  
 the kyng Euander and his folk and faid to the kyng  
 Syre lo here is he that was wonte to troble the ytaly-  
 ens . by fecrete murdres / conuerte theftes / & vnknowen 25  
 defowlyng of women . gyue no more fufpecion to the  
 goddes / Lo here is the menyfter and doar of thife trespa-  
 ces / I haue entencion to punyffhe hym . Not only after  
 his deferte . but vnto the deth : .

**E**Vander anfwerd to hercules and fayd / Prynce 30  
 excellent & worthy aboue alle worthy exceffiuely

And the moſte beſte accompliſhid of all men flouryſ-  
ſhyng in armes . What reuerence is to the due / that is  
not only humayne reuerence / But that reuerence that is  
of dyuyne nature / I beleue aſſewridly that thou art a  
5 godde / or the ſone of a godde / or ellis a man deyfied .  
Thou in eſpeciall haſte ſeen more in a momente . than all  
the eyen in generall of all the ytalyens haue ſeen . not  
only in one yere . but in an honderd yere . O the ſone of  
noble men and the ſtock of reluyſing and ſhynyng of glo-  
10 ryous feetes & dedes / how may we thanke the and gyue  
the lawde for the deſerte of this grete werke / Thou by  
bryght and ſhynyng labour haſt diſcombred vs of der-  
kenes and haſte gyuen vs lyght of clerenes . thou haſte  
more achieuyd than the grete tourbes and all the aſſem-  
15 bles and men of armes of ytalyens ſholde haue conne  
doo . And haſte gooten more tryumphe in chaſtyfyng of  
this geant paſſing terryble . than we the conne gyue re-  
ward . Truly yf thou be not a godde . Thou haſte of the  
goddes their ſynguler grace / I promyſe to the in remem-  
20 brance of this labour / to do ediffie a ſolempne temple in  
my cyte where thou ſhalt haue an awter / And vpon the  
awter ſhall be thy representacion of ſyn gold . And the  
representacōn of this tyrant / in ſhewyng how thou haſt  
vaynquyſhid hym to thende that our heyres and ſuccef-  
25 ſours in tyme comyng may haue therof knowleche : .

**D**Vryng theſe wordes Cacus releuyd hym that  
was aſtonyed of the ſtrook that he had receyuid  
And wende to haue fledd . But hercules ranne  
after & retayned hym And embraced hym in his armes  
30 ſo harde þ<sup>t</sup> he myght not meue And brought hym agayn  
And bare hym vnto a depe pytte that was in the caue

where he had caste in all ordures and filthe / hercules  
cam vnto this fowle pytte that the grekes had founden  
And planted cacus there Inne . his heed downward  
from on hye vnto the ordure benethe / Than the ytaliens  
cam aboute the pitte and caste so many stons vpon hym 5  
that he deyde there myserably . Suche was the ende of  
the poure kynge Cacus . he deyde in a hooll full of or-  
dure and of styngkynge filthe . Whan the kynge Euan-  
der sawe that he was ded by the consente of hercules he  
dide hym be drawen oute of the pytte . And dide hym be 10  
born in to his cyte . where as hercules was receyuyd so  
tryumphantly that no man can reherce . The feste was  
grete that nyght in the palays of kynge euander / And  
passid hit with grete loye / On the morn the kyng euan-  
der made to sette forth the body in the comyn regard and 15  
fight of all the peple . And afterward ordeyned cer-  
tayn folke therto propice and necessarye to do carye &  
shewe this myserable corps or body in all the cytees  
where he had doon harme . And for to counte and re-  
herce to them his lyf : What shall I make longe reher- 20  
sayll / Whan the body was shewed in the cyte of kyng  
euander They that had the gouernance therof bare hit in  
to dyuerce places . And all way they preifid hercules / In  
the nouelte of this victorye the kynge Euander maad  
to begynne the temple that he had promysed to hercules 25  
And requyred hercules that he wold abide there in that  
contrey vnto the tyme . that his temple shold be full  
maad and performed . hercules behelde that the kyng  
euander dide do laboure in his temple with all diligence  
and agreed to his requeste / for as moche as hym semed 30  
that the temple shold be shortly maad / And some

bookes faye that longe tyme afore the god Mars had  
promyfed to hercules that there shold be a temple made  
vnto hym and for that cause he was come in to ytalye /  
for to wete yf his destynee shold happe or no And whan  
5 the ytaliens herd recounte the birthe of hercules / they be-  
leuyd better that he was the sone of god Iupiter than  
of Amphitryon : .

¶ How the quene of laurence enamoured on hercules /  
And how the kynge Prycus cam in to ytalye with a  
10 grete ooste and sende to desye hercules .

**T**He glorious ffetes of hercules were gretly re-  
comanded in ytalye / as well for that he had  
vaynquysshid the geantes of Cremone as for  
the deth of cacus / So grete was his renomee that du-  
15 ryng the edificacion of his temple / all maner peple cam  
theder for to see hym . And made to hym dyuyne honours  
Namyng hym the sone of god Iupiter / the kynges & the  
lordes cam to hym for to gyue hym yestes and ryche pre-  
sentes . Amonge alle other the quene of Laurence cam  
20 theder fro her cyte with many Chares and charyottis  
Chargid and laden with many Iewellis and presentid  
them to hercules : Hercules resseyuyd in to his grace this  
quene and her presentes And thankid her gretly / This  
quene had to name .Facua . And was wyf of the  
25 kynge .Fanus sone of the kynge pricus the sone of Sa-  
turne . She was yonge fressh . tendre and replete of  
lustynes . She had not seen kynge fanus her husbond  
in foure yere . ffor he was goon in to a ferre Contre And  
was not in alle this tyme come agayn / So hit happend  
30 syn that she fyrste began to take hede and beholde hercules  
and auyse hym well / she began to desire his conuersacōn

And she began to loue hym so sore & certaynly / that  
 she coude not torne her eyen ner her thought vpon none  
 other thyng but vpon hercules / In the beholdyng and  
 seeyng hym . she said in her herte / that he was the moste  
 welfaryng man and vpright with oute comparifon 5  
 that euer she sawe . and that of right mē shold gyue  
 hym laude and preyfing / sayyng more ouer that her se-  
 med that alle her herte was enuolupid with the fyre  
 of his loue / many pensees & thoughtis fill than in her en-  
 tendement . Now awakyd and quykenyd with a lo- 10  
 yous spyrite And este sone all penyf . she passid the  
 first day that she cam in this maner with hercules / whan  
 she was withdrawen for to reffe / she leyde her down on  
 a bedde all clothid And there she began to ymagyne the  
 beaulte of hercules by so ardante desires / that she coude 15  
 not abstayne her fro wepyng And sore wisshid after  
 hym . wherof the ende was suche . that after many an  
 ymagynacion aboute the gray morenyng / she began  
 to saie vnto her self / O ffortune what man / what prince  
 what kynge hast thou brought in to this contrey / This 20  
 is not a kynge like other / This is an ymage singuler &  
 lyke as the goddes had made hym by nature to excede  
 and tryumphe aboue all her other subtyll werkis and  
 labours . Alle glorye shyneth in hym not only by hys  
 proygne prowesse . but by his symple and sacrid per- 25  
 feccion corporell / to whiche may be made no comparifon  
 O clere ymage amonge the nobles . who is she that se-  
 eyng his eyen / that of oon only sight shall not haue her  
 herte thurgh pershid / who is she that shall not coueyte  
 and desire his grace / The moste ewreus of alle happy 30  
 Well fortuneted shall he bee . that may gete his good



will / he is humble . fayr / playfant and lawhyng / he  
is a Trefour / O dere trefour Lyke as the gold passith  
all other maner metallis semblably he passith all other  
werkis of nature in all prosperitees . how than shall I  
5 not loue hym . As longe as I shall lyue his name shall  
remayne wretton in my memorye And his beaulte shall  
not be forgotten . but remayne for a fouenance eternell .

**G** Rete were than the preysinges that facua sayd  
of hercules She forgate anone the kynge fanus  
10 and put hym all in oubliance for the loue of her-  
cules / She was there a certayn space of tyme . and al-  
way thoughte on hercules . Hercules that thoughte no  
thyng on her made vnto her no semblant ne signe of loue  
How be it he deuyfid ofte tyme with her And with  
15 the wyf of the kynge euander named Carmente / the  
more he deuyfid with hem the more was facua in grete  
payne by theschauffing of loue / Some tyme she losse  
her manyere and contenānce . But certayn she coueryd  
hit and hid hit so well that no man toke hede of hyt .  
20 Than whan she had ben there eyghte dayes in berynge  
suche greuous payne / and she sawe that hercules coude  
not see the loue that she had to hym . ffor to come to the  
ende of her desyre / she cam on a day to hercules . And  
humbly requyred hym . that he wold come and take the  
25 pacyence of her hows for to passe the tyme . whilis the  
kynge Euander performed hys temple / Hercules acor-  
ded and agreed vnto her requeste / wherof she had  
right grete Ioye in her self . They than disposyd them for  
to goo vnto Laurence . they toke leue than of the kynge  
30 euander and of the quene / And toke theyr way / Thus

than gooyng hercules was alway by the fyde of facua  
they deuyfed of many thynges by the waye . And all-  
way facua had her amorous eyen fixed on the regard  
of hercules / that at lafte hercules began to take hede / and  
fayd to her all fofter . Lady ye do me grete worship to 5  
brynge me in to your hous . Alas fyre anwerd facua  
I do to yow no thyng but payne . how well I haue not  
the power to fefte yow and make yow chier as I fayn  
wold . Lady fayd hercules the good chiere that ye do  
to me . is to me agreable / that fro hens forth ye bynde 10  
myn herte for to will fulfill your will in fuche wyfe  
that ther is no thyng that ye will / but I shall accom-  
pliffhe hit at your comandement after my power . as  
to the moſte beſte accompliffhid lady that is in the occi-  
dent / .Facua with theſe wordes began to ſmyle and 15  
anwerd Syre I haue nothyng doon for yow . and ye  
are not ſo beholden to me as ye ſaie . how be it I thanke  
yow for your good word And therof I hold me right  
ewrous and happy . that the moſte ewrous man of all  
men daygneth to accompanye oon ſo pour a lady as I 20  
am . Lady anwerd hercules I ſhall not take that to  
my prouffit that I am the moſte ewrous of men . ffor  
ther ben many better addreſſid than I am . But certes  
the more ye ſpeke the more ye make me ſubgette .  
And ſyn ye do to me ſo grete honour I requyre yow as 25  
moche as I may that I may be your knyght And that  
ye take power ouer me to comande me to do your will  
and plaiſir / Syre faid facua wole ye that hit be ſoo .  
lady anwerd hercules alas ye / I ſhall not comande  
yow fayd facua . but I ſhall gyue yow ouer me as 30  
moche of ſeygnourye and lordſhippe as hit ſhall pleaſe

yow to take . Hercules with that same word wold  
fayn haue kyssed the lady And had doon hit ne had ben  
the worshipp of her / whiche he wold kepe . They had  
knowhe of other deuyses / .Fro that day forth hercules  
5 entented to plese the lady more than he had don to fore  
And shortly he acquaintid so with her and she with  
hym . that they laye to geder secretly . And he begate on  
her a sone that afterward was named latyne / Whiche  
was afterward of grete gouernement .

10 **D**Vryng these thynges / Whilis hercules and  
facuahad this good tyme in laurence . Tydynges  
cam that the kynge fanus was comyng / ffacua  
thatthan began firste to Ioye in the loue of hercules / was  
passyng sory and heuy. . whan she herde these tydynges .  
15 ffior she had strongly fyxed her herte on hercules . So-  
daynly the teris mounted vp in to her eyen . And all be-  
wepte she cam in to a chambre where as hercules was  
She toke hym aparte and said to hym . Alas my loue  
I trowe I shall dye for sorowe . Lady sayd hercules  
20 wherfore : for so moche sayd she as my husbond the  
kynge fanus cometh home / Hit is foure yere a goo syn I  
herd of hym I had supposid he had ben ded : but he is not  
His herbegeours & fourriers ben comen to fore and saye  
that he shall soope herein thys day / Alas what euyll  
25 aventure is this / we muste nedes nowdeparte . And oure  
comynycacion shall faille . with this worde the lady en-  
braced hercules & fill doun a swowne in his lappe / Her-  
cules toke her vp & comforted her the beste wife hecoude  
And sayd to her that syn hit is so that she was ma-  
30 rryed / that hit was reson that she abode styll wyth her  
husbond / What someuer hercules sayd vnto the lady

she coude not kepe her from wepyng ne bewayling her  
loue / their bewaylingis were grete . In þ<sup>e</sup> ende she wente  
in to her chambre And dryed her eyen and brake her a-  
noyous corage as moche as she coude / In arayng and  
apparayllyng her in fuche wise as she had ben Ioyous 5  
and glad of the comyng of her hufbond . that cam fone  
after and entrid in to his cyte with grete bruyt .

**H**ercules and facua wente agaynst the kynge fa-  
nus . Whan the kynge fanus sawe hercules / he  
dide to hym as moche honour and worship as he coude 10  
doo / ffor as moche as he had herd faie and was aduer-  
tyfed of the armes that he had doo ayenst the geantes of  
cremone . and ayenst cacus . And thankyd hym for  
so moche as he was come in to his cyte / ffor conclusion  
hercules abode there foure dayes after that fanus was 15  
comen home . on the fyfthe day he confydered that he  
myght no more en Ioye in his loue / And that he dide no  
thyng there but lose his tyme / he toke leue of the kyng  
fanus and of the quene facua . And retorned vnto the  
hows of the kynge Euander / where he helde hym and 20  
abode vnto the tyme that his temple was maad and  
accompliffhid . Aboute the confommacion of this tem-  
ple And herould of Calidoine cam vnto hercules and fig-  
nified to hym that the kynge prycus cam agaynst hym  
with a grete puyffance of men of armes . for to auenge 25  
the blood of cacus his cofyn . And Inposed to hercules  
that he had with oute cause & cruelly put to deth one so  
noble a kynge as cacus was / And yet sayd to hym  
more that yf he wolde susteyne the contrarye . that on  
the morn erly . he shold fynde the kynge prycus in the 30  
same place where the blood of kyng cacus was shedde

And there by mortall batayll by puyffance ayenst puyffance he wold preue hit trewe that he sayd .

**W**Han hercules had well herde / that the kynge  
pricus had signefyed to hym / He had his herte  
5 all full of Ioye . And answerd to the herauld  
that the deth that he had made cacus to deye was a werke  
of Iustyce . And that vpon that quarell / he wold fur-  
nyssh by batayll the kynge pricus at the oure and place  
that he had sayd / After this answer thus made Hercu-  
10 les gaf vnto the herauld his gowne that he ware / And  
dyde hym to be fested right well sayng þ<sup>t</sup> he had brought  
hym tydynges of plaifance / Whan the herauld had had  
good chiere and well festyd as hercules had comanded  
He returned vnto the kynge pricus And tolde hym that  
15 hercules had answerd to hym . and that he shold haue  
on the morn the batayll . The kynge pricus that supposid  
to haue alle wonne by auantage for he had in his Oost  
moo than thretty thousand men . thanked the goddes of  
these tydynges . And cam & loggid hym the same nyght  
20 nyghe vnto the mounte Auentyn / vpon the Ryuer of  
tybre / He maad hym redy for to doo his batayll . And  
semblably dyde hercules / eche man on his fyde thought  
on hys werkes . The nyght passid ouer / And than  
on the morn as fone as hyt began to dawe the kynge  
25 pricus and hercules began to fowne theyr grete tabours  
And wyth that fowne theyr men put them in Armes  
to a poynt . And after rengid them in bataylle : And  
so they cam bothe partyes as well that one as that  
other in the same place where the blood of kynge cacus  
30 hadd ben shedd &c : .

¶ How hercules fought ayenst the kynge pricus in batayll and how he fledde in to his cyte . where hercules allone slewe hym and many moo with hym .

**A** Boute fyue of the clock in the morenyng / Hercules and pricus assemblid at the batayll / fro  
5  
as fer as pricus sawe hercules he made a meruayllous crye / With this crye alle the calidoniens began to renne ayenst hercules and maad so grete bruyt / that hit semed that there was not peple ynowhe in all the world for them . But certayn lyke as a small rayne 10 abatyth or leyth down a grete wynde / In lyke wise hercules allone layd down their ouer grete booste and bruyt ffor affone as he sawe his enemyes renne ayenst hym aboute a quarter of a myle / he departed fro his bataill that was well sette in ordynance . And after that he 15 had comanded his folk that they shold not haste for no thyng / He began to renne ayenst the calidoniens so swyftely not lyke an hors / but lyke an herte that no man myght ouertake . The kynge euander was all abasshid for to see in hercules so grete legierte & swiftenes / Pricus and the calidoniens whan they sawe hym meue from the oost . they had supposed that hit had ben an hors or some other beste / In the ende whan hercules was come nyghe to them by the space of a bowe shote / they knewe that hit was hercules . where of they were 25 fore abasshid of his comyng . Pricus escryed his men vpon hym / They shotte arowes and casted dartes and speres vpon hercules ayenst all the partyes of his body neuerthelasse they coude neuer perssue ne entre in to the skyn of the lyon / ne he neuer rested till he had parfurnysshid his course And put hym amonge his enemyes 30

so myghtely that confoundyng all to fore hym lyke as  
a tempeste or thonder / he wente in to the myddes of the  
oost there as was the chief banyere of the kynges pryus .

5 **H**ercules abood and restid there . and began to  
smyte and leye on vpon that one side & that other  
And to dye his swerd with the blood of the ca-  
lidoniens / his swerd was so hevy that no man myght  
susteyne hit Hit forfruffhid all that hit arought . Hit  
maad the place reed / where as the blood of cacus was  
10 shedd / of blode vpon blode and of ded men vpon ded .  
Than was not the shame & deth of kynges cacus vengid .  
but augmentid vpon the perfonnes of his frendes in ha-  
bondance of slaughter and of occision . The crye aroose  
gretly aboute hercules / he brake and all to rente the ba-  
15 nyers and the recognyffances of the calidoniens and of  
her conductours / ther was there none so hardy but he  
withdrewe . And ther was there none so well affew-  
ryd but he was aserd & tremblid / All the beste and har-  
diest fledde a fore hym . Than he made as he wold with  
20 his enemyes . Theseus Euander and other cam than vnto  
the bataylle . At the recountre ther was many a spere bro-  
ken many an hawberc and many a helme broken and  
many a knyght smyten in peces . The calidoniens were  
in grete nombre / And ther were many of them stronge  
25 and myghty / The bataylle was ryght stronge and  
myghty and fyers / The kynges Pricus put hym furth  
a fore vpon the grekes / And wrought wyth his hand  
right cheuaulerously : And hercules and theseus dide  
worthyly and digne of memorye / they ranne fro renge  
30 to renge / And they difrengyd theyr enemyes / They  
hardyed and encoraged theyr men . And shewyd to

them how they shold doo . their feetes and dedes were so grete that hit is Impossible to recounte and telle . And that in lityll tyme they put their enemyes in dispayr / What shall I faye all the discomfiture was in the calydoniens / ffor by force of armes they abode vpon the felde 5 the moſte parte . And than whan the kyng pricus ſawe that his peple myghte no more fyghte . And that he loſte on all ſides And that fortune was ayenſt hym in all poyntes . After that he had ſore labourid and that he had nede of reſte / he withdrewe hym of the prees 10 And ſowned the retrayte / And with the ſowne alle the calidoniens tornyd the back and fledde after the kyng pricus : .

**W**Han hercules ſawe that the calidonyens withdrewe them . He maad in ſemblable wiſe hys 15 grekes to withdrawe them . Not for ony nede that they had . but for to ſhewe to their enemyes that they wold well that they reſte them . In this wiſe the bataill ceſſed wenyng to hercules that the calidoniens ſhould reaſſemble on the morn whan they had reſtid hem 20 They withdrewe hem ſome here and ſome there . the day paſſid the nyght cam on / Than the kyng pricus aſſemblid his folk And ſhewid vnto them their loſſe And the ſtrength and myght of the grekes and in eſpeciall of hercules / After he ſaid to them . that they might 25 no thyng conquer vpon them . And that they coude no wyſelier doo than to withdrawe hem and to retorne in to their contrey . The calidonyens that dredd hercules more than the deth or tempeſt or thonder of the heuen had grete Ioye whan they vnderſtode the will of kyng 30 pricus / And anſwerd all with one acord that they



were redy to put them on the waye / With this anſwer  
they were concluded that they ſhold leue their tentes  
their cartes and Armourſ . for to goo lightly and more  
ſecretly / After this they toke their way after their con-  
5 cluſion . paas by paas they wente their waye with oute  
makyng bruyt or noyſe / And dide ſo moche this nyght  
that on the morn they were ferre fro hercules . After thys  
on the morne whan hercules had eſpied that they were  
ſledde . He and his men pourſiewid after ſwyftly / how  
10 be hit they coude not ouertake them / for to ſpede the ma-  
tere . the kynge pricus returned in to calidoine / Hercules  
pourſiewid hym in to his Cyte whiche was ſtronge  
of wallis And aſſiegid hym . Duryng this ſiege ther  
was neuer calidonien that durſt come out Hercules ofte  
15 tyme aſſaultid the cyte . but he loſte his tyme . finally  
whan he ſawe that he coude gete ne wyne vpon his ene-  
myes He callid his grekes and ſayd to them . That man  
that ne aduventureth wynneth no thyng / We ſoiourne  
here with oute doying ony thyng digne of memorye /  
20 Oure enemyes comen not out vpon vs / but yf we ſecche  
hem we ſhall neuer haue ende . ſhortly we muſte alle  
wynne or leſe / Wherefore I am aduysed that I ſhall diſ-  
guyſe me / And that I will go vnto the gate And late  
the porters vnderſtand that I haue an erand vnto the  
25 kyng / And here vpon yf I may entre / I will goo vnto  
the kyng / and I ſhall ſo doo yf hit be to me poſſible that  
he ſhal neuer aſſault me more in bataill . And yf hit hap-  
pen that I may ſo doo as I haue deuysed to yow / I will þ<sup>t</sup>  
ye aſſaill þ<sup>c</sup> cyte aſſone as I ſhall be with Inne / to thende  
30 that the calidoniens may haue to do with yow as wel as  
with me / And that I haue hem not all attones vpon me.

**T**Heseus and Euander vnderstode well what  
 that hercules wold doo / they answered that  
 they were redy to obeye all his comandementis  
 And that they wold assaulte the Cyte after his say-  
 yng / Than hercules arayed hym like as he had ben an 5  
 enbassatour . Theseus and the grekes dysposid them  
 for to make the assault / Whan all was redy hercules  
 departed and cam & knockyd on the gate of calidonic /  
 The porters loked out at a litill wyndowe to see who  
 knockyd there . and seeyng that there was but oon 10  
 man in a longe gowne . they opend to hym the gate &  
 axid hym what he wold haue / hercules answered that  
 he sought the kynge / and what wold ye with hym  
 sayd oon of the porters / certes sayd hercules I wold  
 fayn speke vnto his persone / And sayyng these wor- 15  
 des the porters sawe that hercules was armed vnder  
 his gowne / and than at fewe wordes they escryed vp-  
 on hym . and tasted hym before and behynde sayyng  
 that he was a traytre and that he was comen to espye  
 the cyte / Whan hercules sawe hym so feafid of the por- 20  
 tiers / He was there he wold be and had grete Ioye  
 Whiche he couerd vnder symple countenance / and made  
 at the begynnyng semblant that he wold haue fledde  
 a way and escaped / But he employed so lityll of hys  
 strength . that the portiers brought hym vnto the kyng 25  
 pricus / Whiche satte in the halle wyth his doughters &  
 his prynces . And maad to hym the presente . Sayyng  
 Syre lo here is a trayttre . that is entrid in to your cy-  
 te for to espye your puyffance . We haue taken hym . he  
 said that he wold speke vnto your persone / how well 30  
 he is armed vnder this mantell as ye may see . hit is a

ryght euyl tokene . ffor a man desiryng to speke to a  
kyng . shold in no wyfe be armed pryuely ner acouert /

**W**Han the kyng vnderstodeth accusacōn of the por-  
tiers . Whilis they spake he behelde hercules / and  
5 knewe hym . He was so fore aserd that he wist  
not what to saye . Hercules than esvertued hym self  
And putte hym self out of the holdyng of the portiers ·  
castyng them down to the ground so harde & so greuouly  
that they neuer after myght releue hem self / Whan the  
10 calidoniens that were in the halle sawe hym so euyl en-  
tetre the portiers they escryed hercules vnto the deth and  
assaillid hym on all sides . His gowne was than anone  
rente of . In comyng on he receyuyd many a strook / And  
allway he defendid hym without disploiyng of his puyf-  
15 fance and of his strengthe . as he that awayted the ty-  
dynges of the assaute that was nyghe / The affraye  
was grete in the halle and in the cyte on alle parties / the  
calidoniens ranne vnto the palais for to assayll hercules  
The kyng pricus adoubed hym and cam with other vn-  
20 to this affraye / Than was hercules assayllid fierfly .  
But certes this assaute coste dere ynnowh vnto the kyng  
ffor to his bien venue hercules approchid vnto the taber-  
nacle / that stode vpon foure grete barres of yron . wher-  
of he toke that one And bete down the tabernacle / After  
25 he lyfte vp hys Arme wyth the barre / And smote the  
kyng pricus so difmesurably vpon the coppe of his helme  
that not withstandyng hys stronge harnoyes and ar-  
mures : He alle to frussid hym down to the erthe · And  
smote hym so fore frussid and brusid that he fyll down  
30 ded betwene his two portiers.

**A**T this tyme the Crye aroofe grete amonge the  
calidoniens · Not alonly there but also in the cyte  
ffor he that made the wacche fowned to armes  
for as moche as the grekes affailid hastely the wallis  
Calidonie was than terribly troblid . The calidonyens 5  
wifte not where to entende / whether to hercules or to  
the assault . All was full of heedes armed as well in  
the palais as vpon the wallis . After this that hercules  
had slayn the kynge pricus . he began to smyte vpon  
his enemyes . his strokes were grete At eche strook he 10  
flewe two or three / shortly he bare hym there so knightly  
that in lityll while he couerid all the pament of the pa-  
lais with ded bodies of the calidoniens . lyyng oon vp-  
on an other / with oute that ony man myght adomage  
his armour / The calidonyens were of grete corage / & 15  
had grete shame of that / they myght not ouercome her-  
cules · that allone had doon vpon them so grete an em-  
pryse . They affailid hym by grete appetyte And caste  
vpon hym dartes and sharp glayues . His armes and  
his sholdres bare all / And he dide so grete thynges with 20  
his barre And gaf so grete strokes that none of hem  
myght resiste his strength . The pour calidonyens cam the-  
der by grete corage & desire for to venge the deth of their  
kynge / Hercules put so many to deth . that he wifte no-  
wher to sette his foot but vpon calidonyens . Tofore the 25  
gate of the palais was a pyteous noyse of wepyngs  
and of cryes that women and children maad / In the  
ende whan the calidonyens knewe and perceyuyd the  
vertue and strength of hercules and that they labouryd  
in vayn . they cessid to affail hym and fledde / Than her- 30  
cules yssued out of þ<sup>e</sup> palais with his barre all couerd

with blood : Affone as the calidonyens sawe hym they  
escryed vpon hym passyng anguyffhoufly / they assay-  
lyd hym on an newe / they caste stons and dartes vpon  
hym . they shotte Arowes on hym habondantly / as they  
5 that were pourueyed and awayted on his passage / In  
this assault hercules hadd moche to suffre . Alleway  
in receyuyng moo strokes than can be nombred He pas-  
sid the wacche that awayted for to haue slayn hym .  
And restid neuer tyll he cam vnto the gate . .

10 **T**He calidoniens ranne than after hym as men  
without drede of deth . And strongly swollen  
with pryde and yre / began on an newe to smyte  
vpon his sholdres and vpon his back . Whan hercules  
sawe that / he tornd his fface vnto his euyll willars  
15 And smote vpon hem wyth his barre on the right syde  
and on the lyfte syde so radely / that he dyed his barre  
with newe blood / and maulgre his enemye he bete hem  
doun and all to fruffhid hem to fore hym . He made hem  
to recule and goo aback more than fourty paas . And  
20 after cam to the gate And the calidonyens siewed hym  
agayn . but er they cam vpon hym he alle to brack and  
bruffid and to fruffhid the lokkys and the wekettis  
and dores of the gate that the grekes assayllyd wyth  
alle theyr puyffance . and bete doun the draw brygge /  
25 After he callyd the assayllans and they cam vnto hym  
And wyth lityll resistence they entryd the cyte / whiche  
was at that tyme wyth grete occysion of the calydony-  
ens that wold not yelde hem ne putte hem to mercy vn-  
to the tyme that they sawe theyr stretes and howses  
30 full of ded bodyes &c

¶ How hercules was enamoured on yole the daughter of kynge pricus / and how he requyred her of loue and how she acorded vnto hym : .

**B**I this maner was the kynge pricus slayn and his Cyte taken by hercules after the tucion and slaughter / Whan the calidonyens had humelied them . hercules & theseus wente vnto the palays / And they came theder so a poynt / that they fonde the daughters of kynge pricus with their ladyes and damoyelles sechyne the kyng amonge the ded bodyes / There were so many ded bodyes that they coude not fynde ne knowe hym þ<sup>t</sup> they foughte . Hercules at his comyng began to beholde one & other / And soueraynly among all other he caste hys eyen vpon yole the daughter of the kynge / ffor as moche as she was excellently resples-  
dissant in beaulte that in all the world was none like vnto her / Whan he had a lytyll seen her by a secrete comandement of loue He drewe hym vnto her / wenyng for to haue confortd her / Anone as the right defolate damoyfell sawe hercules approchyng vnto her / she  
tremblid for drede and fledde vnto her chambre . The ladyes & the damoyelles folowid her And amonge them so dide hercules . What shall I saye . he entrid in to the chambre where she was And fatte down by her / she wende for to haue ryfen for to haue goon out of the way  
but he helde her by her clothis and said vnto her / Lady ye may not flee my companye / yole spake than & sayd O myferable tyrant what sekeste thou me now for to troble me more . Thou hast slayn my fader / late that suffise the . Madame answerd hercules yf the kynge pricus be dede . hit is reson þ<sup>t</sup> he be not moche bewaylid

ne bewept . ffor he wenyng for to auenge the deth of the  
 tyrant cacus . cam not longe syn for to assayll me in yta-  
 lye . Sayyng that I had vnrightfully & with out cause  
 slayn hym / In fusteynyng the contrarye I fought with  
 5 hym vpon this quarell . the batayll was not ended ne  
 put to vttrance at that tyme : for he withdrewe hym  
 with his peple and cam in to this cyte . and I haue pour-  
 siwid hym hastely / how well I coude not ouertake  
 hym . Whan I sawe that / I leyde my siege aboute this cyte  
 10 He wold not come to achyeue the batayll duryng my  
 siege / I haue this day willid to haue an ende . ffortune  
 hath ben on my side and hath put yow in my puyffance  
 Certes hit muste nedes be that with oute ony remede ye  
 be my ladyand myloue . ffor in seeyng your synguler be-  
 15 aulte . Loue hath constrayned me to be yours / Than I  
 pray yow as afectuouly as I may or can / that ye cesse  
 your sorowe and that ye receyue me as your frende  
 and loue . the more ye wepe the lasse ye gete & wyne  
 Contynuell teeris or wepynges ne pardurable sighes  
 20 may neuer reyse your fader agayn .

**T**He fayr yole with these wordes was so oppres-  
 sid of hoot & contrarye ymagynacions that her  
 herte failed her / Hit was a pietous thyng to  
 beholde / her frende hercules wold haue taken her vp and  
 25 fusteyned betwene hys armes . But a wyse lady that  
 had alleway gouerned her / cam to hym and sayd to  
 hym knelyng on her knees / Syre I pray yow in the  
 name of alle the goddes . that ye wyll cesse to speke to  
 this poure damoyfelle for this tyme : She hath thys  
 30 day losse her fader / Hyt muste nedes bee that nature  
 acquyte her / ye may do wyth her your owen playfyr /

late her a lityll abyde in her malyncoleye / Alle shall be  
well yf hit pleſe the goddes as well for yow as for  
her / At the requeſte of the ladye Hercules was content  
to late her goo for that tyme . he recomanded yole vnto  
the goddes . and wente vnto theſeus for to paſſe hys 5  
tyme . But to the ende that yole ſhold not goo away  
ne eſcape / he ordeyned twelue grekes to kepe her and  
comanded vpon payne of deth that they ſhold ſuffre no  
woman yffue out of the chambre with oute wetyng  
whether they wente . In this night hercules dide the dede 10  
bodyes to be had oute of the palais and the place to be  
made clene . And alſo he ordeyned that the body of the  
kynge pricus ſhold be putte in ſepulture . Whan thyſe  
thynges were accompliſhid . hercules & theſeus with  
their men of armes made good chiere of ſuche as they 15  
there fonde / And yole was neuer oute of the remem-  
brance of hercules / yole certaynly at this tyme was ſo  
diſconforted that hit can not be recountid . The lady that  
had her in gouernance traueyllid ryght ſore for to com-  
forte and chyerer her / Than whan hercules had leſte her 20  
in the chambre as ſayd is And ſhe had many wordes  
to her / and amonge all other ſhe ſaid to her My dough-  
ter ye wepe to moche . Ha madame ſaid yole . how  
may I laſſe doo . whan ſhall I haue cauſe to wepe and  
to wayle yf I haue none now . My fader is ded . I haue 25  
loſte hym that moſte louyd me of all the world / I may  
leſe no more ne no gretter thyng . Ought not than my  
herte to be angry and ſorowfull . My daughter ſayd  
the lady I knowe well that ye haue the moſte appa-  
rant occacion of ſorowe that ony woman may haue . 30  
But whan hyt muſte nedes be that ye paſſe by thys



Infortune what proffiten yow youre greuous we-  
pynges . Ther may no thyng procede of them but aug-  
mentacion of melancolye / And hurtyng & appayryng  
of your preyfid beaulte / ye be now fallen in the hande  
5 of this prynce . This is a man worthy and noble aboue  
all other / he loueth yow / ye ought to thanke the goddes  
and to gyue hem preifynge of this grace . ffor this is to  
yow an ewre and an happe in your myshappe yf ye will  
beleue me . ye shold putte all thys in suffrance . Better  
10 it is to suffre one euyll than two . Me thynketh ye  
oughte considere your estate. And yf ye considere hit well  
ye shold payne yow for to forgete hit : Madame said  
yole / Alas and how may that bee . that I shold haue  
loue . or affynye or hauntyse vnto hym that hath doon to  
15 me so moche harme / He hath not taken only fro me a  
knyght ne an vncler ne cosyn / but myn owen propre fa-  
der Late none speke to me more therof . He is and shall  
be my mortall enemye as longe as I lyue . and as longe  
as he shall lyue he shall haue no more of me for prayer  
20 promesse ne for manace . .

**M**I doughter sayd the lady make ye not your self  
bonde / where as ye be free. The faytes and dedes  
of loue ben subtyll and sodayne : Loue is alle-  
way in his secrete trone . that can do none other thyng /  
25 but humelye and meke the harde hertes . And bowe  
the stronge : So hard ne so stronge an herte is not  
amonge the humayne Creatures . But that hit is right  
sone humelyed and meked whan that hit is his plaifir  
Ther is no tour so hyghe . but hyt may be beten down  
30 by subtyll myne / Ne ther is no wynde so grete ne so

rygorous but hit attemperid . ther is no nyght fo derke  
 but that hit is furmounted wyth the day . ye hate her-  
 cules now . yf ye haue a while hauntid hym and haue  
 had comynycacōn with hym . paraenture ye shall loue  
 hym better / than euer ye louyd your fader your moder 5  
 or any other of your lignage / And what I may proue  
 by my felf . ffor I had my husbond in fo grete hate first  
 er we assemblid . that I wold fayn haue seen hym dye  
 a shamefull deth . Sodaynly whan we had begon to  
 conuerse oon with another / I louyd hym fo certaynly 10  
 that yf he had not ben with me day and nyght / I had  
 wente I shold haue deyed for forowe and anoye / My  
 doughter fuche ben the toures of loue . ofte tymes mē  
 seyth . that after grete hate cometh grete loue . The glorye  
 of hercules is fo clere / that your herte ought to be enlu- 15  
 myned . the conqueste that he hath made in this Cyte  
 shall be for yow a synguler preparacion of all good /  
 wold ye attayne to a more gretter wele . than for to be  
 felawe or loue of hym that is the dompter of kynges  
 the most best well faryng man . and the moſte tryum- 20  
 phant in armes . ffor to hym is no thyng Inpoſſible / he  
 hath conquerid the moſte parte of þ<sup>e</sup> vnyuerfall world  
 O my doughter reioyſſe yow in fortune . Shette not  
 the dore to proſpite that cometh to yow / hit is to be bele-  
 uyd that the defolacion of this cyte hath ben deuysed 25  
 and ordeyned by the parlament of the goddes . in fa-  
 ueur of yow . that ar the parement and none like vnto  
 yow of all the doughters of the kynges for to gyue yow  
 in mariage vnto this man .

**B**I theſe wordes the fayre yole had her ſtomack en- 30  
 terpriſed of large ymaginacions . She roſe vp  
 [leaf 136] 473

fro that parte . And entrid in to her garderober / where  
as was the presentacion of the goddesse dyane / Whan  
she was comen theder / she knelid down in grete humy-  
lyte to fore the ymage . And in haboundyng of fyghes &  
5 wepyng as fore as she had doon ony tyme of the day  
to fore she sayd : Goddesse of virgynes what shall doo  
thy right fymple Ancylle and hand mayde . Alas enlu-  
myne my hope . beholde myn affliccion . poyse myn vn-  
happ . Sende thyn eyen in to the secrete of myn herte/and  
10 see the sorowe that I bere . And in the faveur of virgyns  
kepe my body and preferue from the hande of hym that  
wold that I shold be his wyf . After that he hath en-  
gendrid in me the Rote of mortall hate . whiche is not  
possible to be anullyd as nature Iugith in me . ffor hyt  
15 is not possyble that I may loue myn enemye . Confe-  
quently and it is trouth that the hate that I haue ayenst  
this tyrant hercules shall be pardurable &c .

**I**N thyse prayers and lamentacions yolle abode  
vnto the perfoundeur of the nyght . curfyng her-  
20 cules sayyng that she hadd leuer to deye than to  
haue ony loue in hym . Thus desdaynyng the loue of her-  
cules . with oute mete or drynke she passid the nyght .  
The day folowyng hercules retorned vnto her / And  
on a newe prayd her that she wold be his wyf / Say-  
25 yng wyth oute respyte that she muste nedes agre there to  
She was right fore displayfaüt of thys requeste and  
excused her in many facions that were to longe to re-  
herce at this tyme / But at the ende of the prayers and  
requestes of hercules / Loue Inspyred in suche wyfe  
30 the damoyelle / that she vnderstode well that hercules

was yffued of the Rote of noble fader & moder / that  
 she acorded to doo his plaifir . What shall I more faye  
 yole comynicqued than with hercules as his wyf they  
 laye to geder & acqueyntid eche with other / Loue than  
 enroted in their hertes . her two wyllis were lockyd 5  
 and put in one will / Hercules forgate deyanyra And  
 yole forgate the deth of her fader / And fo moche she en-  
 amoured on hercules . that she myght reffe in no place  
 but that she muſte be all way wyth hym . O meruay-  
 lous thyng . the rancour & the hate that yole had yester- 10  
 day vnto hercules . is now ſodaynly torned in to loue  
 Infallible . ffor to ſpede the mater duryng yet the fyrſte  
 dayes of the loue of hercules and yole . At the prayer of  
 yole/hercules gaf her fuſters in mariage to certayn knigh-  
 tes of the grekes/and leſte them there to gouerne þ<sup>r</sup> contre 15  
 and the royame of calidonic/After he deſted from thens  
 and brought his oxen and his kyen wyth hym . And  
 ſente agayn the kyng Euauder in to his domynacion /  
 Thankyng hym of hys companye . and of the honour  
 that he had doon to hym . 20

**E**Vander had gladli conueyed hercules in to grece  
 But hercules wold in no wyfe that he ſhold  
 haue the trauayll . At laſte than euander wyth  
 grete thankyngs of hercules and of his armee departid  
 And hercules with his excerſite wente vnto the ſee / He 25  
 forgate not behynde hym the fayr yole / he louyd her  
 foueraynly . All day he was with her / And ſhe pleſyd  
 hym as moche as ſhe myght / doubtyng more to leſe his  
 loue than ſhe dredde the deth : As they than thus wente  
 by the ſee mayntenynge to their power the amerous lyf / 30  
 Hercules rencountrid on a day / nyghe by an hauen and

a good cyte / a galeye of marchauntes / Hercules made  
the galeye to tarye and after callyd the patrone . And  
axid of hym of what contre he was & fro whens he cam  
Certes fyre answerd the patrone of the galeye / I depar-  
5 ted late fro the porte of trace that is here by / I see well  
that ye be estranger and that ye knowe not the peryll  
that ye be Inne . Wherfore I haue pyte of yowe and of  
youre companye And therfore I aduertise yow & praye  
yow that at þ<sup>e</sup> next hauen ye shall fynde that in no wyfe  
10 ye tarye there / for no thyng that may befall yow / ffor  
also truly as ye be here . yf ye goo theder ye shall take  
harne / ffor ther is a kyng a tyrant the moste cruell that  
is in all the world named Diomedes that holdeth vnder  
hym ten thousand theuys . And that he maketh warre  
15 ayenst all them that he may fynde and hath a custome  
that he putteth men to raunson suche as hit pleith hym  
And yf they that he putteth to suche myferye / paye  
their raunson . he lateth hem go quyte . And wyth that  
money and substance he nourysshith his theuys and his  
20 horfes . And yf they may not furnyssh theyr raunson  
He hym self smyteth hem in to morfellis and gyueth  
hem to his horfes for to ete and deuoure / But there is one  
thyng good for yowe . ffor thys mornyng he is goon  
to the Chaffe for to hunte in a foreste whiche is a foure  
25 myle from trace . And with hym ther ben an honderd of  
the strengest theuys that he hath . And this knowe I ve-  
rytably for I haue seen hem departe not passyng thre  
oures a goo &c :

¶ How hercules foughte ayenst Dyomedes in the fo-  
30 rest of trace and how he maad his hors to ete hym .

**H**ercules heeryng the wordes that the patrone  
of the galeye sayd to hym and rehercyng the  
lyf of diomedes . was passyng Ioyous in hys  
herte/morethan he had syn the deth of the theef cacus.he  
had in hym that vertue / that where he myght knowe 5  
monstre or tyrant or ony men enpesshyng the comyn  
wele / thether he wente And suche tyrans he destroyed  
And to thende that men shold not saye that he dyde  
suche werkes for couetyse . he wold neuer holde ne re-  
teyne to his propre vse no thyng of their goodes / But 10  
all that he conquerid in suche wyse he gaue hit vnto  
noble men And preisid no thyng but vertue / He wold  
not make his seignourye to growe ne to amasse and  
take to hym self royame vpon royame . He was con-  
tente of that / that nature had gyuen hym . And all way 15  
he wold laboure for the comyn wele / O noble herte /  
O right wel adresid corage / O tresuertuous paynem  
ther was none like to hym of all them / that were afore  
hym ne after hym . ffor to holde on and entretiene my  
mater / Whan the patrone had aduertised hym as afore 20  
is sayd . that the tyrant dyomedes was goon an hun-  
tyng in to the foreste . with his honderd theuys . He dide  
so moche that the patrone shewyd hym the sytuacion  
of the foreste And by what way and maner he myght  
fonnest come theder / After this he gaf leue to the patrone 25  
to goo his way . That done he callid his maryners / and  
made them to seche the place . After he assemblid the gre-  
kes and tolde them that he wold that they shold abide  
hym there . And that he hym self wyth oute delaye  
wold goo in to the foreste . that the patrone had enseig- 30  
ned hym to seke diomedes Sayyng þ' he wold neuer

retorne in to grece vnto the tym that he had delyuerid the  
contrey of this tyrant / yole began than to wepe / whan  
she herde the trepryse of hercules and prayd hym tenderly  
wepyng . that he wold leue and departe hym of the  
5 aventure in so grete paryll / Hercules toke no rewarde  
ne hede to her prayers . He delyuerid to philotes his bowe  
and his clubbe . And entrid in to a lytill galeyve fubtyll  
and lyghte / Whiche he conduyted by the helpe of phy-  
lotes ryght nyghe the place where he wold bee / And  
10 toke lande a two bowe shotte ser fro the foreste . And  
in fettyng foot a lande / he herde the bruyt and noyse  
of the Chaffe . He had therof grete Ioye / And sayd  
that he was well adressed / He toke his clubbe / and  
leste his bowe with philotes . After he entryd in to the  
15 foreste / He had not ferre rengid in the foreste . Whan he  
fonde diomedes & his honderd theuys . Dyomedes was  
the firste that fro ferre espyed hercules / he knewe that he  
was an estraüger / And escryed hym and sayd . Geant  
what is that thou sechest in this foreste . Hercules anf-  
20 werd what art thou . Diomedes said I am the kynge of  
trace / thou art entrid in to my domynacõn with oute my  
leue / hit displefeth me / thou must bemy prysonner / wher-  
fore yelde the to me / Hercules said than . kynge syn thou  
arte diomedes the kynge of trace . thou art fauns faulte  
25 the tyrant that I seke . And therefore I am not of thenten-  
cion to yelde me with oute strook smytyng / And also to  
an euyll theef / knowe thou that I shall defende me with  
this clubbe . with whyche I haue ben accustomed to de-  
stroye the monstres / And am in hope this daye to make  
30 thy horses ete and deuoure thy body lyke as thou haste  
taught and vsid them to ete thy prysonners : .

**W**Han diomedes herd the answer of hercules / he  
 toke a ryght grete axe that oon of hys theuys  
 bare after hym . And he lyst hit vp escryng  
 hercules vnto the deth and dischargid so hard . that yf  
 hercules had not torned the strook with his clubbe / he 5  
 had ben in grete peryll : Diomedes was of the gretenes  
 and stature of hercules . And had largely strength and  
 puyffance / Whan hercules had receyuyd the strook / he  
 enhaunced his clubbe and faillid not to smyte diome-  
 des . ffor he gaf hym suche a strook vpon the stomack 10  
 and so heuy . that he torned hym vp so down from his  
 horse . and laye all astroyed in the felde / Than his hon-  
 derd theuys meuyd them and assayllid hercules on all  
 sides . Some of them there were that redressid diome-  
 des and sette hym agayn vpon his horse / the other late 15  
 flee vpon hercules largely arowes & dartes And some  
 brake their glayues vpon hym . Alle thise thynges en-  
 payred no thyng the armes of hercules . His hawberc  
 and his helme were of fyn steell forged and temprid  
 hard . He stode there amonge them lyke a montaygne / 20  
 Whan he had suffrid the fyrst enuaye and assault of  
 the theuys . for to shewe to them to whom they fought  
 He meuyd vpon them & smote down right on all sydes  
 by suche vertue . that sodaynly he maad the peces of  
 them flee in to the wode And smote them down of their 25  
 horfes . Diomedes was at that tyme reyfid . and with  
 grete fureur and maletalent / with many of his compli-  
 ces cam vnto the rescows of his theuys that hurcules go-  
 uernyd as he wold . And whilis that some assayllid  
 hym be fore / he cam behynde & smote hym with his axe 30  
 vpon his helme / the strook was grete the fyre sprange



oute . Diomedes had well wende to haue murdrid hercules / how well hercules meuyd not for the strook but a lytill bowed his heed . After this than he lyfte vp his clubbe and smote amonge the theuys . And maulgre  
5 them all in lasse than an oure he had so holden the yren to theyr backes / that of the honderd he slewe syxty / And the other alle to brussyd and fruffhyd and putte hem to flyght with diomedes / But hercules rennyng more swyftely than an hors amonge all other he poursewid  
10 diomedes so nyghe / that he caught hym by the legge and pullyd hym down of his horse And caste hym down ayenst a tre vnto the erthe . After he toke hym by the body . and by vyue force bare hym vnto the place where the batayll had ben . There he dyshelmyd hym and vnarmed wyth lytyll resistence . .For dyomedes was than  
15 all to brussyd . And myght not helpe hym self / And whan he had hym thus at his wyll / He bonde hym by the feet and by the handes / After thys he assemblid to geder twenty horses of the theuys / that ranne sparklid in  
20 the wood / and cam to diomedes & said to hym . O thou curfid enemye that all thy tyme haste employed in tyranye : And didest neuer oon good dede . But all thy dayes haft lyuyd in multeplyng of synnes & vices / And that thou haft troublid the peple by theste and proyes irreparable / And that thou haft nourysshid thy horses wyth  
25 mannys flessh / And by this cruelte thou haddest supposid to haue made me to dye / Certes I shall do Iustice vpon the And shall doo to thyn euyll persone . like as thou woldest haue doon to myne . Than hercules leyde the tyrantin  
30 the myddes of the horses / whiche had grete honger / And they anone deuowred hym / for they lcuyd mannys flessh

And thus whan hercules had put the tyrant to deth / he  
toke his armes in syngne of victorie . and retorned vn-  
to philotes that abode hym .

**P**Hilotes had grete Ioye whan he sawe hercules  
retorne . he enquiryed of hym how he had doon 5  
and how he had born hym And hercules hidde  
ne conclid no thyng from hym . What shall I saye  
with grete Ioye and gladnes . they retorned vnto the  
grekes And dide do disancre their shippes And saillyd  
for to aryue at the porte or hauen of trace . Than wold 10  
hercules do hit be knowen / hit was late And trace was  
full of the deth of the kynge diomedes / This notwith-  
standing . hercules toke to philotes the Armes of dyo-  
medes And sente hym in to the cyte for to somone them  
that gouerned hit / and for to yelde hit in to his handes 15  
Philotes wente in to the palais of trace And made to  
be assemblid them that than were pryncipall in the cy-  
te . Whan they were assemblid philotes dide than open  
to them his charge and message . and somoned the tra-  
cyens / that they shold put their cyte in the handes of her- 20  
cules / Sayng that hercules was he that had putte to  
deth diomedes for his euyll lyuyng . and for the loue of  
the comyn wele . And that the cyte cowde do no better /  
but to resseyue hym at his comyng . ffor he wold not  
pylle hyt . but he wold onely reduyse hit to good po- 25  
lycye / Whan he had doon this sōmacion . to the ende that  
they shold beleue hym / he discouerd and shewid vnto  
them the armes of diomedes .

**W**Han the tracyens had herd philotes / and sawe  
the armes of diomedes Some of the complices 30  
and semblable of the vocacōn of diomedes and

theuys / were full of grete fureur And wold haue taken  
the armes fro philotes . The other that were wyfe and  
notable men . and that many yeres had defired the ende of  
their kynge . seeyng his armes knewe assuridly that  
5 dyomedes was ded . And full of Ioye answerd to  
philotes . ffor as moche as hercules is a kynge of grete  
renomee and wysedom . And that he had done a werke  
of grete meryte in the deth of diomedes / that they wold  
receyue hym with good herte in to the cyte / Wyth oute  
10 plente of langage / the tracyens wente vnto the gate and  
opend hit / Philotes retorned than vnto hercules / And  
tolde to hym thyse tydynges . Hercules and the grekes  
wente oute of theyr galeyas . and entrid in to trace by  
space of tyme . The tracyens brought hem vnto the pa-  
15 lays where were yet many theuys . Hercules putte alle  
the theuys to deth . not in the same nyght / but duryng the  
space of ten dayes that he soiournd there / He sette the  
cyte in good nature of polycye . He delyueryd hyt from  
the euyll theuys . He maad Iuges by eleccōn at the play-  
20 fir of the people / And than whan he had done alle these  
thynges / He departyd fro trace with grete thankynges  
as well of the olde as of the yonge . He mounted vpon  
the see . And after by succession of tyme with out ony  
aventure to speke of . he dide so moche that he cam vnto  
25 hys royame of Lycye in to his palais where he was re-  
ceyuyd with grete Ioye of the Inhabitaūs and also of  
the neyghbours . And there he abode with the fayr yole  
whome he louyd aboute all temporell goodys . .

**¶** How deyanira was full of sorowe for as moche as  
30 hercules louyd yole &c .

**T**Heseus than after the retorne of hercules seeyng  
that he wold abide there And that ther was  
no memorye / that in all the world was ony  
monstre ne tyrant . toke leue of his felawe hercules / of  
yole of philotes and of other / And wente to Athenes 5  
and to thebes . Semblably the grekes toke leue . and  
euery man returned in to his contre . and to his howse  
recountynge and tellyng in all places where they  
wente the grete auentures & þ<sup>e</sup> gloryo<sup>9</sup> werkes of hercu-  
les . Than the renomee that renneth and fleeth by roy- 10  
ames & empyres as lightly as the wynde / Also lightly  
cam hit and flewe vnto ycome where as deyanira so-  
iourned / And was sayd to deyanira that hercules was  
returned fro spaigne . With grete glorye and tryumphe  
And that he was descended in lycye . Dame deianyra 15  
for this renomee was glad . and also subget of a grete  
and synguler playfir / and concluded that she wold go  
vnto hym . How well she was abasshid of that he  
had not signyfyed to her his comyng . and that he had  
not sente for her / Sore pensyf and dowtyng that she 20  
shold be fallen oute of the grace of hercules / She made  
redy her excersite And in right noble astate she departid  
fro ycome on a day for to goo in to lycye . In processe  
of tyme she cam nyghe vnto lycye . Than she taried there  
for to attyre and araye her the beste and moste fayrest 25  
wyfe she cowde or myght / And callid her squyer na-  
med lycas . and comanded hym that he shold goo in to  
lycye . and signefye to hercules her comyng . At the co-  
mandement of deyanira . Lycas wente in to the cyte  
And happend hym right at the gate he encountrid and 30  
mette a man of his knowleche a squyer of hercules /

Lycas and the squyer grette and salued eche other / Af-  
 ter this lycas axed of the squyer and demanded hym  
 where the kyng was . and yf he were in his palays /  
 ye veryly sayd the squyer / he is there I wote well and  
 5 passith the tyme with his lady yole / the most beste adref-  
 sid . and oute of mesure moste resplendiffaunt lady that  
 is in all the world as grete as hit is . Eche man alow-  
 eth her . And preyseth a thousand tyme more than deya-  
 nyra / Hercules hath her in so moche grace . that conty-  
 10 nuelly they ben to geder / And what som euer the lady  
 doth . hyt is agreable vnto hercules / And ther is no man  
 that can saye or telle the greteloue that they haue to gyder

Lycas heeryng these tydynges of the squyer .  
 toke leue of hym / and maad semblaüt to haue  
 15 Late falle or leste behynde hym some of hys ba-  
 gues or Iewels / .For as moche as he was of aduyse /  
 ymagynyng in hym self . that hit was not good that he  
 signefyed to hercules the comyng of deyanira / vnto the  
 tyme that he had aduerted her of hys astate . Pensyf  
 20 and symple than he cam to deyanira . where as she was  
 attyryng her self precyously and sayd to her / Madame  
 what doo ye here / Wherfore answerd deyanira . ther-  
 fore sayd lycas . Why is ther ony thyng sayd deyanira  
 what tydynges . Lycas answerd harde tydynges : I  
 25 haue herde saye and telle of hercules thynges full of  
 suche hardynesse . that certes hyt is ryght greuous to  
 me to saye them vnto yow . How be hyt syn that ye  
 be come thus ferre / And that ye muste nedes knowe and  
 vnderstand them . I telle and saye to yow certaynly  
 30 that your lorde hercules is in hys palays right Ioyously

And that he hath with hym a lady . fayre by excellence  
Whom he loueth aboue all thyngis for her beaute whi-  
che is so hyghe and grete that eche man meruaylleth /  
and that she is the moſte ſouerayne in beaute / than euer  
was ſeen with mannes eye . Beholde and auyſe yow 5  
what ye will doo er ye goo ony forther / this day hit is  
force to abyde and take counceyll and aduyſe .

**O**.F the heryng of theſe tidynges Deyanira was  
paſſyng angry and was all beſpradd with  
a right grete ſorow in all her vaynes / She be- 10  
gan to quake and tremble . Her fayr heer that was a-  
drefſid on her heed . ſhe all to drewe hit with her han-  
des in ſo fell maner / that ſhe diſatyred her / and ſmote  
her ſelf with her fyſte ſo grete a ſtrook vpon her brefte /  
that ſhe fyll doun backward in a ſwowne . The ladies 15  
and the damoyſelles that accompanied her / ſhryked  
and cryed dolorouſly / & were fore meuyd in her blood  
By ſpace of tyme deyanira cam to her ſelf agayn . alle  
pale and deſtaynte and thynkyng on the ſorowe that  
engendrid in her / And alſo on the ſorowe that was co- 20  
myng to her / ſhe ſpake and fayd with a feble & lowe  
voys . Poure deyanira what ſhalt thou do . or whyther  
ſhalt thou goo . Thou that ſyndeſt thy ſelf recuylid and  
put a back fro the loue of thy lord hercules . Alas alas  
is hit poſſible that the renouelemēt of a lady may take 25  
away my huſbond / the herte late loyned vnto deya-  
nyra / ſhall hit be diſioyned by the findyng of a woman  
of ſolye . ſhall ſhe make the ſeparacion . by myn auyſe  
hit may not bee . ffor hercules is noble of herte & loueth  
vertue And yf he abandonne and gyue me ouer / he ſhal 30

do ayenst vertue and nobleffe / I haue affiance in hym  
that he shall be trewe to me . Madame sayd lycas ye  
faylle no thyng to saye that hercules is noble and full  
of vertue . ffor he hath employed all his tyme in vertu-  
5 ous thynges . how be hit . he is a man . And hath taken  
in loue thys newe woman for her beawte . Ne affie  
yow so moche in his vertue . that your affiance begyle  
and deceyue yow / ye know well that fortune ne en-  
tertieneth longe prynces or pryncesses on thetoppe aboue  
10 of her whele / ther is none yet so hyghe . but that he ne  
maketh hem somtyme lye benethe amonge them that  
suffre . Beholde and see well what ye haue to doo / yf  
ye go vnto hercules And he receyue yow not . as he hath  
ben accustomed / that shall be to yow a tyle of dispayre  
15 Men saye that he loueth foueraynly this new lady /  
Hyt is aparaūt that he shall sette but lytyll stoor of  
youre comyng / And yf ye goo the lady shall be euyll  
content / She hath the bruyt . And euery man is fayn  
to do her playfir . ther shall be no man so hardy to wel-  
20 come yow . for the loue of her / goo not theder thanne/the  
paryll is to grete / I counceyll yow for the better that  
ye retorne in to ycome / And that ye put this thynges in  
to your suffrance / In attendyng and abydyng that the  
fyre and the bruyt of this lady passe / ffor where as her-  
25 cules is alle other/than the most parte of the men be / so  
shall he leue this lady a lytyll and a lytyll &c .

**D**Eyanira confideryng that licas counceyllid her  
truly / beleuyd well thys counceyll / And ryght  
fore wepyng she returned in to ycome / Whan  
30 she was in the howsse of ycome / Than she pryuyd

her of alle worldly playfir / and helde her solitaryly  
 with oute goyng to festes or to playes . Thus abidyng  
 in this solitude / her greuous annoye grewe more & more  
 by so ample anoyance that she was constrayned to  
 make Infynyte bewayllyngis and sighes . The contynu- 5  
 ell confort of her ladyes myght gyue to her no solace  
 The Innumerable deuyses that they made vnto her eeres  
 for to make her passe þ<sup>e</sup> tyme . myght neuer take away  
 hercules out of her mynde She vsid and lyuyd many  
 dayes this lyf . Hauyng alleway her eere open for to 10  
 knowe yf hercules sente for her / In the ende whan she  
 had suffrid ynowhe and sawe that no thyng cam / and  
 that neyther man ne woman was comyng to brynge  
 her tydynges fro the persone of hercules . She made a  
 lettre whiche she delyuerid to lycas for to bere vnto her- 15  
 cules And chargid hym to delyuere hit to no persone  
 but to the propre hand of hym that she sente hit vnto/  
 Lycas toke the lettre and wente vnto lycye . And two  
 myle nygheþ<sup>e</sup> cyte / he encountrid hercules in a crosseway  
 Hercules cam from Archade where he had newly slayn 20  
 a wylde boor so grete / that ther was neuer none seen  
 lyke to hym . Whan than lycas sawe hercules . he made  
 to hym reuerence And presentyd his lettre to hym in fa-  
 lewyng hym from deyanyra . Hercules waxe reed and  
 changed colour whan he herde speke of deyanyra . He 25  
 receyuyd the lettre amyable / and redde hit and fonde  
 therin conteyned as here foloweth : .

**H**ercules my lord the man of the world that I  
 mooste desire/I yow supplie that ye haue recoman-  
 ded your trew seruante and Indigne deyanyra 30

[leaf 243]

487



Alas hercules alas / Where is become the loue of the tyme  
paffe / ye haue now foiourned many dayes in lycye  
And ye haue lete me haue no knowleche therof / Cer-  
tes that is to me a right doloroufe Añoye to suffre and  
5 bere . . For I defire not to be deyfied ne mounte in the ce-  
lestyall manoyrs wyth the sonne / wyth the mone ne  
with the sterrys / But with oute rompure or brekyng  
of free herte I defire your solempne comynycacion / I may  
fro hens forth no more fayne / Hit it sayd to me that  
10 ye haue another wyf than me / Alas hercules haue I made  
ony faulte ayenst your reuerence / Wherfore gyue ye me  
ouer and abandoūne me / How may ye do foo / Men  
name yow the man vertuous / ye abandoūne me and for-  
fake me / That is ayenst vertue / how well ye doo hyt / I  
15 haue feen the tyme that ye were my husbond In enbra-  
syng vs to gyder and kyffyng / ye shewyd than to me  
semblaunce of solas and of Ioye . Now late ye her that  
ye louyd as a poure femelette / Alas where ben the wit-  
tenesses of our maryage / Where be the eternall serements  
20 and othes that we made that oon to that other / The men  
ben deaf and blynde . but the goddes here and fee . wher-  
fore I praye yow that ye confidere that ye ought to con-  
fydere . And that ye holde youre glorye more derer than  
ye doo for the loue of youre newe aqueyntyd that ma-  
25 keth yow to erre ayenste vertue wherof ye haue so grete  
a Renomee / And I pray yow ryght hertely to sende  
to me youre playfir &c : .

30 **W**Han hercules hadd redde from the begynnyng  
to the ende the lettre of deyanira . As he yet behelde  
and sawe hyt / yole cam vpon hym wyth a thre  
488 [leaf 243 verso]

honderd damoyfelles for to fefte and make chiere to  
 hercules . Hercules than clofid the lettre and returned in  
 to lycye holdyng yole by the hande . how be hyt when  
 he was in his palais / he forgate not deyanira . but fonde  
 maner for to goo in to his studye And there wrote a 5  
 lettre / And whan hit was achieuyd he toke hit to ly-  
 cas for to prefente hit to deyanira . Lycas toke the lettre  
 and returned home agayn to deyanira . firft he tolde her  
 the tydynges and of the ftate of yole . After he delyue-  
 rid to her the lettre / conteynyng that he recomandid hym 10  
 vnto her / And that he had none other wyf but her And  
 that he prayd her that ſhe ſholde not gyue her to none  
 euyll thynkyng . but leue in hope and in pacyence / as  
 a wyfe lady and noble oughte and is bounde to doo  
 for her honour & worſhippe / This lettre lityll or nought 15  
 confortd deyanira . ſhe was ſtrongly attaynte of Ia-  
 loufyfe / Her ſorowe redowblid and grewe In this re-  
 doublyng ſhe wrote yet a nother lettre whiche ſhe ſente  
 to hercules and conteyned theſe wordes that folowe .

**H**ercules alas and what auaylleth me to be the 20  
 wyf of ſo noble a huſbonde as ye be / your no-  
 bleſſe is to me more dampnable than prouffi-  
 table . O fortune I was wonte to reioyſe . ffor alle  
 daye / I herde none other thynges but loanges and prey-  
 fynges of yowr prowefſes and right gloryouſe dedes 25  
 and ſeetes wherof the worlde was enlumyned and  
 ſhooon . now I muſte be angry & take diſplaiſir in your  
 werkes that ben ſowle and full of vyces . Alle grece  
 murmureth vpon yow And the peple ſaie that ye were  
 wonte to be the vaynquyſſhour of alle thynges . and 30

now ye ben vaynquysshid of the folyssh loue of yole  
 Alas hercules and how shall I be departid from yow /  
 and be holden the chambryere of the caytyf yole . She  
 is your kaytyf . ffor ye haue slayn her fader / and haue  
 5 taken her in the pryse of Calidonie / how be hit she hath  
 the place of your lawfull wyf / Alas haue I be said wel  
 maryed for to be named the fayre daughter of Iupiter  
 kynge of the heuen & of the erthe . Now shall I no more  
 be callid so / Hyt is not alleway happy to monte vnto  
 10 the moste hyghe astate / ffor fro as moche as I haue  
 mounted in heyghte and was your felawe / fro so ferre  
 I fele me falle in to the more grete peryll / O hercules yf  
 for my beaute ye toke me to your wyf / I may well curse  
 that beaute . ffor that is caufe of the greuous shame / that  
 15 is to me alle euydente . ffor to prenostyque myn harme  
 and euyll future and that is to come can not your astro-  
 nomyens see that / I wold I knewe that / I wote well  
 your beaute and my beaute haue brought my herte in to  
 the strayt pryfone of forowe with oute ende . And I  
 20 maynot counte them but for enemyes / Whan bythem all  
 forowes comen to me / The ladyes haue Ioye in the  
 premyence of theyr hufbondes : But I haue maleure  
 and myshappe . I ne see but displayir in my maryage /  
 O hercules I thynke alle daye on yow / that ye goo in  
 25 grete paryls of Armes and of fyers bestes and temp-  
 estes of the see : And in the falseness of the world  
 Myn herte tremblyth and hath ryght grete feer of that  
 I ought to haue beleue and hoope of welthe / Alle that  
 I remembre in my mynde and thynke on the daye I  
 30 dreame on the nyghte / And than me thynketh verily  
 that I see the cuttyng sharpp swerdes entre in me and

the heedes of the sperys . and after me thynketh I see  
yssue out of the caues of the forestes and desertes/lyons  
and wilde monstres that ete my flessh . Syn the begyn-  
nyng of oure alyance vnto this day I haue had alle the  
dayes and nyghtes suche paynes for yow . and borne 5  
and suffrid them . But alas alle these thynges are but  
lityll in comparacion of the payne . that I now suffre  
and endure / ffor as moche as ye mayntene strange wo-  
men and a woman of all folye / May she be callid the  
moder of your children / of whome þ<sup>e</sup> sparklis of fowle 10  
renomee shall abyde of yow . Of this tache or vyce is  
my payne redowblid . hit percid my fowle / I am troblid  
of the dishonour of your ample hyenes . The peple faye  
that ye ar made a woman . and lyue after the gyse and  
maner of a woman . And spynne on the rocke : where 15  
ye were wonte to estrange lyons with your handes  
ye leue the hantysse of armes / and to be knowen in ferre  
contrees and royames in shewyng your vertue lyke as  
ye were wonte to doo . for the onely hauntyse of the cay-  
tyf yole that holdeth and abuseth yow : O curfid haun- 20  
tyse and foule abusion Speke to me hercules . yf the  
right hyghe and myghty men that thou hast vaynquy-  
shyd . as diomedes of trace . Antheon of lybye . Busire  
of egypte . Geryon of spaigne . And cacus the grete theef  
fawe the thus holden to do nought / for the beaute of a 25  
doughter that sone shall passe . What shold they faye /  
Certes they shold not repute them worthy to be vayn-  
quysshid of the And shold shewe & poynte the with  
their synger / as a man shamed and maad woman ly-  
uyng in the lappe of a woman / O how is yole stronge / 30  
Whan her handes that ben not worthy ne dygne to threde

an nedle . hath taken thy clubbe . and brandiffhyd thy  
 fwerd wher with thou hafte putte in fere alle the erthe /  
 Alas hercules haue not ye fouenance that in your chyld-  
 hode lyyng in your cradell ye flewe the two ferpentes /  
 5 ye beyng a chyld were a man . And now whan ye haue  
 ben a man . ye are becomen a woman or a chyld / This is  
 the werke of a woman to holde hym alleway wyth a  
 woman / or hit is the fayte of a childe / for to enamoure  
 hym felf on a woman of folye / the trouthe muſte be ſaid  
 10 ye began better than ye ende / your laſte dedes anſwer not  
 to the fyrſte / your labours ſhall neuer be dygne ne wor-  
 thy of preyfynge ne of loos . .For all the loange and prey-  
 ſynge is in the ende / Who that begynneth a werke wher-  
 of the begynnyng is fayre . and the ende fowle / all is  
 15 loſte / Certes hercules whan I beholde the glorious begyn-  
 nyng that vertue maad in yow . And ſee that ye now  
 be vicyous . Alle my ſtrength faylleth and myn armys  
 falle doun as a woman in a ſpafme or a ſwowne and  
 wyth oute ſpyryte . And hit may not ſeme to me trewe  
 20 that tho armes that bare away by force the ſheepe fro  
 the gardyn langyng to the daughters of athlas may fall  
 in to ſo grete a fawte . as for to embrace and beclyppe  
 fleſhly an other wyf than his owne : Thys not with-  
 ſtandyng I am acertayned for trowth . that ye holde not  
 25 kaytyf yole as a kaytyf / but as your owne wyf : not  
 in pryfon : But at her playfir in Chambre pareed And  
 in bedde courteyned and hangyd . not diſguyſed and ſe-  
 cretly as many holde her concubynes : But openly and  
 wyth viſage open ſhewyng her righte glorious to the  
 30 peple / And ſhe may ſo doo lafully . ffor ſhe haldeth yow

pryfonner and caytyf / And ſhe hath put the gorreau  
aboute your nekke by her ytalyan ſubtyll Iogelynges  
and Iapes . wherof I haue grete ſhame in my ſelf / But  
as for the amendement / I diſcoulpe me & can not better  
hit . but praye to the goddes that they will pourueye 5  
for remedye .

¶ How deyanira ſente to hercules a ſherte enuenymed  
And how hercules brente hym ſelf in the fyre of hys ſa-  
crefyſe / And how deyanira ſlewe her ſelf whan ſhe  
knewe that hercules was ded by the cauſe of her ygnorance &c . 10

**W**Han hercules had reddethis lettre / he vnderſtode  
well what hyt conteyned And was ſmyten  
with remors of conſcience / By this remors he  
vnderſtode that vertue was ſowlid in hym . He was 15  
than all penſyf And ſo moche pryuyd from pleaſance  
that none durſte come to hym in a grete while & ſpace  
Saue onely they that brought to hym mete & drynke  
Neyther yole durſte not go to hym . Lycas that had  
brought this lettre was there awaytyng & attendyng 20  
the anſwere longe . No man coude knowe wherof pro-  
ceded the ſolitude of hercules ne the cauſe why he with-  
drewe hym fro the peple . In the ende whan hercules had  
ben longe penſif / and had thought vpon all his affai-  
res and that he had to doo ffor to withdrawe hym and 25  
to eſlonge hym fro yole he departid fro his chambre on  
a day ſayng that he wold goo and make ſacrefyſe to  
the god apollo vpon the mounthe named oethea / And  
comanded and defended vpon payn of deth that no man  
ſhold ſolowe hym referuyd philotes . Of auenture as 30  
he yſſued oute of hys palays accompanied only of

philotes for to goo vpon the mounte / he mette lycas / Lycas maad to hym reuerence . and demanded hym / yf hit  
plefid hym ony thyng to fende to deyanira / Hercules  
answerd to lycas that he wold go make his sacrefyfe  
5 to the god Appollo . And that at his retourne and comyng  
agayn he wold goo vnto her or ellis he wold fende vnto her &c

10 **W**ith this word hercules and philotes passyd  
forth and wente on their pilgremage . And lycas  
retorned vnto deyanira . and tolde to her the  
Ioyous tydynges that he had receyuyd of hercules / And  
also what lyf that hercules had ledde syn the day and  
the oure that he had presentyd to hym her lettre / Deyanira  
all confortd of these good tydynges wente in to  
15 her chambre and thankyd the goddes & fortune Anone  
after she began to thynke on her astate . And thus thynkyng  
she remembrid her on the poyson / that Nessus had gyuen  
her in the Artycle of his deth . And how she had shytted  
hit in one of her coffres . And furthwyth in-  
20 contynent she opened the coffre and toke the curfid poyson  
and one of the shertes of hercules / And as she that  
ymagyned by the vertue of the poyson to drawe agayn  
to her the loue of hercules lyke as Nessus had fayd  
vnto her . She maad the sherte to be boyllyd with the  
25 poyson . And gaf the charge therof to one of her women  
Whan the sherte was boyllyd ynogh the woman toke  
of the vassayle and sette hit to kele . After she toke oute  
the sherte appertly And wronge hit . But she coude not  
so sone haue wronge hit but the fyre sprang in her handes  
30 so anguyfshoufly . that as she caste hit vpon a perche  
to drye / she fyll down ded : .

**I**N processe of tyme deyanyra defyryng to haue  
the sherte / and feeyng that the woman that had  
charge therof . brought hit not / she wente in to  
the chambre where the sherte had be boillid And fonde  
the woman ded / wherof she had grete meruayll . Ne- 5  
uerthelesse she passid the deth lightly . And by oon of  
her damoyfelles she made take the sherte that henge on  
the perche and was drye . and comanded her that she  
shold folde hit and wynde hit in a kerchief / At the co-  
mandement of deyanyra the damoyfell folded and en- 10  
uoluped the sherte . But so doying she was seruyd of  
the poyson in suche wyse that she losse her speche and  
deyde anone after / This notwithstanding deyanira that  
thought on no thyng but for to come to her Intencion  
toke the sherte and delyuerid hit to lycas And char- 15  
gid hym that he sholde bere hit to hercules . prayng hym  
in her name that he wold were hit . Lycas that was  
redy to accomplissh the will of his maystresse toke the  
charge of the dolorous sherte And departid fro thens  
and wente vnto the montaigne where as hercules was 20  
And there he fonde hym in a foreste where as was the  
temple of diane / Hercules had no man with hym but  
philotes / whiche made redy for hym a grete fyre for to  
sacrefye an herte that hercules had taken rennyng at a  
course . Lycas than fyndyng hercules in the temple / He 25  
knelid down lowe to hym & sayd . Syre here is a sherte  
that your Ancylle and seruant deyanira fendeth vnto  
yow / She recomandeth her humbly vnto your good  
grace / and prayeth yow that ye wole receyue thys pre-  
sente in gree / as fro your wyf . Hercules was Ioyous of 30  
these wordes And anone vnclouthyd hym . for to doo on



this curfid fherte . Sayng that veryly ſhe was hys  
wyf / And that he wold for her ſake were this fherte  
In doying on this fherte he felte a right grete dolour and  
payne in his body / This notwithstanding he dide on  
5 his other clothes aboue as he that thought none cuyll /  
Whan he was clothyd And the fherte was chauffid  
his payne and ſorowe grewe more and more Than he  
began to thynke . and knewe anone that his maledye  
cam of his fherte / And ſelyng the prykkynge of the ve-  
10 nyme / with oute longe taryyng he toke of his robe And  
ſuppoſid to haue take of his fherte fro hys back . And  
to haue rente hit and diffete hit . But he was not ſtrong  
ynowh for to do ſoo . .For the fherte helde ſo fore and  
cleuyd ſo faſte and terrybly to hys fleſh and was ſo  
15 faſtyd to his ſkyn . by the vigour of the aſpre poyſon  
In ſuche wyſe that he tare oute his fleſh and bare a  
way certayn peces therof whan he wold haue taken of  
hys fherte &c .

20 **H**ercules knewe than . that he was hurte and  
woundyd to the deth / the deth began to fyghte  
ayenſt hym . He began to reſiſte by drawyng of /  
of his fherte from his body by pieces of his fleſh & of  
his blood all myght not auaylle / He all to rente & dif-  
chired his back his thyes . his bodye vnto his entraylles  
25 and guttis / his armes his ſholdres vnto the boones / His  
dolour and payne grewe and enlargid to the vtterānce /  
Thus as he retorned by the force of his grete dolorous  
payne / He behelde lycas and another ſelawe that he had  
broughte wyth hym . that were alle abaffhid of this  
30 adventure / Than he wente to them and ſayd vnto ly-  
cas / Thou curfyd and vnhappy man / What thyng

hath meuyd the to come hether vnder the pryuy habitude  
 of deyanyra to brynge me in to the chaunce of fortune  
 What wenyft thou . that thou haft doon . Thou hafte fer-  
 uyd me with a fherte entoxicat of mortall venyme /  
 who hath Introduced the to do this . thou muſte nedes 5  
 receyue thy deferte / And ſayng thyſe wordes hercules  
 caughte by the heed poure licas . that wiſte neuer what  
 to ſaye and threwe hym ayenſt a roche ſo fyerſly that  
 he to fruſſhid & all to brake his boones . and ſo ſlewe  
 hym . The ſelawe of lycas fledde and hyd hym in a 10  
 buſſhe / Philotes was ſo affrayed that he wiſte not  
 what to doo At the oure that hercules was in this poynt  
 moche peple cam in to the temple . The entrailles of her-  
 cules broyllid . His blood boyllyd in all his vaynes  
 the poyſon percid vnto his herte . his ſynewis ſhronke 15  
 and withdrewe them . Whan he ſelte hym in this myſe-  
 rye And that the deth haſted hym by terryble batayll  
 as he that coude not take away the repugnance of hys  
 vertuouſe force ſtryuyng ayenſt the malyce of venyme  
 He began to renne ouer hyll and ouer valey vp and 20  
 down in the foreſte . and pullyd vp the grete trees and  
 ouerthrewe them . After he began to rente of hys fherte  
 with the fleſſh than ſoden and bruylid / Whan he had  
 longe ladde this lyf . he retorned vnto the temple / alle  
 a certayned of the deth . and lyfte vp his handes and 25  
 his eyen vnto the heuen and ſayd / Alas Alas muſte  
 hit be that fortune lawghe at me for this myſerable def-  
 ſtyne comyng of the acufacion of wood Ialouſie and  
 forcerye of that woman that in the world I helde and  
 reputyd moſte wyſe & moſte vertuouſe . O deyanyra dif- 30  
 naturall woman . with oute wytte . wyth oute ſhame

and with oute honour / wyth an herte of a tyrant alle  
 affamed of Ialoufie / how hafte thou myghte contryue  
 ayenft me this furour and trayfon envenymed false fe-  
 5 menyn wille difnaturall oute of rewle & oute of ordre  
 Thou haddeft neuer fo moche honour and worfhippe  
 as thou now haft deferuyd blame / not onely for the  
 allone . but for all the women that ben or fhall be euer  
 in the world / ffor yf hit happen that the kynges or pryn-  
 ces acqunte them with ladyes or damoyfelles for the hu-  
 10 mayne multepliance . they fhall neuer haue credence ne  
 affiance in their propre wyues / O deyanira what hafte  
 thou doon . The women prefente and they that ben in the  
 wombes of the wombes of theyr moders / alle fhall  
 cracche the in the face and fhall curfe the with oute ende .  
 15 ffor the reproche by the tornyng vpon them is Infynyte  
 And the men fhall haue drede for to be feruyd of the  
 fherte &c .

20 **A** Las deyanira what fhall Calcedonie now doo  
 that gloryfied her in thy glorye . And putte and  
 fetted the in the fronte of theyr honour as a  
 Charboücle for the parement of her precyous thynges/  
 In ftede to fette the in the fronte / they fhall cafte the  
 vnder feet/And in ftede to haue glorye of the . they fhall  
 haue shame / herof they may not faylle / .For by Impi-  
 25 tye and dyuerfe engyns And by confpyred and swollen  
 cruelte / thou hafte confpyred my deth / And hafte def-  
 loyed and vnbounden one not recouerable Infortune /  
 for the and me . and for our frendes and kynnefmen .  
 O deyanira ryghte remauldyt vnhappy and moſte cur-  
 30 ſid ſerpente / to malicyous and reprochable murdryere

Thy false Ialoufyce hath more power to extermyne my  
 lyf than haue had all the monstres of the worlde / By  
 thyn offence and by thy machynacion hyd & couerte  
 Wherefro I coude not kepe me . I muste dye and passe  
 oute of this world . Syn hit so is I thanke fortune / 5  
 And axe of the goddis no vengeance of the . But certes  
 to the ende that hit be not said / that the vaynquysshour  
 of men . be not vaynquysshid by a woman . I shall not  
 passe the bitter passage of deth by thy mortall forceries  
 full of abhomynacōn . But by the fyre that is nette and 10  
 clere . and the moste excellent of the elementes .

**T**Hese dolorouse and forowfull wordes accom-  
 pliffhyd . Hercules toke his clubbe and caste  
 hit in the fyre that was made redy for to make  
 his sacrefyce / After he gaf to philotes his bowe and his 15  
 arowes . And syn he prayd hym that he wold reco-  
 mande hym to yole and to his frendes/And than seling  
 that his lyf had no more for to sojourne . He toke leue  
 of philotes And than as all brente & soden he leyde hym  
 doun in the fyre . lyftyng his handes and his eyen vnto 20  
 the heuen And there conformmed the cours of his glory-  
 ous lyf . Whan philotes sawe the ende of his maistre her-  
 cules . He brente his body in to asshen And kepte thise  
 asshes in Intencion to bere them to the temple that the  
 kynge euander had do make . After he departid fro thens 25  
 and retorned in to lycye gretly difconforted And with  
 grete sours of teeris he recounted to yole and to his fren-  
 des the pietous deth of hercules No man coude recounte  
 the grete sorowe that yole maad / And they of lycye as  
 well the estudyents as the rurall peple . All the world 30

fyll in teeris in fighes and in bewayllyngis for his deth  
 So moche habounded yole in teeris and wepyngis :  
 that her herte was drowned And departid her fowle  
 from the body the bytter water of her wepyng / Eche  
 5 bodye curfid and spake fhamme of deyanyra / .Fynably  
 deyanyra advertyfid by the felawe of lycas of the myf-  
 chyef that was comen by the fherte / She fyll in def-  
 payer and maad many pytouse bewayllynges / And  
 amonge all other she fayd / What haue I doo alas / Alas  
 10 what haue I doo . The moſte ſolempne man of men ſhy-  
 nyng amonge the clerkes / He that traverſid the ſtronge  
 marches the fondementes terreſtre / that bodyly conuer-  
 ſid amonge the men / And ſpirytuely amonge the ſonne  
 the mone and the ſterris And that ſuſteyned the circom-  
 15 ference of the heuenes is ded . by my cauſe and by my  
 coulpe And with oute my culpe / He is ded by my culpe  
 ffor I haue ſende to hym the fherte that hath gyue to hym  
 the bytte of deth / But this is with oute my culpe . for I  
 knewe no thyng of the poyſon / O mortall poyſon / By  
 20 me is he pryved of his lyffe . of whome I louyd the lyf  
 as moche as I dide myn owne . He that bodyly dwellid  
 amonge the men here in erthe And ſpyrituely aboue with  
 the ſonne the mone and the ceſtiall ſecretis . He that was  
 fontayne of ſcyence / by whom the Athenyens arrowſid  
 25 and bedewyd their wittes and engyns . He that made  
 the monſtres of the ſee to tremble in their abifmes and  
 ſwalowis . and deſtroyed the monſtres of helle . He con-  
 fonded the monſtres of the erthe . the tyrantes he correc-  
 tid . the orguyllous and prowde he humelyed & meked  
 30 The humble and meke he enhauncyd and exaltyd .  
 He that maad no trefour but of vertue . He that alle

the nacions of the world subiuged and subdued with  
his clubbe / And he that yf he had wolde by ambicion  
of feynourye myght haue atteyned to be kynge of the  
est . of the west . of the fowth and of the north / of the  
fees and of the montaynes . of all thise he myght haue 5  
named hym kynge and lord by good right . yf he had  
wold . Alas alas what am I born in an vnhappy tyme  
Whan so hye and so myghty a prynce is ded by my  
sympleffe He was the glorye of the men . Ther was  
neuer to hym none lyke . ne neuer shall be / ought I to 10  
lyue after hym Nay certes that shall I neuer doo . ffor  
to the ende that amonge the ladyes I be not shewid ne  
poyntyd with the fynger / And that I falle not in to  
strange hande for to be punysshid of as moche as I haue  
of coulpe and blame in this deth . I shall doo the venge- 15  
ance to my self / And with that she toke a knyf . and  
sayng I fele my self and knowe that I am Innocente of  
the deth of my lord hercules . And with the poynte of  
the knyf she ended her dispayred lyf / Wherof philotes  
was all abasshid . and so were all they of grece / that 20  
longe bewepete and bewaylid hercules . and hys deth  
And they of athenes bewayllid hym strongly some for  
his scyence and other for his vertues wher of I wyll  
now tarye . Befechyng her that is cause of this trans-  
lacõn out of frenshe in to this symple and rude engliffh / 25  
that is to wete my right redoubtyd lady Margrete by  
the grace of god fuster of my fouerayn lord the kynge  
of englond and of ffrance &c Duchesse of bourgoyne  
and of Brabant &c that she wole resseyue my Rude  
labour in thanke and in gree : . 30

**T**Hus endeth the seconde book of the recule of the hif-  
toryes of Troyes / Whiche bookes were late tranf-  
lated in to frenshe out of latyn/by the labour of the vene-  
rable perfone raoul le feure preest as a fore is said / And  
5 by me Indigne and vnworthy translated in to this rude  
engliffh/by the comandement of my said redoubtid lady  
duches of Bourgone : And for as moche as I fuppose  
the said two bokes ben not had to fore this tyme in oure  
engliffh langage/therfore I had the better will to accom-  
10 pliffhe this said werke / whiche werke was begonne in  
Brugis / & contynued in gaunt And finyffhid in Coleyn  
In the tyme of þ<sup>e</sup> troublous world / and of the grete deuy-  
fions beyng and reygnyng as well in the royames of  
englonde and fraunce as in all other places vnyuerfally  
15 thurgh the world that is to wete the yere of our lord a-  
thousand four honderd lxxi . And as for the thirde book  
whiche treteth of the generall & laft destruccō of Troye  
Hit nedeth not to translate hit in to engliffh / ffor as mo-  
che as that worshipfull & religyous man dan John lidgate  
20 monke of Burye dide translate hit but late / after whos  
werke I fere to take vpon me that am not worthy to bere  
his penner & ynke horne after hym . to medle me in that  
werke . But yet for as moche as I am bounde to con-  
templare my fayd ladyes good grace and also that his  
25 werke is in ryme / And as ferre as I knowe hit is not  
had in profe in our tonge / And also paraventure / he  
translated after some other Auctor than this is / And  
yet for as moche as dyuerce men ben of dyuerce defyres .  
Some to rede in Ryme and metre . and some in profe  
30 And also be cause that I haue now good leyzer beyng in  
Coleyn And haue none other thyng to doo at this tyme

In eschewyng of ydlenes moder of all vices . I haue de-  
libered in my self for the contemplacion of my sayd re-  
doubtid lady to take this laboure in hand by þ<sup>e</sup> suffrance  
and helpe of almyghty god . whome I mekely supplye  
to gyue me grace to accomplyfhe hit to the playfir of 5  
her that is causer therof and that she resseyue hit in gre  
of me her faithfull trewe & moste humble seruant &c .

Thus endeth the seconde book



[This page is blank in Caxton]

¶ In these two bokes precedente . we haue by the helpe  
of god tetryd of the two first destruccyons of Troye  
with the noble faytes and dedes of the stronge and  
puissant Hercules . that made and dyde so many mer-  
uayllis that the engyne humayn of alle men oughte to 5  
meruaylle . And also how he slewe the kynge Laome-  
don bete doun and put his cyte of troye to ruyne Now  
in the thirde and laste book god to fore . we shall saie  
how the sayd cyte was by Priamus sone of the said  
kynge laomedon reedified and repayred more stronge 10  
and more puyssante than euer hit was before . And  
afterward how for the rauysshement of dame hela-  
yne wyf of kynge Menelaus of grece . the sayd cyte  
was totally destroyed Priamus hector and alle his  
sones slayn with nobleffe wyth out nombre . as hit 15  
shall appere in the proces of the chapitres . .

¶ How the kynge Priant reedified the cyte of troye  
more stronge than euer hit was afore & of his sones  
and doughters . And how after many counceyllis he  
sente Anthenor and Polydamas in to grece for to re- 20  
mande his suster exione . that Ajax mayntenyd . .

FOR to entre than in to the matere . ye haue  
herd here to fore at the seconde destruccion of  
Troye how hercules had taken prysonner  
Priamus þ<sup>r</sup> sone of kynge Laomedon . And 25  
had put hym in prison . how be hit dares of frigie sayth  
þ<sup>r</sup> his fader had sente hym to meue warre in a strange

contrey where he had ben right longe / wherefore he was  
not at that disconfiture : This pryamus had espowfid  
and weddyd a moche noble lady daughter of Egyp-  
feus kynge of Trace / of whom he had fyue fones and  
5 thre daughters of grete beaulte . The fyrste of the fones  
was named Hector, the moſte worthy & beſte knyght  
of the world the ſecond ſone was named Parys and  
to ſurname Alixandre / the whiche was the ſayreſt  
knyght of the world . and the beſte ſhoter and drawer  
10 of a bowe . The thyrde was callyd deyphebus ryght  
hardy and diſcrete / The fourthe was named Helenus  
a man of grete ſcyence And knewe all the Artes lybe-  
rall . The fifth & the laſte was callid Troyllus that was  
one of the beſte knyghtes & aſpre that was in his tyme .

15 **V** Irgile recounteth that he had two other ſonnes  
by hys wyf / of whom that one was named  
polidorus / This polidorus was ſente by kynge  
pryamus with a grete ſoyſon of gold / vnto a kynge his  
frende for to haue ayde ayenſt the grekes / But this kyng  
20 ſeeyng that the kynge pryamus was at myſchief ayenſt  
the grekes/And alſo he beyng meuyd with couetiſe/ſlew  
polidorus / And buryed hym in an yſle of the ſee . That  
other ſone was named gaminedes / Whom Iupiter rauyf-  
ſhid and maad hym hys botyller / In the ſtede of hebe  
25 the daughter of Iuno whome he putte oute of that ſayd  
office . The eldeſt of the daughters of kynge pryamus  
was named Cheuſa whiche was wyf vnto Eneas .  
And this Eneas was ſone of Anchifes and of venus  
of munidie / The ſeconde daughter was named Caſſan-  
30 dra / And was a ryght noble vyrgyne / Aournd and  
lerned with ſcyences . And knewe thynges that were

for to come . And the thirde was named Polixena  
that was the fayrest doughter And the beste fourmed  
that was knowen in alle the world . yet aboue thise  
chylidren here to fore rehercid . Kyng Pryant had threty  
bastard sones by dyuerce women . that were valy- 5  
ant knyghtes noble and hardy . .

**W**Han than kyng pryant was in a strange con-  
trety occupied in the fete of warre the quene and  
her children were with hym The tidynges cam  
to hym that the kyng Laomedon his fader was slayn 10  
his Cyte destroyed . hys noble men put to deth their  
doughters brought in seruitude . and also his suster Ex-  
iona . Of thise tidynges he had grete sorowe . And  
wepte largely and made many lamentacions . And  
anon incontynent he lefte his sieg and synyflhid hys 15  
warre . and retourned hastely vnto troyes . And whan  
he sonde hyt so destroyed . he began to make the most  
sorow of the world and that dured longe . And af-  
ter he had counsell to make agayn the cyte . than he be-  
gan to reedyffye the cyte so grete and so stronge . that 20  
he oughte neuer to doubte his enemyes . And dide do  
close hit with right hie wallis and with grete tow-  
res of marble . the Cite was so grete that the circuyte  
was thre iourneyes . and at þ' time in all þ' world was  
none so grete ne none so fayr ne so gentilly c<sup>o</sup>passed . 25

**I**N this Cyte were fixe pryncipall gates . of whome  
that onewas named dardane . the seconde tymbria . the  
thirde helyas . the fourthe chetas . the fifthe troyenne  
and the sixthe antenorides . These gates were right grete

and fayre / and of stronge deffence . And ther were in  
the cyte ryche palayces with oute nombre the fayrest  
that euer were . And the fayrest houfes / ryche and  
well compassed . Also ther were in many parties of  
5 the cyte . dyuerse fayr places and playsaüt for the Cy-  
tezeyns to esbatre and playe . In this cyte were men of  
alle Craftes / And marchauntes that wente and cam  
fro alle the parties of the world / In the myddell of  
the cyte ranne a grete Ryuer named Paucus whiche  
10 bare shyppis and dide grete prouffit and solace vnto  
the habitaüs . When this cyte was thus made The kyng  
pryant dide do come alle the peple and habytaüs of the  
contre ther aboutes . And maad them dwelle in the cyte  
And there come so many / that ther was neuer cyte better  
15 aourned wyth peple and with noble men and Cyte-  
zeyns than hit was . There were founden many games  
and playes / as the Chesse playe the tables and the dyfe  
and other dyuerse games . In the moste apparaüt place  
of the cyte vpon a roche / the kynge pryant dide do make  
20 hys ryche palays that was named ylyon / that was  
one of the rycheffe palays and stronge that euer was  
in the world . And hyt was of heyght fyue honderd  
paas wyth oute the heyghte of the towres / wherof  
was grete plente and so hyghe that hit semed to them  
25 that sawe hem fro ferre that they rought vnto the heuene  
And in thys ryche palays the kynge pryant dyde doo  
make the Rycheff halle that was at that tyme in alle  
the world / wythinne whiche was hys ryche Trone  
And the table wher vpon he ete and helde hys astate  
30 amonge hys lordes and barons And alle that longed  
ther to was of gold and of syluer of precyous stonnes

and of yuorye / In this halle at oon corner was an  
awter of gold and precyous stones . Whiche was con-  
secrate in the name and worfhyp of Iupiter their god  
to whiche awter wente men vp twenty degrees or  
stappes . And vpon the awter was the ymage of Iu- 5  
piter of ffyfteen foote of heyght . Alle befette and ara-  
yed with precyous stones . .For in that god Iupiter  
was alle the esperance and truste of the kynge Pry-  
ant for to holde his regne longe and in prosperyte &c :

**W**Han he sawe that he had so fayre a Cyte so 10  
stronge and so well peplid and with that  
so ryche of all goodes . he began to take disple-  
fir of the wronges that the grekes had don vnto hym  
And thoughte longe how he myghte auenge hym Than  
he assemblid on a certayn day alle his barons and 15  
helde a ryche Court . At this courte Hector his eldest  
sone was not / ffor he was in the partyes of Panno-  
nye on the affayres and certayn werkes of his fader  
ffor as moche as pannonye was subgette vnto kyng  
pryant / Whan the kyng Pryant sawe alle his folke 20  
assemblid andg adred to fore hym / he began to speke  
sayng on this maniere wife / O my men and trewe  
frendes that ben parteners of the grete iniuryes to me  
don by the grekes for so lytyl a cause or trespas as ye  
knowe how the grekes by theyr orguyell ben comen 25  
in to this contre / and haue slayn cruelly your parentis  
and frendes and also the myne . And how they haue  
taken and ladde a waye & holde in feruytude Exyone  
my suster / that is so fayer & noble And yet they hold  
her as a comyn woman . ye knowe wel how they haue 30

beten doun And destroyed thys cyte overthrowen the  
 wallys the palays and howses vnto the fondementis  
 And borne away the grete Rycheffis wherof the cyte  
 was full . And for thyse thynges me semeth that hit  
 5 shold be well rayson that by the helpe of the goddes  
 that refyste the orguyllous and prouwd that we alle  
 to gyder by a comyn accorde shold take vengeance of  
 thise Iniuryes / ye knowe what Cyte we haue . And  
 how hyt is peuplid wyth good men of Armes and  
 10 fyghtars / and garnysshid of all goodes and rycheffes  
 Also ye knowe well the Allyaūces that we haue with  
 many ryght grete lordes / that with good wyll . wyll  
 helpe vs yf hit be nede / wherfore me semeth that hyt  
 shold be good for vs to auenge vs of this shame / But  
 15 allewaye for as moche as the auentures of the warres  
 ben ryght doubteufes and daungerous / and that no  
 man knoweth what may come therof / how well that  
 the Iniurye be grete And that they holde my suster in so  
 grete dishonoure / yet wole I not begynne the warre .  
 20 But firste yf ye thynke good / I shall sende of the moste  
 sage and prudent men that I haue / to praye and requyre  
 them that they rendre and yelde agayn my suster exione  
 And I shall be contente to pardone alle the other In-  
 iuryes &c : .

25 **W**han the kyng had thus fynysshid his wordes  
 Alle the assystents allowed and preyfyd hys  
 aduyse and semed to them good . And than the  
 kyng pryant callid one of his prynces named Anthe-  
 nor . And prayd hym swetely that he wold empryse  
 30 this legacōn in to grece / And Anthenor answerd to hym  
 humbly / that he was all redy to doo his good playfir /

than was a shippe made redy And all that belonged &  
 was conuenient to brynge Anthenor in to grece : he en-  
 trid in to þ<sup>r</sup> shippe & his meyne. & sailid so longe / þ<sup>t</sup> they  
 arryued at the porte of theffaylle / where as was than  
 of auenture the kynge Peleus . that receyuyd Ioyoufly 5  
 ynowh anthenor / And demanded hym wherfore he  
 was come in to tho parties Anthenor answerd to hym  
 in this manere / Syre said he I am a messanger of the  
 kynge Pryant that hath sent me to yow . and hath co-  
 manded me to saye to yow and other / that he is well 10  
 remembrid of the grete Iniuryes that ye and other haue  
 don to hym / that for so lityl cause or occasion . haue slayn  
 his fader / destroyed his cyte and his peple some ded  
 and some ladd in seruytude . And yet that worse is to  
 hold his suster fowly in concubynage by hym that 15  
 holdeth her . And yet at leste he ought to haue . wedded  
 her / And for as moche as ye be a man of so grete witte  
 and dyscrefion / the kyng my lorde prayeth yow and  
 warneth . that from hens forth ye seffe the rage and  
 the grete sklaundres that may come for this cause . that 20  
 all good men ought to eschewe to theyr power . And  
 that his suster only be delyueryd agayn to hym / And  
 he shall pardone the ouerplus / And shall holden hit  
 as thyng that neuer had happend &c : : . .

**W**Han the kynge Peleus had herde Anthenor so 25  
 speke . he Chauffyd hym anone in grete anger  
 and yre . And began to blame the kynge Pry-  
 ant and saye that his witte was to lighte . And after  
 menaced Anthenor / & comanded hym that he shold goo  
 anone out of his land . for yf he taryed longe there / he 30



wold do flee hym by grete tormente . Anthenor taryed  
not longe after / but entrid in to hys shyppe wyth oute  
takyng leue . of the kynge Peleus . And fayllyd fo  
ferre by the see / that he arruyd at Salamyne . where  
5 the kynge Thelamon foiourned . Than Anthenor wente  
vnto hym / and exposid to hym the cause of his comyng  
in this maner . Syre sayd he the kynge Pryant re-  
quyreth effectueusly your nobleffe / that his suster exio-  
ne whome ye holde in your feruyce so fowly that ye  
10 wold restore vnto hym . For hyt is not fyttynge ne tor-  
neth vnto yow no glorye ne worshippe to trete fo the  
doughter and suster of a kynge and that is yffued of a  
more noble ligne than ye bee . And in caas that ye will  
restore to hym hys suster . He shall holde alle thynges  
15 as not doon as well the domaiges as the dishonours  
that by yow and other haue ben doon to hym .

**W**Han the kynge Thelamon had herde Anthenor  
fo speke / He began to wexe passyng angry  
And answerd to hym right fierfly sayng . My  
20 frende sayd he what some euer thou be / I haue moche  
meruaylle of the symplenes of thy kynge / to whome I  
haue none Amytye / neyther he to me . And therefore I  
oughte not obtempre to hys prayer ne requeste . Thy  
kynge oughte to knowe that I and other haue ben there  
25 for to venge an Iniurye / that hys fader Laomedon dide  
late to some of oure frendes . And for as moche as I  
than entryd firste in to the cyte of troyes with grete tra-  
uayll and effusion of my blood . Exione of whom thou  
spekest whyche is ryght fayre was gyuen vnto me for  
30 the guerdoun of my victorye / for to doo wyth her my

will / And for as moche as she is so well to my play-  
 fir as she that is of grete beawte and rempliffhid with  
 all scyences/hit is not to me so light a thinge to rendre  
 and delyuere agayn thyng that is so fayre and aue-  
 naüt . whiche I haue conquerid wyth so grete payne 5  
 and daunger / but thou shalt saye to thy kyng that he  
 may neuer recouere her but by the poynte of the swerd  
 And as for me I repute the for a fooll that euer wol-  
 dest enpryse this legacion wherein lyeth thy grete perill  
 for thou arte comen amonge peple that strongly hate 10  
 the and thy semblables / therefore go thy waye hastely  
 out of this contre . ffor yf thou abyde more here I shall  
 make the dye by cruell deth &c : : .

**W**Han Anthenor herd Thelamon so speke / he en-  
 tryd ryght hastely in to his shippe . And saylyd 15  
 so ferre that he arruyd in Achaye where the  
 kyng Castor and the kyng Polux his broder soiour-  
 ned / he descended lightly from his shippe and expofed  
 to them his legacyon lyke as he had made to the other /  
 And the kyng Castor answerd to hym in grete yre 20  
 and sayd to hym thus . ffrende who that thou arte  
 I wyll that thou knowe / that we wene not to haue  
 Iniuryed the kyng Pryant wyth out cause / as hit is  
 so that the kyng Laomedon his fader began the folye  
 wherfore he was slayn . ffor he wronged fyrst cer- 25  
 tain of the moſte nobles of grece / / And therefore we  
 defyre more the euyll wyll of thy kyng Pryaüt than  
 hys good loue or pees . And certes hit ſemeth well  
 that he had not the in chierte whan he ſente the hether  
 to do this meſſage in thys contre wherfore I rede ſee 30

well to that thou abyde not here longe / ffor yf thou  
goo not Incontynent thou shalte dye vylaynsly . Than  
Anthenor parted with oute leue / and entryd in to his  
shyppe . And faillyd tyll he cam to pyllon where the  
5 duc Nestor soiourned wyth a grete companye of no-  
ble men . Anthenor wente vnto hym and sayd that he  
was messfanger of kynge Pryant . And sayd and  
accountyd to hym his legacion in fuche wife as he had  
sayd to the other before / And yf the other were angry  
10 This Nestor angryd hym self more ayenst Anthenor  
and sayd to hym / Ha . ha . ylle varlet / who maad  
the so hardy for to saye fuche thynges to fore me . Cer-  
tes yf hyt were not / that my nobleffe refrayned me /  
I shold anone do arasche thy tonge oute of thy hede  
15 And in despyte of thy kynge I shold by force of horse  
do alle to drawe thy membres one from an other . Goo  
thy way hastely out of my syght . or by my goddes I  
shall doo to be doon alle that I haue sayd &c .

20 **T**Han Anthenor was alle abasshid of his hor-  
ryble wordes of duc Nestor And doubtyng  
the furour of hys tyrannye . retorned vnto the  
see / and put hym on his repayre to troye ward : And  
he had not ben longe on the see . whan a grete tempeste  
aroose And the ayer began to wexe derke and to rayne  
25 and to thonder right meruayllously . And to make grete  
wyndes contrarye / and to wexe thykke myste horryble  
And hys shyppe was born on the wawes one tyme  
hyghe and a nother tyme lowe in grete peryll . And  
there was not a man in the sayd shyppe/that ne suppo-  
30 sed to dye And that ne maad specyall promesses and

vowes to her goddes And in thise parillis were they  
thre dayes / and on the fourthe day the tempeste cessid  
And the ayer wexe all clere and becam payfyble . than  
they conforted hem self . and sayllid so ferre that they  
cam to the porte of Troyes / And wente hem straye to 5  
their temples . to yeue thankynges to their goddes of  
that they had escaped so many paryllis as they had  
ben Inne . And after Anthenor wente wyth a grete  
companye of noble men to fore the kynge Pryant /  
And whan all the barons were assemblid And alle 10  
the sones of the kynge present . Then Anthenor tolde  
alle by ordre . that he had founden in grece . lyke as hit  
is conteyned here to fore . Of thise tydynges was  
kynge Pryant fore troublid and fory of the obpro-  
brye and repreuys that they had doon to his messanger 15  
in grece . And than he had no more hope ne truste to re-  
coure hys suster &c : : . .

¶ How the kynge pryant assemblid all his barons  
for to knowe whome he myght sende in to grece for to  
gete agayn his suster exione . And how hector answerd 20  
and of his good counceyll / And how Parys exposed  
to hys fader the vyfion and the promesse of the god-  
desse Venus &c : : . .

W<sup>H</sup>an the kynge priaüt was thus adcertayned of  
the hate of the grekes . & by no fayr mene he coude 25  
recouere his suster / he was meuyd with grete yre / and  
thoughte that he wold sende a grete Nauye in to grece  
for to hurte and damage the grekes / / Alas kynge  
pryant telle me what mysfaenture is this that hath  
gynen to the so grete hardynes of corage . for to caste 30

oute thy self of thy welthe and reste / and why maiste  
not refrayne the fyrste meuynges of thy corage / how  
well that hyt was not in thy puyffance / yet thou  
oughtest to haue take good counceyll and meure / And  
5 to haue in thy mynde that men saye comunely / Some  
man weneth to avenge hys forowe / And he encre-  
fyth hit . Hyt had ben more sewre thyng to the / to  
haue remembrid the prouerbe that sayth / that he that  
fytteyth well / late hym not meue . or ellis . he that is  
10 well at his ese late hym kepe hym there in . Alle thynges  
may be suffryd . saue welthe / a man that goth vpon  
playn ground hath no thyng to stamble at . In thys  
maner than aforefayd kyng pryant thought longe  
And after he affembrid on a day all hys noble men in  
15 his palays of ylyon : And sayd vnto them / ye knowe  
how by your counceyll Anthenor was sente in to grece  
for to recouere my suster exione . And that by fayre  
manere / ye knowe also how he is returned / And  
what wronges and obprobres he hath founde : And  
20 me semeth that the grekes make lytyll counte of the In-  
iuries that they haue doon to vs / At the leste yf they by  
their wordes repente hem not / but yet they menasse vs  
more strongly than euer they dide . God forbede that  
euer hyt shold come vnto vs / like as they menasse vs .  
25 But I pray the goddes to gyue vs puyffance tavenge  
vs after theyr trespaas / And as for me / Me semeth  
that we be more puyffaüt and stronge than they ar /  
And also we haue the moste sewreste Cyte And the  
best garnysshid of the world / And also we haue of  
30 grete lordes ryght grete plente alyed to vs for to helpe  
and ayde vs at our nede . And me semeth for conclusion

that we haue well the puyffance for to damage and hurte our enemyes in many maners / And vs to defende from them . And so shold hit be good for to begynne to shewe to them . what puyffance we haue to greue them with alle / yf ye thynke hit good we shal sende our men secretli that shal do to them grete damage er that they shall be redy for to defende them . And for that ye oughte alle to employe yow to take vengeance of thise Iniuries . and that ye haue no doubtte for ony thyng . in as moche as they had fyrste victorye / ffor hit happeth ofte tymes that the vaynquers ben vaynquysshid of them that were vaynquysshid &c : .

**T**Han all they that were present allowed the aduyse of the kynge . and offryd euery man by hym self to employe them to the same with all theyr power / wherof the kynge Priant had grete Ioye And after that he had thanked hem/he lete euery man departe and go home to theyr owne howses / referuyd onely his sones legytisme and the bastardis whome he helde in hys palays . And sayd to them the complaynte of the grekes wyth wepyng teres in this manere . My sones ye haue well in your memorye the deth of your grantfader / the seruytude of your Aunte Exione . that mē holdeth by your lyuyng in manere of a comyn woman / And ye be so puyffant . me semeth that rayson shold enseygne yow . for to employe yow to auenge this grete Iniurye and shame . And yf thys meue yow not therto . yet ye ought to do hyt to satysfye my wyll and pleasyr / ffor I dye for sorowe and anguyssh to whiche ye ought and ben bounde

for to remedye to your power that haue do yow so well  
be nourysshid and brought furth . And thou hector  
my ryght dere fone/that art the oldeste of thy bretherin  
the moſte wyſe and the moſte ſtronge : I praye the  
5 fyrſt that thou empryſe to putte in execucion thys my  
wyll . And that thou be duc and prynce of thy bre-  
therin in thys werke . And alle the other ſhall obeye  
gladly vnto the . And in lyke wyſe ſhall doo alle they  
of this royame for the grete prowefſe that they knowe  
10 in the . And knowe that from this day forth I diſpoyle  
me of alle thys werke and putte hyt vpon the that arte  
the moſte ſtronge and aſpre to mayntene the bataylles  
And I am Auncyent and olde / And may not forth on  
helpe my ſelf ſo well as I was wonte to doo &c .

15 **T**O theſe wordes anſwerd Hector right ſobrelly  
and ſwetely ſayng my fader / and my ryght  
dere and ſouerayn lord . Ther is none of alle  
your ſones/but that hit ſemeth to hym thyng humayne  
to deſyre vengeance of thyſe Iniuryes . And alſo to vs  
20 that ben of hyghe nobleſſe a lytyll Iniurye ought to be  
grete / as hit is ſo that the qualyte of the perſone gro-  
weth and mynnyſheth ſo oughte the qualyte of the  
Iniurye / And yf we deſyre and haue appetite to take  
vengeance of our Iniuryes / we forſake not ne leue  
25 the nature humayne . ffor in lyke wyſe do and vſen  
the dombe beſtes in the ſame manere / and nature en-  
ſeigneth and gyueth hem therto . My ryght dere lord  
and fader ther is none of alle your ſones that oughte  
more to deſyre the vengeance of the Iniurye & deth of our  
30 Ayeul or granfader than I . that am the oldeste / But

y will yf hit plese yow that ye confidere in this empyse  
not onely the begynnyng / but also the myddell and  
the ende / to what thyng we may come here after / ffor  
otherwhyle lityll prouffytten some thynges well be-  
gonne that come vnto an euyll ende . Than me thynketh 5  
that hit is moche more allowable to a man to absteine  
hym for to begynne thynges wherof the endes ben daun-  
gerous / And wherof may come more euyll than good  
ffor the thyng is not fayd ewrous or happy vnto the  
tyme that hit come vnto a good ende I faye not thyse 10  
thynges for ony euyll or cowardyse . But onely to  
the ende that ye begynne not a thyng . And specyally  
that thyng that ye haue on your herte to put hit light-  
ly in ewre . But that ye fyrst be well counceyllyd / ye  
knowe well that alle Affricque and Europe ben sub- 15  
gettys vnto the grekes . How ben they garnysshid of  
knyghtes worthy . hardy . and ryche ryght meruayl-  
lously . Certes at this day the force and strength of  
vs here . is not to be compared vnto them in force ne  
in vayllyance . Wherefore yf we begynne the warre 20  
ayenst them . we myght lyghtly come to a mescheuous  
and shamefull ende / we that ben in so grete reste and  
ease a mongs our silf . what wole we feke for to trou-  
ble our prosperyte and welfare . Exyone is not of  
so hyghe pryse . that hit behoueth alle vs to put vs in 25  
peryll and doubte of deth for her She hath ben now  
longe tyme there . where she is yet . hit were better that  
she parforme forth her tyme that y trowe hath but  
lityl tyme to lyue . than we sholde put vs alle in suche  
perylls And mekely y besече yow not to suppose in 30  
no maner / that y faye these thynges for cowardyse



But I doubte the tournes of fortune / And that vnder  
the shadowe of thys thyng she not bete ne destroye  
youre grete feignourye/And that we ne begynne thyng  
that we ought to leue for to eschewe more grete myf-  
5 chyef &c :

**W**Han Hector had maad an ende of hys an-  
wer . Parys was no thyng well contente  
therwyth . He stode vp on hys feet and sayd  
in thys wyse . My ryght dere lord I beseeche yow to  
10 here me saye to what ende ye may come yf ye begynne  
the warre agaynst the grekes / How be not we gar-  
nysshid of so many and noble Chyualrye as they ben .  
Certes that bee we / whyche in alle the world is none  
that may disconfyte . And therefore begynne ye hardely  
15 that empryse that ye haue thoughte/And sende of your  
shyppis and of your peple to renne in grece / And to  
take the peple and damage the contre . And yf hyt please  
yow to sende me / I shall doo hit wyth a good wyll  
and herte : .For I am certayne that yf ye sende me/that  
20 I shall doo grete damage vnto the grekes . And I shall  
take some noble lady of grece and brynge her with me  
in to this Royame . And by the comutacion of her /ye  
may recouere your suster exione / And yf ye wyll vn-  
derstand and knowe how I am certayn of this thyng  
25 I shall saye hit to yow how the goddes haue promysid  
hit to me . Hit happend to me late sayd parys in the  
tyme that by your comandement I was in the lasse ynde  
at the begynnyng of the Sömer / And that vpon a  
fryday . I wente me to hunte in a foreste ryght erly  
30 And so that morenyng I fonde no thyng that tor-  
ned me to ony playfyr / And than after myddaye

y fonde a grete herte that y put to the chaffe so swyfte-  
ly that y lefte alle my felawshyp behynde and folo-  
wed the herte in to the moſte deferte place of alle the  
foreſte . whyche foreſte was named yda . And ſo  
longe y folowed hym that y cam vnto a place þ<sup>t</sup> was 5  
paſſyng obſcure and derke . And than y ſawe nomore  
the herte that y chaſſyd . y felte me fore wery and my  
horſe alſo that myght no further go and ſwette on all  
ſides . y lyghte a doun to the grounde . and teyde my horſe  
to a tree And leyde me doun vpon the graſſe and layde 10  
vnder my heed my bow torquoyſ in the ſtede of a pe-  
lowe . and anone y fylle a ſlepe . Than cam to me in a  
viſyon the god Mercurye . and in his companye thre  
goddeſſes That is to wete Venus Pallas and Iuno  
he lefte the goddeſſes a lityl fro me . and after he ap- 15  
proched and ſayd to me in this wiſe Parys y haue  
brought here thiſe thre goddeſſes vnto the . for a grete  
ſtrif or tenchon that is fallen betwene them / They haue  
all choſen the to be juge and determyne after thy will  
Theyr tenchon or ſtryf is ſuche / that they ete that other 20  
daye to geder in a place . and than ſodaynly was caſte  
amonge hem an apple of ſo meruayllous ſourme of  
ſayrenes and beaulte that neuer was ſeen non ſuche a  
ſorne amongs them . And ther was wreton aboute  
thys forſayd apple in grekyſh langage be hit gyuen to 25  
the ſayreſte . And ſo anon eche of them wold haue hit  
for ony thyng in the world Sayng eche her ſelf to  
be moſt ſayre : and ſayrer than the other And ſo they  
myght not accorde . Wherefore they ben ſubmyſed to  
thy judgement . And eche of hem promytteth the ſertayn- 30  
ly a yeſte for thy reward þ<sup>t</sup> thou ſhalt haue withoute

faylle for the Iugement of the Apple / yf thou Iuge that  
Iuno be the fayreste / she shall make the the moſte noble  
man of the world in magnyficence / yf thou Iuge for  
pallas she ſhall make the the moſte wyfeſt man of all  
5 the world in all ſcyences / yf thou Iuge that venus be  
the fayreste she ſhall gyue vnto the the moſte noble  
lady of grece . ¶ Whan I herde Mercuryus thus ſpeke to  
me / I fayd to hym / that I cowde not yeue trewe Iuge-  
ment / but yf I ſawe hem alle naked to fore me for to  
10 fee the better the facions of their bodyes / for to yeue  
a trewe Iugement . And than Incontynent / mercurius  
dide them do vnclithe all naked . and than I behelde hem  
longe : And me thoughte alle thre paſſyng fayre . But  
yet me ſemed that Venus exceded the beaulte of the  
15 other / And therefore I Iuged that the Apple appertey-  
ned to her / And than venus gretly reioyſſid of my Iu-  
gement confermed to me the promeſſe that mercurye  
had maad to me in the fauour of her / And after I a-  
woke anone / Wene ye than my right dere fader that the  
20 goddes faylle of thyng that they promyſſe / nay veryly  
So than I faye yow this to the ende that ye ſende me in  
to grece . And that ye may haue Ioye of that I ſhall  
doe there &c .

25 **A**.fter Parys ſpacke Deyphebus in thys ma-  
nyere . My ryght dere lorde yf in alle the wer-  
kys that men ſhold begynne / men ſhold auyſe  
in all the particulartytes and ſynguler thynges that  
myght happe or falle / ther ſhold neuer enterpryſe ner  
no feet be doon ner maad by hardynes / yf the labourers

shold leue to ere and sowe the lande . for the feed that  
 the birdes recuyelle and gadre . they shold neuer laboure  
 And for so moche ryght dere fader late make redy for  
 to sende in to grece of yourshippisye may not beleue bet-  
 ter counceyll than that councel that Paris hath gyuen 5  
 to yow ffor yf he brynge ony noble ladye . ye may light-  
 ly for to yelde her agayn . haue agayn your suster exione  
 for whome we all suffre vilonye ynowhe . After this  
 spake helenus the fourthe sone of kyng Pryant that  
 said thus . ha . ha . right puissant kyng and right foue- 10  
 rayn domynatour vpon vs your humble subgettes . &  
 obeyffant sones . beware that coueytise of vengance  
 put not yow in suche daunger as lyeth herein . ye know  
 well how y knowe and can the scyence to knowe the  
 thynges future and to come . as ye haue prouyd many 15  
 tymes with oute . fyndyng sawte . the goddes forbode  
 that hit neuer come that parys be sente in to grece . ffor  
 knowe ye for certayn that yf he goo to make ony af-  
 fault . ye shall see this noble and worshipfull Cyte  
 destroyed by the grekes The troyans slayn and we 20  
 alle that ben your Chyldren . And therefore deporte  
 yow of these thynges . whereof the ende shall be so-  
 rowe and grete execucion of ryght byttre deth . And  
 that ye youre self and your wyf and we . we that  
 ben youre sones may not escape . ffor trewly yf paris 25  
 goo in to grece all thyse euyllis shall come therof . .

**W**Han the kyng herde Helenus thus speke he  
 was all abasshid and began to countrepeyfe  
 and thynke And helde his peas and spake

[leaf 161]

523

not of a grete whyle And so dyde alle the other / Than  
 arose vpon his' feet Troylus the yongest sone of kynge  
 pryant And began to speke in this manyere / O noble  
 men and hardy / how be ye abaffhid for the wordes of  
 5 this Coward preste here / is hit not the custome of pre-  
 stes for to drede the bataylles by pusillanymyte / And  
 for to loue the delycles and to fatte and encrasse hem &  
 fyllle their belyes with good wynes and wyth good  
 metys / Who is he þ' beleuyth that ony man may knowe  
 10 the thynges to come / but yf the goddes shewe hit hem  
 by reuelacion . Hyt is but folye for to tarye vpon thys  
 or to beleue fuche thynges / yf helenus be a ferd late hym  
 goo in to the temple And syng the dyuyne seruyce .  
 And late the other take vengeance of their Iniuryes by  
 15 force of armes . O ryght dere fader and lord wherfore  
 art thou so troublid for these wordes / fende thy shippis  
 in to grece and thy knyghtes wyse and hardy / that may  
 rendre to the grekes theyr Iniuryes that they haue don  
 to vs / Alle they that herde troylus thus speke / they a-  
 20 lowed hym sayng that he had well spoken / And thus  
 they synysfid their parlament and wente to dyner .

**A**.fter dyner the kynge pryant callid Parys and  
 Deyphebus / And comanded them expresly that  
 they shold goo vnto the partyes of Panonye  
 25 hastely to fecche and assemble knyghtes wyse and  
 hardye for to take with hem in to grece . And than that  
 same day parys and deyphebus departid from the cyte  
 of Troye for to accomplishe the wyll of theyr fader

The day folowyng the kynge assemblid to counceyll .  
 Alle the cytezeyns of the cyte of troye and fayde to them  
 O my frendes and trewe bourgoys / ye knowe alle no-  
 toriely / how the grekes by theyr pryde haue don to vs  
 grete wronges . And Innumerable domayges as hit is 5  
 well knowen in alle the world / And ye knowe also  
 how they holde exione my sufter in seruitude / wherfore I  
 lyue in grete sorowe / & also ye be remembryd how I haue  
 sente Anthenour in to grece that hath nothing doon / wher-  
 fore my sorowe is dowblid . And for as moche as by 10  
 yron ben cured the woundes Insanable / I haue purposid  
 to sende parys my sone with men of Armes & puiffance  
 in to grece . . For to enuahye and assaylle oure enemyes  
 by strengthe And for to doo to them grete domayges / and  
 for to assaye yf they might take ony noble lady of grece 15  
 And her to sende in to this cyte And that by the commu-  
 tacion of her / I myght gete agayn my sufter exione And  
 for so moche as I will not begynne this thinge / but that  
 hit may come to your knowleche firste . I praye yow  
 that ye saye to me your aduys . For with oute yow I 20  
 wyll not procede further therin . For as moche as hit  
 toucheth yow alle as well as me .

**W**Han the kynge had thus snyffhid his wordes  
 and that eche man helde hym stille a gretewhile  
 Than stode vp a knyght named pantheus . That 25  
 was the sone of deufrobe the philosopher And sayde .  
 O right noble kynge as I am your trewe seruant and  
 vassale / I will expose to yow my corage of this werke  
 also treuly as a vassale and subgette oweth to coun-  
 ceyll his lorde / ye haue had well in knowleche deufrobe 30  
 the grete philosophre my fader That liuyd hole & sounde

more than nyne skore and ten yere / And was so wyfe in  
 philofophye that he knewe the science of thynges to  
 come here after / he saide to me many tymes and affermed  
 for trouthe / That yf parys your sone wente in to grece  
 5 for to take ony noble lady by vyolence / That this noble  
 cyte shold be destroyed and brente in to ashes by the  
 grekes and that ye and alle yowris shold be slayn  
 cruelly / And therefore ryght sage and wyfe kyng plese  
 hit your nobleffe to here my worde and beleue that the  
 10 wyse men haue sayd / And also in that thyng that ye  
 may not lese to leue / And wherof grete sorowe may  
 ensiwe yf ye perseuere / wherfore wyll ye put an enbus-  
 shement vpon your reste / And to put your tranquyllite  
 vnder the dangereufes auentures of fortune / Leue this  
 15 and departe yow yf hit plese yow fro this soleye / And  
 parfyne and ende your lyf in reste ewreusly / And suffre  
 not parys to goo in to grece in Armes And yf ye wolle  
 algate Sende ye another than parys / At these wordes  
 of pantheus soulded and aroofe grete murmures of the  
 20 heerers / Some reprouyd the prophecyes of deufrobe  
 the philofopher / And some helde hit for mocquerye and  
 fable / And they were of the gretteft nombre / in so  
 moche that by the consente of the more partye / Pa-  
 rys was comyfed for to go in to grece wyth men of  
 25 Armes / And the parlament fynysshid eche man  
 wente hym home in to his hous and to his place .

**W**Han this conclusion was comen to the knowleche  
 of cassandra the doughter of kyng pryant / she be-  
 gan to make so grete sorowe / As she had be solyssh or  
 30 oute of her mynde . And began to crye an hyghe sayng .

Ha . ha . right noble cyte of troye / what fayerye hath  
 meuyd the to be brought to suche paryllis / for whiche  
 thou shalt in shorte tyme be beten doun And thyne hyghe  
 tourys ben demoliffhid and destroyed vnto the ground  
 Ha ha quene hecuba for what synne hast thou deseruyd 5  
 the deth of thy children whiche shall be cruell and hor-  
 rible / wherefore destourneft not thou paris fro goyng in  
 to grece / whiche shall be cause of this euyll auenture .  
 And whan she had so cryed / she wente to her fader the  
 kyng . And with wepyng drowned in terys prayd 10  
 hym . That he shold deporte hym and leue his empryse .  
 And that she wiste by her scyence the grete euyllis and  
 harmes that were comyng by this cause / But neuer for  
 the dissuacions of hector . Ne the monyffions ne war-  
 nynges of cassandra the kyng wold not change his 15  
 purpos ne for helenus his sone ne for pantheus &c .

¶ How parys and deyphebus / Eneas Anthenor and  
 Polidamas were sente in to grece And how they rauyf-  
 shyd helayne oute of the temple of venus with many  
 prysonners and riches and brought them to Troye 20  
 where parys espowfed the sayd helayne .

**A**T thentre of the moneth of maye / whan the erthe  
 is attyred and aourned with diuerse flowres .  
 Parys and deyphebus retorned fro panonye  
 and brought with hem thre thousand knyghtes / ryght 25  
 hardy and wyse / Than they made redy two and twenty  
 grete shippes and chargid and leyde in them alle that  
 was conuenient for them Than the kyng pryant callid  
 Eneas Anthenor and polidamas that was the sone of  
 Anthenor / And prayd hem and comanded that they 30  
 shold go in to grece with parys and deyphebus / And



They offryd hem self to goo wyth good wylle / And  
whan they were alle redy and assemblid for to goo in  
to theyr shyppis / The kynge pryant spake to them in this  
manere / hit behoueth not to replicque many wordes .For  
5 ye knowe well ynowhe for what cause I fende yow in  
to grece / And how well that I haue cause for to avenge  
me of the wronges that the grekes haue don to vs / Alle-  
way the pryncypall cause is to recouere my fuster exione  
that lyueth in so grete fylthe and miserye / And for to do  
10 so ye owe to employe yow / Wherfore I pray yow and  
admoneste yow that ye putte alle your payne and dily-  
gence that I may recouere my fuster / And be ye certayn  
yf ye haue mester or nede of focours / I shall focoure yow  
wyth so grete a strengthe that the grekes shall not  
15 mowe suffre / And I wyll that in this voyage ye holde  
Parys my sone Duc and conduytour of this bataylle .  
And after hym deyphebus / And to doo by the counceyll  
of Eneas and Anthenor .

20 **A**.Fter these wordes Parys and alle the other  
toke leue of the kynge and entryd in to theyr  
shyppis And drewe vp saylles / And recoman-  
ded hem in the conduyte of Iupiter and of venus / And  
saylled so ferre by the hyghe see / That they arryued in  
the parties of grece in consteyyng thecontre / that hit hap-  
25 pend hem on a day that they mette a shippe in the whiche  
was one of the grettest kynges of grece named Mene-  
laus that wente vnto the cyte of pyre vnto the duc Nes-  
tor that had sente for hym This Menelaus was broder  
of kynge Agamenon and was maryed vnto the quene  
30 helayne / That was the fayrest ladye in the world  
that men knewe of in her tyme And she was fuster

of kynge castor and polus that dwellyd than to geder  
 in the cyte of samestare And nourysshing with hem her-  
 mone theyr nyece doughter of the sayd helayne / Mene-  
 laus made a lityll discouere his shippe And to torne out  
 of the ryght waye / And so that one knewe not that 5  
 other And the Troians sayllyd so ferre that they arry-  
 ued in the yle of cythare in grece And there they Ancred  
 theyr shippys and wente a lande / In this yle was a tem-  
 ple of venus passing Auncient and of grete beaulte full  
 of all richesses / .For as moche as the habitantes also 10  
 of the contrey had theyr deuocion specially vnto venus  
 the goddesse And sollempnyfed her festes eche yere / and  
 she gaf to them answers of theyr demandes Than whan  
 the troians were arryued they halowed the moste prin-  
 cipall feste of venus And for this cause were assemblid 15  
 men and women of the contre ther aboute / That made  
 grete feest &c .

**W**Han parys knewe this feest / He toke his beste  
 clothis & dyde hem on and also the beste saryng  
 and klenliest men that he had . And wente hym 20  
 in to the temple and entryd therin by fayre and swete  
 manere and made his oblacion of gold and seluer with  
 grete largesse Than was parys strongly beholden on alle  
 sides of them that were there for his beaulte . For he was  
 one the sayrest knyght of þ<sup>r</sup> world and was so richely 25  
 and so queyntly clothed and habyllyd that hit gaf grete  
 playfir vnto alle them that beheld hym . And euery man  
 desired to knowe what he was and whens he cam .  
 And they demanded of the troians that tolde hem / that  
 hit was parys sone of kynge Pryant of Troye / That 30  
 was comen in to grece by the comandement of his fader .

.For to requyre amyably that they wolde rendre and  
 yelde agayn Exione his fuster that they had gyuen to  
 kyng Thelemon / So ferre wente the tidyngis of the  
 comynge of these troians and of theyr beaulte and hyghe  
 5 apparayll that the quene helayne herd speke therof And  
 than after the custome of women / She had grete desire  
 to knowe by experyence yf hit were trouthe that she  
 herde speke of / And dispoſid her to go vnto the temple  
 vnder the colour of deuocion for to accompliſh her desire.  
 10 O how grete folye is hit vnto honeſte women to wylle  
 goo often tymes vnto the feſtes and eſbatemens of yong  
 peple / That lityll or nought do there / But muſe and  
 deuylſe how they may come to theyr deſires . And recche  
 not what meſchyeſ may folowe in body and in fowle .  
 15 The ſhyppes ſhold neuer peryſh yf hit abode alleway  
 in the porte / And were not ſente oute in to paryllys of  
 the ſee / Hit is a good thyng and a precyous Iewell of  
 a good woman that holdeth her honeſtly in her hows .  
 O how grete damage cam vnto the grekes and to the  
 20 Troians of this that helayne wente ſo lyghtly to ſee  
 the Troians / That ought not ſo to do and ſpecyally  
 in the abſence of her huſbonde / But as hit is the cuſ-  
 tome of women to wylle brynge theyr deſire to the ende .  
 Helayne Incontynent dyde do make redy horſe and alle  
 25 that was conuenyent for to goo vnto the temple .  
 And ſhe dyde hem to vnderſtande that ſhe wente for  
 deuocion / .For this temple was not ferre fro the  
 place that ſhe dwellyd / Whan alle was Redy  
 And ſhe clothyd in habyte Ryall / She rood with  
 30 her companye vnto the yſle of Cythare / And entrid  
 in to a veſſell that brought her nyghe to the temple .

where she was receyuyd with grete worship of them of  
the contrey as theyr lady/she entrid in to the temple right  
stately. And made there her deuocion and her oblacions  
with grete largesse &c .

**W**Han parys knewe that the quene helayne that 5  
was wyf of kynge Menelaus one of the moste  
noble kynges of grece was comen vnto this tem-  
ple / He arayed hym in the moste gentilmanlieft wyfe  
that he coude and his companye And wente in to the tem-  
ple .For he had longe tyme before herd speke of her grete 10  
beaulte . And than as he was comen and sawe her / He  
was gretly esprifed with her loue And began strongly  
to beholde her. And to desire to see the facion of her body  
That was so fayr and well shapen in alle thinges / and  
in suche wife that hit semed properly to them that sawe 15  
her/That nature had made her to be beholden & beseyn .  
.For in her was no thing but that hit seruyd to encrece  
alle the beaulte þ<sup>t</sup> myght befounden in a woman / wher-  
fore parys might not forbere to beholde her/fayng in hym  
self that he had neuer seen ne herde speke of ony so fayre 20  
and so well fourmed And as he behelde her / In like  
wyfe helayne behelde hym also many tymes and ofte .  
and her semed that he was more fayrer a grete dele than  
had ben reported to her . And well sayd in her self that  
she sawe neuer man of so grete beaulte / Ne that plefid 25  
her so well to beholde And so she lefte alle her deuocion  
and alle other thoughtes And gaf no fors ne raught of  
no thing than / saue only for to beholde parys. Whan pa-  
rys knewe and sawe this he had grete Ioye / and behelde  
her swetely more and more and she hym / By whiche 30  
sighte they shewyd ynowhe of theyr desires / that one to

that other / And thoughte gretly by what occasion they  
myght speke to gyder / And so longe they behelde eche  
other that by semblaunt / Helayne made a token or signe  
to parys that he approchid to her / And anone parys  
5 fatte down beside her / whilis that the peple playde in the  
temple And spack to her wyth a softe voys ryght swe-  
tely and she to hym / And exposid eche to other how  
they were surprysid of the loue of that one and of that  
other / And how they myght come to the ende after her  
10 desire / And whan they had spoken ynough of theyr hote  
loue / Parys toke leue of her And yssued out of the tem-  
ple / He and his felawshipp / And helayne sente after  
hym her eyen also fer as she myghte .

15 **W**Han Parys was comen to his shippe / he callyd  
to hym the mooste noble and grettest of his com-  
panye / And sayd to hem in this manere / My  
frendes ye knowe well wherfore the kynge my fader  
hath sente vs in to grece / That is to wete for to recouure  
Exione his suster . And yf we may not recouure her that  
20 we shold do damage vnto þ<sup>e</sup> grekes / we may not recouure  
Exione . For she is in ouer stronge an hand And also hit  
shold be to ouer grete daunger and damage / syn it is so  
that the kynge Thelamon that holdeth her and loueth her  
strongly / is more puyssant than we and is in his owen  
25 propre heritage / we ben no thyng so puyssant for to  
take in grece ony noble cyte / the contre is so full of peple  
and of many vayllyant folk Than me semeth good that  
the fayr yefft and notable that the goddes hath sente  
vnto vs / we reffuse not / we see in this yle comen to the  
30 feste the mooste grettest Cytezeyns / and the temple reple-  
nysshid wyth the mooste noble women of this prouynce

And also the queene helayne / that is lady of this contre  
and wyf of kynge menelaus / This temple is also full  
of alle richeffes / yf we myght take them a liue that ben  
in the temple and brynge them pryfoners with vs and  
take the goodes that ther ben of gold and of siluer / we 5  
shall haue conquerd a grete gayne . And other richeffes  
that we shold go fecche in other places / yf ye seme good  
I am of the oppynyon / that now this nyght we shall  
entre in to the temple alle armed / And that we shall  
take men and women and alle that we shall finde and 10  
brynge in to our shippes and principally helayne / .For yf  
we maye brynge her in to troye / The kynge pryant may  
lightly I nowh haue agayn his suster Exione for her .  
Therefore aduysse yow hastely what is beste to be don .  
whilis that hit is in poynte And er they escape vs / some 15  
of them blamed this thinge And some allowed hit / and  
finably they concluded after many counsellys that they  
shold do as parys had deuysed.

**N**ow hit happend that the nyght was come / and  
the mone was nyghe goon doun The troians ar- 20  
med them the moste secrete wise that they cowde  
And leste some of them for to kepe theyr shippys / And  
the other wente preuily vnto the temple . And entryd  
therin so armed as they were And with lityll deffence  
toke alle them that they fonde in the temple and alle the 25  
rycheffes that were therin . And parys with his owen  
hande toke helayne and them of theyr companye And  
broughte in to theyr shippes alle the beste and put hit in  
sure garde / And after retorned to the proye / Tho began  
the noyse passing grete with in the temple of the pryfon- 30  
ners / And of the some that had leuer suffre to be slayn .

than for to be take pryfonners / the noyse was herd ferre  
In fuche wyfe that they of the castell that stode therby  
herde hit / And Incontynent they aroofe and armed hem  
and cam to affaylle the troians as vayllyant as they  
5 were / Tho began the medle ryght fyers and mortalle .  
But the troians that were foure ayenst one slewe many  
of them And the other fledde and Reentryd in to theyr  
castell / And than the troians toke as moche as they  
coude fynde of good / and bare hit vnto theyr shippis .  
10 And entryd in to them / And drewe vp theyr fayllys  
And fayllyd so longe that on the feuenth day they cam  
and Arruyd at the porte of troye theyr shippes full  
of good prifonners and of good Rychesses And they  
abood at the porte of thenedon that was but thre myle  
15 fro Troye / And there were they receyuyd wyth grete  
Ioye / And than parys sente a propre messanger vnto  
his fader the kynge pryant to lete hym haue knowleche  
of his comynge and of alle that/that he had doon in grece  
Of these tidynges the kynge was gretly reyoyffyd and  
20 comanded in alle the cyte to make feste solempnly for  
these tidynges &c .

**W**Hilys that helayne was with the other prifonners  
in the shippe of parys she made grete sorowe / And  
cessid not to wepe ne to bewayle with grete fighes her  
25 husbondeher brethern her doughter her contre and her fren-  
des And was in so grete sorowe / that she leste to ete and  
drynke / And parys confortd her the moste swetely þ<sup>t</sup> he  
coude / but she might not suffre to forbere wepyng / & than  
parys said to her in this manere / How lady wherfore  
30 demene ye this sorowe daye & nyght with out reste / what  
man or woman is that might longe endure & suffre this .

Ne wene not ye that this forowe hurteth your helthe .  
ye verayly lady / ye make to moche therof / wherfore  
fro hens forth I pray yow to leue And take reste / for in  
this royame ye shall lakke no thinge / And no more  
shalle tho prysonners that ye wylle haue recomanded . 5  
And ye shall be the moste renomede lady of this royame  
and the moste ryche And your meyne that ben here shall  
faulte of no thing / To these wordes anwerd helayne  
to parys in this maner / I knowe well sayd she that  
will I or will I not I muste nedes doo as ye wil syn that 10  
I am your prysonner And yf ony good be done to me and  
to the prysonners / I hope the goddes shall thanke and re-  
warde them that so doo / Ha . A . sayd parys ne doubtte  
you not / .For men shall do to them all that shall plese  
yow to comande / And than he toke her by the hand and 15  
brought her in to a more secrete place and sayd to her .  
Madame wene ye for as moche as hit had plefid to the  
goddes for to suffre yow to be brought by me in to this  
prounce that ye be losse And that ye shall not be more  
ryche and more honoured than ye haue ben And that the 20  
royame of troye be not more ryche Than the royame of  
Achaye / yes veryly that hit is / wene ye that I will ma-  
yntene yow dishonestly Certes nay / but shal take yow  
to my wyf . And so shall ye be more honoured than ye  
haue ben with your husbond and more preysid / .For 25  
your husbonde is not yssued out of so noble a howse as  
I am ne so vayllyant . Nor he louyd yow neuer so well  
as I shall doo / Therefore cesse ye fro hensforth to make  
fuche forowe / And beleue me of this that I haue sayd  
to yow / Ha . a . sayd she who can abstayne her fro ma- 30  
king of sorow beyng in the estate that I am in Alas this



caas happend me neuer to fore / But syn hit may be none  
otherwyse / Sore anoyed and greuyd / I shall do that  
that thyng that ye me requyre / .For as moche as I haue  
no puyffance to resyfte hit Thus was helayne reconfor-  
5 tyd a lityll And parys dyde do playse her wyth all his  
power &c .

**W**Han the morn cam betyme hedydedo clothe her  
and Araye her the moste honourably that he  
myght And made her to fytt vpon a palefroye  
10 rychely arayed and aoured / And so dyde he the other  
prysonners eche after his degre / And after he wente to  
horfback hym self and Deyphebus his broder / Eneas .  
Anthenor and Polydamas wyth grete companye of  
noble men / And accompanied the queene helayne / And  
15 departed fro thenadon / And wente to troyes ward .  
And ther cam ayenst hem wythoute the toun the kyng  
Pryant wyth grete companye of noble men / And recey-  
uyd his children and his frendes wyth grete Ioye / And  
after cam to helayne / And bowed ryght swetely to her  
20 And dyde to her grete Ioye and worshipp / And whan  
they cam nyghe the cyte they fonde grete foyson of peple .  
That made grete feste of theyr comyng in many maners  
of Instrumentis of musycque / And in suche Ioye cam  
vnto the pallays of kyng Pryant / And he hym self  
25 lighte a doun and helpe helayne doun of her palefroye  
And lad her by the hande vnto wythin the halle / And  
there they made ryght grete Ioye alle the nyght thurgh  
oute alle the cyte for these tidynges / And than whan  
hyt cam vnto the morn Parys by the agrement and  
30 consente of his fader toke helayne to hys wyf And  
wedded her in the temple of Pallas . And therfore

And therefore the feste was lengthyd thurgh oute all  
the cyte And the Ioye that endured yet after eyghte da-  
yes hool &c .

**W**Han Cassandra knewe for trouthe that parys  
herbroder had wedded helayne / she began to ma- 5  
ke grete forowe to Crye & braye as a woman  
oute of her witte And sayde thus O vnhappy troians  
wherfore reioyffe ye yow of the weddyng of parys .  
Wherof so many euyllys shall come and folowe . And  
wherfore see not ye the deth of your self And of your fo- 10  
nes that shall be slayn to fore your eyen And the huf-  
bondes to fore theyr wyuys with grete sorow / Ha . A  
noble cyte of Troyes how thou shalt be destroyed and  
put to nought / Ha . a vnhappy moders / what sorowe  
shall ye see / whan ye shall see your lityll children taken 15  
and dismembryd to fore yow / Ha . a hecuba kaytyf  
and vnhappy where shalt thou take the water that  
thou shalt wepe for the deth of thy children Ha . a peple  
blind & folissh / why sende not ye Incontynent helayne  
home agayn / And yelde her vnto her righte husbond to 20  
fore that the swardes of your enemyes come and slee  
yow with grete sorowe / wene ye that this prynce the  
husbond of helayne wole dwelle at home with oute gre-  
uous vengeance / Certes that shall be your dolorouse fyn  
and ende / ha . a vnhappy helayne / thou shalt do vs moche 25  
sorowe As cassandra said and cryed thus with hyghe  
voys and with grete sorowe The kynge pryant knewe  
hit And did her to be taken prysonner And sende to her  
and did do praye her that she shold cesse / but she wolde  
not / And than he comanded that she shold be fast shette 30  
in prison and in yrons / where she was kept many dayes

O what pyte was hyt / That the Troyans beleuyd  
not this warnyng and Amonyacion / .For yf they had  
beleuyd hyt / They had eschewid the right grete euyllis  
that cam after vnto them / That shall be told in fa-  
5 blys to them that wole here hem vnto the ende of the  
world &c .

¶ How menelaus was fore troblid for the Rauyf-  
fhyng of helayne his wyf / And how Castor and  
Polux brethern of her pourfuyeden Parys in the see .  
10 And of theyr deth / And also of the condicion and  
manere of the lordes as well Grekis as Troians .

AS these thynges were doon as sayd is / Me-  
nelaus that sojourned at pyre wyth the duc  
Nestor herde telle the trouthe of the pryfe  
15 and takyng of his wyf and of his peple wherof he  
was fore angry and moche abasshyd / And was  
so dolaūt and forowfull that he fylle to the ground  
a swowne / And than whan he was come to hym  
self agayn / He began fore to complayne hym and de-  
20 mene the grettest sorowe of the world / And aboue  
alle other thynges he was moſte ſory for hys wyf .  
And bewayllyd her beawlte and her ſolace / And  
myght by no way be confortd / Whan the duc  
Nestor herd ſaye therof he cam to hym haſtely and  
25 confortd hym the moſte beſte wyfe he cowde / .For  
he louyd hym wyth grete loue / But Menelaus  
cowde not leue hys ſorowe / But toke hys waye  
vnto hys contre / And the duc Nestor conveyed  
hym wyth a grete companye of noble men . . .

He sente vnto the kyng Agamenon his broder that he  
shold come speke with hym And also he sende to castor  
and polux the brethern of helayne that they shold come  
also to hym / And anone as they had herd the message  
they cam vnto hym / Whan Agamenon sawe his broder 5  
demene fuche sorowe and heuynesse / he sayd to hym A  
my broder wherfore demenest thou fuche sorowe / sup-  
pose that the cause be Iuste / Allewaye a wyfe man  
ought not to shewe fuche semblant outward . .For in  
shewing fuche sorow outward hit causeth his frendes 10  
to be sorowfull / And his enemyes to be Ioyous / And  
therefore fayne thy sorowe & kele thy corage / And make  
semblant / as thou raughtest no thing of this that is be-  
falle .For by wepyng ne by demenyng of sorowe / thou  
mayst neuer come to honour ne vengeance But alonely by 15  
the force of the naked swerd thou shalt awake thy co-  
rage / and so shalt thou take vengeance of the harmes that  
ben don to the . Thou knowest what puyffance we haue  
and what helpars and Aydeurs we shall fynde for to  
venge vs .For this Iniurye toucheth all the kynges and 20  
prynces of grece . And assone as we shall requyre them  
of helpe Ther shall not be one but that he shall helpe vs  
with all his power And than we shall goo with grete  
puyffance to fore troye / and we shall flee oure enemyes  
And doo what we wille . and shall destroye the Cyte 25  
And yf hit happen þ' we may take parys / that is actour  
of these hurtis and yllys / whe shall do hange hym and  
make hym dye an euyll deth . Cesse than thy sorowe .  
And late vs do to beknowen to alle the kynges & prin-  
ces of grece this Iniurye / And requyre them that they 30  
will helpe vs for to take vengeance / Than was menela<sup>9</sup>

Reconforted wyth the wordes of his broder / And  
anone they sente her lettres vnto alle the barons of grece  
And at theyr fendyng they cam alle / .Fyrft Achylles .  
Patroclus Dyomedes / And many other / And assone  
5 as they knewe wherfore they were sente fore / They  
fayde that they wold go to Troyes wyth alle theyr  
strength for to auenge this shame and recouere helayne  
So they chaffe than Agamenon chyef and prynce of  
theyr oofte / as he that was wyfe and prudente / And  
10 of good counceyll .

**H**Ow hyt happend that the kyng Castor And  
the kyng Polux that weren brethern of the  
quene helayne / As sone as they herd faye / That  
her fuster was Rauysshid / They entryd in to theyr  
15 shippys / And wente after the Troians wyth grete  
companye of men of Armes / .For to see yf they myght  
recouere her / On the thyrde daye that they were on the  
see / Ther roofe so a grete torment in the see / And ther  
wyth cam so grete a Rayne . And thonder . That theyr  
20 shippes were caste by the wawes one here another there .  
The mastes broken theyr saylles rente / And fynably  
they were alle perysshid and drowned / That neuer  
after was none seen of them / And the payenems faye  
that these two brethern were translated with the goddes  
25 in to the heuen or zodyacque And retorned in to the signe  
of two Iumentis / .For as moche as they were brethern  
germayn / And thus endeth theyr lyues by the occasion  
of the pryse of her fuster / Some poetes faynen that  
these brethern ben translatyd in to two sterrys That is  
30 the north sterre and the south sterre which ben named  
after them Castor and Pollux .

**I**N this place declareth dares in his book the facions  
of the grekes that were to fore troye of the moste  
notable of them as he that sawe hem and behelde  
hem many tymes duryng the triews that was often ty-  
mes betwene bothe parties duryng the siege to fore the 5  
cyte / And he begynneth to speke of helayne and sayth  
that she was so fayr . That in the world no man coude  
fynde no fayrer woman ne better fourmed of alle mem-  
bres Agamenon was longe and whyte of body / strong  
of membres and well fourmed / louyng labour / discrete . 10  
hardy And passing well bespoken Menelaus was of  
mene stature hardy in Armes and corageous / Achilles  
was of right grete beaulte / blonke heeris & cryspe gray  
eyen and grete / of Amyable fighte / large brestes & brode  
sholdres grete Armes / his raynes hyghe ynowh / an 15  
hyghe man of grete stature / and had no pareyll ne like to  
hym amonge alle the grekes / desiryng to fighte / large in  
yestes And outerageous in dispense Tantal<sup>9</sup> was grete  
of body and right strong / veritable . humble . fleyng noy-  
ses yf they were not Iuste and trewe Ajax of grete sta- 20  
ture / grete and large in the sholdres grete Armes . And  
alleway was well clothyd and richely . And was of  
no grete empyrse . And spack lightly . Thelamon ayax  
was a moche fayr knyght . He had black heeris . And  
herd gladly songe And he sange hym self gladly well . 25  
He was of grete prowesse . And a good man of warre  
And with oute pompe Vlixes was the moste fayr man  
among all the grekes / But he was deceyuable And sub-  
tyll . And sayd his thynges Ioyously . He was a right  
grete lyar And was so well bespoken that he had none 30  
felawe ne like to hym Dyomedes was grete And had a

brode breſte and meruayllous ſtronge / of a fiers regard  
and ſight/false in his promeſſes/worthy in Armes/defi-  
rous of victorie dredde and redoubted / .For he was  
gretly Iniuryous to his ſeruantes Luxuryous wherfore  
5 he ſuffryd many paynes / The duc Neſtor was grete of  
membrys and longe / and well beſpoken / diſcrete and  
prouffitabe / And gaf alleway good counceyll / Anone  
and ſone he was ſtrongly angry / And anone peaſid  
agayn / he was the moſte trewe friend in the world Pro-  
10 theſelaus was fayr and of fayr ſtature right noble and  
light in Armes Neptolonyus was grete / black heer and  
grete eyen / but Ioyous & well chieryd / his wynbrowes  
Ioyned / ſtameryng in his wordes / but he was wyſe in  
the lawe . Palamydes ſone of kynge Naulus was of  
15 ryght fayr ſhapp and lene / hardy and amyable / a good  
man and large . Polydaryus was paſſing grete fatte  
and ſwollen Hardy orguyllous and proude / withoute  
trouthe . Mathaon was of mene ſtature prowde & hardy  
And that lityll ſlepte by nyght Bryſayda daughter of  
20 Calcas was paſſing fayr of mene ſtature / white and  
medlid with reed and well made / ſwete & pytouſe and  
whome many men louyd for her beawte . For the loue  
of her cam the kynge of perſe in to the Ayde of the grekis  
vnto the ſiege to fore Troye .

25 **O**.F them that were within Troye / The ſame  
Dares fayth fyrſte of kynge Pryant that he  
was longe greſſe and fayr / And had a lowe  
voys / ryght hardy . And that gladly eete erly in the  
morenyng a man wyth oute drede / And that hated  
30 flaterers / He was verytable and good Iuſtycyer  
And gladly he herde ſynge & ſownes of muſycque .

And strongly louyd his knyghtes and enrichid them .  
Of alle his sones ther was none so hardy as was hec-  
tor the oldest sone of kyng pryant / This was he that  
passid in his tyme alle other knyghtes in puyffance / and  
was a lityll besgue he was grete / And had hard mem- 5  
bres and myght souffre moche payne And was moche  
heery and crispe / and lisped / Ther yffued neuer oute of  
troye so stronge a man ne so worthy Ne ther yffued ne-  
uer oute of his mouthe a vyllaynous worde . He was  
neuer wery of fightyng in bataylle . Ther was neuer 10  
knyght better belouyd / of his peple than he was Parys  
was a passing fayr knyght and strong soft heerid and  
trewe swyft and swete of speche tote mowthed / well  
drawing a bowe / wyse and hardy in batayll and well  
assewryd and couetous of lordship / Deyphebus and 15  
helenus were passing like of facion in fuche wyfe that  
a man myghte not well knowe that oon fro that other .  
And they resambliid passing well the kyng pryant  
theyr fader Deyphebus was wyse and hardy in armes  
And helenus was a moche wyse clerk . Troylus was 20  
grete and of grete corage well attempryd and fore belo-  
uyd of yonge maydens In force and gladnesse he resam-  
bliid moche to hector And was the seconde after hym of  
prowesse And ther was not in alle the Royame a more  
stronge ne more hardy yong man / Eneas had a grete body 25  
discrete meruayllously in his werkis well bespoken  
and attempryd in his wordes . Full of good counceyll  
and of science connyng He had his visage Ioyouse / and  
the eyen clere and graye . And was the richest man of  
troye after the kyng pryant in townes and castellys . 30  
Anthenor was long and lene And spacke moche / But



he was discrete and of grete Industry / And whom  
 the kynge pryant louyd gretly And that gladly playd  
 amonge his felawship / And was a ryght wyfe man .  
 Polydamas his sone was a goodly yong man and a  
 5 fayr / Hardy and of good maners / longe and lene  
 lyke his fader / brown and was stronge in puyffance  
 of Armes / And of well Attempryd wordes / The  
 kynge Menon was grete and a goodly knyght large  
 sholdres grete Armes hard in the breste and of grete  
 10 prowesse / And that brought many knyghtes vnto  
 Troye / The quene hecuba was a rude woman and se-  
 med better a man than a woman / She was a noble  
 woman passinge sage debonayre / And honeste and  
 louyng the werkes of charyte / Andrometha the wyfe  
 15 of hector was a passing fayr woman and whyte and  
 that had fayr eyen and fayr heer / She was amonge  
 alle other women ryght honeste and attempryd in her  
 werkes / Cassandra was of fayr stature and clere .  
 Round mouthed . wyfe . shynyng eyen / She louyd vir-  
 20 gynyte / And knewe moche of thynges to come by astro-  
 nomye and other sciences / Polyxena was a moche  
 fayr doughter and tendre / And was the verray Raye  
 of beawte / In whome nature fayllyd nothyng Saue  
 only that she made her mortall / And she was the  
 25 fayrest mayde that was in her tyme . And the beste four-  
 med . Many moo were wythin the towne and wyth-  
 oute . Duryng the siege . But thise were the pryncypall  
 and gretteft of name . And therefore Dares declareth  
 the facion of them And reherceth not of the other .

30 ¶ How the kynges Dukes erles and Barons of grece

assemblid alle with theyr nauye to fore the cyte of Athenes for to come to Troye / And how many shippis eche man brought vnto the helpe of the kynge Menelaus .

**W**Han hit cam into the ende of feuerer That þ<sup>e</sup> wynter was passid the kinges and the princes of all the prouynces of grece assemblid them to gyder at the porte of athenes for to go to troye / hit is not in the mynde of ony man syn the begynnyng of the world that so many shippes and knyghtes were assemblid as were at that tyme . .For first Agamenon that was chyef and prynce of alle the oost of the grekes / brought fro his royaume of michames an honderd shippys full of Armed knyghtes . The kynge menelaus his broder brought fro his royaume of sparte . lx . shippis Archelaus and prothenor fro the royaume of boecye fifty shippis The duc Ascalapus and the erle helmins fro the prouynce of orconomye thretty shippis / The kynge Epistrophus / And the kynge sedius fro the royaume of focyden thretty shippis . The kynge thelamon of salamyne fifty shippis . And in his companye were the duc thenter duc Amphymacus the erle polixeme and the erle thephus And other many noble men . The Auncient duc Nestor fro his prouynce of pillon fifty shippis . The kynge thoas of tholye fifty shippis The kynge doxunois fifty shippis The kynge thelamon chyleus sixe and thritty shippes / Polibetes and Amphymacus fro his prouynce of calydone two and thretty shippis / The kynge ydumeus and the kynge mereon of Crete four score and two shippis / The kynge Vlixes of trace two and fyfty shippis / The duc tynelus fro his cyte of frygis twelue shippis Prothocathus

and prothesalus the dukes of philaca brought wyth  
hem two and fyfty shippis / Collesis brought four and  
twenty shippis fro the royame of crefome And brought  
kyнге Machaon And the kyнге Pollydryс his sone  
5 thre and thretty shyppes / Achilles brought fro his no-  
ble cyte of phaces two and twenty shippes / The kyнге  
Thelaphus brought fro Rodes two & twenty shippes  
Eruphylyс fro orchomene two and fyfty shyppis The  
duc Anthypus and the duc Amphymacus of rusticane  
10 threttene shyppis The kyнге Polibetes of Rythee And  
the duc Lopms his broder in lawe that had wedded  
his suster . lxij . shippis The kyнге Dyomedes of Arges  
four score and two shippis And had in his companye  
Thelamus and Euryalus The kyнге Poliphebus nyne  
15 shippis The kyнге .Fureus thretten shippes / The kyнге  
prothoylyс of chemenense two and fyfty shippes / The  
kyнге Carpenor of Carpadye . liij . shippis / The kyнге  
Theorius of breysse four and twenty shippes The some  
of kynges and dukes that were comen theder were sixty  
20 and nyne / And ther assemblyd at the porte of Athenes  
twelfe honderd and four and twenty shippis / wyth-  
oute comprysyng the shippis of duc palamydes the sone  
of kyнге Naulus That cam after on /Wyth his aftate as  
shall be sayd after &c .

25 ¶ How the Grekes sente Achilles vnto Delphos to  
the god Appollo for to knowe the ende of theyr warre  
And howe they fonde Calcas sente fro the Troians that  
wente wyth hem to Athenes .

30 **W**Han the kyнге and the prynces weren thus assen-  
blid at the porte of Athenes the kyнге Agamenon

that was chief of alle the oofte and taught alleway to  
 cōduyte this oofte meurely/ affembrid vnto the councyll  
 on a playne withoute the cyte alle þ<sup>e</sup> noble men of theyr  
 oofte And whan they were all affembrid aboute hym in  
 sieges that he had doo make/He sayd to them in this ma- 5  
 nere O ye noble men that by one wylle and volente ben  
 here affembrid in this ooft with so grete puyffance / ye  
 knowe well that it is not in the mynde of ony man that  
 sawe euer so many noble men affembrid / .For tachieue  
 ony werke / ne so many yong knyghtes and deliure in 10  
 armes for tassaylle theyr enemyes / is not he than well  
 oute of his mynde that presumeth to reyse hym self ayenst  
 vs and to begynne warre . verayly I doubte not but one  
 of an honderd that is in this cōpanye is suffysant ynowh  
 to bringe this werke to an ende / for whiche we been alle 15  
 affembrid . Hit is well knowen to eche of yow the  
 grete Iniuries and the grete domagies that the troians  
 haue don to vs/wherfore we haue Iuste cause to take ven-  
 gance by force of Armes To the ende that fro hensforth  
 they ne other ne empryse vpon vs in ony manere/.For yf 20  
 we sholde suffre fuche Iniuryes by dissimulacion / they  
 myghte yet greue vs more than they haue don .And hit is  
 not the custome of the noble men of grece/for to late passe  
 fuche wronges in dissimulacion / and therefore hit shold  
 be to vs grete vilonye that been so many and that haue 25  
 affembrid so grete strengthe for to dissimule in this qua-  
 relle / and yet that more is ther is no nacion in the world  
 but that ne dredeth oure puyffance saue only thyfe fo-  
 liffhe peple of Troye that by euyll counceyll haue me-  
 uyd them ayenst vs and also haue enterprysid vpon vs . 30

As dide fyrst the kynge Laomedon that Iniuryed some  
of oure peple by lityll occasion / wherfore he receyuyd  
deth for his reward / And his Cyte was destroyed .  
And his peple slayn / And some brought in seruytude  
5 where they ben yet / Certes hit is not so dyfficyle and  
hard to vs that ben more puyffante to take vengeance  
on the Troians / Than hit was to foure prynces of  
lasse puyffance / That cam to theyr aboue of them / .For  
so moche than as the Troians knowe veryly that we  
10 ben assemblyd for to goo vpon them / And that they  
ben strongly garnysshid of men of Armes ayenst our  
comyng and of alle suche as behoueth them for to def-  
fende them wyth / Than semed me good yf hit playfe  
yow / that er we departe fro this porte here / we sende in  
15 to the yle of delphe our specyall messangers for to haue  
answer of our god Appolyn of this that we will doo  
and empryse.

**T**Han was ther none but he allowed & approued  
the wordes of Agamenon And cheefe Incontynent  
20 Achilles and patroclus for to goo in to this yle to heere  
the answere of Appolyn / And anon they departed and  
wente And cam sone theder / .For the fayd yle ys as hit  
were in the myddes of the yles of ciclades / where locana  
enffanta Appolyn and dyane be And ther was a ryche  
25 temple in the whiche the godde of þ<sup>e</sup> payenems was wor-  
shippid / And gaf answere to the peple of suche thyng  
as they demanded of hym / This yle was fyrst callyd  
delos / That is as moche to faye in greke as manifestacion  
.For as moche as in this yle the paynems sawe fyrst the  
30 sonne and the mone after the deluuye And therefore they  
supposyd that they had ben born there of theyr moder

.For appollo is the sonne/and diane is the mone/In theyr  
 langage/some calle this yle ortygye/for as moche as the  
 byrdes þ<sup>t</sup> men calle ortiges / in engliffh they ben quayles  
 were first seen there . The paynems gaf to Appollo dy-  
 uerce names after the dyuerce operacions of the sonne . 5  
 In this temple was a grete ymage composid and made  
 alle of syn golde In the worshippe of god Appolyne/and  
 how well that the ymage was deaf and dombe / yet all-  
 waye ydolatrie regned in suche wyse that tyme in the  
 world . That the deuyll put hym in the ymage and gaf 10  
 answers to the paynems of that thingis that they deman-  
 ded of hym And this dide the deuyll for to abuse the fo-  
 liffh peple / that at that tyme beleuyd that this ymage  
 was verray god &c .

**V** Pon this parte the Auctor declareth fro whens 15  
 cam firsteydolatrie/We fynde in historia ecclifiaf-  
 tica / That whan herodes was deceyuyd by the  
 thre kynges that returned not agayn to hym . But wor-  
 shippid our lord Ihesu criste as is conteyned in the gof-  
 pell And after departid by an other waye &c / That he- 20  
 rodes purposid to haue slayn the child Ihesus / and ther-  
 fore the gloryouse virgyne our lady faynte marie his mo-  
 der And Ioseph bare hym in to Egypte And as sone as  
 our lord entryd in egypte / Alle the ydoles of egypte fyll  
 down to the erthe alle to broken and brusyd after the pro- 25  
 phesie of ysaye that sayd thus / Ascendet dominus in nu-  
 bem leuem et ingredietur egyptum & mouebuntur simula-  
 cra egipti / En demonstrant and shewyng that at the co-  
 myng of our saueour Ihesus criste . Alle ydolatrie sholde  
 haue an ende . And Amonge the Iewes . ysmaell was 30  
 the first that made ydole / And that was of erthe

And prometheus made the fyrste amonge the paynems  
and taughte other the maner how to make hem / But  
the ryght begynnyng of ydolatrie cam of belus kynge  
of Assirye þ<sup>t</sup> was fader of kynge Nynus / the whiche  
5 belus whan he was dede / his sone Nynus dyde burye  
hym in a ryche sepulture / And dyde do make an ymage  
of fyn golde to the semblaunt and lykenes of his fader  
for to haue consolacion and memorye of hym / And  
worshippid hym as his god / And compellyd his folk  
10 to worshippe hym / And anone an euyll spyryte entryd  
wythin the ymage and gaf to the peple answers of  
theyr demandes / And thus by the enfample of hym .  
The paynems made other in the worshippe of theyr  
frendes And worshippid them And thus proceded they  
15 in ydolatrie And ther were none but that they had her  
goddess propice that gaf to them theyr answer of theyr  
demandes by the engyne of the enemye that so deceyued  
them and broughte to dampnacion by the enuye that he  
had and yet hath vpon the lygne humayn that god made  
20 for to fullfille the sieges of paradys / .Fro whens he  
was caste oute for his pryde in this Ayer and derkenes .  
And after the day of Iugement to abyde in helle pardu-  
rably in the companye of dampned men .

25 **W**Han Achilles and Patroclus were arryued in  
this yle of delphe / They wente by grete deuoc-  
cion in to the temple of Appolyn and there made  
theyr oblacions by grete largeffe / And demanded of  
hym answere of theyr affayres and werkes / Than  
Appolyn answered wyth a lowe voys Achilles retorne  
30 to the grekes that haue sente the hether and saye to hem .

That it is to come and shal happen for certayn that they  
shall go fauely to Troye / And there they shall make  
many bataylles / But in the tenth yere they shall haue  
victorye and destroye the cyte / And they shall see the  
kynge Pryant his wyffe and his chyldren / And the 5  
moste grete of the contrey . And ther shall none escape  
saue they onely whome they wylle saue / Of this for-  
sayd answere was Achilles passing Ioyouse / and hit  
happend whillis they were yet in this temple / That a  
bysshoppe of Troye named Chalchas sone of a man 10  
named thiftram that was a passing wyse man / The  
whiche entryd in to this temple . And he was sente  
also fro the kynge Pryant for to haue answere of  
Appolin for them of Troye . As he than had made his  
oblacions and demandes for them of Troye / Appol- 15  
lyne Anwerd to hym Calchas Calchas beware  
that thou retorne not a gayn to Troye / But go thou  
wyth Achilles vnto the grekes / And departe neuer  
fro them for the grekes shall haue victorye of the tro-  
ians by the agreement of the goddes / And thou shalt 20  
be to them ryght necessarye in counseyll and in doc-  
trine Anone as Calchas knewe Achilles that was in  
the temple He approchid to hym and made acqueyn-  
tance to hym / And accompanied to gyder by sayth  
and oth Told eche to other what the ydole had sayd 25  
to them / wherof Achilles had grete Ioye . And made  
right grete chiere and feste to Calchas And toke hym  
wyth hym / And sayllyd so longe that they arryued  
at the porte of Atthenes fauely / and whan they were  
yffued out of her shippes Achilles toke calchas by the 30  
hande and presentid hym to the kynge Agamenon and



to other And tolde to them the trouthe of the anfwere of  
Appollo / How they ſhold haue victorie of the troians  
and how Appollyn bad hym that he ſhold not retorne  
agayn to troye but holde hym wyth the grekes duryng  
5 the warre / Of theſe tydynges were the grekes gretly  
reioyſſed / And made ſolempne feſte and receyuyd cal-  
chas in to theyr companye by fayth and by othe and  
they promyſid hym to rewarde hym well and do hym  
good &c .

10 ¶ How the grekes wyth a grete Naueye / wente and  
ſaylled toward Troye / And how they arryueden at  
the porte of thenedon thre myle fro Troye / whiche they  
conqueryd and bete down to the erthe .

15 **A**.Fter this feſte that the grekes had made for the  
good anſwers of Appolyn Calcas wente hym  
in a morenyng in the companye of achilles and  
of Patroclus vnto the tente of Agamenon / where alle  
the moſte nobles of the ooſte were aſſemblid / And he  
falewed them right courtoyfly ſayng / O noble kynges  
20 and prynces that ben here aſſemblyd for vengeance of  
the grete Iniuries to yow doon by the Troyans / wher-  
fore tarye ye now here After that the goddes haue yeuen  
theyr anſwere / Wene ye not that the kynge Pryant  
hath his eſpyes amonge yow / And that whilys ye  
25 ſoiourne he garnyſſhith not his contre and cyte with  
vytayll wyth horſes And wyth other neceſſaryes / Is  
hit not a grete parte of the ſomer paſſed / And ye haue  
yet no thyng enterpryſid vpon your enemyes Be ware  
that ye ben not vnkynde & Ingrate of the anſwere of the  
30 goddes / And þ<sup>t</sup> by your negligence they change not their  
anſwere in to the contrarye / ther fore tarye ye no lenger .

But shippe yow and your hors and goo ye to the see .  
And cesse not vnto the tyme that the promeſſis of the  
goddes be accompliſhyd / And whan Calchas had  
thus ſpoken / eche man ſayde that he had well ſayd  
and ſpoken / And than Agamenon ſente vnto alle the 5  
ooſte and comanded with a trompette that euery man  
ſhold make hym redy to remeue / And anone they en-  
tryd in to theyr ſhippis / And diſancryd and drewe  
vp theyr ſayllys / And wente alle vnto the ſee / And  
they had not longe ſayllid not paſſing a myle fro at- 10  
thenes / But the Ayer that was to fore clere and  
fayr / began to wexe troblous and thykke / And be-  
gan a ryght grete tempeſte in the ſee of wynde of  
Rayne and of thounder in ſo moche that ther was  
none ſo hardy but he hadd fere and wende to haue 15  
deyde / .For theyr ſhippes were caſte by the ſee that  
one here & that other there / And ſuppoſid none other  
for certayn but to haue ben drowned / Than ſayd cal-  
chas to them that were with hym . That the cauſe of  
this tempeſte was . .For as moche as dyane her god- 20  
deſſe was wroth and angry vpon them be cauſe they  
departyd fro Atthenes and had made to her no ſacri-  
fyce / And for to appeſe this wrath / hit behoueth that  
the kynge Agamenon ſacrefye to her with his owen  
hand Eſſygenye his doughter a yong virgyne and 25  
tendre of age / And that otherwyſe the tempeſte ſhold  
neuer ceſſe / And ſor to ſpede this ſacrefyſe / ſhe coun-  
ſeyllyd to torne the nauye and to applye hit to the  
yle of Andylle whère the temple of the goddeſſe  
dyane was &c. : . 30

**W**Han the kynge agamenon vnderfode this thyng  
 He was alle marrid and passyng sorowfull  
 in his corage / .For he louyd his daughter effi-  
 genie by grete loue And on the other side he was prayed  
 5 and requyred of alle the other kynges and prynces of  
 grece / That he wold gyue none enpeffhement to this  
 that was so grete an enpryse / .For to wythstande the  
 sacrefyse / wherfore he was vaynquysshid by the sayd  
 prynces and for the loue of his contrey / He toke his  
 10 sayd daughter effygenye / And in the presence of many  
 grete kynges and prynces sacrefyed her vnto the god-  
 desse deane And anone the tempest cesyd And the ayer  
 becam nette and clere / And the see well attempryd and  
 in tranquyllyte and pees / And than he wente agayn  
 15 in to his shippe and alle the other in lyke wyse / Drewe  
 vp theyr sayllys and sayllyd to fore the wynde so ferre  
 that they arryued at a porte of the Royame of Troyes  
 Nyghe vnto a castell named sarabana / Dares ne put-  
 teth determynatly / wherof that kynge agamenon made  
 20 his sacrefyce to dyane / But ouyde in the twelfth book  
 of methaphormose sayth that hit was effygenye his  
 doughter as aboue his sayd / And whan they of the  
 castell sawe the grete Nauye at their porte They armed  
 them and cam vnto the porte wenyng to deffende theyr  
 25 londe agayn the Grekes / And assaylled them that tho  
 were descended a lande / That were yet wery of the  
 trauayll of the see / But the grekes yssued anone oute  
 of theyr shyppys grete plente alle Armed that slewe  
 them and chassyd them vnto theyr castell And slewe  
 30 them fleeyng / And entryd in to the castell wyth them  
 And there put them alle to deth and toke the Proye .

And after bete doun the castell vnto the erthe / And  
than Reentryd in to theyr shippis agayn / And sayl-  
lyd so ferre that they arryued at the porte of thene-  
don / And there than they ankryd theyr shippis &c .

**A**T this porte was a passing stronge castell & 5  
well peupled and full of grete Rycheffys  
and was thre myle fro troyes / Whan they of  
the castell sawe the grekes / they ran to Armes / and  
garnysshid theyr castell wyth good fyghtars / And  
the other yffued out and cam vnto the porte where 10  
they sonde the grekes that were than yffued out of  
theyr shippes alle armed and grete plente / And toke  
all that they cowde fynde Thus began the batayll be-  
twene them right fyers and mortall / And there were  
ynowhe slayn and dede of bothe parties . And many 15  
moo of the grekes than of the troians / But asone  
as the grete strengthe of the grekes were descended .  
The troians myght no lenger suffre ne abide but put  
hem to flyghte somme to the Castell . And the other  
fledde vnto troye . Than the grekes put hem & beleyd 20  
the castell round aboute . And assayllyd hit on alle  
sydes / And they within deffended hit passing well  
vpon the wallis And slewe many by shotte and by  
engyns . But the grekes dresfyd theyr engyns alle a-  
boute the castell / And sette theyr ladders vnto the 25  
wallis . And wente vp on alle sydes . And they  
wythin deffended hem vaylliantly / And made hem falle  
doun in theyr dyches some dede and some hurte . But  
the grekes that were so grete in nombre sente alle-  
waye newe folke to thassault wherof they within 30  
were so wery . that they reculed and wente aback

fro theyr deffences / And than the Grekes entryd by  
force in to the castell / And there slewe alle them that  
they fonde / wyth oute sparyng of man or woman .  
And toke and pyllid alle that they fonde that was  
5 good / And after bete down the castell and the howfes  
vnto the erthe / And putte in the fyre and brente all vp  
And after they reentryd in to theyr shippis Ioyous of the  
gayne that they had gotten in the castell .

¶ How the grekes sente Dyomedes and Vlixes vnto  
10 the kynge Pryant for to haue agayn helayne and the pri-  
sonners / And of the answere that they hadd .

**W**Han the Grekes had demolysshid and beten  
down thus the castell and ediffyces of thenedon  
. and of Sarabana / And that they refresshid  
15 them in the medowe of Thenedon / Than Agamenon that  
had the charge of alle the ooste / And to conduyte hit  
well as a good captayn ought to doo / Comanded that  
alle the butyn and gayne of these two castellys shold  
be brought forth And so hit was doon anone as he had  
20 comanded And as a wyfe kynge distrybued the gayn  
to eche man after his deferte and qualyte / And after  
didedocrye in alle the ooste/that alle the noble men of the  
ooste shold assemble them on the playn of thenedon to  
fore the kynge Agamenon / And whan they were alle  
25 comen / The kynge Agamenon spack and fayd in this  
manere / My frendes and felawis that ben here now  
assembled for so Iuste a cause as eche of yow knoweth  
And in so grete puyffance that it is and shall be tydyn-  
ges therof in alle the world / Alleway how stronge  
30 that the puyffance be / That hit plese the goddes that  
hit bee wyth oute pryde and felonnye / .For hit is so

that of the synne of pryde growe alle other vyces / And  
that the goddes resiste and wythstonde the orguyllous  
and prowde peple / And therfore we oughte to put  
away pryde fro oure werkes . And in especiall in this  
werke here now . And vse the ryght waye / of Iustice . 5  
To the ende that no man may reprehende vs ne blame .  
ye knowe well that we ben comen thus ferre for to  
take vengeance of the Iniuries and wronges that the  
kyнге Pryant hath don to vs And we haue don to hym  
now grete hurte and domayge . ye may well knowe 10  
for trouthe / That they haue assemblid in the cyte of  
troye grete power for to deffende them ayenst vs / And  
also the Cyte is passing grete and stronge / And ye  
knowe well that they ben vpon theyr propre hery-  
tage That is a thyng that dowblith theyr force and 15  
strength / .For ye may take enfample of the crowe  
that otherwhyle deffendeth well her neste agayn the  
fawcion / I ne saye not these thynges for ony doubte  
that I haue / But that we shall haue victorye / And  
that we ne shall destroye theyr cyte how well that 20  
hit is stronge / But onely for oure worshippe / to the  
ende that we be Recomanded to haue conduyted this  
werke by grete discrecion and with oute pryde / .For  
often tymes by ouer lyght and to hasty enterpryse .  
a thyng of a grete poysse and with oute mewre coun- 25  
ceyll may come to a myschicuous ende ye knowe well  
that it is not longe agoo / that the kyнге Pryant dide  
do Requyre vs by his specyall messengers that we  
sholde Rendre to hym his suster exione / And that by  
our orguyell and pryde we wolde not delyuere her a- 30  
gayn And yf we had deliueryd and sente her home

agayn These euyllys had neuer happend in the yle of  
 Cythare as they now been / And the quene helayne  
 that is of the moſte noble of grece had neuer be ra-  
 uylſhyd ne ladde awaye / And alſo we had not  
 5 enterpryſed the payne ne the laboure / Where we  
 now ben in And ther is none of vs that knoweth  
 what ſhall happen to hym good or euyl / And ther-  
 fore yf ye feme good that we myghte Retorne in to  
 our contrey with oute ſuffrynge of more payne with  
 10 oure honoure and worſhippe / We ſhall ſende vnto  
 the kynge Pryant oure ſpecyall meſſangers / And  
 bidde hym to ſende and renvoye to vs helayne freely  
 And that he reſtore to vs the domayges that Parys  
 hath doon in the yle of Cythare / .For yf he wyll ſo  
 15 doo / Oure retorne ſhall be honourable / And we  
 may no more Axe of hym by ryght / And yf he reſ-  
 uſe thys / We ſhall haue two thynges that ſhall  
 fyghte for vs / Iuſtyce And oure trewe quarryll And  
 oure puyſſance excuſid / And whan men ſhall here  
 20 of oure offres / They ſhall gyue the wronge and  
 blame to the Troians And to vs the looſe and prey-  
 fyng / And we ſhall ben excuſed of alle the domay-  
 ges that we ſhall doon to them after thyſe offres .  
 Therefore auyſe yow amonge your ſelf what thyng  
 25 ye wyll doo .

**T**Han were there ſome felonnes that blamed  
 this counceylle / And ſome alowed hit / And  
 ſynably they concluded to do ſoo as Agame-  
 non had ſayd / Than they Cheefe for their meſſan-  
 30 gers / Dyomedes and Vlixes for to goo to Troye .  
 And make theyr legacion / whiche toke theyr horſes .

And wente Incontynent theder And cam to troye aboute  
 mydday And they wente strayt to the pallays of kyng  
 Pryant And toke theyr horses to kepe at the gate And  
 after wente vp in to the halle . And in goyng vp they  
 meruaylyd hem gretly of the ryche werke that they 5  
 sawe in alle the pallays . And specially of a tree that  
 they sawe in a playn the whiche was made by arte  
 mathematycque meruayllously composed and of grete  
 beaulte / .For the tronchon or stock benethe was no  
 gretter but of the gretenes of a spere / And was passing 10  
 longe and hyghe . And aboue had braunches of gold  
 and of siluer and leeuys that spradde ouer the pallais  
 And saue a lityll hit coueryd alle / And the fruyte  
 of the same tree was of dyuerse precyous stones that  
 gaf grete lyght and bryghtnes And gaf grete solace 15  
 to them that behelde hit . They wente so fer forth that  
 they cam in to the grete halle where the kyng Pryant  
 was accompanied with noble men / And than wyth  
 oute salewyng the kyng ne the other / Vlixes sayd to  
 hym in this manere . 20

**K**Inge Pryant meruaylle the nothyng that we  
 haue not salewid the for as moche as thou arte  
 oure enemye mortell / The kyng Agamenon to  
 whome we ben messangers fendeth and comandeth the  
 by vs that thou renuoye and sende to hym the quene he- 25  
 layne / whome thou haste don to be rauysfid and beta-  
 ken fro her husbonde . And that thou restore alle the do-  
 mages that parys thy sone hath done in grece / And yf  
 thou so doo / I trowe thou shalt doo as a wyse man .



And yf thou doo not beholde what euyllys may come  
to the and to thyne / .For thou shalt dye an euill deth  
and alle thy men . And this noble Cyte shall be destro-  
yed / Whan the kynge Pryant herde Vlixes thus speke  
5 He answerd Incontynent to Vlixes wyth oute de-  
mandyng counceyll / I meruaylle me gretly of thy  
wordes that requyrest of me that thyng / That a  
man vaynquysshid and myght not deffende hym self  
no more / Wyth grete payne wolde accorde to the .  
10 I beleue not that the grekes haue suche puyffance to  
doo that thyng that thou haste sayd to me They re-  
quyre of me reparacion / And I oughte to demande of  
them / haue not they slayn my fader and my brethern  
And ladde away my suster in feruytude / Whome  
15 they daigne not to marye honourably / But to holde  
her and mayntene as a comyn woman / And for  
to haue her agayn I haue sente to them Anthenor .  
And wold haue pardoned them of the surplus .  
But ye knowe the vilonnyes and menaces that they  
20 dyde to my messanger And therefore I ought not to  
here ony thyng that ye saye to me / But had leuer  
dye vylaynfly than to agree your requeste / And  
late Agamenon knowe that I desire neuer to haue  
peas ne loue wyth the Grekes that haue doon to  
25 me so many dysplayfirs / And yf hit were not that  
ye ben messangers I shold make yow dye an euill  
deth / Therefore go ye your way anone / .For I may  
not see yow wyth oute displayfir in myn herte / Than  
began dyomedes to lawghe for despyte & sayd thus .  
30 Ha kynge yf with oute displayfir mayste not see vs  
that ben but tweyne / Than thou shalt not be wythoute

displayfir alle the dayes of thy lyf .For thou shalt see  
fro hensforth to fore thyn eyen grete puiffance of grekes  
The whiche shall come to fore thy cyte . And shall not  
ceffe for tassaylle hit contynuelly . Ayenft whome thou  
mayfte not longe deffende the But that thou and thyne 5  
finably shall receyue bytter deth . Therefore thou sholdest  
take counceyll in thy werkes yf thou were well auyfed

**T**Han were there many troians that wolde haue  
Ronne vpon the grekes And drewe theyr fwer-  
des for to haue slayn them But the kyng pryant 10  
deftourned hem . And sayd to hem that they sholde late  
two fooles faye theyr folye / And that hit was the na-  
ture of a fole to shewe folye / And to a wyfe man to  
fuffire hit / Ha . A . fyre sayd Eneas what is that . that  
ye faye / men shold shewe to a foole his folye / And 15  
truly yf hit were not in your prefence this felawe that  
hath spoken fo folyly to fore yow . shold receyue his  
deth by my hande . Hit apperteyneth not to hym to faye  
to yow fuche venymous wordes ne menaces And ther-  
fore I auyfe hym that he go his way anone . yf he ceffe 20  
not to speke folyly / Dyomedes that of no thyng was  
abaffhyd anwerd to Eneas and sayd / what some  
euer thou be thou shewest well by thy wordes that  
thou arte right yll auyfed and hoot in thy wordes .  
And I defire that I may ones fynde the in a place cou- 25  
nable that I may rewarde the for the wordes that thou  
haft sayd of me / I fee well that the kyng is well  
ewrous & happy to haue fuche a counceller as thou arte  
that counceyllest hym to do vylonnye / Than Vlixes

brack the wordes of Dyomedes ryght wyfely and  
prayed hym to holde his peas / And after saide to kynge  
Pryant we haue vnderstand alle that thou haste sayd  
And we shall goo and reporte hit vnto our prynces .  
5 And Incontynent they wente and toke theyr horses  
And Retorned vnto theyr ooste / where they fonde  
alle the nobles assemblyd to fore the kynge Agamenon  
And sayde to them the answere of kynge Pryant .  
Wherof they had grete meruaylle And deuyfed longe  
10 to gyder .For to conduyte well theyr werkes syn they  
were adcertayned of the warre of the Troians .

¶ How Agamenon assemblyd to counceyll the grekes  
for to haue vitaylles and how they sente Achilles  
and Thelephus vnto the royame of Messe where  
15 they slewe the kynge Teutram in bataylle And how  
Telephus was made kynge And of the kynges that  
cam in the Ayde and helpe of kynge Pryant .

A .Fter these thynges Agamenon callid his folk  
to counceyll in the playne of thenedon / And  
20 sayd to them Amonge alle other thynges hit  
behoueth vs necessaryly to be auyfed how duryng  
the siege to fore Troye our Ooste shall be socouryd  
of vytayll And therefore yf ye seme good we shall  
sende vnto the Royame of Messe for to haue fro  
25 thens vitaylles contynuelly .For hit is a contre right  
fertyle & comodyous And they that shall goo theder  
shall take sewerte of them of the contre / That they  
shall not fayll to sende vitail to the ooste as longe  
as we shall be in this contrey This counceyll plesid  
30 moche to the grekes / And they chese Incontynent.

Achilles and Thelephus the sone of hercules for to furnyssh the this message And for to goo theder with a grete companye of men of Armes / In that prouynce regned a kynge that had to name theutram and had longe regned in pees / .For his contre was peplid of good and hardy knyghtes . Whan Achilles & thelephus with thre thousand knyghtes fiers and hardy were arruyed in the yle of messe they yssued oute of theyr shippes and descended on the lande / Ther cam than ayenst them the kynge theutram with a grete companye of men of fote and on horse back / Than began the bataylle right fierly and at the assamble ther were many knyghtes slayn on bothe sides And how well that the grekes were lasse in nombre than the other were They deffended hem well / But theyr defence had not auayllyd them ne had ben the grete prowesse of Achilles that dide right meruayllys with his body . As he that was the most stronge and moste vayllyant of the grekes .For whome he araught wente therfore . And ther myghte no man endure to fore hym . Whan than Achilles had espyed the kynge theutram in the myddes of his peple that dide grete damage to his folke / hethrestid in to þ<sup>e</sup> grettest prees of his enemyes / and bete down to fore hym all that he fonde vnto that he cam to kynge theutram . And he gaf hym so many strokes that he all to hewe his helme / And smote hym down to the ground fore wounded And had slayn hym in contynent ne had thelephus haue ben / whiche put hym betwene and prayde Achilles humbly that he wold not see hym Ner do hym more harm than he had / And the kynge hym self cryed to Achilles mercy / Than sayd Achilles to thelephus What meueth þ<sup>e</sup> of pyte ayenst oure enemye

mortall / that is come to affaylle vs by fo grete felonnye  
hit is rayson that he falle in to the pytte that he had made  
redy for vs Ha . A . Syre sayd thelephus / This kynge  
was ryght famylier with my fader hercules / And also  
5 dydeto meon a tyme grete honour in this londe And ther-  
fore I may not suffre to see hym flayn to fore myn eyen.  
Well than sayd Achylles / take hym than And do wyth  
hym what thou wilte Than was the bataylle fynysshid  
And the grekes cessid / And the kynge Theutram was  
10 born in to his pallys as dede . For Achilles had so brus-  
fyd hym and all to fruffhid hym And the kynge prayd  
Achilles and thelephus / that they wold goo wyth  
hym The whiche wente / And were receyuyd wyth  
grete Ioye and honour.

15 **H** It was not longe after / that the kynge theutram  
that was wounded to the deth of the woundes  
that Achilles had gyuen hym / sente for Achilles  
and thelephus / and than said to hem My frendes I may  
not longe lyue / And than after sayd to thelephus / My  
20 frende I may no lenger lyue / And I haue no lawfull  
Eyres of my body / to whom I may leue this Royame  
that I haue gotten wyth grete labour / And had losse  
longe syn ne had ben the moste worthy of alle worthy  
thy fader hercules / Whyche waranted and was a  
25 shelde to me ayenst alle them that wolde haue taken  
hit fro me / And so dyde of fayt to them that wold haue  
taken hit / whan thy fader by his grete prowesse slewe  
hem and enchassed hem oute / And syn I haue kepte hit  
paysybly no thyng by my meryte / But by the vertue  
30 of thy fader / And syn hyt is soo that thy fader hath  
conqueryd thys Royame for me that haue none eyres .

Hit is well right and rayfon that thou be herytier of thy  
fader And for fo moche as this is my lafte worde / I leue  
to the this royame & all myn other goodes where some  
euer they bee And make the myn herityer And praye the  
that thou do burye me honourably as hit apperteyneth to 5  
a kynge . And as fone as he had fynyfhd these wordes  
he deyde / And than thelephus and the nobles of the con-  
trei dide do burye hym honourably / And leyde hym in a  
moche ryche fepulture / wher vpon was wretton this  
Epithaphye / Here lieth the kyng theutram Whom Achil- 10  
les flewe The whiche lefte his royame to Thelephus .  
This thelephus that afore was but a duc / was made  
kynge of melle And all the nobles of the contre dide hym  
homage And all the peple promyfed to hym fayth and  
feruyfe / Than Achilles dide do charge his fhippes wyth 15  
vytaill And ordeynd that Thelephus fhould abide in his  
newe royame / whiche he dide fore anoyed And he pra-  
yd hym And also comanded in the name of the grekis  
that he fhould do diligence to fende vnto the oofte of the  
grekis often tymes vitayllis / and he promyfid hym that 20  
he fo doo wolde wythoute ony fawte And than Achyl-  
les toke leue of hym and retorned in to his fhippes / And  
fayllyd fo longe that he and his felawfhip arryued at  
the poort of thenedon fauely where they fonde the oofte  
yet fojournyng . And anone as he was descended . He 25  
wente ftrayt vnto the tente of kynge agamenon where  
alle the prynces and kynges were affembrid / he was re-  
ceyuyd wyth grete loye / as he that alle the oofte loued  
moche for his grete strengthe and prowefse / Than  
Achilles tolde to them how he arryued at Melle and 30  
of the batayll / and how that thelephus was made kynge

And how he had promysid to furnyshe the ooste of vi-  
taylles / Of these tidynges the grekes had grete Ioye and  
alowed and preysid moche the vaylliance of Achilles .  
And after theyr parlament eche man wente vnto his  
5 pauyllon / Than was Achilles receyuyd with grete Ioye  
of his myrondynes that moche louyd hym .

**I**N this place here the auctour nameth what kynges and  
prynces cam to the helpe & ayde of kynge pryant to troye  
not of alle but of the mooste notable . Fyrst cam vnto their  
10 ayde / the kynge pandorus the kynge Galior & the kynge  
Adrastus with thre thousand knyghtes armed . Fro the  
prouynce of tholoson cam foure kynges wyth fyue thou-  
sand knyghtes armed the kynge carras the kynge ama-  
sius the kynge Nestor that was a moche stronge man .  
15 And the kynge Amphymacus . Fro the royame of licye  
cam the kynge Glauton wyth thre thousand knyghtes .  
And his sone Sarpedon that was one of the strengest  
knyghtis of the world and cofyn of kynge pryant . Fro  
the royame of lichaon cam the kynge enfemus with thre  
20 thousand knyghtes ryght expert in armes / . Fro the ro-  
yame of larysse cam two kynges wyth fyften honderd  
knyghtes the kynge mistor that was a moche grete man  
And the kynge capidus / . Fro the royame of thaborye  
cam the kynge remus with thre thousand knyghtes / and  
25 in his companye cam foure dukes & feuen erles that were  
feyd with kynge pryant They bare in their armes the co-  
lour of asure with oute other signe / and therby was the  
kynge remus & his peple knowen in the bataylle . Fro  
the royame of trachie cam the kynge pilex & the duc al-  
chamas with . xi . honderd knyghtis . Fro the royame  
30 of pauonye cam the kynge pessemus and the duc stupex

his cofyn wyth thre thousand knyghtes right expert to  
 Iouste and to shote wyth the bowe / This is a moche  
 wylde contre of forestes and montaynes / And where  
 is but lityll peple / And ynowhe of wylde bestes and of  
 byrdes .Fro the prouynce of boecye cam thre dukes with 5  
 twelue honderd knyghtes the duc Ansernims / the duc  
 fortunus And the duc fammus .Fro the royame of bur-  
 tyn where as growe good espices cam two kynges bre-  
 thern with a thousand knyghtes / the kyng boetes And  
 the kyng episteus .Fro the regne of paphagore that is at 10  
 the sonne ryfing in the eeste/full of alle richeffes/cam the  
 right riche kyng philemeus with thre thousand knygh-  
 tes all her sheldes of the hydes of fysshis all couerd with  
 gold and precyous stons And this kyng was as grete  
 as a geant .Fro the regne of Ethiope cam the kyng per- 15  
 seus/and the kyng of thiction with hym/that was right  
 hardy and wyse with thre thousand knyghtes that had  
 in her companye many a duc and many an erle/and also  
 was wyth hem simagon the sone of kyng thiction .Fro  
 the royame of cheres cam the kyng theleus and Archilo- 20  
 gus his sone that was of the affinyte of kyng Pryant  
 and brought a thousand knyghtes .Fro the yle of Ar-  
 greste cam two kynges of whom I haue not the names  
 wyth . xii . honderd knyghtes / .Fro the regne of Eliane  
 that is be yonde the royame of Amafonne cam an Auncy- 25  
 ent kyng ryght wyse and discrete named Epistropus  
 and brought a thousand knyghtes and a meruayllous  
 beste þ<sup>r</sup> was callyd sagittayre that behynde the myddes  
 was an hors & to fore a man / This beste was heery lyke  
 an hors and had his eyen reed as a coole/and shotte right 30  
 well with a bowe This beste made þ<sup>r</sup> grekes fore aferd



And flewe many of hem wyth his bowe / Thus were  
in nombre alle the knyghtes that cam in Ayde of kyng  
Pryant two and thertty thousand wyth oute them of  
the royaume of Troye and of ynde the myneur / And hit  
5 is not founde by wrytyng that fyn the creacion of the  
world that so many noble knyghtes were affembrid in  
one place And that meuyd the quarelle for so lityll occa-  
sion / O how the kynges and prynces ought to take hede  
and be well auysed for to meue the warre Also ferre as  
10 they myght amende hit by other waye .

O.F the comyng of duc Palamydes And how the gre-  
kes departed fro the porte of thenadon by the counceyll  
of dyomedes and cam and toke lande before the stronge  
Cyte of Troye And how the troians receyuyd them by  
15 batayll right vigorously .

**T**He Grekes were not yet partyd fro Thenedon .  
whan palamides the sone of kyng Naulus cam  
and arriued at this porte of thenedon with thretty  
shippis full of knyghtes Armed Alle noble & hardy men  
20 And of his comyng the grekes had grete Ioye/And had  
murmured a fore be cause he taryed so longe/wherof he  
excusid hym by sekene that he had had/This palamides  
was holden in grete worshippe amonge the grekes and  
was the seconde after kyng Agamenon / puyssant and  
25 discrete in Armes and moche riche/And at his comyng  
he was anone chofyn to be counceyllour of the Ooste .  
And thus were the grekes many a day & many a nyght  
at the porte of thenedon often tymes affembrid to coun-  
ceyll for to aduyse the beste manere to affege the Cyte of  
30 troye/and finably after many oppynyons/they helde hem  
to the counceyll of dyomedes that was this/now said he

Alle ye kynges prynces and barons that ben here affem-  
blid / we ought alle to haue grete shame and vilonye .  
Whan hit is a yere goon syn we descended here in this  
londe / And haue not yet ben to fore troye verayly in this  
we haue gyuen to oure enemyes grete auantage / syn hit 5  
is soo that this tyme duryng they ben pourueyed of grete  
aydes and alle her cyte strongly fortifyed and renforced  
of wallys and bulwerkis that they haue good leyzer to  
make / And verayly them semeth that we ben not so  
hardy as to come vnto them And therefore the more that 10  
we delay vstogoo theder / the more encrefeth oure shame  
and damage / and I trowe yf we had goon theder whan  
we cam first in to this contre / we shold haue more esely  
descended and taken lande / than we shall doo now .For  
they ben better garnysshid now than they were at that 15  
tyme / of alle suche thyng as they behoeffyd for to def-  
fende hem with / And therefore I counceyll yow that to  
morn be tymes we putte vs on the waye in good orde-  
nance / And late vs sette the siegse fermly and as hastely  
as we may We oughte well to knowe that we shall 20  
not so doo wyth oute grete bataylle Wherefore hit beho-  
ueth eche man to employe hym self and to putte behynde  
all fere and drede .For by none other waye we may not  
exployte in this werke / ne better ne more honourably by  
myn aduys &c . 25

**T**He counceyll of dyomedes plesid to alle the ba-  
rons of the ooste / and also on the morn erly they  
reentryd in to theyr shippis And sayllyd strayt  
vnto the poort of Troye and brought theyr shippes by  
good ordenance one after another / In the first fronte 30  
they putte an honderd shippis right well garnysshid of

knyghtes and banyers that wauyd in the wynde / And  
after them they putte an other honderd And after alle the  
other by ordre / And they had not ferre fayllyd but that  
they sawe the noble cyte of troye / And approchid ther  
5 to as hastely as theymyghte / Whan the troians sawe the  
grekes approche the Cyte / They Ran to Armes / And  
mounted vpon theyr horfes alle armed / And wente  
forth wyth oute ordenance vnto the porte / Than whan  
the grekes sawe the Troians come in so grete nombre for  
10 to deffende theyr porte / Ther was none so hardy but he  
was a ferde / but for as moche as theycoude not descende  
a land but by force of Armes . They armed hem Incon-  
tynent / And contended to descende and take lande by  
force &c .

15 **O**.F the fyrst honderd shippis was chief and cap-  
tayn / the kynge prothefalaus of philarde That  
dyde grete payne and diligence to bringe his  
shippis wythin the porte . But the wynde that was  
stronge blewe hem in to the porte so strongly ayenst  
20 the Ryuage that many of them brake and bruffyd  
and many Grekes were drownyd / And they that  
myght take lande toke hit / And were anone slayn  
by the Troians wyth grete torment and in so grete  
nombre / That the grounde was reed of theyr blood  
25 Hyt is not in the mynde of ony man that euer ony  
nauye wan land wyth so grete myschef as dyde the  
nauye of the grekes / After this first honderd shippes  
the other cam and arruyed that folowed hem / And  
they that were wyth in were garnysshyd of grete  
30 arblasters / where with they shotte and slewe many  
of the Troians and constrayned them to go a back .

And than toke the grekes lande And socouryd the firste  
that foughte at grete myschief Than began the bataylle  
mortall / The kynge protheselaus that was descended  
wyth the firste / dyde right meruaylles wyth his body  
and flewe that day of the troians wyth oute nombre . 5  
And yf he allone had not ben Alle the grekes that were  
descended a lande had ben slayn But what myght his def-  
fence helpe / whan seuen thousand grekes faughte ayenst  
an honderd thousand troians . And I faye yow that for  
the grete danger wher in they felte hem self / They solde 10  
theyr lyues dere / abidyng the socours of kynge Archela<sup>o</sup>  
and the kynge prothenor / That anon arryued / And  
wolde the troians or not They descended and toke londe  
And socourid theyr peple vayllyantly and began agayn  
cruell bataylle &c . 15

**A**.Fter arryued the duc nestor and his folk that  
threstid in amonge her enemyes right fierly / ther  
was many a spere broken and many an arowe  
shotte / knyghtes fyll down dede on bothe sides the crye  
was so grete that hit was meruayllous to heere / there 20  
they slewe many troians Archelaus and prothenor .  
After arryuyd the kynge ascalus and the kynge Agalus  
wyth theyr shippis and descended a lande and assayllid  
the troians by grete fierfnes and by force made hem to re-  
cule and go a back / And than cam to the bataylle grete 25  
foyson of newe troians / Than began the bataylle more  
grete than hit had ben of alle the daye to fore in so moche  
that the grekes were reculed by force vnto theyr shippis  
And than arryuyd Vlixes wyth a grete companye of  
knyghtes that threstyd anone in to the bataylle And the 30  
grekes recoueryd lande at theyr comyng And assayllyd

on the troians There made vlixes grete effusion of blood  
of his enemyes / And anone his ensigne was known  
amonge them / And whan the kynge philomenus sawe  
that Vlixes slewe so theyr peple he adressed hym vnto  
5 hym / And bete hym down of his horse a lityll wounded .  
And vlixes smote hym agayn so harde that he gaf hym a  
grete wounde vpon his throte / And cutte a two his ory-  
gynall vayne / And smote hym as half dede / And the tro-  
ians ran and toke hym fro the grekes / And bare hym  
10 vpon his shelde in to the cyte / And ne had be this aduen-  
ture of this kynge The grekes had ben disconfited / But  
the troians entended strongly to saue hym / And than  
arryued the kynge thoas and the kynge Agamenon The  
kynge Menelaus and the kynge Thelamon ayax wyth  
15 all theyr power and descended a lande and medlid hem  
in the batayll / And brack theyr speres vpon the troians .  
And bete down many some dede and some hurte / At this  
Ioynyng were many troians slayn .

20 **T**Han the kynge prothesalus departid fro the ba-  
taylle where he had ben syn the begynnyng . For  
to take breth And whan he cam to the porte He  
fonde alle his men nyghe bydede / . For whome he wepte  
for pytye / And toke agayn his corage for to auenge the  
deth of his men / And wente agayn to the bataylle .  
25 And in his grete yre slewe many Troians and woun-  
ded hem and smote down many of them of theyr horfes .  
Than cam to the bataylle of the partye of the troians the  
kynge perfes wyth grete companye of knyghtes / At the  
comyng of the ethyopyens began the bataylle mortall .  
30 And had many grekes slayn & by force made hem to goo  
back And had with oute fayll disconfited hem / ne had

the worthy palamydes sone descended a lande / .For at  
 his comyng the grekes were recomforted And also pala-  
 mydes made right meruayllys wyth his hand / And ad-  
 dressid hym ayenst sagamon the broder of kyng menon  
 and neuewe of the kyng of perse / that fore greuyd the 5  
 grekes And he smote hym so fore wyth his spere that he  
 pershid hym thurgh oute the body / And smote hym ded  
 down to the erthe And after he smote in to the grete presse  
 And bete doun alle that he mette / And eche man that  
 knewe hym made hym waye / And than roose a Crye 10  
 vpon the troians that they myght not suffre the strengthe  
 of palamydes And were reculed by force And had ben  
 alle desconfited / But the moste worthy of alle worthy  
 hector whan he herd the crye vpon his peple / he yssued  
 oute of the cyte wyth grete companye of knyghtes and 15  
 entryd in to the bataylle Armed in ryche armes / And  
 bare in his shelde of golde a lion of gowles / his strengthe  
 was anone knowen / amonge the grekes / And encoun-  
 tryd and mette in his comyng the kyng prothefalaus  
 that had not of alle the day cessid to sle troians And he 20  
 smote hym wyth his sward by so grete myght vpon his  
 helme / That he cleft hym vnto the nombryll notwyth-  
 standyng his Armour / And fyll doun dede to the erthe .  
 And after hector threstid in to the grettest prees / and as  
 many grekes as he araught wyth his sward he slewe 25  
 Than eche man fledde fro hym makyng hym waye And  
 demaunded the grekes one of another / what was he that  
 so greuyd hem And anon they knewe that hit was hec-  
 tor the moste stronge man of the world and than was  
 there none so hardy that durst abyde his strook . 30

¶ Han hit happend that hector wente oute a lityll for

to refresshe hym And than the grekes reprised corage vp-  
on the troians / And this happend that day eyghte or ten  
tymes / Hit was aboute the oure of euenfonge what  
tyme hector departid fro the batayll / And reentrid in to  
5 the cyte / .For the Grekes were wyth all disconfited  
And than arryued the right stronge Achilles wyth his  
myrondones and entryd anon in to the batayll well  
wyth thre thousand good knyghtes / That were wyth  
hym And than were the troians on alle sydes beten down  
10 and slayn .For ayenst Achilles endured no man but he  
were beten down to the erthe or fore hurte .

**T**Han were arryued all the nauye of the grekes / and  
the knyghtes goon a lande & medlid with the other  
in the batayll / wherfore the troians had moche to suffre  
15 in so ferre that they muste nedes flee in to theyr Cyte and  
Achilles and the other slewe them fleeyng there was a  
grete crye of the hurte men Ther was achilles alle dyed  
wyth the blood of the troians that he had slayn / And  
there was grete occision at the entre in to the cyte / There  
20 sawe the faders her children slayn to fore her eyen And  
the occyision and slaughter had ben more grete / Ne yf  
Troylus Parys and Deyphebus with a grete compa-  
nye fyerse and newe ne had comen oute and yssued of  
the Cyte that resisted the Grekes and made thoccision to  
25 cesse / And also the nyght was nyghe / And eche man  
wyth drewe hym in to his place / The Troians shytted  
her Cyte and dyde make good wacche / And Achilles  
wyth the grekis Retorned to theyr tentes wyth grete  
glorye / That were not yet dresseyd / But the kynge  
30 Agamenon dyde do dresse hem Incontynent / And made  
eche man to take place couenable after his astate .

And they that had no tentes ne pauyllons loggyd them  
vnder the leues the beste wyfe they coude them and theyr  
horfes And after ankryd theyr shippis as well as they  
myght and toke oute of them alle that was necessarye  
to them Thus made the grekes theyr siege this nyght and 5  
sette hit to fore the cyte of troye And made meruayllous  
grete fyres in the oofte that made hit as light as hit had  
be day / So were they logged nyghe to gyder and made  
ryght good wacche / how well that they had none as-  
faultes this nyght / And they had alle the nyght trom- 10  
pettis and menestrellys grete plente That agamenon or-  
deyned for to conforte þ<sup>r</sup> oofte And they restid this nyght  
alle Armed the beste wyfe they coude / This was the  
fyrst bataylle of the grekes and of the troians at theyr  
comyng &c . 15

¶ Of the seconde bataylle to fore troye in the whiche  
were many kynges and grete barons slayn by the wor-  
thy hector / And how the troians had ben victoryous of  
theyr enemyes ne had ben the prayer of thelamon Ajax  
cosyn of hector &c . 20

**A**Nd whan the nyght was passid / hector that  
had the charge of alle them of the cyte ordeyned  
right erly his batailles in a grete playn that was  
in the cyte And putte in the fyrst bataylle two thousand  
good knyghtes whiche he betoke to lede and conduyte 25  
to tweyn of his kynnyfmen That is to wete to Glaucon  
the sone of the kynge of lycy and to asiamolor his bas-  
tard broder / And assigned to them the kynge thefus of  
Trahie and Archilogus his broder that was wyfe and  
vaylliant / and made hem to yssue out by the gate named 30  
dardane that stode ayenst the Ooft of the grekes / In the



seconde batayll he put thre thousand good knyghtes &  
stronge whom he toke to conduyte to the kyng exampi-  
tus of frigie & to the kyng Alcanus that were knyghtes  
of grete strengthe / and recomanded them to the garde of  
5 the goddes / & made them yssue out after the other in good  
ordenance / The thirde batayll he be toke to Troyllus his  
broder for to cōduyte with thre thousand knyghtes wise  
and hardy / and said to hym at the departyng My right  
dere broder the leyffe of my herte putteth me in doubte of  
10 thy gret hardynes wherfore I pray the that thou gouerne  
the wyfely in the batayll in suche wyfe that thou enter-  
pryse not suche thynges as thou maiste not achieue / and  
þ<sup>t</sup> thou put not thy body in daüger of deth by ouer moche  
wenyng / wherby thou myghtest gyue Ioye to thyn ene-  
15 myes & owres / Go thy waye in the name of the goddes þ<sup>t</sup>  
the conduyte & kepe fro paryll and encombrance / Ha . a  
Syre broder answerd Troylus hit nedeth yow not to  
doubte of me . For I shall doo þ<sup>t</sup> in me is / right as ye haue  
comanded / and than he wente forth with his companye  
20 after the other And bare in his shelde thre lyons of golde .

**H**Ector put in þ<sup>e</sup> fourthe bataill thre thousand knygh-  
tes & seuen honderd / whom he toke to conduyte to  
kyng huppon of larriffe / This kyng huppon was moste  
stronge of all the troians next hector / and had in his com-  
25 panye a vailliant knyght a bastard broder of hector wise  
& hardy named dymaicus The .v. bataill hector deliuerid  
to conduyte to þ<sup>e</sup> kyng of cisyne with all his folk / that  
were meruayllous stronge & grete as geantis / And the  
same kyng bare in his shelde all asure with out ony diffe-  
30 rence / And hector cōmifid in this batayll polidamus his  
bastard broder with this kyng / and yssued after þ<sup>e</sup> other

The sixte bataylle ledde the kynge precemessus / that had  
 his peple well Induced to shote and drawe the boowe  
 And wente wyth oute Armes to bataylle mounted  
 vpon good light horses And hector comysid deyphebus  
 his broder to conduyte them and yssued after the other / 5  
 With this bataylle adiousted hector alle the cheuallerye  
 of the Royame of Agreste vnder the conduyte of kynge  
 Efdras and of kynge philon This kynge philon had a  
 meruayllous chare alle of yuorye of gold and of siluer  
 and of precyous stones / This chare conduyted two 10  
 stronge knyghtes / wyth thyse two kynges hector put  
 epitagoren his bastard broder / And they yssued after  
 the other The seuenth batayll ladde Eneas And a noble  
 admyrall named eufrene And they wente after þ<sup>e</sup> other  
 The eyghte bataylle ladde the kynge of perse named per- 15  
 ses / And Parys was chief and captayne / And hector  
 prayd parys his broder that he shold not assemble vnto  
 the grekesvnto the tyme that he cam hym self / And that  
 he wolde folowe hym anone / The nyneth batayll and  
 the laste ladde hector hym self And ten of his bastarde bre- 20  
 thern after hym And alle the beste knyghtes of the Cyte  
 chofen / were in this bataylle to the nombre of fyue  
 thousand &c .

**T**Han whan hector was rychely arayed / And  
 Armed with good harnoys and scwre / he mou- 25  
 ted vpon his horse named galathe / that was one  
 of the moste grete and strengest horse of the world And  
 so Armed and mounted he rood vnto the kynge his fa-  
 der And sayd to hym ryght dere fader reteyne with yow  
 a thousand and fyue honderd knyghtis and alle the 30  
 men of foote of this cyte / And holde yow wythoute to

fore the syght of the grekes And meue yow not But yf  
I sende yow worde / to the ende yf we haue necessite / that  
ye be oure reffuge / And I shall sende yow alleway  
amonge my messangers that shall faye to yow the state  
5 of the bataylle / And take ye good heede and garde that  
oure enemyes take not our cyte by cautele or trayson.  
And the kynge answerd to hym / My sone I shall  
doo alle as thou haste to me sayd / .For next after the  
Ayde and helpe of the goddes / Thou arte alle my hope  
10 and truste / And haue no fayth but in the vertue oft thyn  
Armes and in the grete discrefcion of thy wytte And I  
praye to the goddes ryght humbly that they wylle kepe  
the hoole and founde and preferue the fro encombrance .

15 **A** .Fter these wordes hector wente hym forth after  
the other / This hector was moche coragious .  
stronge. and victoryous in batayll / and a right  
wyfe conduytour of men of Armes / his shelde was  
alle of gold / And in the myddell a lyon of gowles And  
how well that he was the laste that yffued out of his  
20 hous or of the cyte / yet passid he allewaye alle the ba-  
taylles and cam and putte hym self afore in the fyrst ba-  
taylle / The women that were in the cyte / And alle the  
other wente vpon the wallys for to beholde the batay-  
les / There were the daughters of the kynge wyth the  
25 quene helayne that had grete doubte And dyuerce yma-  
gynacyons in her self .

**W** Hylis that hector had ordeyned his bataylles.  
The kynge Agamenon was not ydle / but or-  
deyned ryght erly of his peple fixe and twenty  
30 battaylles / He putte in the fyrst bataylle Patroclus  
wyth hys peple and wyth the folk of Achylles.

Whiche was not that day in the batayll / for his woundes  
 that he had anddyde do helehem in histente This patroclus  
 was a moche noble duc and ryche and louyd so moche Achylles  
 that they were bothe of one Alyance  
 In the seconde bataylle was the kynge menon And the 5  
 kynge ydumeus with thre thousand knyghtes And ther  
 was with hem the duc of Atthenes wyth alle his peple  
 The thirde bataylle ledde the kynge Achalaphus / And  
 his sone phimemus wyth her peple / The fourth bataylle  
 ladde the kynge Archelaus / And the kynge prothenor 10  
 his broder & with them was securidam the right stronge  
 knyght with all the peple of boecye / The fyfthe batayll  
 ladde the kynge menelaus wyth alle his peple of sperte .  
 The sixthe bataylle ladde the kynge Epistropus and the  
 kynge celidus wyth alle her peple / The seuenth batayll 15  
 ladde Thelamon ayax wyth alle his peple of salamyne  
 And he had foure erlis with hym / that is to wete thefus  
 Amphymacus Dorius & Polidarius / The eyghte ledde  
 the kynge Thoas / The nynthe ledde Ajax aleus / The  
 tenthe ladde the kynge philotus / The enleuenth the kyng 20  
 ydumeus and the kynge meron / The twelfth the duc  
 nestor / The thrirtenth lad the kynge exiones / The four-  
 tenth the kyng Vlixes / The fyftenth the kyng humerus  
 In the sixtenth were the folke of protheselaus moche  
 desiryng to auenge the deth of theyr lord / The seuententh 25  
 ladde the kynge polidarius And the kynge Machaon  
 The eyghtenth the kynge of Rodes / The nynetenth the  
 kyng sampitus And the kynge lidorus / The twentythe  
 the kynge geripulus / The one and twentythe the kyng  
 philotetes of larisfe / The two and twentyth dyomedes 30  
 The thre and twentythe the kynge Oeneus of Cypres .

The foure and twentythe the kynge Prothalus / The  
fyfe and twentythe the kynge carpenor / The fixe and  
twentythe and the laft bataylle ladd the kynge Aga-  
menon Emperour of alle the oofte .

5 **W**Han alle the bataylles were ordeyned on that  
one fide and on that other / And was no thyng  
to dobut taffemble Than auaucydhym hector  
alle ther fyrft And patroclus cam ayenft hym as moche  
as his horfe myghte renne / And smote hym fo strongly  
10 wyth his fpere in his shelde that he perchid hit thurgh-  
out / but more harme dyde he not / Than hector affayllid  
patroclus wyth his fwerde / And gaf hym fo grete a  
ftrook vpon his heed that he clefte hit in two peces / And  
Patroclus fyll down dede to the ground / Whan hector  
15 fawe hym ded he coueyted his Armes / .For they were  
ryght queynte and ryche / And a lightid doun of his  
horfe for to take them / But the kynge Menon cam vpon  
hym wyth thre thousand good knyghtes for to deffende  
the kynge Patroclus ayenft hector / And fayd to hym  
20 thus / Ha . A wolf Rauyffhyng and Infacyable .  
Certes thebehoueth to feke thypraye in fome other place  
for here getefte thou none / And than they affayllyd  
hym on alle fides / And wolde haue taken fro hym ga-  
lathee his hors / But hector by his prowefse remounted  
25 wolde they or not and wende to haue vengid hym on  
kynge Menon / But the kynge Glancion and the kynge  
Thesus and Archilogus his fone cam wyth thre thou-  
sand fightars / And than hector leyd on and bete down  
all afore hym / And the fyrft that he mette he gaf fo  
30 grete a ftroke that he flewe hym and after hym many  
mo he bete down and flewe .

**T**Hus began the bataylle on bothe sides And hec-  
tor cam agayn to the body of Patroclus for to  
haue his Armes /But the kyng ydumeus of crete  
cam ayenst hym with two thousand fyghtars / And the  
kyng menon that had allway his eye to hector letted 5  
hym and was so in the waye / that hector myght not  
haue his Armes that he fore desired And suffryd grete  
payne for as moche as he was on foote/but he enforced  
hym wyth alle his corage / And began to slee man and  
hors And to smyte of heedes legges feet and Armes And 10  
slewe fyften of the strengest that assayllyd hym In this  
mene while the kyng menon toke the body of patroclus  
to fore hym and bare hit vnto his tente/as the grekes con-  
tended to greue hector and to take away his horse Ther  
was amonge them a right stronge knyght named creon 15  
de la pierre/that greuyd hym moeste/Than one of the ser-  
uauntis of hector adressid hym agayn this Creon / And  
gaf hym so grete a stroke wyth his spere / that he smote  
hym doun dede to the erthe/And after he smote doun an-  
other And escryed to the troians right lowde that they 20  
shold come and socoure hector / wyth this cry cam first  
securabor one of the bastard brethern of hector/And threstid  
in to the grettest prees so ferre that he cam vpon them  
that most greuyd hector that had slayn moo than thretty  
of them And dide so moche that by force he made the gre- 25  
kes to recule And than was hector remounted vpon his  
horse And threstid in amonge them by grete fierste and  
slewe grete plente of them for þe displayfir that he might  
not haue the Armes of patroclus / Than he recountryd  
none but he slewe hym/or bete hym doun hurte And eche 30  
man made hym waye and dredde hym &c .

**T**Han cam to the bataylle Menesteus the duc of  
 Atthenes and cam & loyned hym to the bataylle  
 where as Troyllus was that dyde meruaylles  
 and had with hym the kynge Sampitus / The kynge  
 5 Machaon And the kynge Alcanus / Tho began fyrse  
 bataylles Menesteus adressed hym ayenst Troyllus .  
 And there faught ayenst hym with so grete force / that  
 he betehymdoun of his horse in the grete prees of the folke  
 And Menesteus contended wyth alle his strength in so  
 10 moche that he toke hym / And lad hym toward theyr  
 tentes wyth grete companye of knyghtes / Than miseris  
 of Troye escryed to the troians that troyllus was pry-  
 sonner / And that they shold be dishonoured yf they  
 suffred hym to be ledd away / Than the kynge Alcanus  
 15 toke his spere that was right stronge / And adressed  
 hym vnto hem that helde troyllus / And smote the first  
 doundede to the erthe / and smote another & fore wounded  
 hym / and dide so moche by the ayde of his men that troyl-  
 lus was rescowed And sette agayn vpon his hors And  
 20 also by the helpe of kynge Sampitus that cam on with  
 alle his peple / And gaf so grete a strook to menesteus  
 ouerthwart / That yf he had not be well armed he had  
 ben slayn / And than escryed Menesteus to his peple  
 and so began amonge them a mortall bataylle / And  
 25 there were many slayn on that one side and on that  
 other / Amonge these thynges Menesteus that was  
 sory that he had losse his prysonner / Recountryd mise-  
 res / By whome he had losse hym And anone he knewe  
 hym / he adressed hym to hym and bete hym doun And the  
 30 same tyme smote doun another knyght / Than cam to the  
 batayll hupon & hiripisus with two thousand fightars

And ayenst them cam menelaus and prothenor wyth  
theyr folke And there began a mortall medle &c.

**A** None after cam polidamas the sone of anthenor  
Wyth a grete companye And threstid in on that  
other side amonge his enemyes / After cam the  
kyng Remus fro troye wyth thre thousand fightars  
And ayenst them cam menelaus wyth alle his peple / the  
saide menelaus adressid hym ayenst kyng Remus / and  
Iusted to gyder / And smote eche other to the ground .  
Than adressid hym polidamas and remus agaynst the  
neuwe of helayne a yong man twentyere olde / And re-  
mus gaf hym so grete a strook wyth his spere that he  
smote hym doun dede to the erthe / wheerof menelaus had  
grete sorowe / for he louyd hym moche And in his grete  
yre he gaf so grete a stroke to Remus wyth his swerde  
That he smote hym doun as dede And whan the kyng re-  
mus was so beten doun / his men had wende that he had  
ben dede & wold haue fledde ne had ben polidamas that  
retayned hem wyth grete payne And dide so moche that  
they toke theyr kyng so hurte as he was And bare hym  
home in saeste Than þ<sup>e</sup> kyng celidus that was the moste  
sair kyng of the world adressid hym to polidamas  
and smote hym wyth his spere But he coude not remeue  
hym polidamas gaf hym so grete a stroke wyth his  
swerde that he smote hym doundede to the erthe / Amonge  
these thyngis hector wente and cam sowllyng and sle-  
yng his enemyes And made waye to fore hym in sle-  
yng of knyghtes and betyng doun so ferre that he cam vpon  
them of salamyne that the kyng thelamon conduyted  
that slewe many of the troians and bete doun by his pro-  
wesse / Than the kyng thenter gaf so grete a stroke



wyth his spere to hector / that he made hym a depewounde  
And than hector in his grete yre encountrid an admyrall  
of the grekes and slewe hym cruelly with his swerd .  
Than was hector clofid with his enemyes on all parties  
5 There was of the grekes the kynge thefus And he sayd  
to hector and warned hym that he shold go oute of the  
bataylle / And sayd that hit were damage for alle the  
world to lese suche a knyght And hector thankid hym  
right courtoisly .

19 **I**N this while Menelaus and thelamon assayl-  
lid polidamas And thelamon that adreffid hym  
firt smote hym with his spere / and after gaf hym  
many strokes in so moche that they brake the laas of his  
helme and toke hym / And had lad hym . away ne had  
15 hector haue be whiche was not ferre / that smote amonge  
them that helde hym and slewe and hurte many of them  
and dide so moche by his vaylliance þ<sup>t</sup> he slewe thretty  
of them And the other fledde / and leste polidamas with  
hym Than ther putte hem to gyder the kynge Epistropus  
20 The kynge menelaus and the kynge thelamon with alle  
her peple And smote in amonge the Troians by so grete  
fierste that they made hem go a back maulgre them / Not-  
wythstandyng the grete prowesse of hector that was  
wyth the other that dyde meruayllys in his p<sup>o</sup>ne / and  
25 than was his good hors galathe slayn vnder hym / and  
then he deffended hym a foote so meruailoufly that ther  
was none so hardy of the grekes þ<sup>t</sup> durste approche hym  
whan his brethern knewe þ<sup>e</sup> right grete daüger þ<sup>t</sup> he was  
in / they ran all to that parte / tho was thelamon fore hurte  
30 And dinadorus one of the bastard brethern of hector gaf  
so grete a stroke to polixenus a noble man that he slewe

hym and bete hym doun of a grete and a strong hors wher  
vpon he satte / And toke the stede to hector that mounted  
vpon hym incontynent there were meruaylles of Armes  
done by the bastardis Than cam on deyphebus wyth alle  
his ooste where in he had grete foyson of Archers that 5  
hurted and slewe grete foyson of grekes / And deyphe-  
bus made and gaf to kynge thenter a gretewounde in the  
visage / Tho began the batayll also mortall as hit had  
ben in alle the day There was theseus assayllyd of quyn-  
telynus one of the bastard brethern of hector and of 10  
kynge moderus and was taken and lad away / But  
hector delyueryd hym alle quyte for the courtofyte that he  
had done to hym a lytyll to fore .

**T**Han cam to the bataylle of the partye of the gre-  
kes / The kynge thoas And the kynge phylotas 15  
But the kynge Thoas adressid hym ayenst cassi-  
lanus one of the bastard brethern of hector & gaf hym fo  
grete a stroke that he slewe hym doun to the erthe seeyng  
hector / whiche than smote so Angerly amonge the gre-  
kes / That anone he slewe many / And put hem alle to 20  
flight / Than cam to the bataylle nestor wyth fixe thou-  
sand knyghtes / And the kynge Esdras and the kynge  
Phylon / that dide grete meruaylles of Armes cam ayenst  
hem / At this assemble ther were many knyghtes slayn .  
and beten doun of that one partye and of that other / The 25  
kynge Philon that dide right meruaylles in armes was  
enclofid wyth the grekes on alle sides And had be slayn  
yf Iecomas and the kynge esdras his fader ne had deliue-  
ryd hym fro theyr handes / Hector and his broder dyde  
meruaylles with polidamas / and had put all the grekes 30  
to flight / but menelaus & thelamon resisted them strongly

Th an cam Eneas to the bataylle with alle his ooft / And  
putte hym Inne wyth hector and the other And by force  
put the grekes to playn flight / wherof ayax had moche  
grete forowe / And also as he behelde behynde hym he  
5 fawe the banyers that cam to the batayll that had not  
yet haue ben there / And there was alle the floure of the  
cheualerye of grece Than prayd he them that fledde / that  
they wolde abide and recomence and begynne newe ba-  
taylle Ajax and Eneas entrecountred so harde that they  
10 fylle bothe to the erthe / And than cam philoteas wyth  
thre thousand knyghtes & made the troians goo backe .  
and smote hector with his spere but he might not remeue  
hym / and hector gaf hym so grete a stroke with his swerde  
That he bete hym fore hurte / Than cam to the batayll the  
15 kyng humerus / and the kyng Vlixes wyth alle theyr  
peple and the kyng humelius / and they had well in their  
ooste ten thousand knyghtes / the whiche dide þ<sup>e</sup> troians  
muche forowe that were moche wery / to theyr focours  
cam parys to the batayll / & in his comyng smote so harde  
20 the kyng of frigie that was cofyn to vlixes that he slewe  
hym & bete hym down / wherof the grekes had moche so-  
rowe / And vlixes supposid to haue smyten parys wyth  
his spere / but he smote his horfe & slewe hym / and parys  
fyll to the erthe / Than Troyllus gaf to vlixes so grete a  
25 stroke that he wounded hym in the visage and made the  
blood sprynge oute lyke as the wyn Renneth out of a  
tonne &c . And vlixes hurted hym agayn / and truly the  
troians had than fledde / ne had ben the grete prowesse of  
hector and of his brethern / .For hector ne cessid to put  
30 hym self in the grettest prees here and there / And eche  
man that knewe hym made hym waye .

**W**Han he saw that his peple myght not suffre the  
grete strengthe of the grekes / he wythdrew hem  
on a side / And tolde them what Iniuryes the  
grekes had don to hem / And what they wolde do yf  
they cam to theyr aboue / And than amonested and  
warned hem to do well / And after brought hem by  
a valeye on the right side for to assaylle theyr enemyes  
/ There was grete occision of the grekes / Ther was  
the kynge thoas assayllid of the bastard brethern of  
hector / .For to auenge the deth of cassibelanus theyr  
broder that he had slayn They bete hym down of his  
horse And rasyd of his helme fro his hede And had  
slayn hym incontynent / yf the duc of Atthenes had  
not come on that threstid in amonge hem and gaf so  
grete a stroke to one of the bastardis quyntylynus that  
he fell down to the ground fore hurte And parys smote  
the duc wyth an arowe in the side / And made hym  
a grete wounde / But the duc that was fore hurte  
fette not therby but magre them alle he deliueryd the  
kynge thoas fro theyr handes / Than hector dyde grete  
payne to put the grekes vnto flighte / And than the  
kynge Humerus shotte an Arowe vnto hector And  
hurted hym in the visage / And hector ran vpon hym  
by so grete yre that he smote hym so fore vpon the hede  
that he cleft hit vnto the teeth and he fell down dede  
Than with blowyng of an horn cam more than feuen  
thousand grekis for tassaylle hector that defended hym  
ayenst them meruaylloufly After this he wente a litill  
to his fader and toke thre thousand knyghtes freshe  
and fiers and brought hem to the bataylle / And at  
theyr comyng he made grete occision of the grekes &c .

**A**yax and hector lusted to geder and fought eche  
wyth other / Menelaus flewe at this Ioynnyng  
an admyrall of troye Celidones flewe moles of  
oreb the neuewe of kyng the thos Mandon smote oute an  
5 eye of kyng cedonyus Sadellus flewe an admyrall of  
the grekes / Thelamon bete margareton and fore wound-  
ded hym .Famuell bete the kyng prothenor to the erthe  
The kyng of gaul lusted ayenst menesteus But menes-  
teus hurte hym on the nose with his swerde Than deanor  
10 seeyng his broder hurte / adressid hym to menesteus and  
smote hym down to the erthe And than ran vpon hym thre  
brethern that wold haue slayn hym or taken hym /but he  
defended hym vaylliantly And anone he was socourid  
by the kyng thenter /but hector than assailed hem bothe  
15 And with oute faulte they had not escaped hym /ne had  
ayax the stronge knyght haue comen to þ<sup>e</sup> rescowe /with  
a thousand knyghtes that he had in his companye / Tho  
cam on the kyng of perse with fyue thousand knyghtes  
that parys ladde And so dide alle the other troians and  
20 made the grekes recule and goo back by force / Dares  
writeth in his book that hector flewe a thousand knygh-  
tes only in this assaulte .

**A**Monge alle other thynges Hector encountryd the  
kyng menon to fore a tente & said to hym /ha .a. euyl  
25 traytre the oure is comen þ<sup>t</sup> thou shalt receyue thy reward  
for that thou restournest me to take the armes of patro-  
clus /and than he smote hym so grete a strook that he fyll  
doun to the ground / And after hector alighted down and  
smote of his heed / and wolde haue taken his armes from  
30 hym / But menesteus letted hym and smote vpon hector  
ouerthwart by suche force þ<sup>t</sup> he gaf hym a grete wounde

And wente his way with oute more taryyng doubtyng  
 the fureur of hector Than hector wente oute of the stowre  
 And dyde do bynde his wounde that hit bledde no more  
 And after wente in agayn in to the stoure / And slewe in  
 his comyng many grekes / And dares sayth that after he 5  
 had bounden his wounde / he slewe the same daye a thou-  
 sand knyghtes And ther was none that had corage to  
 auenge hym ayenste hym or deffende / But he putte hem  
 alle to flight / And the troians entryd in to theyr tentes  
 and pyllid and robbed them / and toke all the beste that 10  
 they cowde fynde &c .

**I**N this day had the troians had vittorye of alle  
 the grekes yf fortune that is dyuerse had wylle  
 consentyd / .For they myght haue slayn hem alle  
 And eschewyd the grete euyllys that after cam to them . 15  
 Certes hit is not wysedom whan ony man fyndeth his  
 enemye in grete perylle and fortune / to offre his power  
 to deliuiere hym therof / .For hit happeth ofte tymes / that  
 he shall neuer recouere to haue his enemye in the same  
 caas / but that fortune torne her backe Thus hit happend 20  
 this day to the vnhappy hector / that was at the aboue  
 of his enemyes and myght haue slayn hem alle yf he had  
 wolde / for they foughte no thyng but for to flee / whan  
 by grete myfaenture cam afore hym in an encountre the la-  
 mon Ajax that was sone of kynge thelamon and exione 25  
 And was cosyn germayn of hector and of his brethern  
 whiche was wyse & vayllyant / whiche adressid hym  
 ayenst hector & deliuieryd to hym a grete assault And hec-  
 tor to hym as they that were valyant bothe two / and as  
 they were fightyng they spak to geder And therby hector 30  
 knewe that he was his cosyn germaine sone of his aunte

And than hector for curtoifye embraced hym in his armes  
and made hym grete chiere And offryd to hym to do all  
his playfir yf he desired ony thyng of hym / And prayd  
hym that he wolde come to troye with hym for to see his  
5 lignage of hys moder fyde / But the sayd Thelamon  
that entended no thyng but to his auantage sayde that  
he wolde not goo at thys tyme / But prayd to hector  
sayng / that yf he louyd hym so mocheas he sayde / that he  
wolde for his sake and at his Instance do cesse the bataill  
10 for that day / and that the troians shold leue the grekes  
in pees / The vnhappy hector accorded to hym his requeste.  
And blewe an horn & made alle his peple to withdrawe  
in to the cyte Than had the troians begonne to putte fyre  
in the shippes of the grekes and had alle brente hem / Ne  
15 had hector callyd them fro thens / wherof the troians  
were sory of the rapeell This was the cause wherfore  
the troians lost to haue the victorye / to the whiche they  
myght neuer after atteyne ne come for fortune was to  
them contrarye And therefore virgile sayth / Non est mise-  
20 ricordia in bello That is to saye there is no mercy in bataill ✓  
A man ought not to take misericorde / But take the victo-  
rye who may gete hit.

¶ Of the first triews of two monethis demanded by the  
grekes / And of the thirde batayll betwene them in the  
25 whiche hector bare achilles to the grounde twyes & after  
slew the kyng prothenor & smote hym with one stroke  
in two parties .

W Han hit cam on þ<sup>e</sup> morn betymes / the troians armed  
them for to goo & assayll the grekes But the grekes  
30 sente by tymes to kyng pryant / And demanded triews  
for two monethes / and he agreed to them þ<sup>e</sup> said triews

And than were the dede bodyes gaderid as well of that  
 on partye as of that other And some were buryed and  
 some brente Achilles was than sorowfull for the deth  
 of patroclus That he coude not in no wyse be confortyd  
 He made his body to be buryed in a moche riche sepul- 5  
 ture and so dyde they of the other as of the kynge prothe-  
 felaus and other kynges and prynces that were slayn .  
 And they that were hurte and wounded / they dide do be  
 helid duryng the trews / Pryant the kynge dide do burye  
 his bastard sone cassibelanus ryght honourably in the 10  
 temple of venus And toke grete sorow for his deth / and  
 so dyde alle the other &c .

**W**Han cassandra herde the doell and sorow that the  
 troians made for þ<sup>r</sup> deth of theyrfrendes / she escried  
 and sayd O meshaüt troians make sorow for your self 15  
 . For in lyke wise shall hit happen & come to yow as it is  
 to your frendes / that shall be the deth / Alas why ne seche  
 ye pees of þ<sup>r</sup> grekes / to fore er these euyllys come to yow  
 and er this noble cyte be destroyed / alas why ne yelde you  
 not agayn helayne / that the kynge my fader dyde do ra- 20  
 uyshe by force / wherfore ye shall alle be destroyed  
 Amonge al these thinges / palamides murmured strongli  
 of the feignourye of Agamenon / sayng that he was not  
 worthy to haue so grete domynacion aboue alle the other  
 And that he hym self was more worthy to haue the feig- 25  
 nourye of þ<sup>r</sup> ooste than agamenon / and that he had not the  
 gree and consente of the princes / but onely of thre or foure  
 and than at þ<sup>r</sup> tyme ther was no thyng further proceded

**W**Han the triews were faylled / the kynge Aga-  
 menon that had the Charge of alle the ooste or- 30  
 deyned ryght erly hys bataylles / And gaf



the fyrst to Achylles / And the seconde to Dyomedes .  
 The thirde to Menelaus The fourth to Menefteus the  
 duc of Athenes And in alle the other he ordeyned good  
 captayns and conduytours / Hector ordeyned his ba-  
 5 tayllys in lyke wyfe / And fette in the fyrst Troyllus .  
 And in alle the other he fette good captayns and hardy  
 And made alle the batayllis to yffue out / And he fette  
 hym felf in the fronte to fore / And whan Achylles  
 fawe hym he ran ayenft hym / And hec̄tor ayenfte hym  
 10 That they smote eche other to the erthe ryght fore .  
 Hec̄tor remounted fyrst and lefte achylles lyyng on  
 the erthe / And smote in amonge the other in the moſte  
 gretteſt prees And he raught no knyght but he ſlewe  
 hym or bete hym down / And wente toughte oute the ba-  
 15 taylle all made reed of the blood of them that he had  
 ſlayn / whan Achilles was remountid he threſtid in  
 amonge the Troians in the gretteſt prees and ſlewe  
 many and he wente ſo ferre that he encountrid hec̄tor  
 agayn / And he ran to hym / And hec̄tor to hym / But  
 20 Achilles was born down to grounde / And hec̄tor wolde  
 haue taken his hors / But he myght not for the grete fo-  
 cours that achilles had / Whan he was remounted he  
 aſſaylled hec̄tor with his ſwerd & gaf ſo grete ſtrokes  
 to hec̄tor / That nyhe he had beten hym / But hec̄tor gaf to  
 25 hym ſo grete a ſtroke vpon the helme That he enfoundrid  
 hym & made þ<sup>e</sup> blood ſprynge out of his heed / Thus was  
 the bataill mortall of the two knyghtes / and yf they had  
 not ben departid that one or that other had be ſlayn / but  
 theyr peple departid them / Than cam dyomedes to the ba-  
 30 tayll and troillus on that other fyde / Whiche ſmote eche  
 other to the erthe / But dyomedes remounted fyrſte .

And assayllyd troylus that was on foote that deffended hym vayllyantly / and flewe the hors of dyomedes  
But theyr men remounted them bothe / two / by force  
And began agayn to medle / And dyomedes had taken and ladde away troyllus / yf the troians hadd 5  
not put hem in paryll of deth for to rescowe hym .  
And many of them were slayn / Than cam to the baytaille menelaus of the grekes side / And parys on the other side  
And than in goyng and comyng hector cefsid not to flee and to bete doun knyghtes Than ther 10  
was a newe knyght named bretes that assayllyd hym fierfly / but hector by ryght grete yre smote hym vpon the helme  
so grete a stroke that he clefted his heed vnto the nombryll and he fyll doun dede / seeyng that  
The kyng archylogus his cosyn / And hector wold 15  
haue taken his hors / But the kyng Archylogus defended hym as moche as he myghte / And than hector ran vpon hym  
and smote hym so harde that he smote his body in two peces notwythstandyng his harnoys /  
The kyng prothenor adressid hym to hec- 20  
tor that than toke no garde ne hede / And smote hym doun to the erthe / And hector Remounted anone  
vpon his horse And gaf to kyng prothenor so grete a stroke with all his myght that he clefted his bodye  
in to two halues / seeyng Achilles that was his parēt 25  
or cosyn / that had so grete sorowe / that he and the kyng Archelaus contended to auenge his deth /  
But the troians cam vpon with so grete strength that the grekes muste nedes flee  
And the troians solowed hem . vnto their tentes  
And than the nyght cam on that made 30  
hem to departe And the troians returned in to their cyte.

¶ How the grekes helde parliament how they myght  
flee the worthy Hector / And how they returned to  
the fourthe bataylle / In the whiche Parys and Mene-  
laus encountryd / And the kynge thoas was brought  
5 pryfoner to troye .

**A**.fter this bataylle whan the nyght was come .  
alle the kynges prynces and barons of the gre-  
kes assemblid at the tente of kynge Agamenon .  
And there helde they theyr parliament how they myghte  
10 flee hector / And they sayde well that as longe as he  
were a lyue and cam to batayll ayenst them They myght  
neuer vaynquyssh the troians / But he sholde to them  
doo grete domaige / And for to brynge this thyng to the  
ende / They requyred Achilles that he wold take hit  
15 vpon hym as well for his strength as for his wisedom .  
And achylles enterpryfed gladly / As he that wiste  
that hector desired more his deth / Than the deth of ony  
other / And also hector was he / by whom he myght  
sonnest lose his lyf / After this counceyll they wente  
20 to reste tyll on the morn be tymes that they armed hem .  
And hector was than yssued oute of the cyte wyth his  
bataylles well and diligently ordeyned / And was  
hym self to fore all other in the fyrste bataylle / And  
after hym Eneas And than parys And then deyphebus  
25 And after hym Troyllus / And after hym the other  
folowyng eche in his ordre / Than Ioynd alle the tro-  
ians to geder / And were more than an honderd thou-  
sande fyghtyng men / Tho began the bataylle horryble  
and mortall / Parys wyth them of perce that were  
30 good knyghtes slewe with shotte many grekis and  
hurted them Hector encountrid the kynge Agamenon

And bete hym and wounded hym fore And than achilles  
assaylyd hector And gaf to hym so many strokes  
that he brake his helme / Than Eneas and Troyllus  
cam to the rescows of hector / And dyomedes cam vpon  
that adressid hym to Eneas and bete hym / And sayd 5  
to hym in mocquerye / Ha . A . good counceller that ga-  
uyft counceyll to thy kynge to offende and greue me .  
knowe thou for trouthe that yf thou come ofte in to these  
bataylles and that I may mete with the / that thou shalt  
not escape with oute deth . 10

**A** Monge these thynges hector assaylled achilles  
And gaf to hym so many strokes that he all to  
fruffhid and brake his helme / And wende to  
haue taken hym But the sone of guideus ran vpon hector  
And gaf hym so grete a strok wyth his swerd / That he 15  
hurted hym fore / And hector in his yre recountryd dyo-  
medes / And gaf hym so grete a stroke that he bete hym  
doun to the grounde / Than Troyllus alightyd and def-  
cended doun for to fyghte with dyomedes a soote / but  
dyomedes deffended hym so vayllyantly that hit was 20  
meruaylle / And beside them fought to gyder hector &  
Achilles / Than cam to the medlee all the kynges and  
prynces of grece wyth grete companye of men of Ar-  
mes / And fro the partye of the troians cam alle the  
barons that were comen to theyr ayde / There began 25  
meruayllously the bataylle / The kynge Agamenon  
And the kynge pandolus fought to geder / The kyng  
Menelaus recontrid parys / And they knewe eche  
other well / And Menelaus smote hym so harde  
wyth his spere / That he made hym a grete wounde 30  
and smote hym doun / wherof parys was alle a

shamed / Vlixes bete the kynge Araftous And toke  
 his horfe that was good and fente hit to his tente .  
 Polimytes affayllyd huppon the auncyent and flewe  
 hym Neptolonyus and the kynge Archilogus fought  
 5 to geder / Polidamas bete Palamydes and wounded  
 hym fore / And after mocqued hym by reproche / The  
 kynge Scelenus / And the kynge Carras encountrid  
 to geder and Carras was fore beten and wounded  
 Philemenus bete Anthenor / Philoteas and the kynge  
 10 Remus fought to geder / the kynge Thefus and the  
 kynge Eryalus fought to geder and bothe were fore  
 hurte And the bastardes of kynge Pryant dyde mer-  
 uaylles and flewe many Grekes And hurte many  
 kynges / The kynge Thelamon and the kynge farpedon  
 15 Iufted fo fore that one ayenfte that other that they  
 fylle bothe fore hurte and alle afonyed of the ang-  
 wyffhe that they had / The kynge Thoas and achilles  
 that were cofyns affaylleden hector / And gaf hym  
 many ftrokes And drewe of his helme fro his hede &  
 20 hurted hym in many places And hector gaf to hym fo  
 grete a ftrook with his fwerd þ<sup>t</sup> he cutte of half his nofe.

**T**O the refcows of hector cam his bastard brethern  
 that flewe many of the grekes & toke the kynge  
 Thoas & wounded & bete the kynge Agamenon in fuche  
 25 wife that he was born to his tentes as dede / and the kyng  
 thoas was ladde prifonner to troye / Menelaus conten-  
 ded to greue parys / And parys shotte to hym an arowe  
 enuynmed / and wounded hym in fuche wife þ<sup>t</sup> he was  
 born in to his tente / and as fone as menelaus had bouiden  
 30 his wounde he cam agayn to þ<sup>e</sup> batayll for to greue parys  
 yf he had fouiden hym / and he fonde hym & affayllid hym

But eneas put hym self betwene hem bothe / .For as  
 moche as Parys was vnarmed for to auente hym / and  
 so eneas lad hym in to the cyte to the ende that menelaus  
 shold not flee hym / Than hector assayllyd menelaus .  
 And wende to haue taken hym / But ther cam to the ref- 5  
 cows grete plente of chyualrye of the grekes wherfore  
 hector myght not cometo his entente And than he threstid  
 in and smote amonge the other And dide so moche with  
 helpe of his folke that the grekes fledde / And than the  
 nyght cam on that made the batayll to cesse . 10

¶ How Pryant wolde that the kynge thoas that was  
 prifoner shold haue ben hanged And how they returned  
 to the fyfthe bataylle / In the whiche hector slewe with  
 his hand thre kynges And how dyomedes slewe the sa-  
 gittarye &c . 15

**W**Han hit cam on the morn betymest the kynge pry-  
 ant wold not that they shold fight that day but  
 sente for his counceyll / That is to wete hector .  
 parys Troylus and deyphebus / Eneas Anthenor and  
 polidamas / And fayd to them / ye knowe how we 20  
 holde prifoner the kynge thoas / That wyth oute cause  
 that we haue deseruyd is come for to destroye vs / And  
 therfor me thynketh good / That we make hym dye an  
 euyll deth / What saye ye therto / Ha fire sayde eneas.  
 The god forbede that your nobleffe shold do suche a 25  
 vilonye / Syn hit is so that the kynge Thoas is one of  
 the most noble kynges of grece And that it myght happe  
 that the grekes myght take one of oures / To whome  
 they myght doo in semblable wyse / wherof ye myght  
 take the gretteff sorowe of the world / So than hit is 30  
 better as me thynketh that ye kepe ryght well

the kynge thoas wyth oute mysdoynge to hym / that yf  
by fortune one of oures were taken / we myghte make  
a change and take that one for that other / This coun-  
ceyll femed good to hector / But the kynge pryant sayd  
5 to them yet / yf ye do thus / hit shall seme to the grekes  
that we doubte vs and that we dare not put theyr folk  
to deth Notwithstandyng I shall doo by your counceyll  
This counceyll fynysshid Eneas toke Troyllus and  
Anthenor and wente to see helayne / whome they fonde  
10 in the grete halle of ylion wyth the quene hecuba / And  
many other noble ladyes where she made grete forowe  
And they supposid than to haue confortid her / And  
so dyde the quene hecuba that sayde to her that she shold  
take no thoughte ne forowe / And that they of the cyte  
15 shold well deffende them .

**A** Monge these thynges the grekes complayned  
hem fore of the deth of theyr frendes that the tro-  
ians slewe thus / And helde hem self chyldren  
that they had put hem in suche daüger / Wherof they  
20 had well passid and ben deliueryd yf they had had  
good counceyll / And yet hit happend that same nyght .  
That ther cam so grete a wynde and so grete a rayne  
that her tentes ware alle torned vp so down to the er-  
the And femed that the world shold haue ended by  
25 the grete storme Wherof her forowe doublid Whan  
hit cam in the morenyng Whan the tempeste was pas-  
syd they armed hem alle thurgh oute the ooste And  
wente hem ayenst the troians / that tho were yssued  
to batayll Achilles adressid hym first to huppon that  
30 was grete as a geant and was kynge of larrysse .

And he smote hym so fore wyth a spere in the breste/that  
 he slewe hym & bare hym down to the erthe/hector slewe  
 in his comyng the kynge Athomeus / Dyomedes slewe  
 the kynge Antipus / Than the kynge epistropus and the  
 kynge cedus assaylleden hector / And Epistropus Iusted 5  
 ayenst hector And brak his spere vpon hym And said to  
 hym many vilayns wordes / wherof hector was angry  
 And in his grete yre gaf hym so grete a strook þ<sup>t</sup> he slewe  
 hym / And after sayd to hym that he sholde goo & saye  
 his vilaynous wordes to them that were dede suche as he 10  
 was wonte to saye to lyuyng men / Than was cedeus pas-  
 syng sorowfull of the deth of his broder And amonestid  
 a thousand knyghtis that he had to flee hector . And  
 they assayllyd hym anone & bete hym of his hors / And  
 than they cryed to kynge cedeus for to sle hector . And 15  
 whan hector apperceuyd þ<sup>t</sup>/he gaf hym so grete a strook  
 That he cutte of his arme wherof he fyll for the ang-  
 wyssih that he felte / and anone hector slewe hym Eneas  
 slewe in his medlee the kynge Amphymacus And ther  
 wente to gyder alle the most puyssant of grekes and af- 20  
 saylled the troians and slewe many of them And they  
 wente by so grete force þ<sup>t</sup> they put the troians in a chaffe  
 in the whiche achilles slewe the kynge philis / Wherof  
 hector had grete sorowe / and in his yre he slewe þ<sup>e</sup> kynge  
 Dalpmee and the kynge doreus And thus by the puyf- 25  
 fance of hector The troians recouerd the felde and slewe  
 many grekes &c .

**T**Han yssued oute of troye the kynge epistropus  
 with thre thousand knyghtes / and they foureyed  
 and threstyd amonge the grekes That reculed in 30  
 theyr comyng / for as moche as he brought wyth hym a



fagittarye the fame that afore is made mencion of / This  
fagittarye was not armed But he bare a stronge bowe  
and a turquoys that was full of arowes / and shotte  
strongly / Whan the knyghtes of the grekes sawe this  
5 meruayllous beste / They had no wyll to goo forth .  
And they that were afore began to wythholde hem .  
And wente aback Amonge these thynges hector slewe  
Polixenes the noble duc that fought fore ayenst hym .  
And by the strengthe of the Troians and the horrour  
10 of the fagittarye the grekes were reculyd vnto theyr  
tentes / Hyt happend that Dyomedes to fore one of  
the tentes was affayllyd of the fagittarye / And had  
this beste to fore hym and the Troians on his back .  
And so behoued hym there to shewe his puyffance The  
15 fagittarye had tho shotte an arowe to hym And dyome-  
des that was not well assewryd auaunsid hym nyghe  
vnto hym / And gaf hym so grete a stroke wyth his  
swerde the whiche was not armed that he slewe hym .  
And at that tyme hit was paste myddaye / And than  
20 the grekes recoueryd the felde / And made the Troians  
to flee / And than entrecountryd Hector and Achylles  
And wyth force of theyr speres they faught bothe two  
And fylle bothe to the erthe / And as achilles was  
fyrst remounted / He supposid to haue ladde awaye  
25 galathe the good horse of hector But hector escryed  
to hys folke that they sholde not suffre hym to lede  
hym awaye Than they ran vpon Achilles and dyde  
so moche that they rescowed galathe & rendryd hym  
to hector that was right glad of hym At this medle  
30 was anthenor taken & sente to their tentes notwith-  
standyng that polidamas his sone dyde meruaylles

of Armes for to resscowe hym / but he myght not / And  
thus they faught to grete damage of that one partye and  
of that other vnto that the nyght departed hem.

¶ Of the trewes that were betwene hem / After the  
whiche began bataylle agayn fro morn to euyn wyth 5  
grete damage of that one partye and of that other / But  
the troyans losfe more than the grekes .

I N the morn betymes the grekes sente diomedes  
and vlixes vnto the kynge Pryant for to haue  
tryews for thre monthes The kynge Pryant as- 10  
semblid his counceyll vpon this thyng / And eche man  
agreed saue hector That sayde that the grekes fayned to  
wylle burye theyr dede bodyes / by cawtele / And them  
lackyd vytaylle / And therefore requyred they tryews  
To the ende that duryng this tyme that they pourueye 15  
them of vytayll / And we dayly waste owres wherof  
we may sone haue scarcete / how be hit he wolde not  
abide onely by his entente ayenst thoppynyon of so many  
wyse men And agreed with the other And the triews  
were accorded for thre monethes / This triewes duryng 20  
the kynge thoas was deliueyrd in the stede of Anthenor  
that they held prifoner / whom they sente to the troians .  
Calcas that by the comandement of Appolyn had lefte  
the troians / had a passing fayr daughter and wyse na- 25  
med bresfeyda / Chaucer in his booke that he made of Tro-  
ylus named her cresfeyda . For whiche daughter he prayd  
to kynge Agamenon and to the other prynces / that they  
wolde requyre the kynge pryant to sende bresfeyda to hym  
They prayde ynow to kynge pryant at the Instance of cal- 30  
cas / But the troians blamed fore calcas and callid hym  
cuyll and fals traytre / And worthy to dye / that had

leste hys owne lande and his naturell lord for to goo  
in to the companye of his mortall enemyes / Alleway  
at the petycion of the grekes the kynge pryant sente bre-  
feyda to her fader .

5 **T**He triews duryng hector wente hym on a day  
vnto the tentes of the Grekes / And Achylles  
behelde hym gladly for as moche as he had ne-  
uer seen hym vnarme / And at the requeste of Achylles .  
Hector wente in to hys tente / And as they spack to  
10 geder of many thyng/Achylles sayde to hector/I haue  
grete playfir to see the vnarmed for as moche as I had  
neuer seen the to fore / But yet I shall haue more play-  
fir /Whan the day shall come that thou shalt dye of my  
hande / Whyche thyng I mošte desire / .For I knowe  
15 the to be moche stronge And I haue often tymes prouyd  
hit vnto the effusion of my blood / Wherof I haue grete  
Anger / And yet haue I more grete sorowe for as moche  
as thou slewest Patroclus hym that I mošte louyd of  
the world / Than thou mayste beleue for certayn that  
20 be fore thys yere be past his deth shall be auengyd vp-  
on the / By my hande / And also I wote well that thou  
desirest to flee me / Hector answerd and sayde Achil-  
les yf I desire thy deth meruaylle the nothyng therof .  
.For as moche as thou deseruest to be myn enemye mor-  
25 tall / Thou art come in to our lande for to destroye me  
and myne / I wyll well that thou knowe that thy  
wordes fere me nothyng at all / But yet I haue hope  
that wyth in two yere yf I lyue / And my swerde saylle  
me not / That thou shalt dye of myn handes / Not thou  
30 allonely but alle the mošte grettest of the Grekes :  
.For amonge yow ye haue enterprysid a grete folye

And hit may none otherwyfe come to yow therby but  
 deth / and I am affewrid that thou shalt dye of my hande  
 Er I shall dye by thyne And yf thou wene that thou be  
 fo stronge that thou maiste defende the ayenfte me / make  
 hit so that alle the barons of thyn oofte promyfe and  
 5 accorde that we fighte body ayenft body And yf hit hap-  
 pen that thou vaynquyffe me / that my frendes and I  
 shall be bannysshid oute of this royame and we shalle  
 leue hit vnto the grekes / And therof I shall leue good  
 plegge And herein thou mayste prouffite to many other  
 10 That may Renne in grete danger yf they haunte the ba-  
 tayll / And yf hit happen that I vaynquyffe the / make  
 that alle they of this oofte departe hens And suffre vs to  
 lyue in pees / Achilles achauffid hym fore with these  
 wordes And offryd hym to doo this batayll and gaf to  
 15 hector his gayge / whiche hector toke and resseyuyd  
 gladly &c .

**W**Han Agamenon knewe of this haytye and bar-  
 gayn / He wente hym hastely vnto the tente of  
 Achylles with a grete companye of noble men . 20

Whiche wolde in no wise accorde ne agree to this batayll  
 Sayng that they wold not submytte hem so many no-  
 ble men vnder the strengthe of one man And the troians  
 sayden in lyke wyfe / Saue only the kyng pryant that  
 wolde gladly agreed for the grete strengthe that he felte  
 25 in his sone hector Thus was the champe broken / And  
 hector departed & wente agayn to troye fro the grekes .

**W**Han Troylus knewe certaynly that bresfyda  
 shold besente to her fader he made grete sorowe  
 .For she was his souerain lady of loue / And in  
 30 semblable wyfe bresfyda louyd strongly Troylus .

And she made also the grettest sorowe of the world for  
 to leue her fouerayn lord in loue / Ther was neuer seen so  
 moche sorowe made betwene two louers at their depar-  
 tyng / who that lyfte to here of alle theyr loue / late hym  
 5 rede the booke of troyllus that chawcer made / wherin he  
 shall fynde the storye hool / whiche were to longe to  
 wryte here / But fynably bresyda was ledde vnto the  
 grekes whome they receyued honourably Amonge them  
 was diomedes that anone was enflamed with the loue  
 10 of bresyda / whan he sawe her so fayr And in ridyng by  
 her side / he shewid her alle his corage And made to her  
 many promesses and specially desired her loue And than  
 whan she knewe the corage of diomedes / she excused her  
 sayng that she wolde not agree to hym ne refuse hym at  
 15 that tyme .For her herte was not disposed at that tyme  
 to answere otherwyse Of this answere Dyomedes had  
 grete Ioye .For as moche as he was not refusid vterly  
 And he accompanied her vnto the tente of her fader .  
 And halpe her doun of her hors / And toke fro her one of  
 20 her glouys that she helde in her handes And she souffryd  
 hym swetely / Calcas rescyuyd her wyth grete Ioye  
 And whan they were in pryete betwene hem bothe .  
 Bresyda faide to her fader these and semblable wordes

25 **H**A . A . my fader how is thy wytte fayllyd that  
 were wonte to be so wyse and the moste honou-  
 red and belouyd in the cyte of troye And gouer-  
 nest alle that was wyth Inne And haddest so many  
 richeffes and possessions / And haste ben trayttre thou  
 that oughtest to haue kepte thy Rycheffes and def-  
 30 fended thy contree vnto the deth / But thou louest

better to lyue in pouerte and in exyle amonge the mortall enemyes of thy contree . O how shall thys torne to the grete vylonnye : Certes thou shalt neuer gete so moche honour / as thou haste gotten vylonnye . And thou shalt not only be blamed in thy lyf / but thou shalt also after thy deth and be dampned in helle . And me semeth yet hit had ben better to haue dwellyd oute of the peple vpon some yle of the see / than to dwelle here in this dishonoure and vylonnye . Weneft thou that the grekes holde the for trewe & faithfull / that arte openly false & vntrewe to thy peple . Certes hit was not only the god Appollo that thus abusid the / but hyt was a companye of deuylls . And as she thus spack to her fader / she wepte strongly for the displayfyr that she hadde &c .

15

**H**A . a . my doughter sayd calcas than / weneft thou it is a fewre thyng to despyte the answer of the goddes / and specyally in that thyng that towcheth my helthe . I knowe certaynly by their answers that this warre shall not dure longe / that the cytene shall be destroyed . And the nobles also and the burgyfes . And therfor hit is better for vs to be here sauf / than to be slayn wyth them . And than fynsshid they their parliament . The comyng of brefeyda plefid moche to alle the grekes . And they cam theder and fested her And demaunded of her tydynges of Troye and of the kyng Pryant / and of them that were wyth Inne . And she sayd vnto hem as moche as she knewe curtoyfly . Than alle the gretteft that were there promysyd her to kepe her and holde her as dere as her doughter . And than eche man wente in to hys owne Tente

25

30

And ther was none of hem but that gaf to her a Iewell  
at the departyng / and than hit plesid her well to abide  
and dwelle wyth the grekes / and forgate anone the  
noble cyte of troye / and the loue of the noble troyllus /  
5 O how sone is the purpos of a woman chaungid and  
torned / certes more sonner than a man can saie or thinke  
Now late had bresyda blamed her fader of the vyce  
of trayson / whiche she her self excersised in forgetyng  
her contre and her trewe frende troyllus &c .

10 ¶ How the grekes & troians began the sixthe bataylle  
that dured by the space of thretty dayes in whiche were  
many kynges and prynces ded of that one syde and of  
that other / And how diomedes smote down troillus of  
his horse and sente hit to bresyda his loue that receyuyd  
15 hit gladly &c .

**A**.fter the thre monethis of triews passid / on the  
morn be tymes the troians apparayllid them to  
bataill / And whan hector had ordeyned all his  
batayllis / he yssued out fyrste and toke wyth hym fyf-  
20 tene thousand fyghtyng men . And troyllus folowed  
hym wyth ten thousand knyghtes . After hym cam pa-  
ris with thre thousand fyghtyng men and good archers  
and well horsed . After cam deyphebus with thre thou-  
sand fyghtars . After hym cam Eneas and the other  
25 alle in ordre so many that there were thys daye of the  
partye of the troians more than an honderd thousand  
good fyghtyng men and hardy / Of the partye of the  
grekes cam alle ther fyrste Menelaus wyth seuen thou-  
sand knyghtes . and after hym Dyomedes wyth as  
30 many / And than Achilles that lad also seuen thousand  
the kyng pampitus with a grete multitude of knyghtes

And the other after lyke as they were ordeyned . The  
kyng Philis aduanced hym alther fyrste . And hec-  
tor cam ayenst hym so stronge that he slewe hym with  
his spere . Than ther roos a grete crye of his deth amonge  
the grekes . And the occysion and slaughter began so  
grete that hyt was an horryble fyght to see as well  
of that one syde as of that other / The kyng Pampitus  
slewe many troians for to venge the deth of his vncl  
and assaylyd hector / but hector gaf hym so grete a  
strooke wyth hys swerd that he slewe hym also .  
And for to avenge his deth the grekes slewe many of  
the troians / Achilles slewe many noble men / Amonge  
the whyche he slewe the duc biraon . and euforbe that  
was a moche noble man . Hector was this day fore  
hurte in the visage / and bledde grete plente of blood .  
and wyfte not who had doon hyt . And therefore the  
troians reculed vnto the walles . And whan hector  
behelde and sawe vpon the wallis the quene hecuba  
hys moder and his susters / He had grete shame . And  
by grete yre assayllid the kyng menon cofyn of Achil-  
les / and gaf hym so many strokes wyth his swerd  
vpon hys helme that he slewe hym seeyng Achilles /  
that wende for to haue enraged and toke a stronge  
spere . and ranne ayenst hector and brake hys spere  
vpon hym / but he coude not remeue hym . And hector  
gaf hym wyth hys swerd so grete a strooke that he  
maad hym to tomble vnder hys horse . And sayd to  
hym Achilles Achilles thou contendest to approche to  
me / Knowe that thou approchest thy deth . And as  
Achilles wold haue answerd to hector / Troyllus cam  
vpon betwene them wyth a grete nombre of knyghtes



and putte hym in the myddes of them / And there were  
slayn more than fyue honderd knyghtes of grece / and  
were put back by force / And menelaus cam to the rescows  
wyth thre thousand fyghtyng men . And of the  
5 partye of the troians cam the kynge Ademon that luf-  
ted ayenst menelaus / and smote hym and hurted hym  
in the vyfage . And he and troylus toke hym and had  
lad hym away / yf dyomedes had not come the sonner  
with a grete companye of knyghtes / And fought with  
10 troillous at his comyng and smote hym down and toke  
hys horse / and sente hit to brefeyda . And dyde do saye  
to her by his seruaut / that hit was troyllus horse her  
loue / that he had beten hym by his prowesse / and pra-  
yd her fro than forth on that she wold holde hym for  
15 her loue and frende &c .

**B** Refeyda had grete Ioye of these tydynges / and  
sayd to the seruaūt that he shold saye vnto his  
lord / that she myght not hate hym that wyth  
so good herte louyd her / Whan Diomedes knewe the  
20 answer / he was right Ioyous / and threstid in amonge  
his enemyes . But the troians that were stronger than  
they / maad the grekes to goo a back and recule vnto  
their tentes and had slayn hem all yf the kynge aga-  
menon had not focowred hem with right grete strength  
25 Than began the batayll horryble and mortall / And  
the grekes recoueryd the felde . And rebowted and put  
the Troians aback vnto theyr dyches . Than cam pa-  
lidamas to the rescows wyth a grete nombre and mul-  
titude of knyghtes and dyde fayre appertyfes of warre  
30 Than Dyomedes adressid hym to hym / But he was  
beten of palydamas that toke the horse of dyomedes

and toke hit to troyllus that fought a fote / And he  
mounted anone ther vpon / Than cam Achilles ayenst  
troyllus whom troyllus receyuyd gladly / and bete down  
Achilles / whiche remountyd lyghtly . and affailid  
troyllus with his swerd And troyllus defended hym 5  
right vaylliantly . Than cam on hector And had at this  
stowre slayn more than a thousand knyghtes . but the  
grekes defended Achilles / that were so oppressid that  
vnnethe they myght defende hym no more / And he had  
ben slayn or taken / yf the kynge thelamon and the duc 10  
of Atthenes had not focourid hym . And they sette hym  
agayn on his hors with grete payne / & than the nyght  
cam on that departed them . They fought thus thretty  
dayes contynuelly to the grete damage of bothe partyes  
And ther were slayn sixe of the bastard fones of the 15  
kynge pryant . And hector was hurte in the visage .  
And therefore the kynge pryant demaüed trews of the  
grekes for sixe monethis . And they were agreed and  
accorded to hym &c .

¶ How the grekes and the troians began the seuenth 20  
batayll / that dured twelue dayes And after began the  
eyghte batayll moche damageous for the troians . for  
hector was slayn by achilles And were rebowted in to  
their cyte by force of their grete damage .

D Vryng the sixe monthes of the triews asfor- 25  
said hector dide hym to be heled of his woundes  
And playd in the noble halle of ylyon that  
was / as the hystorye sayth the moste Ryall halle and  
sayre that was in alle the world . Thus duryng the  
trewes the kynge pryant dyde do burye hys sixe bastard 30  
fones eche in a sepulture by hym self ryght honourably .

Amonge all other thynges Diomedes suffred grete my-  
seafe for the loue of breseida / and myght not ete ne reste  
for thynkyng on her / And requyred her many tymes of  
her loue . And she answerd hym right wysely gyuyng  
5 hym hope wyth oute certaynte of ony poynte / by the  
whyche dyomedes was enflamed of alle poyntes in  
her loue / Whan the fixe monthes were passid they be-  
gan to fyghte by the space of twelue dayes contynuelly  
fro the mornyng vnto the euenyng . And there were  
10 many slayn of that one syde and of that other / And than  
cam a grete mortalite amonge the grekes in the oost of  
the grete hete that tho was / And therefore the kyng Aga-  
menon requyred tryews / whyche was agreed and  
accorded to hym &c .

15 **W**Han the triews was passid the nyght to fore  
Andrometha the wyf of hector that hadd two  
fayr sones by hym wherof that one had to name  
laomedon / and that other Astromatas . This Andro-  
metha sawe that nyght a meruayllous vyfion . And her  
20 semed yf hector wente that day folowyng to the ba-  
taylle he shold be slayn . And she that had grete fere  
and drede of her husbond Wepyng sayd to hym pra-  
yng hym that he wold not goo to the batayll that day  
Wherof hector blamed his wyf sayng that mē shold  
25 not beleue ne gyue fayth to dremes / and wold not  
abyde ner tarye therfore / Whan hyt was in the more-  
nyng Andrometha wente vnto the kyng pryant and  
to the quene and tolde to them the veryte of her vyfion .  
and prayd to them wyth alle her herte that they wold  
30 doo so moche to hector that he shold not that day go to  
the bataylle &c .

**H** It happend that day was fayre and cleer And  
 the troians Armed them And Troyllus yffued  
 fyrste in to the batayll / After hym Eneas / Af-  
 ter Parys Deyphebus Polidamas and the kynge sar-  
 pedon the kynge Epistropus the kynge Croys / and 5  
 the kynge Philomenus / And after alle the prynces  
 that were comen in the ayde of the troians / eche man  
 in good ordenance / And the kyng pryant sente to hec-  
 tor that he shold kepe hym well that day fro goyng  
 to batayll . Wherefore hector was angry and sayd to 10  
 his wyf many wordes reprochable / as he that knewe  
 well that this defence cam by her requeste / how be hyt  
 notwithstanding the deffence he armed hym . And  
 whan Andromeda sawe hym armed she toke her ly-  
 tyll chyldren and fyll down to the feet of her husbond 15  
 and prayd hym humbly / that he wold take of his Ar-  
 mes / but he wold not doo hyt . And than she sayd to  
 hym / at the leste yf ye wyll not haue mercy on me / so  
 haue pytie of your lytyll children that I & they dye not a  
 bitter deth . or that we shall be ledde in seruytude & bon- 20  
 dage in to strange contreyes / With this poynt cam vpon  
 them the quene hecuba & the quene helayne and þ<sup>r</sup> fusters  
 of hector / And they knelid down to fore his feet and pra-  
 yd hym wyth wepyng teerys / that he wold doo of his  
 harnoyes and vname hym and come wyth them in to 25  
 the halle . But neuer wold he doo hit for her prayers .  
 but descended from the palays thus Armed as he was  
 And toke hys horse and wold haue goon to bataylle .  
 But at the Requeste of Andromeda the kynge pry-  
 ant cam rennyng anone / and toke hym by the brydell 30  
 and sayd to hym so many thynges of one and other

that he maad hym to retorne / but in no wyfe he wold  
not vnarme hym .

**A**monge all thefe thynges the batayll was mor-  
tall of the grekes and of the troians / Diome-  
des and troyllus Iufted to geder / And at the af-  
5 femble they greuyd eche other / and wyth oute faylle  
eche of them had flayn other yf menelaus had not come  
and departid them . Than the kynge myferes of frygye  
bete menelaus and had taken hym whan eneas cam and  
10 diftrowblid them . And wold haue flayn hym / But  
the fayd troyllus delyueryd hem and flewe many gre-  
kes . Than cam the kynge thelamon with thre thousand  
fyghtyng men / And Iuftid in hys comyng ayenft poli-  
damas / and put hym to the worfe and vnhorfid hym .  
15 But troyllus focourid hym and made hym to remounte  
on his hors . After cam parys and achilles on the other  
fide / that fmote amonge the troians by fo grete force  
wyth the helpe of hys peple that he putte hem to the  
flyght vnto the cyte / And in this chaffe achilles flewe  
20 margareton one of the bastardes of kynge pryant .

**W**Han hector knewe that Achylles had flayn  
margareton / he had grete forowe And dyde a-  
none do lafe on hys helme / and wente hym to  
the batayll that hys fader knewe not of . And in hys  
25 comyng he flewe two noble dukes grekes the duc Co-  
ryphus / and the duc baftidus . And he threstid in to  
the gretteft prees of the grekes / and flewe as many as  
he coude areche And the grekes fledde afore hym that ther  
was none fo hardy þ<sup>t</sup> durft abide his ftrokes / And thus  
30 the troians returned and flewe the grekes on all fides

Than the grekes toke polidamas & had lad hym away  
ne had hector haue ben / whiche delyuerid hym & slewe  
many grekes . Than an Admyrall of grece named Leo-  
cides assayllid hector / and hector slewe hym anone .

**W**Han Achilles sawe that hector slewe thus the 5  
nobles of grece and so many other that it was  
meruayll to beholde / he thought that yf hector  
were not slayn that the grekes shold neuer haue victo-  
rye / and also for as moche as he had slayn many  
kynges & prynces . He ranne vpon hym meruayllously 10  
and a noble duc of grece with hym named Polyceus /  
and was come for the loue of Achilles / the whyche  
had promysyd to gyue to hym hys suster in maryage /  
But hector slewe the same duc anone seeyng Achilles  
Than Achilles wenyng to avenge the deth of policeus 15  
assayllyd hector by grete yre . But hector caste to hym  
a darte so fierfly / and made hym a wounde in his thye  
And than Achilles yssued out of the batayll and dide  
do bynde hys wounde and toke a grete spere in purpose  
to flee hector yf he myght mete hym . Amonge all these 20  
thynges hector had taken a moche noble baron of grece  
moche queyntly and rychely armed / And for to lede  
hym oute of the ooste at his ease / had caste his shelde  
behynde hym at his backe / And had leste his breste dif-  
couerte and as he was in thys poynte and toke none 25  
hede of Achylles that cam pryuely vnto hym and putte  
thys spere wyth in his body / And Hector fyll down  
dede / to the ground : Whan the kynge Menon sawe  
hector dede / He assayllyd Achylles by grete yre . and  
bete hym down to the ground and hurte hym strongly . 30

And his men bare hym in to his tente vpon hys shelde .  
Than for the deth of hector were alle the troians discon-  
fyte / and reentryd in to theyr cyte beryng the body of  
hector wyth grete forowe and lamentacion .

5 ¶ Of the ryche sepulture of hector and of the grete la-  
mentacions and wepynges that the troians maad for  
his deth / and how palamydes was chofen duc and  
gouvernour of the oost of the grekes : .

10 **W**Han hector was ded / and his body born in to  
the cyte/theris no tonge that coude expresse the  
forowe that was maad in the cyte generally  
of men & women And that ther was none but he had  
lever to haue losfe his owen sone than hym / And they  
sayd all that from thens forth they had losfe alle her  
15 hope and truste of deffence / And thus they demened  
ryght longe their forowe / The noble kynges and pryn-  
ces bare the body vnto the palais of ylyon . Than whan  
the kyng pryant sawe hym he fyll doun a swowne  
vpon the body and was as ded for forowe that vn-  
20 nethe they coude take hym awaye by force . There deme-  
ned grete forowe all his brethern / what myght men  
faye of the forowe that his moder the quene made / and  
after hys susters . O what forowe maad hys wyf /  
Certes there can no man expresse alle the lamentacions  
25 that there were maad / And for as moche as the body  
myght not longe endure wyth oute corrupcion . The  
kyng pryant toke counceyll of many wyse maysters  
How they myght kepe the body of hector wyth oute  
corrupcion and wyth oute sepulture / And than he dyde  
30 do make by their counceyll a ryche sepulture vpon foure

pylers of gold lyfte vp an heyghte vpon the whyche  
was maad a moche ryche tabernacle of gold and  
of precyous stones . And on the foure corners of the  
tabernacle were foure ymages of gold that had fem-  
blaūce of Angellis . And aboute the tabernacle ther 5  
was a grete ymage of gold that was maad after the  
femblance of hector And had the vyfage torned tow-  
ard the grekes and helde a naked swerde and semed that  
he manaced the grekes . And ther was in the myddes  
of the tabernacle a place voyde . where the maysters fet- 10  
ted and putte the body of hector in fleshe and in bones  
y cladde in his beste garentes and robes . And stood  
right vpon his feet / and myght endure so a longe tyme  
in that wyse with oute corrupcōn by certayn scyence that  
the maystres had setteon the sommet or toppe of the hede 15  
of hector / that is to wete a vessell / that had an hole in  
the bottom / Whiche vessell was alle ffull of syn bame  
And that styld and dropped in to a place aboute on  
his heed / and so spradde down in alle the membres of  
the bodye / as well wyth Iñ as with oute / and they 20  
fyllid often tymes the vessell wyth bame . And thus  
the body myght not enpayre for the grete vertue of this  
bame . And alle the peple that wold see hector they  
sawe hym veryly in lyke wyse as he had ben on lyue .  
To thys sepulture the same maysters maad a lampe 25  
of syn gold brennyng contynuelly wyth oute gooyng  
oute or quenchyng . And after they maad a clofure /  
to the ende that no man sholde approche ne goo vnto  
thys tabernacle wyth oute lycence or leue . And in this  
temple the kynge pryant ordeyned and sette grete plente 30  
of prestes for to praye to the goddes with oute seffyng



for hys sone hector / And gaf to them good rentes .

**A** Monge these thynges the kynge agamenon af-  
sembled all the kynges & most nobles of his oste  
And said to hem in this manere / My frendes all  
5 ye kynges prynces & barons / We oughte to rendre and  
yelde thankynges to the goddes humbly & with deuoute  
herte / that our right hard enemye hector haue suffred to  
be slayn by the hande of Achilles / ffor as longe as he  
was on lyue we had neuer esperance to haue comen at  
10 the aboue of oure enemyes / what may the troians fro  
hens forth hope & truste / but onely their destruccōn / And  
we may in shorte tyme hope þ<sup>e</sup> victorye vpon them / And  
for as moche as achilles is strongly hurte and may not  
goo to batayll / yf ye thynke good whylis that he may  
15 be heled & the other also that ben hurte / of whome we  
haue many / and also for to burye the ded bodyes / we  
shall fende to kynge pryant for to haue triews for two  
monethis . The counceyll semed good to hem . And they  
fente anone to the kynge pryant for tryews / and he ac-  
20 corded them for two monethis .

**D** Vryng this triews palamydes murmured ayen  
of the feygnourye of agamenon . And as they  
were on a day all to gyder / and palamides spack  
of thys mater / the kynge agamenon answerd to hym  
25 as fage in the presence of alle the other / and sayd to  
hym / Palamydes weneft thou that I haue grete loye  
of the feygnourye that was gyuen to me at the begyn-  
nyng and haue occupied to thys present tyme / how  
well that hyt was not at my requeste and that I haue  
30 none awayll ne prouffit therby / but I haue grete charge  
and breke many slepes / to thende that by my neclygence

our ooste goo not to declyne ner disworshyppe / And  
certes hit had well suffisid to me to haue ben vnder  
the gouernaūce of an other . And I fere no man that  
may accuse me / that for ony euyll wyll or necligence  
I haue sayllid in ony thyng . And yf thou gauyft not  
thy consente to myn eleccion / thou darst not esmaye the  
therof / ffor thou were not yet at that tyme comen with  
the other . but hit was two yere after er thou cam . And  
therefore yf we shold haue abyden thy comyng we had  
ben yet at the poort of atthenes . And for as moche as  
thou shalt not wene that I haue Ioye of this office and  
am desiryng to haue this honour / I am contente that an-  
other be chosen and am redy to consente with the moſte  
voys / Whan agamenon had thus spoken / ther was no  
further proceded þ<sup>t</sup> day in this matere . And than at euen  
Agamenon dide do crye in all the oost þ<sup>t</sup> eche man shold  
be on the morn betymes to fore his tente at þ<sup>t</sup> parlament .

**W**Han hit cam on the morenyng that they were  
all assemblid / Agamenon sayd to them . My  
brethern & frendes I haue had vnto thys tyme  
the charge of this werke with grete trauayll for to con-  
duyte hit well / In suche wise that by þ<sup>t</sup> suffrance of the  
goddes I haue brought hit to honour vnto thys tyme .  
And for as moche as hit is leeffful þ<sup>t</sup> an vnyuersite an-  
were not alway to one maister / But that euery man en-  
poye hym to the beste / to his power / for so moche than  
as I haue conduyted this oost longe tyme / I wyll that  
we chese another that may conduyte hyt dyscretely .  
Whan Agamenon had fynysshid his wordes / His sa-  
yng plesid to euery man / and they chees palamydes to be  
their duc & gouernour / And than he wente vnto his tente

Achilles that laye feke of his woundes was angry of  
the depofyng of Agamenon and fayd to fore alle them  
that wold here hyt / that Palamydes was no thyng  
lyke vnto agamenon in wytte and in difcrecion . And  
5 that mē ought not to change hym for palamydes / But  
for as moche as alle the peple had consentid / he abode  
therby alfo &c .

**¶** How the kyng pryant yffued to batayll for to a-  
uenge vpon the grekes the deth of his sone hector / and  
10 of the prowessis that he dide / and of the annyuerfarye  
of the fayd hector in whyche Achilles was efpryfed  
with the loue of polixena the doughter of kyng pryant  
in fuche wyfe that he myght not dure ne reſte .

**W**Han the two monthis of the triews were paſte  
15 the kyng pryant defiryng to avenge the deth of  
his sone hector / Ordeyned with his owen per-  
fone his bataylles / and fette in eche batayll good con-  
duytours / and he hym ſelf wente and ledde with hym  
fyve and twenty thouſand of good knyghtes choſen of  
20 the beſte / And dares ſayth in his book that ther yffued  
out of troye that day an honderd and fyfty thouſand  
men / Deiphebus was the formeſte & than parys & after  
hym cam the kyng pryant / and troyllus / Eneas menon  
and polidamas . And wente hem vnto the tentes of the  
25 grekes / Palamydes had ordeyned his bataylles / than  
began the batayll grete and mortall / The kyng pryant  
ſmote doun palamides in his comyng / and after ſmote in  
to the gretteſt prees of the grekes & ſlewe many of them  
and bete hem doun / and dyde ſo moche in armes in that  
30 day that wyth grete payne a man ſholde beleue hyt /

that a man so Auncyent and olde myght doo that he  
 dyde that day . The kynge sarpedon of troye assaylled  
 kynge Neptolonyus / that was a passyng stronge  
 knyght . And kynge sarpedon was born to the erthe  
 that defended hym vailliantly and gaf so grete a stroke 5  
 vnto kynge neptolonyus that he maad hym a grete  
 wounde in his thye . Than cam to the batayll the kynge  
 of perce that remounted the kynge sarpedon wyth the  
 ayde of his folke . Menelaus and the duc of atthenes  
 assaylleden the kynge of perce and enclosed hym and 10  
 his peple amonge hem / and slewe the kynge of perce /  
 and maad the troians to recule by force / There dyde  
 meruaylles of Armes the kynge Sarpedon .

**T**He kynge pryant and his bastard sonnes that  
 than folowed hym cessid not to flee the grekes 15  
 And ther was none that day that dide so moche  
 in Armes as dyde the kynge pryant / .For his sorowe  
 and his yre maad hys strengthe to growe . Than the  
 grekes auyfed hem to take the way by whiche the tro-  
 ians shold retorne vnto their cyte / They wente theder 20  
 in grete nombre / And than whan the troians reculeden  
 for to goo in to that place / they fonde hem self in the myd-  
 dell of their enemyes / tho began mortall batayll / And  
 ther cam vpon them the kyng pryant with a grete nom-  
 bre of fyghtyng men by one wyng / And parys cam a 25  
 trauerse wyth grete soysson of good fyghtars / And he  
 had grete soysson of Archers that slewe many of the  
 grekes and hurted hem / And they dyde so well /  
 that by force the grekes muste recule to theyr tentes .

And the troians reentrid in to their cyte / And the kyng  
pryant had the loos and pryfe of this batayll . He sente  
to the grekes to demande triews / and they agreed and  
acorded to hym /but we fynde not how longe this triews  
5 endured &c .

**A** Monge these thynges the kyng pryant dyde do  
carye by land the body of the kyng of perfe for  
to be buryed in hys contre / Tho was the we-  
pyng and sorowe grete in troye . And in especyall of  
10 parys that louyd hym strongly / Duryng thys triews  
the Annyversarye of hector approchid where mē shold  
moorne fyftene dayes in grete sorowe . And after shold  
mē halowe the grete feste funerall / as hit was that tyme  
the guyse and custome for kynges and prynces . And  
15 than duryng the tryews / the grekes wente and cam in  
to the cyte fauely / And so dide the troians vnto the ten-  
tes of the grekes : Than achilles had grete desire to goo  
to troye to see the cyte and the feste of the annyversarye  
of hector . whome he had slayn / And so he wente alle  
20 vnarmed vnto the temple of appolyn where as was  
the sepulture of hector / and he fonde there grete foyson  
of men and women that were noble and wepte and  
maad grete sorowe to fore the sepulture whiche a man  
myght see on all sides alle hool in like wyse as he was  
25 fyrft by the vertue of the bame / there was the quene  
hecuba / and polixena her daughter that was passyng  
sayre with a grete companye of noble ladyes / that had  
alle theyr heer spartled and hangyng aboute their shol-  
dres / And demened ryght meruayllous sorowe / And  
30 how well that Polyxena maad so grete sorowe .

yet she losfe no thyng of her beawte / but femed and  
shewid her self fo fayre in alle her membres and fo  
well colowred that nature formed neuer none more  
fayrer &c .

**W**Han Achilles had well aduysed and seen po- 5  
lixena / He sayd in hym self that he had neuer  
seen fo fayre a woman ne better fourmed ne  
made / Wyth that she was one of the moſte noble wo-  
men of the worlde / than was Achilles ſhoten with the  
darte of loue / that ſtack hym to the herte fo meruayl- 10  
louſly / that he coude not ceſſe to beholde her / And the  
more he behelde her / the more he defired her / He was fo  
afottyd on her / that he thought on none other thyng .  
but abode in the temple vnto the euenyng as longe as  
the quene was there . And whan ſhe wente oute he con- 15  
ueyed his eye vpon polixena as ferre as he myght ſee her /  
And thys was the cauſe and the begynnyng of hys  
meſchief / In thys forowe Achilles returned vnto his  
tente / And whan he was leyde to ſlepe / that nyght  
ther cam many thynges in his mynde and in his thoughte 20  
And knewe than the daūger where polixena had putte  
hym Inne . And thought in hym ſelf that the moſte  
ſtronge men of the world coude not ner had not mowe  
vaynquyſſhe hym . And the only regarde and ſyghte  
of a frayll mayde had vaynquyſſhid and ouercome hym 25  
And hym ſemed that ther is no medecyne of the world  
myght hele hym faue ſhe / But he ſayd my prayer /  
my ſtrengthe / ne my rycheſſe may no thyng meue her  
to haue pyte on me / I wote neuer what devyll hath  
putte me in thys daunger to loue her that hateth me 30  
fo ſore / with mortall hate / And by right good cauſe /

ffor I am comen hether for to fle her kynne and cofyns  
and now late haue flayn her noble brother hector / Cer-  
tes I see no remedye / fyn she is the moſte noble and  
fayreſte of the world . And than he turned hym to the  
5 walle and fyll in wepyng and drowned hym ſelf in  
teres / and of neceſſite he muſte thynke how he myght  
come to the loue of polixene / And ſo he coueryd and  
hydde his corage as well as he myghte .

¶ How Achylles ſente his ſecrete meſſanger vnto he-  
10 cuba the quene of troye for to requyre her daughter polix-  
ena and of the anſwer / and how for the loue of her the  
ſaid achilles aſſemblid the ooſt of the grekes / and coun-  
ceyllid hem to departe / and haue pees with the troians /

15 **T**He nyght folowyng as achilles was leyde on  
his bedde & myght not ſlepe / he thought that he  
wold ſende be tymes hys meſſanger vnto the  
quene hecuba for to knowe yf he myght fyne wyth her  
that ſhe wold gyue to hym her daughter polixena to  
wyue / And he wold do ſo moche for her / that he wold  
20 make the grekes to reyse theyr ſyege and goo agayn in to  
theyr contrees haſtely . And the pees ſhold be maad be-  
twene them . Alle thus as he thought in the nyght / he  
put in execucion and ſente his trewe meſſanger vnto the  
quene for to requyre her daughter . And ſayde to her the  
25 promyſes that his lord had comanded hym / whan the  
quene had vnderſtande the wordes of the meſſanger  
ſhe anſwerd hym discretly / how well that ſhe hated  
achilles more than any man of the world : ſayng frend  
as moche as is in me I am redy for to doo that thyng  
30 that thy mayſter requyreth of me . So ſaye vnto hym

that I may not doo this thyng alone by my self . But  
I shall speke to my lorde and to parys my sone . And  
thou shalt come the thirde day agayn / and I shall saye  
to the thyn answere .

**W**Han the messanger herde the quene so speke/he 5  
retorned vnto his lord and said to hym all that  
he had founde / And thus began Achilles to  
haue hope to come to his entente . The quene hecuba  
wente her anone vnto the kynge pryant her husband  
where as paris was / and tolde to them all that Achil- 10  
les had fente to her / And than the kynge henge down his  
heed and was so a longe whyle wyth oute sayng of  
ony worde . And after said to his wyf . O how is hyt  
as me thinketh herde thyng to resceyue in to frendship  
and Amytye / hym that hath don to me so grete offence 15  
that hath taken away the lyght of myn eyen in sleyn  
my dere sone hector : And hath therin gyuen hope to the  
grekes to haue the victorye / But alleway for to ef-  
chiewe the moeste grete peryll / To thende that myn other  
sones lose not theyr lyf and that I may haue reste in myn 20  
olde dayes / I me consente with yow that he haue that  
he requyreth . Alleway forseen that he doo fyrste that  
thyng that he hath promysid wyth oute ony decepcion /  
Parys agreed to this thyng lyghtly / for as moche as  
in the promesses of Achilles was no thyng spoken of 25  
the quene Helayne &c : .

**A**T the thirde daye after / Achilles sente agayn hys  
messanger vnto the quene / And as sone as he  
cam to fore her / she sayd to hym . I haue spoken to my  
husbonde and also to my sone Parys of the requeste 30



and also of the promesse of thy lorde / and they be con-  
tente that hys requeira be agreed to hym . But that he  
doo fyrst that thyng / that he hath promysed . And so  
thou mayst faye to hym that he may come to the chief &  
5 ende of his desire . and that he conduyte wysely and se-  
cretly thys thyng as moche as in hym is : The messan-  
ger toke leue of the quene / and cam anone to hys may-  
ster / and counted to hym alle that the quene had sayd  
to hym . Than began Achilles strongly to thynke how  
10 he myghte performe this that he had promysed to the  
kyng Pryant . And that hyt was a greuous thyng  
to doo / And that hit was not alle in hys puyffance .  
But hit is a propre vyce vnto the folissh lovers to pro-  
myse thyng that is hard to bryng aboute and dyffi-  
15 cyle / for to come to the effecte of their loues / In lyke  
wyse gloryfyed hym Achilles that for hys merytes or  
for gyuyng hys ayde to the grekes he wold make them  
to leue theyr syege / And than Achilles by the counceyll  
of palamydes assemblid all the kynges and noble men  
20 of the oost In parlament & sayd to them in this manere .

**M**I frendes that be here assemblid for to bryng  
this warre to the ende / thenke ye not otherwhile  
on your self . How by grete legyerte / lyghtnes  
and folye and for to recouere the wif of menelaus we  
25 haue leste oure contrees and landes / oure wyves and  
oure chyldren . And ben comen in to thys stronge lande /  
Where we haue dyspendyd the owrys folylly / and  
putte oure bodyes in daunger of deth and in grete In-  
fynyte laboure / And syn we haue ben comen hether  
30 ther ben ryght many kynges and prynces ded / And  
I my self haue shedde moche of my blood / þ' neuer shold

haue happend yf we had not begonne this folye / helayne  
is nothyng of so grete prys that ther behoueth to dye for  
her so many noble men / ther ben ynowhe in the world of  
as noble and as fayr women as she is / of whome me-  
nelaus myght haue one or two yf he wolde / And hit is 5  
not a light thyng to ouercome the troians / as they that  
haue a stronge cyte and well garnysshid of good figh-  
tars on horse backe and a foote / and hit ought to suffice  
to vs that we haue now slayn hec̄tor and many other  
of theyr nobles by the whiche we myghte now retorne 10  
wyth oure honoure and worshippe And yf we leue he-  
layne / haue not we exione / to whome helayne may not  
compare in nobleffe .

**T**Han meuyd them the duc of Atthenes And the  
kyng thoas / And contraryed strongly to the 15  
wordes of Achilles / And so dyde alle the other  
and sayd / That he sayde neyther fayr ne well / wherof  
Achilles had grete sorowe / And comanded to his my-  
rondones that they shold not arme them no more ayenst  
the troians And that they shold not gyue no counceyll 20  
ne Ayde vnto the grekes / Amonge these thynges vyta-  
ylls began to faylle amonge the grekes / and they had  
grete famyne / Than assemblid palamydes alle the moste  
nobles of the oost to counceyll And by theyr counceyll  
was the kyng Agamenon sente vnto the cyte of messe 25  
to the kyng thelephus / That charged and laded his  
shippes with vitayll and cam fauely agayn in to the ooste  
of the grekes / where he was receyuyd wyth grete Ioye .  
Amonge these thynges palamydes dyde theyr shippes do  
be reparyed to the ende that they myght be more redy yf 30  
they had nede &c .

¶ Of the deth of deyphebus the sone of kynge Pryant  
And how parys slewe palamydes / and how þ<sup>e</sup> troians  
rebuted the grekes in to theyr tentes & fette fyre on theyr  
shippis And how for alle these thynges Achilles wold  
5 not goo to batayll for the loue of polixene .

**W**Han the triews were passid they began to fighte  
as they had ben accustomed / deyphebus assayllid  
in his comyng the kynge Cressus of grece / And  
he adressid hym to hym gladly and Iusted that one  
10 ayenst that other / But deyphebus bete the kynge cressus  
dede down to the ground / Wherof the grekes were fore  
trowblid and put hem to flight / But palamydes and  
Dyomedes cam wyth fyue and twenty thousand fygh-  
tyng men that resisted the Troians / wyth them was  
15 the noble kynge Thelamon ayax / that adressid hym  
ayen efronyus one of the bastard sones of the kynge  
Pryant / And smote hym so hard that he bete hym doun  
dede to the ground seeyng Deyphebus / that in his grete  
furour ran vpon Thelamon and bete hym and fore hurte  
20 hym / whan Palamydes sawe that stroke He toke a  
grete spere and adressid hym to deyphebus / And smote  
hym so harde in the breste that the spere entryd in to his  
body and the spere brake and the tronchon a bood in  
the body of deyphebus / Whan parys sawe his broder  
25 hurte to the deth he toke hym & ladde hym vnto by the  
gate of the cyte And toke hym to his men to kepe And  
as deyphebus opend his eyen & sawe parys his broder .  
He said to hym / broder shalt thou late me descende in to  
helle with out auengyng of my deth / I pray the as I may  
30 that er this tronchon be taken out of my body / that thou

do so moche by thy hande that thou flee hym that hath  
slayn me / Parys promysid hym that he wold do his po-  
wer And returned hym in to the bataylle ryght angry  
for his broder / And sayd in hym self that he desired no  
lenger to lyue but tyll he had auengyd the deth of his 5  
broder / And fought palamydes alle abowtes / And  
sonde hym that he foughte agaynst the kynge farpedon  
that had assaylyd for to sle hym and palamydes def-  
fended hym vaylyantly / And in his grete fureur gaf so  
grete a strooke wyth his swerde to the kynge farpedon 10  
that he cutte of his sholdre fro the body / And anone  
kynge farpedon fyll down dede .

**P**arys seeyng the grete damage that palamydes  
dyde to them / And also with his prowesse had  
putte the troians to flight / and cessid not to flee 15  
and smyte down all way / he bende his stronge bowe And  
auysed well palamydes at leyzer And shotte to hym an  
arowe enuened / And smote hym in the throte / And  
cutte a two the maistre vayne / and palamydes fyll down  
dede to the erthe .For whos deth the grekes made moche 20  
forowe & lefte the batayll / and wente vnto theyr tentes  
And there helde a stale ayenst the troians and deffended  
them strongly / Than descended the troians a fote and en-  
tryd in to some of theyr tentes and toke alle that they  
sonde that good was / Than Parys and troyllus wente 25  
by a side waye vnto the porte / and dyde do putte fyre in to  
her shippis and brente so grete plente that men mighte see  
the flame ferre / To the rescowse of the shippis cam the  
kynge thelamon with a grete companye of fightars / and  
began the batayll horrible that there was grete occision 30  
and slaughter on bothe sides / And verayly the shippis

had ben alle brente / Ne had ben the prowesse of kynge  
thelamon þ' dide meruaylles with his body / And what  
some euer he dyde ther were more than fyue honderd  
shippis brente / There was grete occision of the grekes .  
5 And many were hurte / There was Ebes the sone of  
the kynge of trace sore hurte wyth a spere and bare the  
tronchon in his body / And in that poynte he wente to  
the tente of Achylles / where he restid hym that day  
And had reffused to goo to the bataylle for the loue that  
10 he had to polixene / Ebes reprochid strongly Achylles  
that he suffryd so destroye the peple of his contre and  
to dye vyllaynsly / And that he myght well helpe hem  
yf he wolde / And as sone as he had fynysshid his wor-  
des One toke oute the tronchon of his body And anone  
15 he fyll doun dede in the presence of Achilles .

**A** Non after cam fro the batayll oon of þ' varlettis  
or seruauntes of Achilles / And Achilles de-  
maunded hym tydynges . of the ooste / Ha . A  
Syre sayd he hit is this day myshappid to oure folk .  
20 .For the grete multitude of troians that ben comen vpon  
them / And they haue slayn alle that they cowde mete  
wyth / And I trowe ther is not lefte oon at home of  
the men of troye / But that euery man is come to the  
bataylle / And therefore yf hit plese yow now whilis  
25 that the troians ben wery to come to the bataylle ye  
shall gete to yow perpetuell memorye of worshyppe  
and of glorie / .For by your prowesse ye shall in  
lytyll space haue alle vaynquysshid hem / And they  
shall not dare deffende hem ayenst yow they ben so  
30 wery / Neuer wolde achylles for the wordes of his  
varlet ne for the deth of Ebes / change his corage .

But diffimyled alle that he had seen and herde for the grete loue that he had to polixene .

**A** Monge these thynges the bataylle was ryght sharpe And endured vnto the nyght to the grete damage of the grekes / And the nyght departed 5 them/yet was not deyphebus dede /but he drewe toward his ende / And whan Parys and Troyllus sawe hym in that forowe / They began to crye and make grete sorowe / And than Deyphebus opend a lytyll his eyen and demanded of parys wyth a feble voys yf he were 10 dede that had slayn hym / And Parys sayd to hym ye . Than deyphebus dyde do drawe oute the hede of the spere wyth the tronchon / And anone deyde / Wherefore the troians made grete sorowe / hit is no nede to holde longe parlament of the sorowe that the kyng Pryant his 15 fader made ne his wyf and his fusters / .For hit was to moche and also for the deth of the kyng Sarpedon Of that other partye the grekes made grete sorowe for the deth of palamydes And made his body to be buried worshypfully / And as they that myght not be longe 20 wyth oute an heed and gouernour by the counceyll of duc nestor and of other / Agamenon was remysed in his dignyte as he was to fore .

**T**He day folowyng the troians erly in the morenyng yssued oute of the cyte in good ordenance . 25 And the grekes cam ayenst hem/tho began the batayll mortall / And there was grete slaughter on bothe sides / But hit rayned so moche that day / that the grekes wythdrewe hem to theyr tentes / And the troians folowed after them / But the rayne was so grete that they 30 muste nedes leue the bataylle and retorne in to theyr cyte.

On the morn betymes they began to fighte / And slewe  
that day many barons of the grekes and fought to the  
euen And so they faughte the space of feuen dayes con-  
tynuelly / where was grete occision of that one and of  
5 that other / And for as moche as the grekes myght not  
suffre the stenche of the dede bodyes / They demaunded  
tries for two monethis / whiche were accorded to  
hem by kynge pryant .

10 **D**Vryng these tries the kynge agamenon sente  
the duc Nestor Vlixes & Dyomedes to speke  
to Achilles for to praye hym and amoneste hym  
to come to the ooste for to deffende hem ayenst the troians  
that slewe hem ouer meruayllously / whan they were  
come vnto hym / He resseyuyd hem wyth grete Ioye .  
15 And than Vlixes sayd to hym / Syre Achilles / ne  
was hit not by your entencion and also owres alle  
of this ooste to leue oure contre / And come renne vpon  
kynge Pryant and destroye hym and his by force of  
armes / And bete down his cyte / .For whens cometh this  
20 newe corage / After so many hurtes and damages as  
we haue resseyuyd in this lande by the troians that haue  
flayn so many kynges and prynces pylled and robbed  
oure tentys and brente oure shippes / And we were now  
in hope to haue vaynquysshid hem / After that ye by your  
25 force and valeur haue flayn hector / that was the verray  
tutor of þ<sup>e</sup> troians and also now that deyphebus is dede  
The troians ben therwyth put vnder foote And than af-  
ter this that ye haue goten with so grete trauayll so grete  
worshippe and so good renome / wyll ye now lese alle  
30 attones and suffre your peple to be flayn cruelly that ye  
haue so longe deffended with the effusion of your blood .

Plese hit to yow fro henf forth to entretene & kept your  
good renome / And defende your peple / That wyth oute  
yow may not longe defende hem ayenst your enemyes / to  
the ende that we may come to the victorye by your pro-  
wesse / By the whiche we hope to attayne and come . 5

**S**ire Vlixes sayd than Achilles / yf we be come  
in to this lande for tho causes that ye haue decla-  
red we maye saye that grete folye was amonge  
vs / that for the wyf of one of vs / that is to wete of fyre  
Menelaus so many kynges and so hyghe princes be but 10  
in paryll of deth / had hit not ben moche more wyfdom  
for the noble palamydes to haue abyden in peas in his con-  
tree / Than for to be slayn here / And other kynges and  
prynces in lyke wyse / Certes as the most grete partye of  
the worlde of noble men ben here now assemblid / yf they 15  
dye here / As many ben all redy dede / Hit muste nedes  
solowe that the contrees shall be Replenysshid and go-  
uerned by villayns / Hector that was so noble and so  
worthy / is he not dede / In lyke wyse I may dye lightly  
that am not so stronge as he was . And therefore how 20  
moche as ye requyre me to goo to bataylle / so moche  
payne and laboure lese ye . For I haue no more entencion  
to putte me more in danger / And loue better to lese my  
renomee than my lyf . For in þ<sup>r</sup> ende ther is no prowesse  
But hit be forgotten Nestor and dyomedes contendeden 25  
ynowh to drawe Achilles to their quarellis But they  
myght neuer enduce hym to theyr porpose Ne the wor-  
des of Agamenon neyther And than he sayd to hem that  
they shold make pees with the troians to fore that they  
were alle slayn &c .

**T**Han Returned these thre prynces vnto Agamenon 30



and fayde to hym alle that they had founde in Achilles .  
 And Agamenon dyde hit to be knowen to the prynces  
 of the ooste / Whom he had affembrid for this cause / And  
 demanded of them theyr auyse / Thanstode vp menelaus .  
 5 Sayng that hit shold be to vs now grete vylonnye to  
 feke pees wyth the troians syn that hector & deyphebus  
 ben dede / and slayn / and that for theyr deth The troians  
 repute them as vaynquysshid / and that wyth out Achil-  
 les they sholde well mayntene the warre agaynst the tro-  
 10 ians / To that answerd vlixes & nestor And fayde / that  
 hit was not meruayll though menelaus desired þ<sup>e</sup> warre  
 for affeccion to recouere his wyf / And that troye was  
 not so disgarnysshid but that they had a newe hector .  
 That was troyllus / that was a lityll lasse stronge and  
 15 worthy than hector And ther was also another deyphe-  
 bus / and that was parys / whom we oughte to dowte as  
 moche as the other And therefore they couceyllid þ<sup>e</sup> pees  
 And to retorne hom agayn to grece Than escryed þ<sup>e</sup> false  
 traytour Calcas / whiche was traytour to the troians .  
 20 And said ha . a . noble men what thinke ye to doo ayenst  
 the comādement of the goddes / haue not they promifid to  
 yow þ<sup>e</sup> victorie / & will ye now leue hit Certes þ<sup>t</sup> shold be  
 grete folye Take agayn corage to you / & fighte ye agaynst  
 the troians more stronglye than ye haue doon to fore And  
 25 cessenottyll ye haue the victorie that the goddes haue pro-  
 mifid to yow And than with the wordes of the said cal-  
 cas / the grekes toke herte to hem / sayng veryly that they  
 wold mayntene the warre ayenst the troians / whether  
 achilles helpe hem or not & that for him they wold not leue  
 30 ¶ Of many bataylles that were made on that one side &  
 of þ<sup>t</sup> other to their bothe grete damage / & of certayn triews

And of the deth of the noble Troyllus that Achylles  
flewe ayenst his promys / And drewe hym at his horse  
tayll thurgh the oost And how Achilles flewe þ' kynge  
Menon &c .

**W**Han the triews of two monethis were passid . 5  
They began to fyghte in bataylleright sharpely.  
There dyde troyllus meruaylles of Armes for to  
venge the deth of his broder / Dares saith in his book that  
he flewe that day a thousand knyghtes And the grekes  
fledde to fore hym / And the bataylle endured to the 10  
nyght that departed hem / The day folowyng the four-  
tenth bataylle began harde and sharpe / There did dyome-  
des meruaylles of Armes / And flewe many troians  
and hurte hem / And adressid hym ayenst troyllus one  
tyme that smote hym so harde that he smote hym down to 15  
the erthe And was fore hurte / And reprochid hym of the  
loue of bresyda / Than the grekes ran with grete strength  
and toke dyomedes vp & bare hym vpon his shelde vnto  
his tente / Menelaus that sawe Dyomedes so beten .  
Adressid hym ayenst Troyllus / But troyllus that had 20  
yet his spere hole smote hym so harde that he bete hym  
down to the erthe fore hurte And was born in to his tente  
by his men vpon his shelde / Than Agamenon assemblid  
alle his strengthe / And threstid in amonge the Troians  
and flewe many / But troyllus cam ayenst hym and 25  
smote hym down of his hors / but he was anon remounted  
by the helpe of his folk .

**T**Hus finysshid the bataylle that day And Aga-  
menon sente for to haue triews for fixe monethis  
Whiche were agreed and Accorded by kynge 30  
Pryant / How be hit that hit semed to some of his

counceyll þ<sup>e</sup> he shold not accorded them so longe / amonge  
these thinges bresseyda ayenst the will of her fader wente  
for to see diomedes that laye fore hurte in his tente And  
she knewe well that troyllus that was her loue had fo  
5 hurte hym / Than returned in her corage many purposes  
And in the ende she sawe that she might neuer recouere  
troyllus / and therefore as sone as diomedes were hole she  
wolde gyue to hym her loue wyth oute lenger taryng .

10 **A**monge these thinges the kynge Agamenon trāf-  
ported hym vnto the tente of Achilles in the com-  
panye of duc Nestor / And Achilles receyuyd  
hem wyth grete Ioye / And than agamenon prayd hym  
that he wolde come forthon to the bataylle And suffre  
no more their peple thus to be slayn But achilles wold  
15 neuer molefyne his corage for his wordes / How well  
for as moche as he louyd agamenon he agreed and con-  
sentid that his men shold go to batayll with oute hym .  
Wherof agamenon and nestor cowde hym grete thanke .  
And thanked hym ynowhe / And after returned in to  
20 theyr tentes .

**W**han the triews were passid agamenon ordeyned  
his peple to þ<sup>e</sup> batayll and achilles sente to hym  
his mironrones habilled & ensigned with a reed  
signe for to be knowen Tho began the batayll harde and  
25 sharpe to the grete damage of bothe parties Theretroyllus  
bete down the duof atthenes & flewe many of the mirōdo-  
nes & hurte / and fought thus tyll þ<sup>e</sup> nyght departed them  
On the morn be tymes began þ<sup>e</sup> batayll sharpe & mortall  
The kynge philomen<sup>9</sup> & polidamas toke the kynge thoas  
30 & had lad hym away / ne had þ<sup>e</sup> mirōrones haue rescowed  
hym / Than troyllus smote in among hem & flewe many &

hurted hem / But they deliueryd to hym a grete assault  
and slewe his horse and wolde haue taken hym / Whan  
Parys and his bastard brethern smote in amonge hem  
and brake them / And remysed Troyllus on his horse .  
Than was ther there a fiers medlee/there slew þ<sup>e</sup>myrun- 5  
dones emargeron one of the bastardis of kyng Pryant  
of Troyes / wherof troyllus had grete sorowe And by  
the Ayde of his peple smote in amonge hem and slewe  
and hurte many / But they deffended hem vayllyantly  
and helde hem to gyder And troyllus cessid not to greue 10  
hem and to entre amonge hem often tymes/Tho cam to  
the bataylle Agamenon Menelaus Thelamon Vlixes  
and Dyomedes wyth alle her peple And began an harde  
medlee ther the grekes dyde the troians suffre moche  
payne / But troyllus focouryd hem vayllyantly / And 15  
put hym self alleway where as mooste nede was and  
slewe and bete down all that he fonde and dide so moche  
by his prowesse that the grekes fledde vnto theyr tentes  
And thelamon deffended hem vayllyantly / And made  
hem to recouere the felde by his prowesse / This was the 20  
sixtenth bataylle in the whiche dyed many knyghtes of  
bothe sides/Troyllus cessid not to greue the myrundones  
And ther was none so puyssant ne so stronge that  
myght dure agaynst hym / And dide so moche that he  
remysed the grekes to flighte /And toke an honderd no- 25  
ble men that he brought in to the cyte .

**W**Han the bataylle was synysshid / ayenst the  
euen/the myrundones returned vnto the tente of  
Achilles /And ther was founden many of them  
hurte /And ther were an honderd of hem dede / wherof 30  
Achilles had moche sorowe / And hit was nyght he

wente to bedde / And there he had many thoughtes / and  
purposid ones to go to the bataylle for to auenge the deth  
of his men And another tyme he thoughte on the beawte  
of polixene / And thoughte that yf he wente / he shuld  
5 lese her loue for alleway / And that the kynge Pryant  
and his wyf shold holde hym a deceyuour / .For he had  
promysid them / that he sholde helpe no more the grekes .  
And how well he sayd in hym self / that he had sente his  
men in to theyr ayde / And in this thought achilles was  
10 many dayes And in so moche that the day cam that the  
seuententh batayll began moche horryble / that dured by  
seuen dayes contynuelly where in were many Grekes  
slayn / wherfore Agamenon requyred triews / But the  
Troians agreed no lenger the triews but tyll they had  
15 buryed theyr dede bodyes / And whan the dayes were  
passid / The eyghtenth batayll began ryght aspre and  
fiers / Menelaus and Parys Iusted to gyder And bete  
well eche other / Polidamas and Vlixes faught to  
gyder a grete whyle / Meneftus bete doun eneas wyth  
20 Iustynges / The kynge Phylomenus bete Agamenon .  
And had fore hurte hym / yf Thelamon had not come  
on that smote to ground Phylomenus fore wounded  
Archylogus the sone of duc Nestor / assaylyd one of  
the bastardis of kynge Pryant named brum / And  
25 smote hym so harde wyth his spere / That he bare hym  
doun to the ground & slewe hym / Wherof the troians  
had grete sorowe / And aboue alle other troyllus was  
angry / that smote in amonge the grekes that he had put  
hem to flight ne had the mirondones haue ben that resif-  
30 ted hym / And therefore troyllus smote in amonge them  
And slewe so many and bete doun / and dyde so moche

moche that he made the grekes to reboute hem In to theyr tentes And descended a fote and entryd in to the tentes and flewe hem on alle sides / And there was so grete a crye / that the sowne cam to Achilles that rested hym in his tente / And demanded of one of his seruantes that was ther / what hit was / And he sayd to hym that the troians had vaynquysshid the grekes and flewe them with in theyr tentes / whiche myghte no more deffende them / And wene ye to be sewre here . Nay ye shall see anone more than fourty thousand troians that shall flee yow vnarmed / And at this tyme they haue slayn the most parte of your myrundones / And they cesse not to flee them And ther shall not abide one a lyue / But yf they be focouryd .

**A**T these wordes Achilles quoke for yre / And sette behynde hym the loue of polixene / And dyde do Arme hym hastely and mounted on his hors and ran out all araged as a lyon And smote in amonge the troians and pershid hem flewe and hurte them in suche wyse that anone his swerde was knowen and the blood Ran in the felde alle aboute as he wente . Whan troyllus knewe that Achilles saught with his swerde he adressed hym to hym and gaf hym so grete a strooke that he made hym a grete wounde and a depe . That he muste nedes cesse many dayes of comyng to bataylle / Troyllus was hurte also of the hand of achilles But no thyng so fore / And bothe fyll down to the ground / And the bataylle dured vnto the nyght . And on the morn they began agayn & endured vnto the euen / And thus they saught Sixe dayes continually / Wherefore ther were many slayn on eyther

partye / The kynge pryant had grete sorowe of this that  
Achilles ayenst his promyse was come in to the batayll  
And wende that he had made hym to vnderstand thyng  
that was not / but rather for to deceyue hym than other-  
5 wyfe And reprochid his wyf to beleue so lightly hym  
And polixene forowed than ynowhe .For she was ple-  
fid than to haue had Achilles to her husband .

10 **A**Chilles amonge other thynges / dyde do hele his  
woundes / duryng fixe monethes of triews that  
they had gotten / whiche woundes troyllus had  
gyuen hym / And he porposid to auenge hym / And that  
troyllus shold dye villaynsly by his hande / After these  
thynges the nynetenth batayll began wyth grete occision  
And afore that Achilles entryd in to the bataylle he  
15 assemblid his myrondones / And prayd hem that they  
wolde entende to none other thyng but to enclose tro-  
yllus and to holde hym wyth oute sleyng tyll he cam  
And that he wolde not be fer fro hem / And they pro-  
mysid hym that they so do wolde / And he smote in to  
20 the bataylle / And of that other syde cam troyllus that  
began to flee and bete doun / alle them that he raughte.  
And dyde so moche that aboute mydday he put the  
grekes to flight / Than the myrondones that were well  
two thousand fyghtyng men and had not forgete the  
25 comandement of theyr lord / threstid in amonge the tro-  
ians and recouerid the felde / And as they helde hem to  
geder & fought no man but troyllus / they fonde hym þ<sup>r</sup>  
he foughte strongly & was enclofid on all parties / but  
he slewe & wounded many . And as he was all allone  
30 amonge hem and had no man to focoure hym / they slewe

his horſe / And hurte hym in many places / And araced  
of his heed his helme / And his coyffe of yron / And he  
deffended hym the beſte wyſe he cowde / Than cam on  
Achilles whan he ſawe troyllus alle naked / And ran  
vpon hym in a rage / And ſmote of his heed And caſte hit 5  
vnder the feet of the horſe / And toke the body and bonde  
hit to the taylle of his horſe And ſo drewe hit after hym  
thurgh oute the ooſte / O what vylonnye was hit to  
drawe ſo the ſone of ſo noble a kyng / that was ſo wor-  
thy and ſo hardy / Certes yf ony nobleſſe had ben in 10  
Achilles / he wold not haue done this vylonye .

**W**Han parys knewe that Achilles had thus vy-  
laynſly ſlayn Troyllus he had grete ſorowe  
and ſo had Eneas and polidamas / And dyde  
grete payne to recouere his body / But they myght not 15  
for the grete multytude of grekis that reſiſted hem / On  
the other parte the kyng Menon deyde for ſorowe for  
the deth of Troyllus / And affayllyd Achylles / And  
ſayd to hym in Reproche / Ha . A . euyll trayttre what  
cruelte hath meuyd the to bynde to the taylle of thy horſe 20  
The ſone of ſo noble a prynce as the kyng Pryant is .  
And to drawe hym as he were the moſte vylayne of the  
worlde / Certes thou ſhalt abyde hit / And ran vpon hym  
And ſmote hym ſo harde wyth his ſpere in his breſte .  
That he made hym a grete wounde / And after gaf hym 25  
ſo many ſtrokes wyth his ſwerde that he bete hym down  
to the ground / And than was the body of Troyllus  
Recoueryd wyth grete payne / The folke of Achylles  
Releuyd theyr lord and ſette hym agayn on his horſe .  
And as ſone as his ſtrength cam to hym agayn / he cam 30



agayn in to the stoure / And recontryd the kynge Me-  
non / And assayllyd hym strongly / And the kynge  
Menon deffended hym vayllyantly and hurted Achil-  
les in many places / But there cam so moche peple on  
5 that one side and of that other that they were departed  
Than cam the nyght on that departed them & made them to  
ceffe / And they faught thus the space of feuen dayes .

**A**T the feuenth day whan Achilles was heled of  
his woundes / Desiryng to auenge hym of the  
10 kynge Menon / sayd to his folke / that if they  
myght recountre hym they shold holde hym in cloos lyke  
as they dyde troyllus / Than began the bataylle right  
Aspre / Achilles and Menon faught to gyder and by  
grete felonye bete doun eche other a foote / Than the my-  
15 rundones enclofid hym and toke hym by force that had  
no man to focoure hym / Than achilles seeyng the kynge  
menon in this daüger he ran vpon hym and slewe hym  
wyth grete martyre / But menon gaf hym to fore many  
grete woundes / wherof he laye longe after / Amonge  
20 these thynges menelaus and menefteus with grete com-  
panye of kynges and prynces and many fightyng men  
threstyd in to the stoure and put many troians to flight  
The whiche entred in to theyr cyte with grete myschief  
for as moche as the grekes chassed hem so nyghe that  
25 they slewe and hurted many of them .

**¶** How parys by the ennorment of hecuba his moder  
slewe achilles in the temple of appollo & the sone of duc  
Nestor / And how parys and ayax slewe eche other in  
bataylle .

30 **F**Or the deth of troyllus the kynge pryant his wyf &  
his children and all the habitantes of the cyte made  
640 [leaf 319 verso]

grete sorowe meruaylloufly / And they sayde alle .  
 That syn they had lost hector . deyphebus and Troyllus  
 that they had from thens forthon no more hope of theyr  
 lyf than of theyr deth / The kynge Pryant demanded  
 tryews / And hit was a greed and Accorded by the 5  
 grekes / Duryng the whiche they dyde burye honoura-  
 bly the body of Troyllus and the body of kynge Me-  
 non / The quene myght not be appeasid ner comforted  
 for the deth of her chyl dren/and thoughte in many maner  
 wyfes how she myght be auengyd on Achylles that 10  
 thus had slayn her sones by cruelle tyrannye And fyn-  
 ably she called parys fore wepyng & said to hym secretly  
 these wordes / Ryght dere sone thou knowest how this  
 trayttre Achilles hath slayn by trayfon forseen thy bre-  
 thern my children / That were wyth the the solace of my 15  
 lyf / And for as moche as he hath so slayn hem by tray-  
 fon / me semeth good and also Iuste and right that he be  
 slayn by trayfon . And I shall telle the how hit shall be  
 doon/Thevnhappy man hath manytymes requyred meto  
 haue to his wyf my doughter polixene And I haue gyuen 20  
 to hym good esperance I haue purposed to sende to hym  
 my seall messanger / And bidde hym come speke to me in  
 the temple of Appolyn / And I wyll right dere sone that  
 thou be there in awayte with a good companye of knygh-  
 tes/And than whan he shall be comen that ye renne vpon 25  
 hym & flee hym that he escape not wyth his lyf / Parys  
 anwerd that he wolde do this thyng in suche wyse as  
 she had deuysed / And ther vpon he assemblyd twenty  
 good knyghtes in whome he affyed hym moche / And  
 wente hem forth in to the temple of Appolyn . 30

Assone as achilles herde þ<sup>r</sup> messanger speke that cam 30

from the queene hecuba/the foole beyng euyll counceyllid  
 toke wyth hym the sone of duc nestor and wente bothe  
 vnto the temple of Appolyn And as sone as they were  
 comen / Parys and his knyghtes ran vpon hym / And  
 5 Parys caste at hym thre dartes wherwyth he hurte  
 hym fore / Achilles drewe oute his swerde that had no  
 more Armour / and wrapped his Arme with his man-  
 tell/and smote in amonge the knyghtes right fierfly and  
 slewe feuen of them / But fynably the sone of duc nestor  
 10 Archilogus and Achilles were bothe slayn with in the  
 temple / And anone parys comanded þ<sup>r</sup> his body shold  
 be caste oute to the houndes and to the byrdes /But at  
 the request of helenus/they were put in a place to fore the  
 temple for to be kepte /And the Troians had than grete  
 15 Ioye / and faide forthon they had no charge of the grekes  
 ne fette nought by hem / Whan agamenon knewe therof  
 he fente vnto kynge Pryant for to haue the bodyes for to  
 burye hem/The kynge Pryant made them to be deliuerid  
 and were born to their tentes Tho aroose a grete sorowe  
 20 amonge the grekes And sayd that they hadde alle loste .  
 The duc Nestor myght not be comforted for the deth of  
 his sone And they made for Achilles a noble sepulture .  
 And by the consentement of kynge Pryant was leyde  
 with in the cyte at thentre of the gate of tymbre .  
 25 **A**.Fter these thynges the kynge agamenon assemblid  
 to his counceyll all the nobles of the ooste/and she-  
 wid to them / how for the deth of achilles the moste parte  
 of them were disconforted and distalentid of the warre  
 and therefore demanded them yf hit were good to leue þ<sup>r</sup>  
 30 warre or to entertene & hold hit / Than was there among  
 them dyuerse opynions The some alowed the warre .

And the other blamed hit And finably they concluded  
 alle to geder with one acorde to mayntene the warre/  
 say- yng yf Achilles were fayllyd / yet for that sholde not  
 faylle the promesses of the goddes . Than stode vp Ajax  
 among them And said yf Achylles were dede/late sende 5  
 for his sone whom the kynge Nycomedes his beell fire  
 noriffhith and techith the feet of Armes / .For I trowe  
 that wyth oute hym we may haue no victorye of the tro-  
 ians . His counceyll semed good And by the agrement  
 and will of euery man / Menelaus was chofen for to 10  
 goo secche Neptolonyus sone of Achylles that was na-  
 med other wyfe Pyrrus .

**A** Monge these thynges whan the tryews were  
 faylled the . xvi . day of Iuyn whan the dayes  
 ben at the lengest of alle the yere . The troians be- 15  
 gan the twentyth bataylle ayenst the grekes that was  
 ryght sharpe and harde / this day wente Ajax by grete  
 folye to bataylle wyth oute Armes and bare nothyng  
 but his swerde/The troians that had loste theyr beste de-  
 fendours were not than so hardy as they were wonte 20  
 to be But for to saue theyr lyues they foughte myghtyly  
 Parys wyth alle the peple of perse that were the beste  
 archers slewe many grekes / And the kynge phylome-  
 nus foughte strongly and they of paphaghone cam on  
 that slewe many grekes and by force made them to Re- 25  
 cule / Menesteus Iusted agaynst polidamas / And bete  
 hym ryght fierfly / And ran vpon hym wyth his swerde  
 And had taken or slayn hym ne had the kynge phylo-  
 menus deliueryd hym fro his handes / Ajax made this  
 day meruaylles of Armes thus vnarmed as he was . 30  
 And slewe many troians / And was not yet hurte In

the ende he smote in amonge them of perfe that Parys  
ladde and flewe many of them and made hem to torne  
to flight / Whan parys sawe his peple thus slayn / He  
shotte to ayax an arowe enuened and raught hym  
5 betwene the racke and the sides And ayax anone felte  
that he was hurte to the deth And he thought he wolde  
not dye / tyll he had auengid hym on hym that had slayn  
hym And dyde so moche that he fonde parys / and sayd  
to hym / thou haste slayn me wyth thyn arowe / But to  
10 fore that I dye I shall flee the / And also by the and  
for thy cause ben many noble men slayn / And than gaf  
hym so grete a strook that he cutte a two his visage so  
depe that he fyll doun dede / to the erthe And ayax fyll  
doun after hym The troians toke the body of parys with  
15 wepyng teres / and bare hit vnto the cyte / and they were  
folowed vnto the gates / The next nyght folowyng .  
Agamenon made the ooste to aproche ner to the cyte  
And there pyght her tentes And the troians kepte their  
wallys day and nyght / Than had the troians no more  
20 esperance ne hope of theyr lyues / whan they sawe that  
alle the fones of kynge pryant were dede And ther is no  
tonge that can expresse the lamentacions that the kynge  
pryant made and his wyf and his daughters / And the  
quene helayne for þ<sup>e</sup> deth of parys / And aboue alle other  
25 helayne made the moste gretteft sorowe The kynge dyde  
do burye parys in a right riche sepulture And sette hit in  
the temple of Iuno honourably &c .

¶ How the quene panthafile cam from Amazonne with  
a thousand maydens to the focoure of troye / And how  
30 she bare her vayllyantly / And flewe many grekis / And  
after was she slayn by pyrrus the sone of Achilles .

**T**Han two monethis duryng hoole / the yates of  
troye were not opend . and the troians dide no  
thyngge but goo in the cyte and lamented and  
forowed . And the kynge Agamenon sente ofte tymes  
vnto the kynge pryant that he shold sende his men to 5  
batayll . But the kynge pryant doubtyng his destruccōn  
wold not do hit for as moche as he abood the focours  
of the quene of Amafone / that was than on the way  
for to come vnto the focours of kynge pryant / Ama-  
zoūe is a prouynce / where ne dwellyd than but wo- 10  
men with oute men . And they were enduced to warre  
and to fyght . They had nyghe their contre an ysle where  
the men dwellid . And they were accustomed thre tymes  
in the yere to go thether / In Appryll . maye and Iuyn  
vnto the men for to haue theyr companye / And after 15  
they retorned in to amazonne / And they that were en-  
fayanted & were with chylde / yf they bare sones / they  
gaf hem sowke certayn tyme / and after sente hem to the  
faders / And yf hit was a doughter / they helde hit by them  
And dide do brenne of the right pappefor to bere þ<sup>r</sup> better 20  
the spere / and taught her the feet of armes . Of this pro-  
uynce than was lady & quene a moche noble virgyne /  
and a strong fightar that had to name panthasilee / And  
she louyd moche hector for his good renōmee / Whan she  
knewe that þ<sup>r</sup> grekes had assaillid troyes with so grete 25  
strength / she wente theder for to focour hit with a thou-  
sand vyrgynes for the loue of hector / And whan she  
was comen & knewe that he was ded she made grete so-  
rowe / and praid to the kyng pryant that he wold late  
her yssue out to the bataill ayenst the grekes / and þ<sup>r</sup> she 30  
myght shewe to hem how her maydens coude bere armes .

**A**T the prayer of panthafilee on the morn by ty-  
 mes was the gate open And yffued oute the  
 kyng philemen<sup>9</sup> with all them of paphaghone  
 Eneas & polidamas with all their peple / the quene pan-  
 5 thafile wyth all her maydens / The grekes were anone  
 reddy and began the batayll harde & sharpe / menefteus  
 adreffid hym to panthafile / and fhe to hym and anon  
 fhe fmote menefteus to the ground and toke hys horfe  
 and gaf hym to one of her maydens . Than cam dyome-  
 10 des ayenft her / and fhe receyuyd hym gladly . and fmote  
 hym fo ftrongly that he was torned vp fo doun fro his  
 hors / And fhe toke fro dyomedes his fhelde fro hys  
 necke / and delyueryd hit to one of her maydens / whan  
 thelamon fawe that fhe dide fuche appertyfes of armes  
 15 He adreffid hym ayenft her / and fhe ayenft hym . And  
 thelamon was born doun to the ground / and had ladde  
 hym in to the cyte / but that diomedes cam to his refcows  
 with grete deffence And than fhe efcryed her maydens .  
 that fmote in amonge the grekes / by fuche fierte and yre  
 20 that fhe & they torned hem into flight / And they chaffed  
 hem fleyng & betyng hem vnto their tentes / and had flayn  
 hem all yf diomedes had not fo gretly refifted hem / that  
 mayntened the ftowr vnto the nyght þ<sup>t</sup> departed them  
 And the quene panthafilee retorned in to the cyte wyth  
 25 grete glorye / where the kyng pryant refceyuyd her with  
 grete Ioye / and gaf her many fayr Iewellis & ryche / And  
 hym femed well that fhe fhould avenge hym of his fo-  
 rowes / They fought thus many tymes after / and fo  
 longe that menelaus retorned fro the kyng nycomedes  
 30 And brought in to the oofte neptolonyus the fone of  
 achilles otherwyfe named Pyrrus .

**T**Hys Pirrus was receyuyd with grete glorye  
of alle the baroūs of the ooste and aboue alle  
other / the myrundoūes were passyng Ioyous  
and helde hym for their lord . Than was delyueryd to  
pirrus all the conduyte of the men of armes / And they 5  
made hym knyght by the hande of the noble thelamon  
that prayd to the goddes to gyue hym strength & corage  
in gyrdyng of his swerd / and that they wold gyue  
hym : vyctorye and honour for to avenge the deth of his  
fader / And two other prynces sette on the sporres of 10  
golde . And the kynge Agamenon gaf to hym alle the  
armes of Achilles his fader / and all hys other baghes  
and Jewellis . And for this newe knyght and sette of  
the Chyualerye the grekes maad many dayes grete  
gladnesse and Ioye &c . 15

**A**.Fter these thynges cam the day of fyghtyng &  
the bataylles were redy on that one side and on  
that other / Tho began the batayll ryght hard.  
Pirrus that was armed with the propre armes of his  
fader recountrid polidamas in his comyng & had slayn 20  
hym wyth the grete strokes of his swerd that he gaf to  
hym . But the kynge philemenis cam vpon & delyueryd  
hym / And than pirrus smote fro his hors philemenis / and  
had lad hym away / ne had they of paphaghone rescow-  
ed hym with grete trauayll / Amonge these thynges the 25  
quene pantafilee entred in to the bataill with her may-  
dens and smote in amonge the myrundoūes / and slewe  
many of them . There cam vpon the kynge thelamon that  
smote to the ground the quene pantafilee / and she gaf  
hym so grete a strook with her swerd þ<sup>t</sup> she bete hym down 30  
to þ<sup>e</sup> erthe in like wise / And than her maydens releuyd her



and sette her agayn on her horfe / and she smote in among  
the myrondones / that helde the kynge phylomenis in  
grete dangier / and many she slewe and hurted of hem  
Whan Pyrrus sawe that his men were so euill entre-  
5 tyd . He escryed to hem and sayd that they oughte to  
haue grete shame that suffryd hem to be vaynquysshid  
by women . And then he lefte the kynge phylemenis .  
for to deffende his men ayenst the mayde / Than adressid  
the quene panthasilee nyghe to pyrrus / and reproched  
10 hym of that his fader had slayn hector by trayson / and  
that all the world ought to renne vpon hym / Pyrrus  
that had so grete forowe at thys wordes adressid hym  
ayenst her / And anone she bare hym down to the erthe  
And than anone he releuyd hym & assayllid panthasile  
15 with hys swerd / And she hym by grete strenght / And  
than was pyrrus remounted by the ayde of his myron-  
doūes / Than cam to the batayll Agamenon . Dyomedes  
menelaus & menesteus þ<sup>e</sup> duc of Atthenes with all their  
peple / And so dyde all the other prynces and barons .

20 **A** Monge these thynges the kynge phylomenis  
was delyuered of the myrondones and gaf grete  
thankyngys vnto the quene panthasilee / and  
sayd / had not she haue ben / he had ben slayn . Than cam  
to the batayll alle the troians / Tho began the showre  
25 sharpe and mortall / There recontrid Pirrus Glacon  
the sone of Anthenor and broder of Polidamas of an  
other moder / And gaf hym so grete a stroke that he  
slewe hym and fylle down ded to the erthe / Than adref-  
sid panthasilee vnto pyrrus / and he to her / And bete  
30 doun eche other to the erthe / But they remoūtyd anone

And began the medle to geder agayn . Than cam vpon  
so moche peple of bothe partyes that they were depar-  
tyd . Polidamas for to avenge the deth of his brother  
flewe that day many grekes and hurte them . And dide  
so moche in armes he and panthasilee that they put the 5  
grekes to flyght . Than cam to the rescows pirrus / di-  
omedes and thelamon / and maad them that fledde to  
abyde and susteyne the stour / And so they dide vnto the  
nyght / that eche man wente in to hys place / They  
faught thus euery day a moneth longe / in whiche tyme 10  
were slayn more than ten thousand fyghtyng men of  
bothe partyes / And panthasilee loste many of her may-  
dens / And whan they had restyd a moneth / they began  
the batayll ryght sharpe .

**A**T this affamble cam one ayenst an other of pir- 15  
rus and panthasilee / and brake theyr speres  
with oute fallyng / but pyrrus was fore hurte  
And the tronchon of her spere abode wyth in his body/  
wherfore the crye arose gretly amonge the grekes / And  
ran vpon panthasilee with grete strengthe / and brake 20  
þ<sup>r</sup> lase of her helme And than pirrus þ<sup>r</sup> in his grete furour  
toke none hede to his wounde ne fette not therby that  
he had the tronchon in his body / but assayllid strongly  
panthasilee / that had tho her helme broken : And she  
wende to haue smyten hym / but pirrus araught her first 25  
And gaf her so grete a stroke wyth hys swerde / that  
he cutte her Arme of by the body / wherof the sayd  
panthasilee fyll down dede / to the erthe . And pirrus that  
was not yet content / smote þ<sup>r</sup> body & cuttid in two peces  
And anon after for the grete effusion of blood that ran 30  
fro his wounde / he fyll down as ded amonge his peple

And they toke hym vp and leyde vpon his shelde and  
bare hym in to hys tente / Than the maydens of pan-  
thasilee / for to avenge the deth of their quene smote in a-  
monge the myrondoūes by grete fureur / And slewe  
5 many and hurte but hit prouffited but lytill to the tro-  
ians / as they that were but a fewe ayenste a grete mul-  
titude of grekes . And so ther were slayn of them of troye  
that day in the batayll more than ten thousand men .  
And the other withdrewe hem in to the cyte for to saue  
10 hem self . And shette & clofid faste their gates / And had  
no more entencion to yssue oute to batayll ayenst theyr  
enemyes &c .

¶ How Anthenor and Eneas spack to geder amonge  
them for to delyuere the cyte vnto the grekes by trayson.  
15 And dyde hit vnder sымylacion of peas / and how the  
kyng pryant agayn saide hem with som of his bastardis  
by grete and rude wordes .

**T**He troians had moche grete sorowe whan they  
sawe hem in this myschef ffor they had no more  
20 hope to haue ony more socours from ony place /  
And they contended to no thyng but to kepe well their/  
cyte / and to garnyssh hem well wyth vytayll / ffor  
they fered ne dredde hem nought of ony assault / Amonge  
these thynges the grekes wold haue caste to the dogges  
25 the body of Panthasilee / for as moche as she hadd  
slayn so many noble men of grece / But Pyrrus agayn  
sayd hyt for the honour and worshyppe of nobleffe .  
And fynably they concluded that they caste hit in a stagne  
that was nyghe the cyte / Anchyses wyth hys sone  
30 eneas / and Anthenor with his sone polidamas wente  
to counceill to gyder for to aduyse them / how they myght

haue theyr lyues fauyd ayenst the grekes / and theyr  
 goodes / And rather than fayle hereof they wold betraye  
 the cyte : Than they concluded that they shold speke to  
 kynge pryant . And counseyllle hym to take a peas  
 and a poyntement wyth the grekes / In restoryng of 5  
 helayne to her husbond and the dōmage that parys dide  
 in the yle of cetharys . O yf the kynge pryant had ben  
 so happy to haue doon this and had plesid the grekes at  
 the begynnyng he had fauyd his lyf and hys wyues .  
 And the lyf of all hys children . and had fauyd all the 10  
 cyte and cytezeyns . And had eschewid all the myf-  
 chyeyus that cam to them afterward / Therfore saie men  
 in a prouerbe / that the concordes or peas sone taken  
 ben good . for hit is an hard thyng for to repease suche  
 maner domages to hym þ<sup>t</sup> hath avauntage of the warre 15  
 ffor wyth grete payne wold the grekes haue ben con-  
 tent that were tho at their aboue wyth these offres / for  
 as moche as they had suffred so many hurtes and do-  
 mages tofore troye / ffor them semed well that they  
 were at the poynt for to destroye the cyte and all the In- 20  
 habytaūtes / But whan the forsayd named traytours  
 spake not of this mater / but to thende that vnder the co-  
 lour of peas they myght betraye the cyte / yf other wyse  
 they myght not saue theyr lyues .

**T**Han they wente hem to fore the kynge pryant 25  
 And Amphymacus one of his bastard sones  
 And spake there of thys purpose tofore many  
 noble men of the cyte / And anōn as the kynge pryant  
 hadd herde hem speke of purchasyng of peas wyth the  
 grekes . He thought that they sayd thys thyng by 30  
 grete felonye And began to syghe / and said to them that

he wold be aduyfed and take counceyll fyrste . And  
than they sayd to hym thus / yf thou wolte here oure  
counceyll vpon thys thyng / take hede what we shall  
faye / And yf hit plese the not / vse the counceyll of other  
5 The kynge sayd that he wold well here theyr coun-  
ceyll / and wold wete what semed hem good And  
sayd to them / what semeth yow good . Than spack  
anthenor sayng / Kynge ye may not diffymyle but that  
ye and yowres ben envoluped wyth youre enemyes /  
10 And ben here by your cyte desyryng your deth and dest-  
ruccion / and ye may not yssue out . And they ben moo  
than fyfty kynges that desire no thyng but to destroye  
this cyte & yow and all them that dwelle therein / And  
ye may no more resiste them / and ye dar no more open  
15 your gates / and thus we late vs than be enclofid here in  
Mē ought of two euyl thynges chese the lasse ylle /  
And therefore for to haue peas wyth the grekes yf ye  
feme good / We shall rendre Helayne to menelaus her  
husbond fyn that parys is ded . And also restorre the  
20 dōmage that parys dyde to them in grece rather than we  
shold suffre oure self to be put to deth &c .

**A**T these wordes arose vp Amphymacus one of  
the bastard sones of kynge pryant / And re-  
prouyd strongly the wordes of anthenor / and  
25 sayd to hym / What truste and hope may my lorde my  
fader and we haue in the / fyn that thou oughtest to  
haue ferme corage vnto hym and thys cyte / And we  
see the thus recreaunt that oughtest to lyue and dye  
wyth vs / And thou counceyllest now to make peas  
30 wyth the grekes to oure grete dishonoure and shame .

Trewly to fore that the kynge shall do that / ther shall  
 dye twenty thousand men / that thyng that thou coun-  
 ceyllest the kynge cometh of trayson / Many other In-  
 iuryous wordes sayd Amphymacus to Anthenor .  
 And Eneas began to refrayne hym fayng / ye knowe 5  
 well that we may not from hens forth goo to batayll  
 ayenst the grekes . And we dare no more open oure ga-  
 tes / Wherefore hit behoueth vs to fynde maner to haue  
 peas wyth hem . Than the kynge pryant with grete yre  
 sayd to Anthenor and to Eneas . Haue ye not shame 10  
 in your self for to speke so to me / ye do me dye for so-  
 rowe / ffor all that I haue doon yet hetherto / I haue dōn  
 hyt by your counceyll / Anthenor whan thou retornest  
 fro grece where I had sente the for to requyre exyone  
 my suster / counceylllest thou not me that I shold sende 15  
 parys in to grece for to endamage the grekes / and I had  
 neuer taken vpon me for to haue meuyd warre ayenst  
 them . ne hadd the false counceyll haue ben . whyche  
 meuyd me to sende thether / And thou Eneas alas whan  
 I sente the wyth parys in to grece : Were not thou pryn- 20  
 cypall of the counceyll that parys shold rauyshe He-  
 layne and brynge her in to this royame : And thou heel-  
 pest therto wyth thy persone . And yf thou woldest  
 haue ben contrarye therto and haue lettyd hit . Helayne  
 had neuer seen the walles of troye . And now after 25  
 thys that they haue slayn all my Chyldren and haue  
 doon so moche damage and hurte : ye counceyll me a-  
 yenst honour to make peas wyth the grekes that haue  
 me so cruelly destroyed . Certes your counceyll synyf-  
 fith my lyf with grete sorowe and dishonour &c . 30

**O**.F these wordes was Eneas strongly angry  
and wrothe / And answerd to the kynge wor-  
des sharpe and poynant ynowhe / And depar-  
ted he and anthenor from the kynge evyll contente .  
5 And whan they were goon the kynge began to wepe  
as he that dredde that they shold delyuere the cyte in the  
handes of the grekes / whyche shold flee hym Incon-  
tynent . Than he thoughte that he wold doo hem dye  
fyrste / And callyd to hym Amphymacus and sayd to  
10 hym . Ryght dere sone I am thy fader / We ought to sup-  
porte eche other / vnto the deth / I knowe certainly  
that Anthenor and Eneas contenden for to flee vs by  
the grekes and to delyuere them this cyte / And therefore  
hyt shold not be ylle doon to make them falle in to the  
15 pytte that they haue maad redy / to fore they doo ony  
fuche evyll / And I shall telle the in what manere / to  
morne at even they shall come to counceyll . thou shalt  
be enbuffhyd here wyth Inne / and shalt haue wyth  
the good knyghtes / and whan they shall be comen / thou  
20 shalt renne vpon hem and flee hem . Amphymacus an-  
werd vnto hym and sayd that he wold so doo wyth  
a good wylle / And how well ther were no moo at  
thys counceyll but the kynge and hys sone / yet ther is  
no thyng so secrete but otherwhile it is knowen . Ene-  
25 as knewe well the trouthe of thys thyng / And hyt  
was not knowen by whome he knewe hyt . And  
anone he and Anthenor and some other of theyr con-  
plices spack furth of the trayson of the cyte / And there  
they swore eche to other / And than they sayd yf they  
30 wente more to counceyll to the kynge / that they wold  
goo wyth grete companye of men of armes / ffor eneas

was of the moſte noble of troye and moſte ryche nexte  
the kynge / and beſte of lynage . And myght well  
compare to the kynge . And anthenor was alſo ryche  
and puyſſant of frendes in the cyte . And theyr trayſon  
was ſuche that they wold delyuere the cyte in the han- 5  
des of their enemyes / But that they and alle they of  
their lignage ſholde haue theyr lyues and theyr goodes  
ſauyd . and herof they toke good ſewerte of the grekes /

**A** Monge theſe thynges the kynge pryant ſente  
for anthenor and eneaſ to come to counceyll . 10  
for to performe that thyng that he had purpo-  
ſid . But they cam with a grete companye of men of ar-  
mes . And therefore the kynge ſente to Amphymacus  
that he ſhold leue hys empryſe : The daye folowyng  
the kynge ſente for alle the troians to counceyll . And 15  
whan they were aſſemblid to fore hym : Eneaſ ſtode  
vp and amoneſted all them to make peas with the gre-  
kes / to whom all other accorded ſaue the kynge / and  
than ſaid to hym eneaſ / Syre kynge werfore conſenteſt  
not thou with the other / for will thou or will thou not 20  
We ſhall trete for the peas / and ſhall make hyt magre  
the / Whan the kynge ſawe that his contradiccōn myght  
no thyng e auaylle / He had leuer conſente hym with the  
other / than for to be the cauſe of his deſtruccōn . And than  
ſaid he to eneaſ / late hit be made as ye ſhall thynke that 25  
hit may be moſt expedient to the peas . and I ſhall holde  
hit agreable . Than by þ<sup>e</sup> counceyll of them all / Anthenor  
was choſen for to goo to the grekes and trete for the  
peas . And than the troians toke braunches of palme  
in ſyngne of peas . And wente vpon the walles of the 30  
cyte and ſhewid the ſyngne vnto the grekes the whiche



shewyd well that they wolde entende to the peas .  
And than was Anthenor aualed fro the wallis and  
late doun / and was presented to the kyng agamenon .  
And the kyng agamenon cōmyfid all the werke to the  
5 kyng of Crete . dyomedes . and vlixes / And that all  
thoo thynges that these thre kynges shold besoyne with  
anthenor / Alle the grekes promyfid to holde hyt agre-  
able / and sware hyt vpon theyr lawe &c .

10 **W**Han they were all foure assembled / Anthenor  
replenesshid wyth barate promyfed to them to  
delyuere the cyte by trayson / for to doo with hit  
their wylle and playfir / Saue that they wold assure  
to hym and eneas and to theyr kynnyfmen and paren-  
tele / and all them that they wold chese / And that ene-  
15 as shold haue all his possessions with oute ony losse .  
These thre kynges of grece swore to anthenor that thus  
they wold doo and holde / Than sayd one to that other  
that this thyng muste be secrete / vnto the tyme hyt be  
brought aboute / An to thende for to kepe this trayson  
20 more secrete . Anthenor prayd to the grekes / that they  
wold delyuere to hym the kyng cassilus that was a  
moche auncyent man for to goo wyth hym to troye to  
thentente that he myght be the better beleuyd / and that  
he knewe the wyll of the troians / that is to wete yf  
25 they wold haue peas with the grekes / And also for to  
faye to them the wyll and desyre of the grekes / And  
than demanded anthenor the body of panthafile / whiche  
the grekes agreed to hym gladly .

30 **A**.Fter these thynges Anthenor and the kyng  
Cassilyus entryd in to the cyte / And dyde hyt  
to be knowen to the kyng their comyng / On the

morn be tymes / the kynge pryant assemblid alle the  
troians for to here the answer of Anthenor / the whiche  
sayd to the kynge otherwyse than he had founden / ma-  
kyng a longe sermone for to couere wyth hys felonnye  
where he spack longe of the puyffance of the grekes & 5  
of theyr trouthe in theyr promesses / And how they  
had holden the tryews that they had maad lyyng to  
fore the Cyte . And had ben faythfully gouerned with  
oute brekyng of them . And after spake he of the fle-  
blenes of the troians and of the grete daungers that 10  
they were Inne . And in thys concluded that forthon  
hit were prouffitable to seke peas and that they come  
therto . And sayd hyt coude not be / but yf they gaf a  
grete quantyte of gold and syluer vnto the grekes for  
to restore to them the grete damages and losses that they 15  
hadd in the warre / And after auyfed the kynge and  
the other eche in hym self / for to employe hym in thys  
thyng wyth oute ony sparynge / And for as moche  
sayd Anthenor as I can not knowe at thys tyme alle  
theyr wyll / I wolde that ye wold late Eneas goo 20  
wyth me vnto them for to knowe better theyr wyll  
and to thende that they beleuyd vs better / Every man  
alowed the wordes of Anthenor . And than wente he  
and Eneas vnto the grekes / and wyth hem the kynge  
Cassilyus . 25

**W**Han the counceyll was fynnysshyd and alle  
doon / the kynge Pryant entryd in to hys cham-  
bre and began to wepe right strongly as he that  
apperceyuyd well the trayson / And playned fore  
the deth of hys soles and also the grete damage that he 30  
bare / And yet that worste is that he muste bye hys

peas of them that haue doon to hym all this dōmage and  
hurte / and to gyue to them alle the trefour that he had  
in longe tyme gadryd to gyder / And to become poure  
in his olde auntyent dayes / And yet he is not fewre of  
5 his lyf / and muste nedes do the wyll of them that shall  
betraye hym . On that other fyde whan helayne knewe  
that Anthenor shold goo to the grekes / she prayd hym  
right effectuously that he wold make her peas ayenst  
menelaus her husbond and that he wold haue pyte on  
10 her / And he promysid to her that he wold do his power

**W**Han Eneas and Anthenor were comen in to  
the oofte of the grekes they treted of theyr tray-  
son / wyth the thre kynges that the grekes hadd  
cōmyfyd / and there they maad the peas for helayne  
15 and toke good fewerte / After theyr parlament the gre-  
kes ordeyned that Dyomedes and Vlixes shold goo  
with them to troye / And they wente with them . Ther  
was grete Ioye whan they herde of theyr comyng in to  
theyr cyte / wenyng to the troians to haue had the peas  
20 that they had so moche desyred . On the morn erly by  
the comandement of the kyng pryant alle the troians  
were affembled at hys palays / And than spake vlix-  
es that sayd that the grekes demanded two thynges  
That is to wete restytucion of theyr dōmages / & grete  
25 quantyte of gold and fyluer / And also they demanded  
that Amphymacus shold be bannysshid for ever oute  
of the cyte of troye / wyth oute ony truste euer to come  
in a gayn / Thys purchasfyd Anthenor for Amphyma-  
cus for as moche as he had contraryed hym afore .

O how hit is grete paryll to speke lyghtly in tyme of parturbacion and fedicion . Than as they were alle assembled in parlament / they herde sodeynly a meruaylous crye / and than dyomedes and vlixes hadd grete drede that the peple wold haue slayn them . And the  
5 other said that they wold take these two kynges in the stede of Amphymacus to the ende that he shold not be bannysshid . And alleway ther coude no man knowe ne wete from whens this noyse cam ne wherfore / And therefore they departid and euery man wente in to hys  
10 place &c : .

**T**Han Anthenor drewe a parte dyomedes and vlixes for to speke of their felonnye / Than sayd to hym vlixes wherfore taryest thou so longe & delayest to doo that thou hast promysed . Anthenor answered and sayd the goddes knowe that Eneas and I  
15 attende to none other thyng / but to doo that we haue promysid to yow . But ther is a meruayllous thyng that enpessheth vs / and I shall saye yow / what hit is Certayn whan the kyng ylyon souided fyrst the palays  
20 of ylion in this cyte / he establisshid in the name of pallas a grete temple in this cyte . And whan hit was all redy and made saue the tour a meruayllous thyng descendid fro the heuen . And that stak in the walle of the temple wyth in the grete Awter / And hyt hath ben there tyll  
25 thys tyme / And none may bere hit away saue they that kepe hyt / The matere is of tree or of woode / but ther is no man that knoweth of what woode ne how hit is so maad But the goddesse Pallas that sente hyt theder gaf vnto thys thyng a grete vertue / that is this  
30 That as longe as this sayd thyng shall be with Inne

the temple or wythin the cyte wythin the wallis / the  
troians may not lese theyr cyte ne the kynges ne the ey-  
res / And this is the thyng that holdeth the troians in  
fewerte / And therefore they may the better kepe hyt /  
5 and this thyng hath to name palladyum / for as moche  
as the goddeffe pallas sente hit / Than sayd dyomedes  
yf this thyng be of fuche vertue as thou sayst / we lose  
oure payne . Than sayd Anthenor that they ought no  
thyng to esmaye them / for he and eneus attended for to  
10 fulfyll the promesse / ffor I haue but late spoken to the  
preeft that kepeth hit / to thende that he delyuer hyt by  
stelthe . And I haue verray truste that he shall delyuere  
hit to me for a grete sōme of gold that I haue promysid  
hym . And affone as I shall haue hyt / I shall sende hit  
15 to yow oute of the cyte / and than we shall performe  
that thyng that we haue promysid to yow . And er ye  
goo hens for to couere and hyde oure werke I shall goo  
vnto the kyng pryant and shall do hym to vnderstande  
that I haue spoke longe to yow for to knowe what  
20 quantyte of gold ye demande / and hyt was so doon as  
anthenor had purposid .

¶ How the trayttre Anthenor bought of the preeft the  
palladyum / and gaf hyt to Vlixes and of the horse of  
brasse that was by the grekes brought to the temple  
25 of Pallas beyng full of men of armes / And how the  
cyte of Troye was taken and brente And the kyng  
pryant slayn &c . .

W<sup>H</sup>an Dyomedes and vlixes were retorned in to  
their oost . Anthenor wente hym vnto the kyng

pryant and said to hym that he shold assemble all his  
 folk to counceyll . And whan they were alle comen .  
 Anthenor sayd to hem that for to come to þ<sup>e</sup> peas of the  
 grekes they muste nedes paye twenty thousand marc  
 of gold and of good poys / and as moche of syluer / 5  
 And also an honderd thousand quarters of whete .  
 And this muste be maad redy with in certayn terme .  
 And than whan they haue this / they shall sette fewrte  
 to holde the peas wyth out ony frawde or malengyne .  
 There it was ordeyned how this some shold be leueyed 10  
 and whylis they were besy ther abowtes . Anthenor  
 wente to the preest þ<sup>e</sup> kepte the palladyum / the whiche  
 preest had to name Thoant / and bare to hym a grete  
 quantite of gold . And there were they two at counceill  
 Anthenor sayd to hym that he shold take this some of 15  
 gold . wherof he shold be ryche all hys lyf / and that  
 he shold gyue to hym the palladyum / and that no man  
 shold knowe therof / ffor I haue . sayd he . grete fere and  
 as moche drede as thou . that ony man shold knowe  
 therof . And I shall sende hit to vlixes / and he shall bere 20  
 the blame vpon hym . and euery man shall saye that  
 vlixes shall haue stolen hyt / and we shall be quyte  
 therof bothe two &c .

**T**Hoant the preest resisted longe to the wordes of  
 Anthenor / but in the ende for couetyse of the 25  
 grete some of gold that anthenor gaf to hym .  
 He consentyd that he shold take the palladyum and  
 bere hyt away . Than Anthenor toke hyt anone and  
 sente hyt vnto vlixes / the same nyght / And after the  
 voys ranne amonge the peple that vlixes by his subtilite 30  
 had taken and born awaye the palladyum out of troye

O what trayfon was thys of a preeft / that louyd better for covetyse to betraye his cyte / than to leue the gold that was gyuen hym . Certes hyt is a foule vyce in a preeft the synne of couetyse / But fewe haue ben to fore  
5 thys tyme / and fewe ben yet but yf they ben attaynte therwyth / wherof hyt is grete pyte / syn hyt is so that auaryce is moder of all vyces / Whilis that the troians gadryd to gyder their gold and fyluer and put hyt in the temple of mynerve to kepe vnto the tyme that hyt  
10 was alle assemblid . Hit playfid them to offre & make sacrefyse to theyr god Appolyn / And whan they hadd slayn many bestes for their sacrefyse and had put them vpon the Awter / And hadd sette fyre on them for to brenne them / Hit happend that ther cam there two mer-  
15 uayllis / the fyrste was that the fyre wold not alyghte ne brenne/for they began to make the fyre more than ten tymes / And alway hyt quenched and myght neuer brenne the sacrefyse . The seconde myracle or meruaylle was whan they had appoynted the entraylles of the  
20 bestes for theyr sacrefyse / A grete Eygle descended fro the ayer cryyng gretly and toke wyth his feet the said entraylles and bare hem in to the shyppes of the grekes .

25 **O**.F these two thinges were the troians fore abashid & esmayed / And said that the goddes were wroth wyth hem . And than they demanded of cassandra / what these thinges signefied / and she sayd to them / that the god appolyn was wroth with hem for theffusion of the blood of Achylles that was shedde wherwith his temple was defowlid & violid / this is þ<sup>e</sup>  
30 firste / & ye muste go secche fyre at the sepulture of achilles

And lichte your sacrefyce ther with / and than hit shal  
 quenche no more / And they dide so / and the sacrefyce  
 brente cleer / And for the second myracle . she sayd to  
 hem that for certayn the trayson was maad of the cyte  
 wyth the grekes . What the grekes herde speke of these  
 myracles . they demaüded of Calcas what hyt signe- 5  
 fyed . And he sayd to hem that the tradicion of the cyte  
 shold come shortly . Amonge these thynges Calcas  
 and Crifis the preest counceillyd the grekes / that they  
 shold make a grete hors of brasse . And that muste be 10  
 as grete as myght holde with in hit a thousand knygh-  
 tes armed . And they sayd to them that hyt was the  
 playfir of the goddes . This hors made a passyng wyse  
 mayster as Apius was . Whos name was synon / and  
 he maad hyt so subtylly that wyth oute forth no man 15  
 coude parceyue ne see entree ne yssue . But wythin hyt  
 apperyd to them that were clofid ther in for to yssue  
 whan they wold &c .

**W**Han the hors was full maad . and the thou-  
 sand knyghtes therin by the counseyll of Cry- 20  
 sis / they prayed the kyng pryant that he wold  
 suffre thys hors entre in to the cyte : and that hit myght  
 be sette in the temple of Pallas / for as moche as they  
 sayd that they had maad hyt in the honour of Pallas  
 for a vowe that they had maad for restytucion of the 25  
 Palladyum that they hadd doon be taken oute of the  
 same temple &c .

**A**Monge these thynges the prynces that were yet  
 in troye / Whan they sawe that the kyng had so  
 fowle and shamefully trayted with the grekes 30



they wente oute of troye and toke theyr men with them  
 And the kyng philemenus ladde no moo with hym but  
 two honderd and fyfty men and sixty maydens of ama-  
 zone that were lefte of a thousand that cam wyth the  
 5 quene panthafile And caryed the bodye of her with hem  
 And rood so moche that they cam vnto theyr contre .  
 Than cam the day that the grekes shold fwere the peas  
 faynedly vpon the playn felde vpon the fayntuaries .  
 The kyng pryant yffued out of the cyte and his peple  
 10 And sware there eche partye to holde the peas fermly  
 fro than forthon / And dyomedes swore fyrste for the  
 grekes / after whan they had broken the peas that they  
 had treatid with Anthenor of that thyng that they made  
 after / And therefore they mayntene that they were not  
 15 forsworne by that colour / And therefore mē sayth in a  
 proverbe / he that fwerith by cawtele or malicyously /  
 he by malice forswerith hym self / After diomedes sware  
 in lyke wyse all the kynges and prynces of grece . And  
 than the kyng pryant and the troians swore in good  
 20 fayth as they that knewe no thyng of the grete trayson  
 And after theyr othes thus maad / The kyng pryant  
 delyueryd helayne to menelaus her husbond / and pra-  
 yd hym and other kynges and prynces of grece that  
 they wold pardoūe helayne wyth oute suffryng to be  
 25 doon to her ony Iniurye or hurte / And they promysid  
 hym faynedly that they wold do to her no wronge .

**T**Han prayd the grekes that they myghte sette  
 the hors of brasse wyth in the temple of pallas /  
 ffor the restytucion of palladyum / to thende that  
 30 the goddesse Pallas myght be to them aggreate In their

retourne . And as the kynge pryant answerd not ther-  
to . Eneas and Anthenor sayd to hym that hit shold  
be well doon / And that hit shold be honour to the cy-  
te / how be hyt the kynge pryant accorded hyt wyth  
euyll wyll / Than the grekes receyuyd the gold and 5  
siluer & the whete / that was promysid to them . And  
fente hyt and putte hit in to their shyppis / After these  
thynges they wente all in maner of proceffion and in  
deuocyon wyth theyr prestis . And began with strength  
of cordes to drawe the horse of brasse vnto tofore the ga- 10  
te of the cyte / And for as moche as by the gate hyt  
myght not entre in to the cyte / hit was so grete / ther-  
fore they brake the walle of the cyte in lengthe and  
heyght in fuche wyse as hyt entryd with in the town  
And the troians receyuyd hyt wyth grete Ioye . But 15  
the custome of fortune is fuche that grete Ioye endeth in  
tristres and in forowe : The troians maad Ioye of this  
hors / wherin was clofid theyr deth . and knewe no-  
thyng of hyt : In this hors was a subtill man named  
synon that bare the keyes of the horse for to opene hyt . 20  
Whan the troians were a slepe and restyd hem in the  
nyght . And assone as they yffued out of the horse / they  
gaf a token of fyre to them that were in the felde to the  
ende that they shold come in to the cyte for to putte hyt  
alle to destruccion . 25

**T**He same day the grekes fayned to goo vn-  
to Thenadon : And sayd that they wolde ref-  
seyve Helayne and sette her in faeste / be cause  
that the peple shold not renne vpon her for the grete  
evyllys and hurtes that were fallen for her . And 30  
thus they departyd from the porte of troyes wyth

her saylles drawn vp / and cam to fore the sonne go-  
yng doun to thenedon . Than had the troians grete Ioye  
whan they sawe the grekes departe / And they sowed  
that euenyng wyth grete gladnes / And the grekes as  
5 sone as they were come to thenedon / they armed them  
in the euenyng / and wente hem styly and pryuely  
toward troye / whan the troians had well sowed  
they wente to bedde for to slepe / than synon opened the  
hors and wente oute and lyghte his fyre and shewyd  
10 hit to them that were with oute / And anone with oute  
delaye / they that were in a wayte entryd in to the cyte  
by the gate that was broken for to brynge in the hors  
of brasse . And the thousand knyghtes yssued out / and  
where they fond þ<sup>e</sup> troians they slewe hem in their how-  
15 fis / where they slepte as they that thought on no thinge.

**T**Hus entrid the grekes in to the cyte And slewe  
men and women and chyldren wyth oute spa-  
ryng of ony and toke all that they fonde in their  
howses / And slewe so many that er hyt was daye  
20 they had slayn moo than twenty thousand / they pyl-  
led and robbed the temples / the crye aroose moche hor-  
ryble of them that they slewe / Whan the kynge pryant  
herde the crye / he knewe anone that eneas and anthenor  
had betrayed hym he aroose anone hastely and wente  
25 hym in to hys temple of Appolyn that was wythin  
hys palays / as he that had no more esperance ne hope  
of hys lyf / And knelid to fore the hyghe awter . Caf-  
fandra fledde on that other fyde as one that had ben oute  
of her witte in to the temple of mynerue / wepyng and  
30 demenyng grete sorowe . And the other noble women  
aboud styll in the palays in wepynges and in teeris .

**W**han hyt cam on themorn the grekes by the con-  
 duyte of Eneas and of Anthenor that were  
 open traytours vnto theyr Cyte and also to  
 theyr kynge and lord . cam and entrid in to the palays  
 of ylyon where they fonde no deffence and put to deth 5  
 all them that they fonde . Than pyrrus entryd in to the  
 temple of Appolyne and fonde there the kynge pryant  
 abidyng his deth / Than he ran vpon hym with a nakyd  
 fwerd seeyng Eneas and Anthenor that guyded hym  
 He flewe there the kynge pryant tofore the hyghe aw- 10  
 ter / whiche was all bebledd of his blood . The quene  
 hecuba and polixene fledde and wyfte neuer whyder  
 to goo / and happend that she mette with Eneas . And  
 than sayd hecuba to hym in a grete fureur Ha A felon  
 trayttre / fro whens is comen to the so grete cruelte / that 15  
 thou hast brought with the / them that haue slayn the  
 kynge pryant / that hath doon to the so moche good  
 and hath sette the in magnyfycence : and also hast be-  
 trayed the contre where thou were born / and the Cyte  
 that thou oughtest to kepe At the left late hit suffise the 20  
 And refrayne the now of thy corage : and haue pyte  
 of thys vnhappy polixene / to thende that amonge so  
 many euyllis as thou hafte done : thou mayst haue grace  
 to haue doon one good dede as for to faue her fro deth er  
 the grekes flee her / Eneas meuyd with pyte reffeyuyd 25  
 polixene in hys garde and putte her in a secrete place.

**A**Monge these thynges the kynge thelamon sette  
 in the temple of mynerue in kepyng Andrometha  
 the wyf of hector and Cassandra whom he fonde there°

[leaf 333]

\* (Lors abastrent les gregois le noble palais) 667

ylion / And putte the fyre in the cyte on all partyes and  
brente all the noble cyte . Referuyd only the howfes of  
the trayttres whiche were kepte and referuyd / When  
the cyte of troye was all brente / the kynge agamenon  
5 affembrid all the moſte noble of grece in the temple of  
mynerue / And when they were alle affembrid / He  
requyred them of two thynges / One was that they  
ſhold holde her fayth and trouthe to the trayttres .  
And that other was that they ſhold take aduyſe by  
10 good manere for to departe the proye of the cyte / The  
anſwere was ſuche of the grekes that they wold holde  
her fayth to the trayttres as for the fyrſt poynte / and  
as to the ſecond / euery man ſhold brynge all the proye  
in comyn / And there to departe to eche man after hys  
15 meryte and deſerte / Than ſpake Thelamon and ſayd  
that mē ſhold brenne Helayne / for whome ſo moche  
hurte and euyll was comen / and that ſo many wor-  
thy kynges and prynces had deyd fore . And ther was  
a grete murmure here vpon / that with grete payne Aga-  
20 menon vlixes & menelaus myght faue her / But vlixes  
with his fayre langage ſaid to hem ſo moche of dyuerce  
thynges/that they were contente that helayne ſhold haue  
no harme/And than agamenon dide ſo moche to all the  
other that for his reward the doughter of kynge pryant  
25 caſſandra was deliuerid to hym / Whilis that the grekes  
helde yet her parlament/cam to them Eneas & Anthenor  
And aduerted hem how helenus had alway blamed  
the troians of thempryſe that they made ayenſt the gre-  
kes / And counceyllid them to put the body of Achilles  
30 in ſepulture whiche they wold haue gyuen to the houn-  
des / and praid hem therfore that they wold faue his ly

And hit was accorded and agreed to them . And than  
andrometha and helenus prayd for the two sonnes of  
hector / whiche were sau'd how well that pyrrus  
was ther agaynst and debated hit a lityll / but in the  
ende he agreed hyt : and so the Children were respited . 5

**A**.fter this fureur they ordeyned that all the no-  
ble women that were escaped fro deth / shold  
goo whyder they wold freely / or dwelle styll  
thereyfhit plesid them/And after these thynges doon/they  
purposid them to departe from troye . But the grete tem- 10  
peste began to aryse that tyme that endured a moneth  
hole to fore they myght goo to the see / Than demanded  
the grekes of calcas the cause of this enpeffement that  
dured so longe : And he answerd that the puyffances  
Infernals were not yet oppesid of theffusion of the blood 15  
of Achilles / that was shedde in the temple of Appollyn  
for the loue of polixene . And for tappese the goddes/hit  
behoveth to sacrefye polixene for whom achilles deyd .

**T**Han pyrrus enquiryed dyligently where polix-  
ene was becomen / that was cause of the deth of 20  
his fader / ffor ther was no tydyng whether  
she was alyue or ded . Agamenon demanded of Anthe-  
nor . whiche said to hym that he knewe not where she  
was / Wherof he lyed not . And yet for to make an ende  
of all hys euyllis : he enquiryed so moche that polixene 25  
was founden in pryson in an olde auncient towr where  
as she was putte Inne : And than he wente theder /  
And drewe her oute by force by her armes : And pre-  
sented her vnto the kynge Agamenon . Whyche anone  
sente her to pyrrus / the whiche sente her to the sepulcre 30

by hys vayllyance and by his wytte the troians were  
vaynquyffhid / And yf he hadd not ben / the troians  
were yet in astate and in glorye in the cyte . And after  
fayd to Thelamon / Certes the palladyum was neuer  
5 conquerid by your prowesse / but by my wytte / And  
the grekes wyfte neuer what hit was ne of what ver-  
tue hit is / whan I dyde hem to knowe thereof fyrste by  
the dylygence that I dyde therto / and whan I knewe  
that the cyte of troye myght not be taken as long as  
10 hyt was in the fame / I wente secretly in to the cyte /  
and dyde so moche that hyt was delyueryd vnto me .  
and after we toke the cyte / To this answerd Thela-  
mon Iniuryously / And Vlixes to hym in lyke wyfe  
in so moche that they becam enemyes mortall eche to  
15 other . And Thelamon manacyd Vlyxes to the deth  
openly / And allewaye after that this mater was well  
discuted / Agamenon and menelaus Iugyd that the  
palladyum shold abyde wyth vlixes / And some fayd  
that they maad this Iugement for as moche as vlyxes  
20 by hys fayre spekyng had fauyd fro deth helayne / that  
Thelamon and other wold haue hadd ded / And of  
thys Iugement they myght not be contente / the moste  
grettest parte of the ooste fayd that Thelamon oughte  
better to haue the palladyum than vlixes / And therefore  
25 Thelamon fayd to Agamenon and menelaus many  
Iniuryous wordes . And fayd vnto hem that he wold  
be theyr mortall enemye fro than forth on / .For thys  
fayd caufe Agamenon . Menelaus and Vlixes helde  
hem alle thre nyghe to gyder / And hadd allewaye after  
30 wyth them grete nombre and multytude of knyghtes

Than hit happed that on the morn erly / that thelamon  
 was founde slayn in his bedde / and had woundes in  
 many places of his body / Wherof roos a grete Crye in  
 the ooste and maad grete sorowe / And gaf alle the  
 blame vnto thre kynges to fore rehercyd / Pyrrus that 5  
 louyd strongly the kynge thelamon sayd many Iniu-  
 ryous wordes to vlixes and to the other / Than vlyxes  
 doubted hym . And the next nyght folowyng he and  
 his men entryd in to their shippes all secretly and wente  
 to the see for to retourne homward and lefte wyth dy- 10  
 omedes hys frende the palladyum : Pyrrus dyde doo  
 brenne the body of thelamon and put the affhes in a  
 ryche vessell of gold for to bere wyth hym in to hys  
 contrey for to burye hyt honourably . The hate was  
 grete betwene pyrrus and the kynge agamenon and 15  
 hys broder / But Anthenor maad the peas / And after  
 on a day gaf a dyner vnto alle the nobles of grece.  
 And dyde do serue hem wyth many metes and gaf to  
 them fayre yestes &c.

**A** Monge these thynges the Grekes reprochyd 20  
 Eneas that he hadd falsyd hys othe / in that /  
 that he had hyded polixene / And for this cause  
 they banysshid hym oute of troye for euer / And whan  
 Eneas sawe that he myght not abyde there he prayd  
 hem moche that they wold accorde and agree that he 25  
 myght haue the two and twenty shippis that parys had  
 with hym in to grece / and they agreed to hym hisrequeste  
 And gaf to hym foure monethes space for to repayre  
 them and garnyshe them of all that they lacked / Anthe-  
 nor departed after from troye wyth hys good wylle / 30



and ladd with hym grete nombre of troians / But the  
hystorye telleth not whether he wold goo / Eneas ha-  
ted than strongly Anthenor for so moche as by hym he  
was bannysshid oute of troye / And was in grete so-  
5 rowe because Anthenor was not as well bannysshid  
as he / And for this cause Eneas assemblid all the tro-  
ians / And sayd to them my frendes and my brethern .  
fyn that fortune hath put vs in the state where we ben  
Inne / we may not lyue with oute heed and gouernour  
10 And yf ye wyll do by my counceyll ye shall chese An-  
thenor / and make hym your kyng / ffor he is wyse  
ynowhe for to governe yow . Thys counceyll semed  
good to the troians / And sente after Anthenor that  
retorned anone vnto them . And assone as he was come  
15 Eneas assemblid grete nombre of peple / for to renne  
vpon hym / as he that was most myghty in troye / Than  
the troians prayed hym that he wold cesse / fyn that the  
warre was fynnysshid / And that he wold not begynne  
hyt agayn / How sayd Eneas shold we spare one so  
20 selouē a trayttre / that by hys grete felonnye hath causid  
to dye polixene the fayre daughter of kyng pryant .  
And by hym I am bannysshid oute of troye that shold  
haue counceyllid and holpen yow / And nowe I muste  
nedes leue yow . Eneas sayd so moche to the troians /  
25 that they bannysshid Anthenor for euer oute of troye  
And constrayned hym anone to goo his way out of the  
towne &c : .

30 **A**nthenor entryd in to the see wyth a grete com-  
panye of troians / And sayllyd so ferre that  
he fylle amonge men of warre and pyrates of  
the see / that ranne vpon hym and flewe many of hys

men and hurte And robbed and pyllid of his shyppis  
 And in the ende Anthenor escapyd from them . and fail-  
 lid so ferre that he arruyd in a prouynce / named Ger-  
 bandye / wherof the kynge Tetides was lord and kyng  
 a Iuste man and a debonayre . In thys lande aryved 5  
 Anthenor with a fewe shyppis and rested on the syde  
 of a grete yle / that was nyghe vnto the porte / he sawe  
 the contre sayre and puyssant of woodes and of lande  
 and of foūtaynes / And there he edyffied a Cyte to  
 hym and to his peple / and fortesyed hit wyth wallis 10  
 and good towrys / And whan the troians knewe  
 therof many wente theder and dwellid there with An-  
 thenor / And the cyte grewe strongly and was full of  
 peple / And anthenor governyd hym so wysely in this  
 lande / that he was well in the grace of the kynge tety- 15  
 des / And was the seconde after the kynge in hys roy-  
 ame And named his cyte Cortiremerralum .

**C**assandra that was leste at troye had grete  
 sorowe for the grete myschyefs that were fal-  
 len to her frendes / And cessid not to wepe and 20  
 waylle / And whan she had demenyd longe her sorowe  
 The grekes demanded her of theyr estate in theyr retour-  
 nyng home / of whyche she sayd to them / that they  
 shold suffre many paynes and grete paryllis er they  
 were come in to theyr contre / And after she sayd to 25  
 agamenon that they of his owne hows shold seee hym  
 So hyt happyd to hym after and to all the other lyke  
 as cassandra had deuysyd to them and sayd . Of the  
 kynge thelamon were leste two lodes . of two quenes

the eldest was named hermycides of the quene glausta  
And that other of the quene thymyssa had to name  
Anchifatus / These two children norysshid the kynge  
Theuter as longe tyll they were grete to bere armes.

5 **A** Monge these thynges Agamenon and mene-  
laus demanded congye for to retorne in to theyr  
landes / And the moſte grete of the ooſte gaf hem  
leue fore anoyed / ffor as moche as they had ben taken  
as ſuſpecte of the deth of thelamon with vlixes / whiche  
10 was ſtolen away lyke a theef / wherfore he ſhewyd  
well / that he was culpable of the deth . Thus theſe  
two brethern putte hem to the ſee / for to retorne home  
thus in thentree of the wynter / whan the ſee is moſte  
dangerouſe / And anone after the other grekes entryd  
15 in to the ſee as fooles and euyll aduysed for the doubt  
of the ſee / .And had her ſhippes alle charged and laden  
wyth the rycheſſes / wherof they hadd deſpoyled the  
ryche Cyte and royame of troye / And for the grete  
deſyre that they hadd for to ben at home in theyr contre  
20 They began to retorne thus as in the myddes of the wynter  
/ And ſette aparte alle dangers and paryllis / whiche  
fyll vnto them gretly / And whan they hadd fayllyd  
foure dayes and foure nyghtes / on the fyfthe daye they  
were in the ſee of egee / Aboute the houre of none cam  
25 a grete tempeſte . And ſuppryed them ſodaynly wyth  
grete rayne and thonder / wyth wynde and with grete  
wawes of the ſee that caſted her ſhyppes here and there  
in the ſee / And many brake theyr maſtes and alle to  
rente theyr faylles / And whan the nyght cam whyche

was longe and derke / the shippes leste eche other / in  
 faillyng to fore the wynde some in one place and some  
 in an other / And many were brente with lyghtnyng  
 and thonder þ<sup>r</sup> fyll vpon hem / And many were drown- 5  
 ed and sonken into the see . And they that were therin  
 were ded & drowned / and the grete rycheffes of troye  
 losfe / Oyleus ayax that had . xxxij . shippes in this com-  
 panye / had all his shippes brente and perisshid / And  
 he hym self by the forse of his armes and legges alle  
 naked swymyng cam and arryued a lande all swollen 10  
 of the water that he had dronken / And laye a grete  
 while vpon the gravell / more hopyng the deth than the  
 lyf / And anone after cam other in lyke wyse that were  
 so fauyd with swymmyng / whiche were disconfortid  
 in her malehurte and vnhappynes. This myschief cam 15  
 to this ayax for as moche as he drewe cassandra out of  
 the temple of mynerue / And hyt happeth often tyme /  
 that many be punysshid for the synne and trespace of  
 one man &c.

**¶** How the kynges naulus and cetus his sonne dide doo 20  
 perysshe in the see many shippes of the grekes in theyr re-  
 tourne for the deth of his sone palamydes and of the deth  
 of kynges Agamenon / and of the xyle of dyomedes and  
 of hys Rapeel by egee his wyf &c.

**I**N thys tyme ther was a kyng in grece named 25  
 Naulus that was moche Ryches & puyssaūt  
 and hys Royame stode vpon the syde of the see  
 of grece toward the South / In the whyche see were  
 grete Roches and hyghe and many montaynes and  
 hylles of Sarde whyche were ryght peryllous. 30

This kynge was fader of palamides / that was slayn  
to fore troye . And had yet a sone named Cetus . Ther  
was nōn in grece so ryche ne so puissant a kyng / Now  
were ther some euyll peple there that coude not be in ease  
5 with out greuyng & anoyng of other / whiche made the  
said kynge Naulus to vnderstand & to his sone kynge  
cetus / that palamides was not slayn in batayll so as  
the voys ran / but he was slayn couertly by vlixes and  
diomedes / Agamenon & menelaus had made & contryued  
10 a false lettre / where in was conteyned that palamydes  
wold haue betrayd the ooste of the grekes / whylis he  
was emperour of the oost / for a grete quantyte of gold  
And they made this lettre to be put by the side of a knyght  
that was slayn . And than vlixes trectyd in suche wyse  
15 wyth one of the secretares of palamydes / for a grete  
sōme of money suche as the lettres conteyned . And this  
secretarye by thynduccion of vlixes put this some of mo-  
ney vnder þ<sup>e</sup> heed of palamides whilis he slepte / And as  
sone as the secretarie had said to vlixes that he had doon  
20 Than vlixes slewe this secretares pryuely / And forth  
with dide so moche that this lettre cam in to the handes of  
the grekes / that redde hit / and were all abasshid whan  
they sawe in wryting þ<sup>e</sup> trayson / and that the some c<sup>o</sup>tey-  
ned in the same leye vnder his heed / They wente anone  
25 in to his tente / and fonde the trouthe of this thinge / And  
wold haue ronne vpon palamides / But he offred hym  
hymself to deffende hit ayenst whom þ<sup>t</sup> euer wold proue  
hit . And so ther was none that durst fight ayenst hym  
Than Vlixes dide so moche by hys fayre langage that  
30 this thyng was repeasid . And semed that hyt was  
beste that palamydes shold abyde in his dignyte .

**A**.fter this thyng thus repeafid . Vlixes and diomedes on a day dide palamydes to vnderftand that they knewe a pytte / where in was moche trefour . And that they wold that he had his parte / and that they fhould goo the nyght folowyng / whan the nyght was come they wente all thre allone with oute more companye . And there offryd palamydes for to goo down in to the pytte fyrfte / and they fayd that they wold folowe . And affone as he was wythin / the other two cafte ftones vpon hym fo many that they flew hym / and after returned to their tentes pryuely . This thyng fayd thefe enuyous men to kyng naulus and to Cetus of the deth of palamydes / And all was falfe / Than the kyng and his fone began strongly to thynke how they myght avenge hem of the grekes / they knewe well that the grekes were in her retourne in the herte of the wynter / And that they muſte paſſe by his royame . And than the kyng naulus dide do crye in all his royame that men fhould make grete fyres euery nyght vpon the montaignes that ftode by the ſee ſide / And this dide he to thende / that whan the grekes fhould ſee the fyre by nyght that they fhould come theder / wenyng to fynde good hauē . And yf they cam they fhould fynde hard rockkes & montaignes of ſande / And ſo they fhould not eſcape with oute deth / Hit was thus doon as naulus had deuyfed . And ther were well two honderd ſhippis of the grekes broken ayenſt the rokkes . And all they that were therein were drowned / Whan the other ſhippis þ<sup>t</sup> folowed them herde the noyſe of þ<sup>e</sup> ſhippis that ſo were broken and the crye of them that were drowned : they turned on that other borde & made to ſee ward & ſauyd hem ſelf

**I** Of them that escaped were Agamenon . Menelaus .  
diomedes & some other that shall be named here after .

**C**etus that otherwyse was callid Pellus had  
grete sorowe whan he knewe that Agamenon  
5 was escaped / And than he thoughte longe / how  
he myght avenge hym whan he shold be come home &  
descended in his owen lande / He dyde do wryte a lettre  
to Clytemestra the wyf of agamenon . And this lettre  
conteyned that for certayn Agamenon her husbond had  
10 espowfyd one of the daughters of kynge pryant / and  
that he louyd her strongly / and brought her with hym  
in to his contre for to make her quene . And to put oute  
clitemestra or to doo flee her / And therefore cetus aduer-  
tysed her to thende that she myght pourveye for her self .  
15 Clytemestra anone beleuyd these lettres / and thanked  
cetus ynowhe / and thought that she wold avenge her  
of her husbond . This Clitemestra in the absense of her  
husbond louyd a man named Egyftus by whome she  
hadd a daughter named Erygona / She loved more  
20 her loue egyftus / than euer she dyde her husbond how  
well he was comen of lowe blood / But hyt is the  
custome of a woman that doth a mysse to take one to  
her of lasse value than her husbond is . She had tetryd  
with egiftus that the fyrst nyght that agamenon shold  
25 lye with her / he shold renne vpon hym & flee hym . This  
thinge was doon in like wise as she had purposid / And  
Agamenon was slayn and put in the erthe / And anone  
after Clitemestra toke to husbond her loue Egyftus  
kynge of mychames .

30 **A** Gamenon thus slayn had a sone of thys clyte-  
mestra that was named horestes a yonge chylde

whiche that calcybus his parent toke in kepyng And  
toke hym from his moder / to thende that he shold not  
flee hym . And after sente hym to the kyng of Crete  
ydumeus that was hys vncler . And he had grete Ioye  
of hym and his wyf tharasis also that loved hym as  
moche as Clitemestra her doughter that hadd no moo  
children but her / and was a fayr yonge mayde / Thus  
as Cetus had wryton to Clitemestra the wyf of Aga-  
menon / In lyke wise he wrote to the wyf of dyomedes  
named Egee / and was doughter of the kyng polymy-  
tes of Arsymens / and suster of assandrus that retur-  
ned fro troye wyth dyomedes his broder in lawe / So  
hit happed in theyr retournyng that they descended in the  
lande of kyng Thelepus / whyche was euyl contente  
And wente ayenst hem wyth a grete companye of men  
of Armes and assayllid them . And they deffended hem  
strongly / and assandrus slewe many of the knyghtes  
of thelepus wherof he hadd grete sorowe and was  
angry . And toke a grete spere & adressid hym ayenst  
assandrus by so grete force / that he smote down to the erth  
and slewe hym . Dyomedes for to avenge the deth of  
his broder in lawe slewe many knyghtes of thelepus .  
And recoueryd the body of assandrus with grete payne  
and bare hyt in to his shippe &c .

**T**Hus deyde assandrus / but hit was not reported  
thus to Egee hys suster / But hit was sayd to  
her that dyomydes her husband had doon flee  
hym for to haue all the feynourye of archimens wherof  
assandrus had that one half ayenst his suster egee / Of  
thyse tydynges & of them that cetus had wreton / Egee  
was moche wroth & angry with diomedes her husband



And by their counceyll she fente for to fecche hym / And  
he cam wyth a good wyll / and was refseyuyd wyth  
grete Ioye / And fo in lyke wyfe the other that hadd  
exyled theyr lordes at their retourn fro troye callid hem  
5 home agayn . And euery man returned in to hys feygnourye  
of them that escaped fro the paryllis of the fee .

¶ How Horroftes fone of kyng Agamenon toke cruell  
vengeance of the deth of hys fader / And how the  
kyng vlixes after many dyuerfe adventures returned  
10 to his feygnourye and royame .

**W**Han Horrestes the fone of kyng Agamenon  
that was / had foure & twenty yere of age / The  
kyng ydumeus that had nourysshid hym made  
hym knyghte and maad a grete feste of the newe chy-  
15 ualerye of horrestes . And than horrestes prayd hym that  
he wold helpe hym wyth his peple to take vengeance  
of the deth of his fader / and to recouere his lande / The  
kyng ydumeus delyuerd to hym a thousand knyghtes  
wyfe and hardy / And horrestes affembliid an other  
20 thousand in many places / And after toke his way vn-  
to mychames / And in goyng thederward passid by the  
cyte of trafem / wherof the kyng forenfis was lord  
that halpe hym wyth thre honderd knyghtes / for as  
moche as he hated egystus / by cause that he sayd egys-  
25 tus had trouth plight hys daughter / whyche had lefte  
her for the loue of Clytemestra / and fo he wente with  
horrestes for to make warre to egiftus / And than whan  
they fette forth on theyr way hyt was at thentre of  
the moneth of May / Whan they cam to fore Mycha-  
30 mes / They that were wyth Inne the cyte wold not  
yelde hit vnto hym . Than he fette siege round aboute hit

Horestes had an answer of the goddes that he hym self  
 shold take vengeance of his moder by hys handes / not-  
 wythstandyng she was clofid in the cyte / Egisteus  
 was not than there / but he was goon for to seche so-  
 cours and for to assamble knyghtes for to deffende his  
 cyte ayenst the comyng of horestes hys enemye / At the  
 Instygacion and counceyll of Clitemestra hys wyf .  
 And anone as horestes knewe therof . He sette grete  
 nombre of knyghtes in a wayte for to take hym at his  
 retournyng / And than he maad the cyte to be assayllid  
 often tymes / And for as moche as hit was not well  
 garnysshid / Horestes toke hit wyth assault the . xv .  
 daye of his siege / And cōmysyd hys peple to kepe the  
 yates / to thende that none shold yssue out ne entre / And  
 after wente hym to the palays ryall / and made to take  
 his moder and sette her in sewre pryson / and toke and  
 dyde to be taken alle them that he felte culpable of the  
 deth of his fader / and that had be rebell ayenst hym / And  
 that same day Egistus retournyd wyth hys focours .  
 And fyll in the handes of the peple of horestes þ' slewe  
 all his peple and toke hym a lyue and brought hym to  
 horestes / his handes bounden behynde hym at his backe .

**I**N the morn Horestes dide his moder Clitemestra  
 be brought to fore hym all naked her handes boun-  
 den / And affone as he sawe her / he ran vpon her with  
 his naked swerd / and cutte of her two pappes / and  
 after slewe her with his handes / and maad her to be  
 drawn to the feldes for the houndes to ete and deuowre  
 and to the byrdes . After he dyde do dispoyle egistus and  
 do drawe hym thurgh the cyte . And after dide do hange

hym on a forke . And in lyke wyfe he dyde to alle them  
that were culpable of the deth of hys fader / Thus ven-  
gid horestes the deth of the good kynge Agamenon his  
fader &c : .

5 **M**Enelaus after the grete paryllis of the see / ary-  
ued in Crete / And wyth hym dame helayne  
hys wyf / Whan he knewe of the deth of hys  
broder / And of the vengeance that the sayd horrestes  
had taken . He was euyll contente wyth his newewe  
10 that had taken so cruell vengeance on his moder / There  
came to menelaus the gretteft lordes of grece for to see  
helayne / for whom the grekes had suffrid so many hur-  
tes and dōmages / And from Crete menelaus wente  
and aryued at the poort of michames / And sayd to  
15 horrestes that he was not worthy to be kynge and lord  
for as moche as he hadd taken so cruell vengeance on  
his moder / And for to avenge thys tyrannye / Mene-  
laus affemblid all the nobles of grece at Atthenes / to  
thende that horestes shold be declarid as pryuyd of his  
20 feygnourye for the cruelte that he had doon ayenst hys  
moder / Horestes excusid hym therof / sayng that / that  
he had doon the goddes had comanded hym . Than avaū-  
ced hym the duc of atthenes / and offryd for horestes  
that yf ther were ony man that wold proue that horef-  
25 tes had not done well / that he wold deffende hym / There  
was none that wold preue hit . And therefore was hor-  
restes affoylled and restablisshyd in hys feygnourye  
And bare heuy herte to his vnclē menelaus for this cause  
But the kynge ydumeus cam to mychames and maad  
30 the peas betwene hem bothe / And than horestes toke her-  
mone the doughter of menelaus & of helayne to his wyf

Erigone the daughter of Egistus and of Clytemestra  
had so grete sorowe whan she sawe horestes in so grete  
seygnourye that she henge and strangled her self .

**A** Monge these thynges Vlixes cam in to Crete  
wyth two marchautes shippes that he had hy- 5  
red / ffor he had losse all his shippes / and alle  
that was with Inne them by pyrates and robbeurs of  
the see that had robbyd hym . And after that he was  
so robbed hyt myshappid hym that he arryued in the  
lande of kynge thelamon / And there was taken and 10  
losse the refydue of his goodes / And they of the contre  
had hanged hym / but by the Industrye and subtylte of  
his wytte he escaped right poure / After that he aryuyd  
in the lande of kynge naulus whiche hated hym for the  
deth of his sone palamydes / alleway he dide so moche 15  
by his connyng & witte / that he escaped moche pourly  
And so he cam & aryued in Crete / The kynge ydumeus  
refseyuyd hym loyously ynowh / but he was moche es-  
mayed that he sawe hym so poure / And demaüded hym  
of his aduentures what they were fyn he departed fro 20  
troye / Than vlixes tolde hym all a longe many daun-  
gers and meruaylles . And how he had losse his men &  
his grete rycheffe that he brought fro troye / The kyng  
ydumeus had pyte on vlixes / And honoured hym moche  
as longe as he wold abide there with hym / And whan 25  
he departed he gaf to hym two shippes full of all suche  
thynges as they behoued for to goo with alle in to hys  
contrey / And gaf to hym other goodes ynowhe / And  
prayd hym that he wold goo by the royame of alcy-  
nous that was in hys waye / And that he wold see 30  
hym gladly &c .

**T**Hus departed vlixes fro crete / And wente hym  
to kyng Alcynous whiche reffeyuyd hym wyth  
grete Ioye . And herde hym gladly speke / There  
herde vlixes tydynges of Penolope his wyf how many  
5 notable men had requyred her / But she wold neuer  
entende to man / she was so moche chaste . And how  
certayn psones helde partye of his lande ayenst the will  
of his wyf / There came to vlixes thelamotus hys sone  
and acertayned hym of all thinges þ<sup>t</sup> were trewe / And  
10 for that cause vlixes prayd to alcynous that he wold  
accompanye hym vnto his royame / with a grete nombre  
of knyghtes / And alcynous agreed to hym gladly / They  
sayllid so longe that on a nyght they aryued in his con-  
tre / and entryd in to the cyte / and in the howses of hys  
15 enemyes / and slewe them all . And on the morn by day  
Vlixes thus accompanied entrid in to his palays / And  
there was reffeyuyd as kyng & lorde wyth grete Ioye.  
And aboue all other Penolope his wyf had grete Ioye  
as she that had so longe desired hym / His peple cam fro  
20 all fydes and ranne for to see hym that was her lord  
gyuyng to hym grete and ryche yestes . And thus was  
vlixes moche honouryd and exalted in hys royame  
And than he treted so moche with Alcynous that he gaf  
his doughter naufica in maryage to thelamotus his sone /  
25 And after the grete solempnyte of the weddyng . Alcy-  
nous wente hym in to hys contre . And vlyxes abood  
in his royame in grete peas.

**¶** Of the feetes of pyrrus syn hys retournyng fro troye  
And how horestes the sone of Agamenon slewe hym  
30 in delphos for the rauysshing of Hermone hys wyf  
And of moo aduentures &c.

**P**irrus that was the sone of Achilles and of dy-  
 adamie the doughter of kynge Lychomedes of  
 hys moder fyde . This kynge lichomedes was  
 sone of kynge Achastus that lyued yet at that tyme .  
 And this kynge Achastus that was moche olde and 5  
 auntyent . hated strongly pyrrus / But the historye tel-  
 leth not wherfore ne for what cause this hate cam . This  
 kynge Achastus had put the kynge Peleus oute of his  
 royame of thesaylle / and had sente hym in exyle . And  
 sette espyes in many places for to flee pyrrus in his re- 10  
 tourne fro troyes / Pirrus in his comyng fro troye pas-  
 sid many paryllis in the see / And caste in to the see of  
 the beste Iewellis he hadde / And after he arryuyd at  
 molose / Where he descended and diderepayre his shippis  
 And as he there soiourned he knewe how the kynge 15  
 achastus had sente the kynge peleus his grauntfader in  
 exyle / and was fader of Achilles / And how he had  
 sette his espyes for to flee hym . Hereof he had grete so-  
 rowe & was moche wroth . The kynge peleus wyste  
 not where to holde hym for the doubte that he had of the 20  
 two soües of Achastus of whom that one was named  
 philistenes / and that other menelapus for fere yf they  
 fonde hym they wold sle hym . Than he avifid hym of  
 an olde auntyent ediffice that was half a myle fro the  
 cyte of Theffaylle / betwene the see and the cyte / And 25  
 there was an olde clofure of wallis and of rockes  
 aboute / And ther was no moo howses as ther hadd  
 ben in tyme paste / But there was Celliers vnder the  
 erthe / wher in men myght entre secretly by an hole that  
 apperyd but lytyll for the buffhes and thornes that 30  
 were there &c .

**I**N this place dwellid the kynge Peleus in aby-  
 dyng the retornyng of his newewe pyrrus from  
 troye / that myght avenge hym of his enemyes  
 And wente ofte tyme vpon the ryuage of the see / for  
 5 to see yf hys newewe myght come / Whan the shyppis  
 of pyrrus were repayred / he toke hys way toward  
 theffaylle / for to auenge hym of kyng Achastus / And  
 for to doo this thyng more wyfely he sente to thefayll  
 two of hys secreтарыes that one named Cryspus And  
 10 that other Adraftus that were wyse and subtyll / vnto  
 an hyghe and myghty man of the Cyte named Assan-  
 drus / that was at that tyme a trewe frende to hym and  
 to kynge Peleus for to haue hys aduyse / they wente  
 theder / And whan they had herde speke Assandrus /  
 15 they retorned vnto pyrrus / and tolde to hym what they  
 had founden . And anone pyrrus maad to drawe vp  
 theyr faylles / and faylled toward theffaylle / But a  
 grete tempeste arofe in the see that dured thre dayes / and  
 on the fourth day they arryued at the poort of sepeliadem  
 20 that was but half a myle from theffaylle nyghe vnto  
 the caue where Peleus helde hym / Than pyrrus descen-  
 ded a lande for to reſte hym of the traуayll that he hadd  
 on the see / And to take the ayer of the lande / And  
 of aduenture he wente ſtrayte to the caue where as pe-  
 25 leus was / And by the thornes and buſſhes that hy-  
 ded from hym the hoole / he fyll ther inne and fonde  
 there hys belefader peleus / And than anone Peleus  
 knewe hys newewe / ffor as moche as he reſemblyd  
 ryght well vnto his fader Achylles / And he beclipte  
 30 hym aboute the necke and kyſſed hym / And expoſyd  
 vnto hym alle hys malehurte and grete vnhappyneſſe

wherof pyrrus had grete sorowe . Than they wente vp  
and wente to hys shyppes / There cam tydynges that  
Philistenes and Menalipus the sones of kyng Achaf-  
tus were comen for to hunte in the foreste that was fast 5  
by / Than pyrrus vnclouthid hym / and dyde on an olde  
roobe all to broken and to rente / And toke his swerd  
and sayd to his peple that they shold abyde hym there /  
And he allone wold goo in to the foreste . And he had  
not ferre goon / but that he encountrid the two brethern  
that demanded of hym what he was / and fro whens 10  
he cam / and whyder he wold goo . He sayd to them  
that he was of grece . and was returned fro troye in a  
shyppes with other / And wold haue goon agayn in to  
his contre / But the tempeste of the see had so trauaillid  
them that ther wer well syve honderd personnes alle 15  
ded / And that ther was no man escaped but he allone  
by grete adventure . And hadd dronken moche water  
of the see and so haue losse all that I had . And I muste  
now goobegge fro dore to dore tyll I come in to my contre  
And yf ye haue brought in to thys foreste ony thyng 20  
to ete / I praye yow that ye wyll gyue me therof / Than  
the two brethern sayd to hym that he shold abyde with  
them &c .

**W**hylist they spake thus to gyder / A grete hertepaf-  
syd to fore them / And Menalipus put hym 25  
to the chaffe / And leste hys broder with pyr-  
rus allone / Than hyt happyd that Phylistenes alyght  
doun of hys horse for to reste hym / And assone as he  
was descended / Pyrrus ranne vpon hym wyth hys  
naked swerd in his hande and slewe hym / and after 30



whan menalipus was returned Pyrrus assayllid hym  
and slewe hym / Thus slewe pyrrus his two vnclis  
that were brethern of thetys the moder of Achilles hys  
fader / and than as he returned he encountrid Chinaras  
5 that was of the houfhold of kyng Achastus / at whom  
pirrus demanded where was the kyng achastus / And  
he answered to hym that he was there faste by and not  
ferre fro thens / And affone as he had so sayd pyrrus  
slewe hym . And after wente agayn to hys shyppis .  
10 And cladde hym with precyouse robes / And returned  
agayn vnto the foreste / And mette wyth the kyng  
achastus / that demanded of hym what he was / I am  
sayd he one of the fones of kyng pryant of troye that  
am prifonner to pyrrus / Where is pirrus said the kyng  
15 And he ensigned hym toward the see / And as the kyng  
torned hym to see thederward / Pyrrus drewe oute  
his sward and wold haue slayn hym / but thetys was  
present and escryed hym and knewe hym sayng . Ha  
ryght dere neuewe what wolte thou doo / wylte thou  
20 sle my fader / And thou haste slayn my two brethern  
thyne vnclis / And she thus sayng helde hym by the  
arme where with he helde hys swerde / And than pyr-  
rus answerd to her the kyng Achastus thy fader hath  
exylid the kyng peleus thyn hufbond / where in hath  
25 he trespasted and offended the / yf he wole pardoune to  
peleus hys maletalent and euyll wylle / I wyll par-  
doūe hym myn / The kyng Achastus was well content  
And peleus cam to fore hym / And the peas was made  
betwene hem / And whan they were returned to geder  
30 wyth good loue / The kyng Achastus sayd to them / I  
am so auncyent & feble that I may no more helpe my self

And therefore I wyll discharge me of the charge and  
 governement of thys royame / And now I haue losfe  
 them that shold haue governed hyt after me / and for  
 as moche as Pirrus my right dere newewe is the nexte  
 eyer I seafe hym now therin . And peleus sayd I gyue 5  
 hym the ryght and tytle that I haue therin . And am in  
 wyll that pyrrus be kyng : Than comanded the kyng  
 achastus to all the barons of thefaylle that they shold  
 make hōmage to pyrrus as to their kyng / and they had  
 therof grete Ioye and dyde hit gladly / And thus was 10  
 Pyrrus crowned kyng of thefaylle . And was ta-  
 ken as the most redoubtyd kyng of thefaylle and of  
 grece / ydumeus the kyng of Crete deyde anone after  
 And lefte two fones after hym . Merion and Loarca /  
 But loarca deyde sone after hym . and merion was made 15  
 kyng . Thelamotus had a sone of Nautica hys wyf  
 whiche was named Deyphebus

**A** Monge these thynges the kyng achastus dide do  
 burye his two fones in thefayll by the agrement  
 of pirrus / Hit happend whan that pirrus was 20  
 thus enhaunsid in highe feynourye / that he becam amo-  
 rouse of herimone the daughter of helayne that was wyf  
 of horestes / He dide so moche that he rauysshid her by  
 force / and brought her in to thefayll / and toke her to  
 his wyf . Horestes was passing forouful of this thyng 25  
 and durfte not assaylle pirrus in his royame and said  
 yf he myght lyue / he wold avenge hym in tyme and in  
 place / Now hyt happyd that pyrrus wente in to the  
 yle of delphe for to thanke his god Appolyn of thys  
 that he hadd taken vengeance of the deth of hys fader 30  
 Achylles : And lefte in hys pallays Andrometha

the wyf that was of hector / that had a lityll sone of the  
said hector named Laomedon / And leste the same An-  
drometha wyth chyld of his werkes / wherof Heri-  
mone was euyll contente / And sente to menelaus her  
5 fader that pyrrus had alle leste her / for the loue of An-  
drometha / And that he shold come theder and leue for  
no thyng whilis that pyrrus was oute / for to fle an-  
drometha / and her sone Laomedon / Menelaus wente  
anone to theffaylle for to doo this thyng that his dough-  
10 ter requyred hym . And rān vpon Andrometha whiche  
toke her sone betwene her armes / And rān in to the cyte  
requyryng helpe of the peple ayenfte Menelaus that  
wold flee her and her chyld .

15 **T**He peple Armed them anone and rān vpon  
menelaus / And dyde so moche that menelaus  
muste retorne in to his contrey / wyth oute doying  
of ony thyng there / Whan horestes knewe that pyrrus  
was in the yle of delphe / He wente theder and assayl-  
lid pyrrus and flewe hym wyth his owen hande / And  
20 maad hym to be buryed there / And anone after horef-  
tes recoueryd hys wyf / and brought her in to hys roy-  
ame / Whan pyrrus was ded / Peleus and Thetis toke  
andrometha that was wyth chyld of pyrrus / And  
laomedon her lytyll sone . And sente hem in to the cyte  
25 of Molose . There was Andrometha delyueryd of a  
fayre sone / whiche she named Achilleydes / the whiche  
whan he was grete / crowned his broder laomedon kyng  
of the royaume of Thefaill / And wold for þ<sup>e</sup> loue of hym  
that all the troians that were there shold be fraūchifed  
30 Here saith the historye that the suster of þ<sup>e</sup> kyng menon

that achilles flewe to fore troye / and whom the kyng  
pryant dyde do burye byside troyllus his sone / the sayd  
fuster cam to troye / moche rychely arayed . And dyde  
do open the sepulcre of herbroder and toke out the bones  
that she fonde . And affone as she had hem and helde 5  
hem she varysshyd sodaynly away / that neuer man  
wyfte where she becam ne the bones that she had taken  
And they said that sawe thys that she was a goddesse  
or daughter of a goddesse .

¶ How thelagonus sone of vlixes and of the quene 10  
Cyrces cam for to fynde hys fader vlixes / and how he  
flewe hym not wetyng who he was . And of the avy-  
sion that cam to the sayd vlixes in his slepyng .

**A**S Vlixes slepte on a nyght in his bedde / He  
had a meruayllous vyfion and hym semed that 15  
he sawe an ymage of meruayllo<sup>s</sup> fourme / and  
the sayrest that euer was seen . And defyred fore for  
to towche this ymage / and wold haue embraced her /  
But the ymage wold not suffre hym / but wythdrewe  
her afterward . And after she approchid and deman- 20  
ded of hym / what wylt thou . And he answerd to her  
I wyl that we be conioyned to geder / and that I may  
knowe the flesshly . O said the ymage that thy requeste  
is harde and bytter / ffor oure conionccion shall be vn-  
happy . ffor one of vs two shall deye . Hym semed sur- 25  
ther that this ymage helde a spere and that aboue on the  
heed had a pensell all maad wyth sysshis moche sub-  
tylly . After he sawe that the ymage wold goo . And  
sayd to hym at her departyng . This signe signefieth the  
ylle and destruccion that shall be of vs two . 30

**W**Han Vlixes was awaked / he had meruayll  
of thys dreame / And thoughte fore what hyt  
myght signefye / He sente after his deuyns and  
saages of hys royame and demanded them what hys  
5 vyfion myght signefie / and whan they had a lytyll ta-  
ken hede therof / they said that his owen sone shold flee  
hym / Vlixes that had grete drede & feer of his sone / made  
hym to be taken and kepte sewerly . And after he chese  
a place only and ferre fro peple / where he dwellyd  
10 wyth some of his trewe frendes . And dyde do fortrefye  
this place / with hyghe towres & clofid hit with water  
round a bowte . And ther myght no man entre but by  
a drawe bryge and a wyket / And made that to be kepte  
that no man shold entre but they that he had brought  
15 wyth hym / Now hit happend to vlixes whan he retur-  
ned fro troye / that fortune brought hym in to an yle  
where Circes dwellid / whiche there was lady / the  
whyche knewe as moche of enchantements as ony  
woman of the world . And by her arte helde vlixes by  
20 her nyghe a yere . And vlixes gate on her a sone whiche  
she named thelagonus / And thus in the tyme that vlixes  
dwellid in this place that was so stronge / Thelagonus  
his sone knewe not yet who was his fader / And whan  
he was of eage for to bere armes / He demanded often  
25 tymes of hys moder / who was hys fader and yf he  
were alyue and where he dwellyd . And so longe he  
prayd her / that she sayd to hym that vlixes was hys  
fader / and tolde to hym where he dwellyd &c .

**T**Han thelagonus was ryght Ioyous / And desired  
30 strongly to see his fader / he toke leue of his moder

And wente so many Iourneyes that he cam to achaye  
And whan he knewe where Vlixes dwellid he wente  
theder And whan he was comen on a monday in the  
morenyng to the brygge where they stode that kepte hyt  
diligently / he prayd hem that they wold late hym passe 5  
for to see vlixes . And they wold not agree to hym in  
nomanere / And as he prayd hem / they putte hym a back  
felonfly and rudely / wherof he was ryght angry and  
so wroth that he ran vpon one of them / and gaf hym  
so grete a strook wyth his fyfte vpon the canell of the 10  
necke / that he fyll doun ded / And assayllyd the other  
and caste hem doun of the brygge / And they began for  
to crye moche lowde / and whan they of þ<sup>e</sup> castell herde  
the noyse / they ran to armes and cam to assaylle thela-  
gonus / He avauncyd hym to one of them / and toke 15  
his swerd from hym / he dide so moche in a lytyll while  
that he slewe fyftene of them / but they hurte hym in ma-  
ny places / and as the crye grewe more and more / Vlix-  
es aroose vp doubtyng that hyt was thelamotus hys  
sone / and that was yssued oute of pryson and cam 20  
where as the noyse was with a darte in his hande whi-  
che he caste ayenst thelagonus whan he sawe hys men  
slayn / and hurted hym a lityll / whom he knewe not .

**T**helagonus that had receyuyd the darte . caste  
hyt ayenst vlixes whom he knewe not / And 25  
smote so fore betwene the sydes that he hurted  
hym vnto the deth / and fyll to the erthe . And as he  
spack wyth grete payne he demaunded of thelagonus  
what he was . ffor as moche as than hys vyfion cam  
to hys mynde . And Thelagonus demaunded on that 30

other fyde / who was he that spack fo to hym / And  
they answerd hym that hyt was vlixes . Than began  
Thelagonus to make the gretteft sorowe of the world  
Sayng alas caytyf / I was come to see my fader / and  
5 for to lyue with hym in Ioye / & I haue slayn hym / And  
as fone as he had sayd soo / he fyll doun a fwowne .  
And whan hys herte cam to hym agayn / he began to  
rente his gowne / and to bete hys vyfage wyth hys  
fyftes . And fylle in wepyng and approachid to hys  
10 fader and said to hym / that he was the vnhappy thela-  
gonus his fone and of the quene Circes . And prayd  
to the goddes that they wold suffre hym to dye wyth  
his fader &c .

15 **W**Han vlixes knewe that hit was hys fone / He  
reconforted hym self / and sente anone to fecche  
thelamotus his other fone / And he cam Incon-  
tynent whyche wold haue slayn thelagonus / for to  
auenge the deth of hys fader / but vlixes repeafid hym .  
And sayd to hym that he was his broder / And prayd  
20 hem that they wold loue eche other / After this vlixes  
was brought in to Achaye . where he lyuyd thre dayes  
only . And his fones buryed hym honourably . Thela-  
motus helde the royame of achaye after his fader . And  
helde wyth hym Thelagonus nyghe by a yere and an  
25 half / And made hym knyght in grete honour / and wold  
that he shold dwelle wyth hym . But for as moche  
as his moder wrote to hym often tymes that he shold  
retorne in to his contre . He dide fo moche that he depar-  
ted wyth grete honour / ffor hys broder dyde hym to  
30 haue alle that hym behoued on the way / and gaf hym  
many ryche yeftes . And departyd that one from that

other with wepyng teeres / And thus Thelagonus re-  
turned in to the yle of aulides vnto Circes his moder/that  
had moche grete Ioye of his comyng . And hit was not  
longe after that cyrces hys moder deyde : And thelago-  
nus was maad kynge of thys yle / wher In he lyved 5  
sixty yere in grete prosperyte and after deyde /Thelamo-  
tus regned in Achaye sixty and ten yere / and augmented  
and encrefid his feygnourye strongly . And whan vlix-  
es was slayn he was foure score & thryttene yere olde.

**I**N this partye Dares synysshid hys booke of the syege 10  
of troye / And speketh no more of their aduentures .  
And all this that is to fore said wrote dictes the greke  
in hys booke / And in all this that is conteyned a fore  
wreton / their two bookes were sounde accordyng for  
the mooste partye / And Dares putte in the ende of hys 15  
booke / that the siege endured ten yere ten monethis and  
twelue dayes / And the some of the grekes that were  
slayn at the siege to fore troye / was eyghte honderd &  
sixe thousand fyghtyng men . And the some of the tro-  
ians that defended hem ayenst þ<sup>r</sup> grekes that were slayn 20  
was sixe honderd and sixe and fyfty thousand of figh-  
tyng men / and he saith furthermore that whan Eneas  
departed from troye by excyle / he ladde wyth hym two  
honderd shippes / and that anthenor ladde wyth hym  
fyue honderd troians / and Eneas ladde the remenant 25  
wyth hym &c .

**A**.fter thys recyteth Dares in hys booke in the  
laste ende / by whome the mooste noble kynges  
and prynces of that one partye and also of  
that other were slayn / And sayth that Hector the 30  
prynce of the chyvalerye of the world slewe wyth



hys hande by good and loyall fayte eyghtene kynges .  
 by hys only prowesse wyth oute malengyne / That is  
 to wete the kyng Archylogus . The kyng Prothefe-  
 laus . The kyng Patroclus . The kyng Menon . The  
 5 kyng Prothenor . The kyng Archymenus . The kyng  
 Polemon . The kyng Epistropus . The kyng Ecedyus  
 The kyng Doccius . The kyng Polixenus . The kyng  
 phybus . The kyng Anthypus . The kyng Lenutus /  
 The kyng polibetes . The kyng humerus . The kyng  
 10 .Fumus . And the kyng Exampitus // Parys flewe  
 palamydes the Emperour of the ooste of the grekes / the  
 kyng Achilles . And the kyng Ajax / Ajax and pa-  
 rys flewe eche other / Eneas flewe the kyng Amphy-  
 macus . and the kyng Nereus / Achylles flewe the  
 15 kyng Cupem<sup>9</sup> . the kyng yponeus . the kyng ple-  
 beus . the kyng Austerus . the kyng Lymonyus . the  
 kyng Euforbis . the kyng Menon / and the kyng  
 Neptolonyus . And also he flewe Hector that toke  
 none hede of hym / and Troyllus that his myrondones  
 20 had enclofid & vnarmed / Pyrrus the sone of the same  
 achylles flewe the quene Panthafilee / And also he  
 flewe the noble kyng pryant / whom he fonde vnar-  
 med and wyth oute deffence as a cruell tyrant / He  
 flewe the fayr mayde polixene and the beste manerd  
 25 of the world / Dyomedes flewe the kyng Antypus .  
 the kyng Escoryus / the kyng prothenor / and the  
 kyng Obtyneus &c.

**T**Hus ende I this book whyche I haue translated after myn Auctor as nyghe as god hath gyuen me connyng to whom be gyuen the laude & preysyng / And for as moche as in the wrytyng of the same my penne is worn / myn hande wery & not stedfast 5  
myn eyen dimed with ouermoeche loking on the whit paper / and my corage not so prone and redy to labour as hit hath ben / and that age crepeth on me dayly and sebleth all the bodye / and also be cause I haue promysid to dyuerce gentlemen and to my frendes to adresse to hem 10  
as hastely as I myght this sayd book / Therefore I haue practysed & lerned at my grete charge and dispense to ordeyne this said book in prynte after the maner & forme as ye may here see / and is not wreton with penne and ynke as other bokes ben / to thende that euery man may 15  
haue them attones / ffor all the bookes of this storye named the recule of the historyes of troyes thus enpryntid as ye here see were begonne in oon day / and also fynysid in oon day / whiche book I haue presented to my sayd redoubtid lady as a fore is sayd . And she hath 20  
well acceptid hit / and largely rewarded me / wherfore I beseeche almyghty god to rewarde her euerlastyng blisse after this lyf . Prayng her said grace and all them that shall rede this book not to desdaigne the symple and rude werke . nether to replie agaynst the sayyng of the ma- 25  
ters towchyd in this book / thauwh hyt acorde not vnto the translacōn of other whiche haue wreton hit / ffor dyuerce men haue made dyuerce bookes . whiche in all poyntes acorde not as Dictes . Dares . and Homerus ffor dictes & homerus as grekes sayn and wryten fauorably for the grekes / and gyue to them more worship 30

than to the troians / And Dares wryteth otherwyse  
than they do / And also as for the propre names / hit  
is no wonder that they acorde not / ffor sōme oon name  
in thyse dayes haue dyuerce equyuocacions after the con-  
5 trees that they dwelle in / but alle acorde in conclusion the  
generall destruccion of that noble cyte of Troye / And  
the deth of so many noble prynces as kynges dukes Er-  
les barons . knyghtes and comyn peple and the ruyne  
irreperable of that Cyte that neuer fyn was reedefyed  
10 whiche may be ensample to all men duryng the world  
how dredefull and Ieopardous it is to begynne a warre  
and what hormes . losses . and deth foloweth . Therefore  
thapostle faith all that is wreton is wreton to our doc-  
tryne / whyche doctryne for the comyn wele I beseche  
15 god maye be taken in suche place and tyme as shall be  
moste nedefull in encrecyng of peas loue and charyte  
whyche graunte vs he that suffryd for the fame to be  
crucyfied on the rood tree / And faye we alle Amen  
for charyte . .

Pergama flere volo . fata danais data solo  
Solo capta dolo . capta redacta solo  
Causa mali talis . meretrix fuit exicialis  
.Femina letalis . femina plena malis  
Si fueris lota . si vita sequens bona tota  
Si eris ignota . non eris absq3 nota  
Passa prius paridem . pidis modo thefia pridem  
Es factura fidem . ne redeas in idem  
Rumor de veteri . faciet ventura timeri  
Cras poterunt fieri . turpia sicut heri  
Scena quid euadis . morti qui cetera tradis  
Cur tu non cladis . concia clade cadis  
.Femina digna mori . reamatur amore priori  
Reddita victori . deliciis q3 thori

5

10

[leaf 35r verso is blank.]

**PHOTOGRAPHIC FACSIMILES**

**(Exact size of the Originals)**

**OF EIGHT PAGES OF**

**"THE RECUYELL OF THE HISTORYES OF TROYE,"  
CONTAINING MATTER RELATING TO WILLIAM  
CAXTON, ENGLAND'S FIRST PRINTER**

**Taken at the British Museum from LORD AMHERST'S copy by  
FREDERICK JENKINS**



**H**ere begynneth the volume intituled and namede  
the recyuell of the histoaries of Troye composede  
and drawen out of dyuerse booke of latyn in  
to frenshe by the ryght venerable persone and wor-  
shipfull man. Raoul le ffeux . prestre and chapelayn  
vnto the ryght noble glourous and myghty prynce in  
his tyme Phelip duc of Bourgoyne of Brabande &c  
In the yere of the Incarnacion of our lord god a thou-  
sande foure hunderd sixty and foure / And translatede  
and drawen out of frenshe in to englyshe by Willpam  
Carton mercer of p<sup>r</sup> cyte of London / at the comaundemēt  
of the ryght hie myghty and vertuose Pryncesse hys  
redoubtyde lady . Margarete by the grace of god . Du-  
chesse of Bourgoyne of Lotyng of Brabande &c /  
Whiche sayde translatiō and werke was begonne in  
Brugis in the Countre of Flaundres the fyrst day of  
marche the yere of the Incarnacion of our said lord god  
a thousand foure hunderd sixty and eyght / And endede  
and fynnyshid in the holy cyte of Colen the . xix . day of  
septembre the yere of our sayde lord god a thousand  
foure hunderd sixty and enleuen &c .

And on that other side of this leef foloweth the prologe



**W**han I remembre that every man is bounden  
by the comandement & counceyll of the wyse  
man to eschewe skouthē andē ydlenes wher  
che is moder andē nourysshē of vices andē  
5 ought to put my self into vertuous ocupacion andē be  
spynesse / Than I haunge no grete charge of ocupacion  
folowynge the sayd counceyll / toke a frenche booke  
andē redde them many strange andē meruayllous histo  
ryes wher in I hadē grete pleasur andē delyte / as well  
10 for the nouelte of the same as for the fayr langage of  
frenshe . wherche was in prose so well andē compe  
dioussly sette andē wryton / whiche me thought I vnder  
stoodē the sentence andē substance of every mater / Andē  
for so moche as this booke was newe andē late maadē  
15 andē drawen in to frenshe / andē neuer hadē seen hit in our  
englyssh tonge / I thought in my self hit sholdē be a good  
besynes to translate hit in to our englyssh / to thende  
that hit myght be hadē as well in the royaume of Eng  
londē as in other landes / andē also for to passe therwith  
20 the tyme . andē thus concluded in my self to begynne this  
sayd werke / Andē forthwith toke penne andē ynke andē  
began boldly to renne forth as blynde bayard in this  
presente werke wherche is namedē the recuyell of the  
troian histories Andē afterwarde whan I remembre  
25 my self of my symplenes andē unperfytynes that I hadē  
in bothē langages / that is to wete in frenshe & in englyssh  
for in frunce was I neuer / andē was born & lerned in  
englyssh in kente in the weelde wher I doute not is spo  
ken as brode andē rude englyssh as is in any place of eng  
30 londē & haue contynued by the space of . xxx . yere for the  
most parte in the contres of Brabant . flandres . & brabant .

ande zelande ande thus wohan alle thysse thynges can  
 to foue me aftyr that y habe made ande wrotyen a fyve  
 or six quayers y fyll in dyspary of thys werke ande  
 purpohde nomore to haue contynuyde therein ande tho  
 quayers leyde a part ande in two yere aftyr labourde 5  
 nomore in thys werke Ande was fully in wyll to  
 haue lefte hys tyll on a tyme hit fortunede that the ry  
 ght hysse excellent ande right vertuous prynces my  
 ryght wounghtede lady my lady Margarete by the  
 grace of gode suster vnto y kyng of englonde ande of 10  
 fraunce. my souerayn lady Duchesse of Bourgoine of  
 lotyng. of brabant. of lymburgh. ande of luxemburgh  
 Countes of flandres of artoyes and of bougoine. Pali  
 tyner of heynawde of holande of zelande and of namur  
 Marquesse of y holly empire lady of ffryse of salus 15  
 and of mechlyn sente for me to speke wyth her good  
 grace of dyuerse maters among y whiche y lete her  
 hynnes haue knowleche of y forsayd begynnyng of  
 thys werke whiche anone comanded me to shewe  
 the sayd. v. or. vi. quayers to her sayd grace ande whi 20  
 an she had seen hem. anone she fonde a defaute in my  
 englyssh whiche she comaded me to amende and mo  
 re ouer comanded me stryptli to contynue and make  
 an ende of the resydue than not translated wthos de  
 defull comadement y durste in no wyse disobey hean. 25  
 se y am a seruāt vnto her sayde grace ande vssene of  
 her perl y ffor and other many gode and grete benefe  
 tes. ande also hope many moo to vssene of her hyn  
 nes but forth wyth wente and labourde in the sayde  
 translacion aftyr my symple and pouer conyng also 30  
 wigh as y am folowynng myn auctour metheli beseyning



**H**ere begynneth the volume intituled and namede  
the recuyell of the histories of Troye composede  
and drawen out of diuerce booke. of latyn in  
to frensche by the ryght venerable persone and wor-  
shipfull man. Raoul le ffeux . prestre and chapelayn 5  
vnto the ryght noble glourous and myghty pryncce in  
his tyme Phelip duc of Bourgoyne of Brabant 2c  
In the yere of the Inarnacion of our lordz godz a thou-  
sande foure hunderd sixty and foure / And translatede  
and drawen out of frensche in to englyshe by Willjam 10  
Carton mercer of p<sup>r</sup> cyte of London / at the comaūdemēt  
of the ryght hie myghty and vertuose Pryncesse hie  
redoubtyde lady . Margarete by the grace of godz . Du-  
chesse of Bourgoyne of Lotyng of Brabant 2c /  
Whiche sayde translatiō and werke was begonne in 15  
Brugis in the Countre of Flaundes the fyrst day of  
marche the yere of the Inarnacion of our saidz lordz godz  
a thousand foure hunderd sixty and eghthe / And endede  
and fynnyshid in the holy cyte of Colen the . xix . day of  
septembre the yere of our sayde lordz godz a thousand 20  
foure hunderd sixty and enleuen 2c .

And on that other side of this leef foloweth the prologe

**W**han I remembre that euery man is bounden  
by the comandement & counceyll of the wyse  
man to eschewe skouthē and ydlenes wher  
che is moder and nourysshē of vices and  
5 ought to put my self vnto vertuous ocupacion and be  
spynesse / Than I haupnge no grete charge of ocupacion  
folowynge the sayor counceyll / toke a frenche booke  
and redde thē many strange and meruayllous histo  
ryes wher in I had grete pleasur and delyte / as well  
10 for the nouelte of the same as for the fayr langage of  
frenshe . whychē was in prose so well and conuen  
dioussly sette and wryton / whiche me thought I vnder  
stood the sentence and substance of euery mater / And  
for so moche as this booke was newe and late maad  
15 and drawen in to frenshe / and neuer had seen hit in our  
englyssh tonge / I thought in my self hit shold be a good  
besynce to translate hit in to our englyssh / to thēde  
that hit myght be had as well in the royaume of Eng  
lond as in other landes / and also for to passe therwith  
20 the tyme . and thus concluded in my self to begynne this  
sayd worke / And forthwith toke penne and ynke and  
began boldly to renne forth as blynde bayard in thys  
presente werke whychē is namede the recuyell of the  
troian histories And afterwarde whan I remembred  
25 my self of my spynnes and vnperfytines that I had  
in both langages / that is to wete in frenshe & in englyssh  
for in france was I neuer / and was born & lerned in  
englyssh in kente in the weeld wher I doute not is spo  
ken as brode and rude englyssh as is in any place of eng  
30 lond & haue contynued by the space of . xxx . yere for the  
most parte in the contres of Brabant . flandres . & brabant .

and zelande and thus when alle thise thynges can  
 to fore me after that y had made and wrytyn a fyve  
 or six quayers y fell in dyspayr of thise werke and  
 purposide nomore to haue contynuyde therein and tho  
 quayers leyde a part and in two yere after labourde <sup>5</sup>  
 nomore in thise werke And was fully in wyll to  
 haue lefte hys tyll on a tyme hit fortunede that the ry  
 ght hygh excellent and right vertuous prynces my  
 ryght redoughted lady my lady Margarete by the  
 grace of gode suster vnto y kynge of englond and of <sup>10</sup>  
 frauce. my souerayn lady Duchesse of Bourgoine of  
 lotyng. of brabant. of lymburgh. and of luxemburgh  
 Countes of flādes of artoye and of bourgoine Dali  
 tyner of heynawde of hollāde of zelāde and of namur  
 Marquesse of y haly empire lady of ffryse of salus <sup>15</sup>  
 and of mechlyn sente for me to speke wyth her good  
 grace of dyuerse maters among y whiche y lete her  
 hynnes haue knowleche of y forsayd begynnyng of  
 thise werke whiche anone comāded me to shewe  
 the sayd. v. or. vi. quayers to her sayd grace and wh <sup>20</sup>  
 as she had seen hem. anone she fonde a defaute in my  
 englyssh whiche sche comāded me to amende and mo  
 re ouer comāded me stryptli to contynue and make  
 an ende of the resydue than not translated wth a de  
 defull comādemēt y durste in no wyse disobey hean. <sup>25</sup>  
 se y am a seruāt vnto her sayde grace and resseue of  
 her perl y ffor and other many goode and grete benefe  
 tes. and also hope many moo to resseue of her hyn  
 nes but forth wyth wente and labourde in the sayde  
 translacion after my symple and pour connyng also <sup>30</sup>  
 wigh as y am folowynng myn auctour mekeli besekynng

the bounteous hpenes of my saidz lady that of her be-  
npuolence liste to accepte a take in grece this symple a  
rude werke here folowynng. andz yf ther be ony thyng  
wreton oz sayd to her playfir. y shall thynke my la-  
5 bour well employed andz where as ther is defaute. y  
she arette hvt to p<sup>s</sup> symplenes of my connyng whichz  
is ful small in this behalve andz requyre a pryve alle  
them that shall rede this sayd werke to correcte hvt a  
to holdz me excusidz of the rude a symple translacion  
10 Andz thus y ende my prologe. . .

**H**ere foloweth y plogue of that worshipful man  
Raoul le feux whichz was Auctor of this present  
book in the ffrensh tonge.:

**W**hany beholde a knowe the oppnyons of the  
15 men nourishyd in ony synguler hystories of  
Troye andz see andz beholde also that of them  
to make a recupel oz gadryng to gedder. y indigne hve  
respuedz the comandanent of the ryght noble andz  
right vertuous prynce. Philippe by the grace of p<sup>s</sup> ma-  
20 ker of alle graces. Duc of borgoyne of lothryk of  
Brabandy andz of Wymbourgh. Erle of fflanders  
of Artoys andz of Bourgoyne. Dalatyne of hve  
nawdy of Dollandz of zelandz andz of namur. Mar-  
quis of p<sup>s</sup> holy Emppre Lordz of fryse of salyns and  
25 of mechlun. Certes y fynde ynowh for to thenke oz  
for of p<sup>s</sup> histories wherof y wyl make p<sup>s</sup> recupel. Alle  
p<sup>s</sup> worldz speketh of them by bookes translated out of  
latin in to ffresh a grete dele lasse than y ne shall tete  
And some ther be y replve a gayn their p<sup>s</sup>ticuler booke  
30 wherfore y feve me to wryte more than her booke

i



**T**hus endeth the seconde booke of the reule of the his-  
 tozpes of Tropes/Whiche bookes were late trans-  
 latede m to frenshe out of latyn/By the labour of the vene-  
 rable persone raoul le feure prest as a fore is saide/Ande  
 5 by me Indigne ande vnworthy translatede m to this rude  
 englissh/By the comandement of my saide redoubtid lady  
 duches of Bourgone: Ande for as moche as I suppose  
 the saide two bookes ben not hade to fore this tyme m our  
 englissh langage/therfore I hade the better will to accom-  
 10 plissh this saide werke/whiche werke was begonne m  
 Brugies a contynuede m gaunt Ande finisshid m Coleyn  
 In the tyme of p̄ troublous worldes and of the grete day-  
 fions beyng ande vngnyng as well m the royaumes of  
 englonde ande fraunce as m all other places vniuersally  
 15 thurgh the world that is to wete the yere of our lordes a  
 thousande four hundredes lxxi. Ande asfor the thirde booke  
 whiche treteth of the generall a last destruction of Trophe  
 This nedeth not to translate hit m to englissh/for as mo-  
 che as that worshipfull a religio<sup>9</sup> man dan John Ridgate  
 20 monke of Burpe dide translate hit but late /after whos  
 werke I fere to take vpon me that am not worthy to be  
 his panner a ynke horne after hym/to medle me m that  
 werke. But yet for as moche as I am bounde to con-  
 templare my sayde ladyes good grace ande also that his  
 25 werke is m ryme / Ande as fere as I knowe hit is not  
 hade m prose m our tonge / Ande also peraduenture /he  
 translatede after some other Auctor than this is / Ande  
 yet for as moche as dyuerse men ben of dyuerse desyre  
 Some to rede m Ryme ande metre / ande some m prose  
 30 Ande also be cause that I haue now good leyzer beyng n  
 Coleyn Ande haue none other thynge to doo at this tyme

In eschewyng of ydlenes moder of all vices. I haue de-  
libered in my self for the contemplacion of my sayde re-  
doubtid lady to take this laboure in hande by þe suffraunce  
and helpe of almyghty gode (whome I mekely supplie  
to geue me grace to accomplishe hit to the playnre of  
her that is cause therof and that she reserue hit in gre-  
of me her faithfull trewe & moste humble seruant 269.

Thus endeth the seconde booke.



**O** Thus ente I this booke whiche I haue transla-  
 tred after myn Auctor as nyghe as godd hath gy-  
 uen me connyng to whom he gyuen the laude &  
 prayse / Ande for as moche as in the wrytynge of the  
 same my penne is worn / myn hande wey & not stedfast  
 myn eyen dimed / with ouerinoche lokyng on the whit  
 paper / ande my courage not so prone ande redy to labour  
 as hit hath ben / ande that age crepeth on me dailly ande  
 febleth all the bodye / ande also be cause I haue promysed  
 to dyuerce gentlemen and to my frendes to adresse to hem  
 is hastely as I myght this sayde booke / Therefore I haue  
 studyed & lerned at my grete charge ande dispense to  
 redyue this sayde booke in prynte after the maner & forme  
 as ye may here see / ande is not wryton with penne ande  
 rake as other bookes ben / to thende that euery man may  
 haue them attonce / For all the bookes of this stowe na-  
 wed the recule of the historyes of troyes thus enprynted  
 as ye here see were begonne in oon day / ande also syns  
 hid in oon day / whiche booke I haue presented to my  
 lady redoubtful lady as a fore is sayde . Ande she hath  
 well acceptid hit / and largely rewarded me / wherefore  
 Beseeche almyghty godd to rewarde her euerlastyng blisse  
 for this lye . Dreyng her sayde grace ande all them that  
 shall see this booke not to desdaine the synple ande rude  
 werke . nether to reple agayns the wrytynge of the ma-  
 re to wechyd in this booke / than I hert acorde not vnto  
 the translacōn of other whiche I haue wryton hit / For  
 dyuerce men haue made dyuerce bookes / whiche in all  
 countreyes acorde not as Dantes . Dares . ande Homerus  
 For dantes & Homerus as grekes sayn and wryten fuore  
 & by for the grekes / ande gyue to them more worship

than to the troians / Ande Dares wyrteth otherwyse  
than they doo / Ande also as for the propre names / hit  
is no wonder that they acorde not / For some oon name  
in thysse dayes haue dyuerce equiuocations after the con-  
tries that they dwelle in / But alle acorde in conclusion the  
generall destruction of that noble cite of Troye / Ande  
the deth of so many noble prynces as kyngees dukes Et  
les barons . knyghtes ande comyn peple ande the tynne  
irreperable of that Cite that neuer syn was redestred  
10 whiche may be ensample to all men durynge the world  
how dredefull ande Jeopardous it is to begynne a warre  
and what harmes / losses . ande deth foloweth . Therfor  
thapostle saith all that is wryton is wryton to our do-  
ctryne / whiche doctryne for the comyn wele I beseech  
15 godd maye be taken in suche place ande tyme as shall be  
moste nedefull in encrepyng of peas loue ande charyte  
whiche graunte vs he that suffred for the same to be  
crucified on the roode tree / Ande saye we alle Amen  
for charyte ..

**LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES**



**GLOSSARY**



## LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES.<sup>1</sup>

### A. BOOKS I. AND II. TEXT PP. 1-504.

- Abas**, king of Argos, son of Ypermestra, father of Acrisius, 103; 104; 203.
- \***Achaye** (Achaia, also called Hellas; by the Ionians it was named Ionia), 54; 251; 370; (*Athaye*), 377; 381; 383; 513; 535; 698.
- Achayens**, the people of Achaye, 377; 378; 382; 383
- Achelous**, *Achelous*, kyng of Athaye, and of the cote Patrae, 370-73; 375-380; 381-384; 385
- \***Achilles**, son of Peleus and Thetys; of the noble cote of Phaeae, 388; 540-41; 546; 548; 550-52; 562-66; 574; 578-79; 590-92; 593-96; 598-600; 602; 603; 606-7; 609; 612; 613; 616; 618; 620-24; 625-28; 630-40; 641-44; 646; 647; 662; 668-70; 690; 693; 694; 700

<sup>1</sup> This List, the first ever compiled, claims to be absolutely complete. Every name occurring in the text with all its various spellings is registered in it, and also pages are quoted where the bearer of a name is only mentioned without acting himself. For reasons set forth in the Introduction, I have thought it advisable to divide the List into two sections. Part I. contains all names occurring in the first two books of the "Recuyell" while Part II. contains those occurring in the third book. Names which occur in all three books are in both Parts marked with asterisks, and for the convenience of reference the numbers of the pages where they occur in the third book are repeated in Part I. As far as it was thought necessary, and the space permitted, an analysis of their lives has been added to the most conspicuous persons. Explanations which I have added to names, i.e., which are not to be found in the text, are included in brackets. As Carton has often (mostly in the third book) disfigured the proper names by wrong spelling, I have in many cases added the spellings in the French text printed in italics.



**Acrisius**, king of Argos, father of Danes, 102; 103; wishes to have a son, makes many sacrifices to the gods to obtain one; consoles himself with the love of his daughter Danes. On asking the god Belus as to his destiny, he receives the answer that Danes' son will turn him into stone; is very sad, 104; intends to kill Danes, but then takes pity upon her; refuses to listen to any one of the princes desirous to marry her; fears lest she might be ravished for the sake of her beauty, 105; has a strong tower built, confines Danes in it, telling her what Belus had told him, 106; informs her that she must remain in the tower as long as he lives; will not accept Danes' interpretation of the oracle, 107; appoints matrons and damsels to keep Danes company, threatening them with death if they allow any man to come near her; returns to Argos; bids forty strong women to watch the entrance to the tower, 108; 110; 111; 115; 120; 163; 164; when he hears his daughter is ill, he bids his physicians examine her; is terrified when he learns from them that his daughter is pregnant, 166; sends Danes' companions to prison in Argos; bids other women watch over her and inform him when she is delivered; goes to see her every day; condemns her to death when he learns that she has given birth to a son, 167; orders two of his mariners to take his daughter and her babe to the sea and abandon her in a little boat, without food, 168; 170; 176; is driven out of his kingdom by his brother Pricus; is compelled to take refuge in the strong tower, 203; 207; 208; 222; is reinstated in his kingdom by Perseus, learns the fate of Danes; adopts Perseus as his son; leaves him to rule in Argos whilst he retires to the strong tower; sends Danus to Naples and gives presents to him and Bellerophon; is much loved by Perseus, 224; is killed by Perseus through a mistake, and much lamented and honourably buried, 225; 226

**Actiocyens**, the people of Actique (? Attici), 50

**Actyque**. *See* Attique

**Affer**, son of Madyam, 351; 352; 357; 360; 361; 363; 364; 365; 366; 367; 395; 396

\***Affrike**, *Auffricque*, 103; 187; **Affryque**, 364; 366; **Affrycque**, 368; 396; **Affricque**; 519

- Affriquans, Affryoquans, Auffricquans, Affricquans**, 365;  
**Affrycans**, 367; **Affricans**, 368; 370; 395
- \***Agamemon**, kyng of Michames, 7; 528; 539; 540-41; 545-48; 551; 553; 554; 556; 558-60; 562; 565; 572; 574-75; 578; 580; 591; 594-96; 601; 603; 608; 610; 616-18; 625; 629-36; 642; 644-45; 647-48; 656; 668-69; 671-72; 673; 675-78; 680; 681; 684; 686
- Agenor**, kyng of Assirie, son of Belus, 346; 396
- Agriculture**, Book de. *See* Varro
- Albe**, cyte of, 177
- Alceus, Alceus, Placcus**, son of Gorgophon, 224; son of Perseus, 226
- Alcumena**, daughter of Electrion, wyfe of Amphitriion, mother of Hercules, 179; 224; 226-35; 236-241; 243; 245; 285; 292-93; 298; 312
- Alexandre, Alexandria**, port of, 351 (Alexandria)
- Almachee**, daughter of kyng Melliseus, 30; 31
- Ametus, Admethus de Thessalle**, kyng of Thessayle, 82; 84
- Amon**, kyng of Ioppen, 214; 216; 219
- Amphitriion**, son of Alceus, 224; lives in Thebes, falls in love with his cousin Alcumena, is wedded to her with great honour in Thebes, 226; 228; after the siege of Thelleboye, he is very anxious to see his wife; departs from the host with the king's permission in the company of one squire, 230; 231; 232; knocks at the gate of the castle of Arciancie; the door is opened by Gaminedes; asks for his wife; is conducted to her room; awakes her, 233; begets a son on her, 234; 236; hears the cries of his child's nurses; finds Ypicleus dead and Hercules holding two serpents in his hands; is afraid to take them away from him; comforts Alcumena, and has Ypicleus buried, 243; takes Hercules to the temple of Mars with the two serpents; sends for king Egeus and assembles the people; presents Hercules to God Mars, whom he thanks for the victory over the serpents; shows Hercules to the people and tells them his marvellous adventure, 244; hears that Hercules is the son of Jupiter and believes it; asks Eristeus to take Hercules into his care and bring him up; he will never see him again; returns to Arciancie, where he finds

- Alcumena much discomforted, 245; 246; 248; does not go to the tournament of Hercules (first Olympiad) by the advice of Eristeus, 252; 257; begins to think more kindly of Hercules and goes to Thebes to see him; prepares to go to Troye, 285; leads the second division against Laomedon, 290; fights against Linceus, 340; in spite of his efforts cannot keep the Thebans from flight; is wounded in many places, but not slain, 341, as Linceus does not find him; is imprisoned by Linceus, 342; comforts Megera, 343; is set free by Hercules, 346; 454
- Ampolesye, Ampulesie, *Ampolesie*, *Ampulesie*, 262; 366
- Ancone, people of, 419; kyng of, 426
- Andolosye, *Andelouzie* (Andalusia), 394; Gerion was kyng of this country
- Andromadas, kyng of Calcide, 337-339; 340-41; 343
- Andromeda, *Andromeda*, wyfe of Perseus, 212; (*Andromadas*), 215; 216-17; 221; 224
- Anlacre, cyte of, 72
- Antheon, a geant of Lybye, 351; 353-54; 355-56; 358; 361-63; 364-66; 491
- Antigone, daughter of Laomedon, 274
- Aphyte, *laphite*, cyte of Epire, 316
- Apples, the golden, 284
- \*Appollo (Part B, see Appolyn) the god, 20; 21; 22; 23; 25; 86; 272; 275; 493; 494; 546; 549; 552; 605; 640
- Appollo, kyng of Paphes, 80; 81; 82; 84
- Apulye<sup>1</sup> (? Apulia), see of, 169; or Naples
- Apulyens,<sup>2</sup> inhabitants of Apulye, 187; 189; 193; 200; 213; 221; 222
- Aragon, Arragon, *Arragon*, kyng of, 415; 423
- Aragonnoys, *Arragonois*, inhabitants of Aragon, 417; 421; 423
- Archade, *Aroade*, caves of, 9; wood of, 50; cyte of, 60; 61; 90; 91; 93; 97; 126; 251; 370; 487
- Archadiens, inhabitants of Archade, formerly called the Pelagiens, 39; 59; 72; 74; 76; 88; 91; 93-95; 97-99; 100-2
- Archas, son of Calisto, 59; 60; 72-74; 76; 79; 80; 91-93; 98; 101; 102

<sup>1</sup> In the French text invariably used for "Naples."

<sup>2</sup> Where Caxton has "they of Naples" the French text reads "les apuliens," or "ceux d'apulia."

- Arcadois, Aroians**, a castle of kyng Creon, 229; 230; 231; 235; (**Aroyancye**), 241; 245
- \***Argea**, cite of, 103-4; 108; 110; (royame of), 112; 161; 163; 167; 168-9; 176; 203; 207-8; 222-225; 251; 252; 299; 546
- Argiens**, inhabitants of Argea, 122-23; 163; 224
- Aristotell, Aristote**, Polityques of, 365.
- Artoys** (county of Artois), 5, 6.
- Asculapius**. *See* **Esculapius**
- \***Assirie**, kyng Agenor of, 346; Assiry, belus, kyng of, 550
- Astilo, Asilo**, one of the centaures, 318
- Arye** (Asia), 37; 366; 367
- Athalanta, Athalanta**, afterwards wyfe of kyng Melleager of Achaye, 54; 57
- Athames, Athens**, porte of, 214
- Athaye**. *See* **Achaye**
- Athenyens**, people of Athens, 86; (**Atthenyenses**), 394; 500
- Athique, Atioque, Aotyque**, 50; 81; 131; 241; **Attyoque**, 246; **Attioque**, 247; 295
- Athlas**, son of Japetus, kyng of Libye and of Septe, 33; 81; does not allow Perseus to land in his country, 187; 196; recognises the arms of Medusa on the ship of Perseus; but nevertheless arms his people; bewayles his brother; draws up his people and valiantly defends the port of Septe, 197; after two days he compels Perseus to retire, 198; receives so heavy a stroke from Perseus that he gives up all hope of success, 200; encourages his people as well as he can, but finds he is not strong enough to resist Perseus and Danus and retreats to a high mountain, that was called after him; there he builds a castle and lives in it until the time of Hercules, 201; gives himself to the study of astronomy, 202; 203; 262; 264; 265; 270; 284; 355; 356; 357; is told by his knights that a strange giant asks for him; goes down and finds Hercules, who demands obedience from him; is discouraged, 358; but defies Hercules; arms himself and his men, and assails him; is stunned by a blow from Hercules and cries him mercy, 359; is forced to go with Hercules; is joyfully received by Philotes; but remains sorrowful and refuses to teach Hercules astronomy; at last he yields and tells

- him all he knows, 360; Hercules studies with him, 385; comforts Deianira, 390; holds school in Athens with Hercules, 393; accompanies Hercules against Gerion; they study during the voyage, 396; advises Hercules not to build the city of Seville, 397; is sent for by Hercules, 425; explains how Cacus produced the smoke, 425; is sent home to his country by Hercules, 427; 492
- Athlas, a hille, 201**
- \***Atthene, cyte of, 32; 86; 179-80; (porte of, 180), 185, 186; 229; 236; (Athene), 241; 244; 247; 251; 253; 262; 393; 394; 483; 501; (port of), 545-46; 551; 553; 579; 582; (duc of), 587; 592; 609; (port of), 617; (duc of), 619; 625-634; 648; 686**
- Augustyn, St., *Saint Augustin*, book of the cite of God, 217.; (Austyn), 38.,**
- Auria, Aurea, *Aurya*, wyfe of kyng Pricus, Prycus, 201; 203-5; 207**
- Aurora, daye sterre, 267**
- Austyn, St. See Augustyn, St.**
- Aventyn, *Adventin, auentin*, the mount of, a cyte nyhe the mount of, 177; 436; 438; 440; 444; 460**
- Babilon, *Babilonne*, tour of, 9**
- Bachedemon, *Bacedemon, Bachedemon* (Blache Demon), son of Perseus and Andromeda, 224; 226**
- Barseloyne (Barcelona), cyte of, 427; Barselone, 428**
- Basillique, *Basylyque*, 82; 83; 84**
- Belleforon, *Belorophon, Bellorophon*, a knight, 201; 203; 204; 205-7; (Bellorophon), 209; 210; 211; 212-14; 216; 222; 223; 224**
- Belus, *Bellus*, son of Epaphus, father of Agenor, 103; 104; 106; 107; 396**
- Berroutes, one of the three governours of Lennos (Lemnos), 178**
- Blache Demon. See Bachedemon**
- Bochace, genealogy of goddes, 20.; 33.; 39.; 50.; 60.; 215.; 216.; (Bocace), 246.; 271.; (Bokace), 284.; 396.,**
- Bourgoyne (Burgundy), 3.; 3.; 5.; 5.; 6.; 6.; 501.; 502.,**
- Braband (Brabant), 3.; 3.; 4.; (brabant), 5.; 6.; 501.;**
- Brugis (Bruges), in the countee of Flaundes, 3.; 502.,**

- Bryarius, Briarius**, son of Tytan, kyng of Nericos, 61;  
(Bryareus), 81
- Burye**, monk of, D. J. Lidgate, 502
- Busiers**, son of Libye, daughter of Epaphus, 103; **Busire**,  
302; **Busire, Busirie**, kyng, son of the quene of Libye,  
303; 304; 305-7; 352; 491
- Cacus**, kyng of Cartagene, 415; 416; 417; 418; 419; 420-25;  
427; 436; 437; 438; 439-43; 445-48; 449; 450; 451-54;  
459-60; 462; 470; 477; 491
- Calabre**, according to some it was once called Calidonye, 438.  
*See Calidonye*
- Calcedonya, Calcedoine, Calcedonie** (whiche lyeth in tho-  
posite of Achaye and of Archade), Calcedoyne, 370;  
371; 373; 375; 379; 380; 383; Calcedonie, 384;  
385; 498
- Calcedonyens**, 375; 376; 377; (Calcedoniens), 378; 380;  
381; 382
- Caloide**, † kyng of (Andromadas), 338
- Calidonia**, 223; (Calidoine), 438; 439; 459; 464; 465;  
467; 475; 490
- Calidoniens**, 461; 462; **Oalydoniens, calidonyens**, 463;  
464; 466; 467; 468; 469
- Calisto**, daughter of kyng Lichon, 48; 49; 50; 51-54; 55-58;  
59-60
- Candame, Caudame**, wife of Dardanus, 38
- Capadoce, Cadoce, Capadoce** (Cappadocia), 366; 367
- Carments**, wyfe of Kyng Euander, another name for Nycho-  
strate, (178); 456
- \***Cartage, Carthage**, 353; 683
- Cartagene, Cartagene, Cartagene**, cyte of, 415; 416
- \***Oastor**, brother of Pollux and Helayne, 349; 513; 529; 538;  
539; 540
- Castyle, Castille** (Castile, Castilla), royame of, 416; **Castyle**,  
Castile, 417; 421
- Castyllyens, Castiliens**, inhabitants of Castyle, 416; **Caste-  
lians**, 417; **Castelyens**, 418; 419; 420-421; **Castel-  
yans**, 422
- Catloygne, Castelongne** (Catalonia, Cataluña), 427
- \***Oaxton, Willyam**, 3..: 501-503; 701-2
- Oea**, an island, 61

- Cecyl.** *See* **Secle**  
**Cecyliens.** *See* **Secyliens**  
**Celion,** another name for **Vranus**, 9  
**Centaures, Ceentaures,** 144; 147; 149; 150-153; 154-55;  
 157; 161; 163; 171-72; 174-76; 315; 316; 317;  
 318-320; 339; 343  
**Ceon, Ceon,** son of **Tytan**, kyng of the island of **Cea**, 61;  
**C(x)eon**, 66  
**Cephus,** kyng of **Palestyn**, 214  
**Carberus,** a geant, porter of the cyte of **Helle** (the poettes  
 named hym the hound with the thre heedes, 330), 320;  
 321; 323-25; 329; 330-33; 334-36; 337  
**Ceres, Sceres, Soera,** daughter of **Vranus** and **Vesca**, 9; 14;  
 15; 26; 68; **Seres**, 167; 178; **Sera**, queen, 320; 321-23;  
 (mother of **Proserpyne**, 321) (**Sera** and **Seres**), 326; 328;  
 331; 337  
**Chymere** of **Cecyle**, *la chimere de cecille*, 206; 208; 209  
**Cibelle,** daughter of **Vranus** and **Vesca**, wyfe of **Saturn**, 9;  
 (**Cybelle**), 14; 15; 18; 19; 20; 24-5; 26-9; 31;  
 60-1; 63; 68; 69; 70-3; 75; 85  
**Cilarus,** one of the **Centaures**, 318; 319  
 \***Ciprea**, 61; **Cypres**, kyng of, 579  
**Cirene, Cyrene** (**Cyrene**, a city in **Libya**), 353  
**Cite** of **God**, book of the. *See* **Augustyn, St.**  
 \***Colen**, the holy cyte of, 37; **Coleyn**, 502<sub>ii, 31</sub>; (**Cologne**)  
**Colompnes** or **pylers** of **Hercules**, 396  
**Comodye**, first, of **Plaute**. *See* **Plautus**  
**Coroigne, Courongne,** a woman, 414  
**Coroignyens, Courongniens,** people of **Courongne**, 415  
**Corongne, Courongne, Courrongne** (**Corunna, Ooruña**), port  
 of, 407; **Couronge, Curongne**, 408; cyte of, 413  
**Corynthe,**<sup>1</sup> *Corinthe* (**Corinthus**), cyte of, 33; 35  
**Corynthiens, les corinthiens** (**Corinthians, inhabitants** of  
**Corinthus**), 35, 36; **Coryntheus, corynthieus**, 35, 37  
**Corynthus,** kyng, 33; 34  
**Cothulye,** kyng of, 361; 363  
**Cothulyens,** people of **Cothulye**, 363  
**Cremona,** cyte of, eleven geants of, 428; 429; 430; 431-32;  
 433; 434; 435-36; (geants, people, cyte), 454; 459  
**Cremonyens, inhabitants** of the cyte of **Cremona**, 435  
**Creon,** kyng of **Thebes**, father of **Megera**, 222; 228; 229;

252; 254; 283; 285; 290; 294; 298; 308, 309; 312;  
313; 337; 339; 340; 341; 344; 346

\**Crete*, yle of, 9; 10; lond of, kyng of, 15; 16; first queen of, 19; 21; 30; 33; lond of, 61; cyte of, 62; 64; 65; 68; 69; 70; 72-75; 80; 84; 86-89; 91; 92; 99; 100-103; 110-111; 113; 123; 131; 139; 140; 142; 143-45; 148-50; 154-55; 159; 160-61; 163; 170-71; 173; 175; 176-79; 226-27; 234-35; 239-40; 241; 245; 251; 287; 297; 298; 302; 304; 306; 545; 581; 656; 681; 686-88; 693

*Cyraouse*, *Cyraseus* (*Syracuse*, the famous city of Sicily), 177; 178

*Danaus*, son of *Belus*, 103; 203

*Danea*, daughter of *Acrisius*, the king of *Arges*, 102; 103; 104; 105; is brought to the copper tower by her father, 106; tries to interpret the answer of the god *Belus* more favourably, 107; unwillingly consents to do as her father wishes, 108; 109; 110; 111; is pleased with the jewels and orders the messenger to be well treated, 112; and thanked in her name, 113; is told by the old lady of the request of *Jupiter* and of the jewels he has brought, 114; she consents to see him, 115; 116; she speaks courteously to him, 117; converses with him apart, 118; will not listen to his proposals, 122; and entreats him to leave her with her friends, 123; agrees to tell him her final decision the next day; gives a feast in his honour, 124; thinks kindly of him; goes to her room accompanied by the old lady, 125; to whom she confides all, 126; and asks for advice, 127; goes to bed, 128; is horrified at the sight of *Jupiter*, and tells him he has betrayed her, 129; is at last appeased by his sweet words; sends for him the next morning, 130; has a long private conversation with him, with the result that *Jupiter* shall come with an army to fetch her away from the tower, 131; 143; 144; 148; 153; 154; 163; waits hopefully for

<sup>1</sup> *Caxton* says: "the cyte of corynthe whiche stant in naples"; in the French text the passage runs thus: "la cite de corinthe laquell siet en apulia." Page 169 *Caxton* says: "the see of apulye or naples." Evidently this is a mistake, for I am unable to find that there ever was a city of *Corinthe* in *Apulia*. In the French text "*Naples*" is never mentioned, but "*apulle*" always occurs in its place.



- the coming of Jupiter, 164; laments her fate and curses Jupiter, 165; becomes melancholy and falls ill; is taken by her father to his physicians; she denies their statement, 166; is put in the keeping of other women; weeps continually, then begins to be hopeful and gives birth to a son called Perseus; excuses her companions and is sentenced to death by her father, 167; is put in a little boat with her child and left to her fate, 168; is rescued by a fisherman who takes her to his hut, 169; is sent for by Pilonnus, King of Naples, to whom she tells her story, and who afterwards marries her. They have a son called Danus, 170; 171; 175; 176; 186; her son Perseus takes leave of her, 187; rejoices to hear of the victories of Perseus, 198; 203; 208; 224
- Danus, son of Danes and Pilonnus, 170; 198; 199; 200-202; 209; 210; 211-13; 222; 224
- Dardane, cyte of, afterwards named Troye, 33; 37; 38
- Dardanus, son of Corinthus, 33; 34; 35; 36; 37; 38
- Dardanyens, inhabitants of Dardane, 38
- Dedoum, *Dodoum*, son of Hercules and Echee, afterwards king of Egypte, 360
- \*Delphos, 18; 20; yle of, 272; 546; Delphe, 548; 550; 688; yle of, 693; 694
- Demorgogon, father of Ether, 9
- Deserts, yle of, 61; 172
- Destremadure, *Estremadure* (d'estremadure, Estremadura), 394
- Deyanyra, Deyanira, Deianira, daughter of Oeneus, kyng of Calcedonye, third wyfe of Hercules, 370; 371; 372; 373-75; 378-380; 384; 385; 386; 387; 388-90; 393; 395; 396; 475; 482-95; 497-98; 500; 501
- \*Diane, goddeese (Deane), 48; 50; 52; 53; 54; 55; (Dyane), 56; 57; 58; 235; 236; 237-39; (temple of), 346; 474; 495; 548; 549; 553; 554
- Diomedes, kyng of Trace, and of ten thousand thieves, 476; 477; 478; 479; 480; 481; 482; 491
- Dorillas, one of the centaures, 318
- Ecclisiastica, Historia.** *See Historia*
- Echee, the daughter of Affer, second wyfe of Hercules, 352; 353; 355; 360; 366

- \*Egea, see of, 61; 143; 172; 676  
 Egeon, son of Tytan, kyng of the see of Egea, and of the yle  
 deserte, 61; 66; 67; 76; 77; 78; (Egeus), 143; 170;  
 172; 173; 174; 175  
 Egeus, identical with Egeon  
 Egeus, *Egeon*, kyng of Athens, father of Theseus, 241; 244;  
 247; 253; 263; 264; 285  
 Egipcians, the inhabitants of Egipte, 306; 307; 308; 352;  
 353; 354-56; (Egypcyens), 360; 361; 362; 364; 366;  
 367  
 Egistus, the son of Belus, 103; 203  
 \*Egypte, 103; 302; (Egipte), 303; 304; 305; 306; 353;  
 360; 366; 367; 491; 549  
 Electra, a daughter of kyng Athlas, 33; 34  
 Electrion, the son of Gorgophon, 224; of Perseus, 226  
 Empire, the holy 5<sub>n</sub>; 6<sub>n</sub>  
 Encheladus, one of "the sones of Tytan," 66; 76  
 England, royame of, 4<sub>n</sub>; 5<sub>n</sub>; kyng of, 501<sub>n</sub>; 502<sub>n</sub>  
 Epaphus, the son of Ysis, 103  
 Eperion, kyng of Plipheros, 61  
 Epire, 39; 40; (Epirye), 40; 43; 52; 70; 316  
 Epiriens, people of Epire, 38; (thepiryens), 39; 40;  
 41; 44; 45; 48; 49; 50-53; 57; 69; 72; 74; 76;  
 77; 88  
 Epiryen, thepyrien (a man of Epire, killed by kyng Lichaon,  
 and served at a dinner to his countrymen), 39; 40; 41;  
 42; 43; 44; 52  
 Epiryen, martir, identical with the preceding one, 41  
 Eriotreus, *Erioteus*, son of Perseus and Andromeda, 224  
 Eristeus, *Euristeus*, *Euristeus*, kyng of Athique, 241; 248;  
 249; 250-52; 254; 262; 263; 283-285; 290; 294;  
 297; (Euristeus), 298; Euristus, 312  
 Erutonium, *Eriotonius*, the second kyng of Dardane, son of  
 Dardanus, 38  
 Esculapius, the son of Appollo of Paphos, medecyn of, *medecia*  
*Esculapius*, 80; 82; *Asculapius*, 83  
 Eeon, a centaur, father of Jason and kyng of Myrondone, 151;  
 152; 252; 347  
 Espaygne. See Spaigne  
 Esperiens. See Hesperiens  
 Esperye. See Hesperye

- Esperus.** *See* Phylotes  
**Ether,** son of Demorgogon, 9  
**Huander,** kyng of the cyte nyhe the mount Auentyn, 177;  
 178; 436; 441; 443; 444; 450; 451; 452; 453; 456;  
 459; 461; 462; 465; 475; 499  
**Eurions,** the pryncypall capitayn of the Centaures, 316; 317;  
 319  
 \***Europe,** *see of,* 171; **Ewrope,** 179; 353; 398; 519  
**Ewryale, Euriale,** the second daughter of kyng Porcus, 179  
 \***Exione, Exionne,** daughter of Laomedon, 270; (**Exiona**),  
 273; 274; 277; 278; 279; 280-81; 295; 351; 505; 507;  
 509; 510; 512; 515; 516; 517; 519; 520; 523; 525;  
 528; 530; 532; 533; 557; 560; 589; 625  
**Famus,** king of Laurence, son of Picus, 178; **Fanus,** son  
 of Pricus, 454; 458; 459  
**Fatua,** wyfe of Famus, 178; **Facua,** queen of Laurence, wife  
 of Famus, 454; 455; 456; 457; 458; 459  
**Flandres, Flanders,** countee of, 3<sub>11</sub>; **flandres,** 4<sub>11</sub>; 5<sub>11</sub>;  
**fllaundes,** 6<sub>11</sub>  
**Fortunate, yles, Isles fortunee,** 353  
**France,** 4<sub>11</sub>; 5<sub>11</sub>; 501<sub>11</sub>; 502<sub>11</sub>  
 \***Frigie, 38; Frygye,** 131; 286; **Frygie,** 305; 505; 576;  
 king of, 586; 612; 671  
**Frigiens,** people of Frigie, 132; 135; 136; 138  
**Fryse (Friseland, Friesland),** 5<sub>15</sub>; 6<sub>11</sub>  
**Gades,** now called Gallyce, 396  
**Galantyse,** nurse or maid of Alcumena, 235; 236; **Galantys,**  
 237; 238  
**Galyce, Galice,** mountains of, 394; 396; **Gallyce, Galyse,**  
 land of, 397; 408. *See also* Gades  
**Gammedes, or Gaminedes, Gamynedes,** son of Troos, 131;  
 132; 133; 134; 135-36; (**Gaminedes**), 138; 142; 143;  
 145; **Gamynedes,** 146; 148; 151; 152; 153; 154-58;  
 159-163; 171-73; 174-75; 227; 230; 231; 232-34  
**Gaunt (Gand, Ghent),** 502<sub>11</sub>  
**Gawdyane, Gaudiane, Guadiana,** a ryver, 394; **Guadiana,**  
 398; **gaudiana,** 401  
**Geryon, Gerion,** kyng of Andolosye and Destremadure and  
 of the mountains of Galyce and of Portyngale, 394; 395;

- 397; 398; 399; 400; 401; 402; 403-8; 409-14; 427;  
491
- Gethulye**, kyng of, 361; 363
- Gethulyens**, people of Gethulye, 363
- Giants**, daughter of Saturn, 33
- God**, cite of, book. *See* Augustyn, St.
- God of nature**, 257
- God of the sonne and of the see**, *les dieux de soleil et de la mer*, 271
- Gorge**, daughter of kyng Oeneus, sister of Deianira, the wife of Hercules, 370; 371; 379
- Gorgonnes**, *i.e.*, cultyueresses or labourers of the erthe, surname of the daughters of king Porcus, 179
- Gorgophon**, son of Perseus and Andromeda, 224; kyng of Argos, 252
- \***Greece**, 21; 23; 38; 81; 108; 185; 246; 255; 257; 261; 264; 265; 267; 283; 285; 290; 296; 297; 313; 348; 351; 395; 394; 401; 475; 478; 489; 501; 505; 510; 511; 513; 515; 516; 520; 524-528; 529; 531; 532; 534; 539; 540; 544; 545; 547; 548; 558; 559; 586; 595; 597; 608; 613; 626; 632; 652; 653; 656; 664; 668; 670; 673; 677; 678; 686; 691; 693
- \***Grekas**, 7; 186; 247; 257; 262; 264-65; 269; 281; 283; 286; 287; 288; 289-95; 347; 350-51; 375-77; 398-400; 401; 403; 406; (**Grekyns**), 407; 408-414; 417-19; 421; 423; 424; 432; 450-51; 463-64; 465; 467; 471; 475; 477; 481-83; 506; 509; 515-17; 519-20; 523-26; 528; 530; 532; 538; 541; 542; 545-46; 550-52; 554-56; 560; 561-65; 566-68; 570-75; 577-78; 581; 584-91; 593-94; 596-600; 601-608; 609-10; 612-15; 618-20; 622-24; 625-30; 632-33; 635-40; 641-47; 649-56; 657-58; 660; 662-72; 673; 675; 676-79; 682; 686; 699; 700; 701
- Gryneus**, one of the centaures, 318
- Gybaltar**, *Gibaltar* (Gibraltar), strait of, 187; 188; **Gybaltar**, 357; 396
- Habraham**, *Abraham*, father of Madyam, and grantfather of Affer, 352
- \***Hebe**, daughter of Jupiter and Juno, 85; 506
- Hebenus**, a ryuer, 385

- \***Helayne**, wyfe of Menelaus, sister of Oastor and Pollux, 7; 505; 527-41; 556; 558-59; 578; (nephew of), 583; 591; 598; 611; 623-25; 644; 651-53; 658; 664; 665; 668; 672; 686; 693
- Hell**, name afterwards given to the parties of Thesaylle, 33; 320
- Helle**, *Enfer*, cyte of, 86; **Hell**, 326; 327; 328; 329; 330-31; 337; 339; 342
- \***Hellespond**, *la mer d'ellespont*, see of, 37; 139; **Helespont**, 206; (**Hellesponte**, see of), 683
- \***Hercules**, son of Jupyter and Alcumena, the wyfe of Amphitricion, 7; 81; 103; 178; 201; 223; pedigree of, 224; 226; birth of, 239; strangles two serpents while lying in his cradle, 242; smiles at his terrified nurses and parents, 243; is taken to the temple of Mars by his father, who thanks the god for the marvellous escape of his son; Juno tells the people that Hercules is the son of Jupiter, 244; when Amphitricion hears this, he sends Hercules to King Eristeus to be educated, 245; he is brought up according to the ideas of Lycurgus, 246; Theseus of Athens is brought up with him; at the early age of seven Hercules throws every one in wrestling; people come from far and wide to see him; at the age of thirteen he "began to doo and sue the armes," 247; requests his foster father, Eristeus, to allow him to go to Mount Olympus and fight for fifteen days any one who may present himself, 248; Eristeus grants his wish; Hercules, describing himself as the "esquyer unknowen," sends a letter through a herald to all parts of Greece to invite people to Mount Olympus, 249-50; many kings and knights accept his invitation, 251; three kings are elected judges; to the sound of trumpets Hercules appears in the lists, 252; he is just fourteen years old; first he wrestles with Theseus and throws him, 253; he overcomes various other squires; sees Megera for the first time, 254; is smitten with her charms; his feelings are reciprocated by Megera, 255; on the fourth, fifth, sixth, and seventh days he excels all in running, shooting, and throwing the stone, 256; people declare he is the son of the "god of nature," and bless the woman who bore him; Megera has only eyes for Hercules; their mutual passion grows, 257; as nobody can match Hercules in any of the sports, the remainder of the

festival is devoted to a tournament among the kings and knights present, 258-60; the prize is unanimously given to him; from the date of this festival the first Olympiad is to be reckoned, 261; goes with Eristeus to Athens to see Megera; hears of the golden sheep of Athlas and Philotes, 262; declares that he will bring some of them to Eristeus before three weeks have passed; starts with Theseus for Hesperia, 264; when they at last arrive at the island they meet a giant, who asks them what they seek, 265; Hercules strikes the giant down dead; he is attacked by Philotes; they wrestle, 266; when they rest for a little while they agree that he who is conquered shall serve the other as long as he lives; Hercules remembers Megera, 267; they continue fighting, 268-69; Philotes is overcome and becomes Hercules' man; after three days' repose he and Theseus, with Philotes and sixty of the sheep return to Eristeus, 270; 271; on the journey homeward he arrives at Troye just when Exione is to be sacrificed to a monster of the sea, 274; asks Laomedon why his daughter is going to be given up to the monstre, 275; declares himself ready to fight against the monstre, 276; as reward, Laomedon promises to give him two of his best horses; armed with an iron bar, he proceeds to the place where Exione awaits her fate, 277; prays for strength to the "godde that made the monstres & terrible bestes"; the monstre arrives, 278; fights long against it and kills it; delivers Exione to her father, 279; 280; is feasted in Troye, but afterwards shamefully treated by Laomedon, 281; when Laomedon refuses to give him the two horses, he takes an oath that he will destroy Troye, 282; returns to Thebes where Megera welcomes him; sends the sheep to Eristeus, 283; Philotes tells the people of Hercules' valour, 284; Amphitriion and Alcumena own him now as their son; is elected captain of an expedition against Laomedon, 285; 287; fights very bravely, 288; the battle lasts until nightfall, when both armies retreat, 289; kills successively eleven Troians with eleven arrows, 290; performs feats of valour, 291; his people are surrounded by Laomedon's men, but Theseus and Amphitriion come to their rescue, 292; overthrows Pryant, 293; and takes him prisoner, 294; in the pursuit of the fleeing

Troians he is the first to enter their city; allows his people to pillage it, but yields to the request of the ladies, who have taken refuge there, to spare the palace of Ilium, 295; seeks Laomedon in vain; destroys the walls of Troye; returns to Greece, 296 [End of Book I.]; is persuaded by Juno to go and fight the lions of Nemee, 297; at Thebes, whither he goes first, Megera and all ladies vainly endeavour to dissuade him from undertaking this quest; he sets out in company of Philotes, 298; in the forest of Nemee he is assailed by three lions, 299; kills one of them, and strikes another, 300; cuts off a leg of the little lion, 301; strangles the old lion with his hands and kills the second which was still alive; he slays them with the help of Melorcus and Philotes; they pass the night at the hut of Melorcus, where Hercules attends to his wounds; returns to Crete, 302; on his return he thanks Juno for the adventure, and is praised and feasted by her, 304; when she tells him of the tyrant Busire, he swears that he will go to Egypt and do away with him, 305; has the lions' skins made up into a garment which he wears as armour. Arrives in Egypte with Philotes; is assailed by Busire and his people; the former he wounds mortally, the latter he drives to flight. At the request of the Egyptians he seizes Busire, 306-7; sacrifices him to the gods; their offer to become their king he refuses, and after appointing judges over them, he returns to Juno and King Creon, 308; goes into the forest to hunt, and all the time thinks of Megera, 309; goes into the palace garden, where Megera is with many ladies; he speaks to her, 310; reveals his passion to her, 311; asks Euristus and Amphitriion to request Creon to give him Megera in marriage; Creon gladly consents; the marriage takes place; afterwards he requests Creon to make him knight, 312; as the people of Iconie had chosen him to be their king; Creon is ready to comply with his request, arranges a great feast and tournament, to which he invites all the kings of Greece; Hercules is by himself in a tent, 313; before the assembled kings Creon confers the order of knighthood upon him; he mounts his horse, overcomes all who ride against him except Jason; is crowned King of Iconie, 314; goes to the wedding of Pirothus in the

company of Philotes, 315; knights Jason, 316; follows the centaures who carry off Ypodame the bride; he is in front of all, 317; fights with the centaures and kills many of them, 318; finds Euricus, who has Ypodame in his charge; strikes him down dead, 319; through his exertions the centaures are thoroughly defeated; he captures Linceus, 320; wishes with Jason to accompany Theseus and Pirothus into Helle, 328; follows them secretly in order to be near when they are in need of his assistance; charges Philotes to take the prisoner Linceus to Thebes, 329; arrives just in time to save Theseus from Cerberus, 333; vanquishes Cerberus and takes him prisoner, 334; binds him securely, and proceeds to the palace where Pluto and Proserpine are; after having severely blamed Pluto for his misdeeds, he strikes him down with his club, 335; puts to death all his assailants; reassures Proserpine and conducts her out of the palace; finds at the gate a number of the citizens of Helle who attack him; he overcomes them and kills no less than four hundred; receives from Theseus the chain by which Cerberus used to tie his prisoners; sets the prisoners free, 336; binds Cerberus with the same chain; buries Pirothus; starts with Cerberus, Proserpine, and Theseus; arrives at Thessalonyque, where he delivers Proserpine to Ceres and Cerberus to Ypodame; returns with Theseus to Thebes, 337; 338; 339; 341; 342; 343; when he enters the royaume of Thebes he hears of Linceus' doings; goes in disguise to the palace, kills some of the soldiers, and, 344, strikes down Linceus, who has come down unarmed to settle the quarrel between his soldiers, and gives him into the charge of Juno and the damoyseles; he then goes out into the streets and destroys, with the help of the Thebans, all the enemies; orders Megera's prison to be opened, 345; is on the point of taking her in his arms, when Linceus accuses her falsely of adultery; believes Linceus, strikes off his head, and kills his wife Megera with the same sword; sets Amphitrion and Philotes free; leaves Thebes in the company of Theseus and Philotes, 346; is made king of Licye; arrives in Myrondone; makes up his mind to go with Jason to conquer the golden fleece; they make ships ready and go as far as



Troy, where they wish to take in provisions; Laomedon refuses to allow them to do so, even for money; vows to destroy Troy a second time,<sup>1</sup> 347; at Lemnos he reproves the wife of King Phyneus; returns to Greece; praises Jason to his parents and friends; tells them how the King of Troy treated them; the destruction of Troy is resolved upon, 348; after having made preparations, they set sail, and arrive at Troy, 349; kills many Troians and King Laomedon; the others are driven to flight; enters the city of Troy, 350; gives Exiona to Thelamon as reward for having the first entered the city; pillages the palace of Ylion; takes all the treasures, and rases the city and destroys it by fire; goes with Theseus and Philotes to Alexandre, where he is well received by Affer, 351; decides to go with Affer to Libye and conquer Busire; sees Echee, Affer's daughter, 352; falls in love with her and marries her; assails Antheon in the city of Libye, 353; kills many Libyens; fights with Antheon, 354; drives him to fight; returns to Echee who helps to unarm him, 355; grants to Antheon a month's truce; makes up his mind to go to the royaume of Athlas, 356; goes thither with Philotes and three mariners; arrives at the castle; leaves the boat in the charge of his companions; meets a servant of Athlas who directs him, 357; is admitted, and speaks to Athlas; demands obedience from him, 358; is upbraided by Athlas; fights against Athlas' men; kills twelve of them with twelve strokes; stuns Athlas and drives the others to flight, 359; makes Athlas cry him mercy; takes all his books and compels him to go with him; requires Athlas to teach him astronomy; which Athlas reluctantly does; returns with honour to Affer, and finds that Echee has born him a fair son, 360; studies science with great energy; prepares to fight with Antheon; conducts the first battle himself, 361; encounters Antheon, wounds and overthrows him, and would have killed him, if the Libyens had not come between them; kills many Libyens, 362; compels the others to flee, 363; enters Libye and becomes master of the city, makes Affer king, and names the country after him, Affrique, 364;

<sup>1</sup> As Lefevre had previously written in the "Jason" of the expeditions of the Argonauts, he here omits it.

establishes the laws of Greece in Affrique, and introduces the sacrament of marriage; Antheon, with a new army, attacks him; he overcomes Antheon's people, and kills Antheon at last, 365; erects a memorial to Antheon, and buries him; conquers Tyngie, Ampulesie, and several other countries, and gives them all to Affer; his wife, Echee dies; makes great sorrow for her; is on the point of leaving the country when a messenger from the Queens of Sithee comes to challenge him, 366; accepts the challenge, 367; enters the lists with Theseus, where they find the two ladies already awaiting them, 368; in the first bout all four are borne to the ground; overcomes Menalipe and admonishes Theseus, 369; receives the arms of Sinophe in token of submission; makes peace with her on condition that she gives Ypolite in marriage to Theseus; goes to Calcedonie to see Deianira of whose beauty he has heard; is honourably received by her father, Oeneus, 370; falls in love with her, 371; hears from Oeneus that Achelous has asked for Deianira's hand; advises him to fight against Achelous, 372; promises to help him in the war; passes most of his time with Deianira, 373; although he thinks but of her, he does not reveal his passion, wishing first to distinguish himself in arms, 374; advises Oeneus to sound to arms, when he hears Achelous approach; puts the Calcedoniens in order for battle, 375; exhorts them to fight bravely; enters the battle and shoots upon his enemies, 376; performs feats of valour, 377; shows his gigantic power, and puts Achelous' people to flight, 378; follows Achelous by water; enters his kingdom and besieges him in his castle, 379; the mere sight of him drives the enemies to flight; not a single blow is struck; thinks of Deianira, 380; assaults the castle repeatedly without success, 381; sees a light out at sea; goes with his men to find out what it is; is attacked by Achelous from an ambush, but sets his men in order and abides the attack of his enemies, 382; wounds Achelous; captures him; disperses his people; conquers his castle and puts about twelve hundred people to death, 383; enters the city of Patrace, where he finds little resistance; adds the whole to the kingdom of Oeneus; returns to Calcedonie to see Deianira; is honourably

received, 384; asks Oeneus for the hand of Deianira; obtains it; marries her with great pomp; soon afterwards he goes with her to Iconie; studies with Athlas; meets Nessus at the river Hebenus with a little boat, 385; accepts Nessus' offer to ferry him and his people across the river; sends Deianira and her maidens first; seeing Nessus carrying Deianira off, shoots an arrow through his heart, 386; is anxious about Deianira; throws his dress, harpoons, and club across, 387; and swims over to the other bank; finds Deianira safe and Nessus dead; withdraws his arrow from the body, which he leaves where he found it, 388; returns to the river, ferries his men across; is well received by the King of Lerne, who tells him of the monster Ydra; makes up his mind to destroy this monster, 389; in spite of Deianira's entreaties sets out to find the Ydra, 390; suffers the monster to come near and speak to him; solves seven problems the monster gives him; fights with it, 391; 392; after a hard struggle kills the Ydra, and fetches the King of Lerne, Deianira, and his people to see the monster; sacrifices to the gods; burns the Ydra's body; returns to Lerne with great honour and glory; goes to Athens, where he is gladly received by Theseus; holds a school there with Athlas, 393; studies astronomy with great zeal; goes to Lycie, where many noblemen and others learn from him science and philosophy, 394; hearing Affer's complaints about Gerion, he promises to help him to make war on Gerion, 395; takes leave of Deianira and sets out with his men; on the way he continues his studies with Athlas, and is never idle; arrives in Affrica, passes the straits of Gibraltar; goes into Gades; peoples this country and gives it to a man named Philistenes; has pillars erected along the coast with a statue of himself upon them, 396; makes a stone pillar in the place where now Seville stands, and wishes to build a city there; Athlas dissuades him from carrying out this plan; erects a statue of himself by the side of the pillar; leaves the country in the keeping of eight hundred men from Sithye, 397; goes on the river Guadiana near Megida, 398; rejoices to see Gerion approach with his army, 399; kills many of his enemies with arrows; sinks one of the galleys through a mighty

blow of his club, that its inmates are drowned; does great feats of arms, and forces Gerion to retreat, 400; encloses Gerion's ships so that in order to go to the town Gerion must pass by him; finding in the morning that Gerion has fled, he assaults the city of Megida, and soon conquers it, 401; is unable to find Gerion; goes to the temple and holds a devotion; messengers from Gerion bid him leave the city; refuses to do so, 402; allows Gerion and his people to land; remains for the night in Megida; puts his army before sunrise the next day in order for battle, 403; when he admonishes his soldiers to do their duty; Gerion approaches; opens the gate and goes out with his men; speaks to Gerion and his brothers, 404; overcomes both brothers of Gerion; fights very fiercely with Gerion, 405; slays more than six hundred of his enemies; wounds one of the brothers mortally, 406; follows the retreating Gerion with twelve hundred men, 407; 408; enters the port of Courogne where Gerion has landed, and draws up his men; as the Greeks cannot land he enters a little boat and tries to win the port alone, 409; after a hard resistance he manages to get ashore and make way for Theseus and Hispan and three hundred men, 410; does marvels of valour, 411; gives Gerion a blow with his club, 412; kills Gerion; on seeing his enemies taking to flight, he thanks the gods and pursues them, 413; after killing many of them, he returns at nightfall to his ships; as the country seems good to him he builds a town which he names Oroigne, after the name of the first woman who comes to help build it; builds a tower on the tomb of Gerion, 414; invites all the maidens of the country to a feast in remembrance of Gerion's death; returns to Megida, where one hundred fair oxen are presented to him; hears of the tyrannies of Cacus and undertakes to chastise him, 415; enters Castile; passes through many countries which submit to him; Cacus defies him through a messenger, 416; accepts his challenge, 417; marches against Cacus, 418; kills many Castilians; encounters Cacus, who cleaves his shield, 419; after a fight of two hours, Cacus retires, 420; does not follow him, but kills many people of Castile and Aragon; when Cacus returns to the battle he tries to reach him, but Cacus and

his people dare not abide his strokes, 421; tries to follow them on the Mount Monchaio, where they take refuge, but they throw huge stones upon him and compel him to retreat; makes a vow that he will never depart from the foot of the mountain, 422, until he has obliged Cacus to come down by famine or otherwise; has the bodies buried and a tent pitched; on the next day he divides his army in two parts and sends Hispan with one half to Aragon and Navarre, while he remains with the other half at the foot of the mountain, 423; mistakes the fire issuing from the mouth of Cacus and his followers for lightning, and tries to find an explanation of the smoke in his books; sends for Athlas, 424; asks his opinion; ascends the mountain to see if Cacus has really escaped; resolves not to pursue him, because he has so cleverly deceived him, 425; finding the country good and fertile, he resolves to build a city there, which he calls Terracone, and gives it to the son of the King of Ancone; goes to Salamanca and founds a study there, 426; goes into Cataloygne and founds the city of Barseloyne; gives Athlas and Philotes leave to return to their countries; gives to Hispan the country now called Spain, 427; departs from Barseloyne and goes to Lombardy; arrives at Cremona, 428; Nestor comes to him and defies him in the name of eleven giants, 429; 430; comes alone before the gate of the city of Cremona and tells the messenger he is ready to fight with the eleven giants all at once, 431; he kills one of the giants, 432; and brings in less than one hour four more to the ground, 433; seeing that the sun is going to set, he endeavours to finish the battle, 434; kills all the giants except Nestor, who runs away; the people of Cremona surrender to him and acknowledge him as their king; enters their city and passes the night in it with his people, 435; buries the ten giants honourably and has a tower erected over their grave with eleven statues on it; leaves people in Cremona to govern their city, and continues his journey, studying all the time; his fame has spread all over Italy; he is solemnly received by King Evander, 436; 438; 439; 440; has his oxen brought unto the city that Evander might see them; asks for a place where he might send them to pasture; sends them in spite of Evander's

warning into the neighbouring fields, 441; 442; goes early the next morning to see if they are safe, 443; finds four cows and four oxen have disappeared; bids his people to search for their foot-prints; asks Evander, who dwells on the mount Aventyn; follows the footprints, 444; has some calves brought to the mountain and hears the cows answer their cries, 445; searches for three hours without result; pulls up a tree and discovers the cave of Cacus, 446; admonishes Cacus, 447; gives him the choice of fighting with him in the cave or outside in the open, 448; does not let Cacus escape by means of the fire, as the first time; leaps into the cave and strikes him with his club; fights with him; is pelted by the three daughters of King Pricus; after an hour they take a rest, 449; continues the battle outside the cave; reproaches Cacus for killing his cows, 450; he rests again; doubles his strokes and brings Cacus at last to the ground; does not allow the Greeks to follow the three sisters; tells Evander that Cacus has troubled the country, and that he will put him to death, 451; Cacus tries to escape, but he brings him back, 452; and casts him into a horrible pit; is received with great honour in the city of Evander, who promises to build a temple in his honour; promises to stay until the temple is finished, 453; many people come to see him and call him the son of god Jupiter; among them the Queen of Laurence, whom he receives kindly, 454; they spend the day together, 455; he does not notice that the Queen is in love with him; accepts an invitation to Laurence and takes leave from Evander, 456; sees that the Queen is not indifferent to him and asks her that he might be her knight, 457; does all he can to please her, and begets a son on her; comforts her, 458; goes with her to meet her husband King Fanus, who honours him; after four days he returns to Evander; is defied through a messenger by King Pricus, 459; receives the message with satisfaction and feasts the messenger; at dawn he makes himself ready for battle, 460; runs swiftly towards the army of Pricus and forces his way into it, 461-2; drives the Caledonians to flight, 463; pursues them and besieges them in their city for a while without success, 464; disguises himself and goes to the gate of the city; is ad-

mitted and taken as prisoner before King Pricus, 465; throws the porters to the ground, assails those in the hall and kills Pricus, 466; after killing the inmates of the palace he proceeds into the streets, where many Calidoniens rush upon him, 467; he breaks down the city gate and bids his people enter, 468; in the palace, which he enters with Theseus, he finds the daughters of Pricus seeking for the body of their father; he greatly admires Yole and will comfort her, but she flees from him; he follows her into a room, 469; requests her for love, and tries to appease her, 470; leaves her at the request of the lady who educates her, and passes the time with Theseus; orders twelve men to watch her door and let nobody pass; has the dead bodies removed and Pricus put into a sepulchre; thinks continually of Yole, 471; 472; 473; on the next day he asks her once more to become his wife, 474; they soon get on intimate terms; he forgets Deianira; gives Yole's sisters to some Greek knights in marriage and leaves them to govern Calidonia; departs and takes leave of Evander, goes on board his ship with his company; is always with Yole, 475; meets a galley of merchants, who tell him of the tyrant and thief Diomedes, 476; asks the patron of the galley where the forest is; determines to go alone thither and seek Diomedes, 477; in spite of Yole's entreaties he starts with Philotes in a little boat; finds Diomedes in the forest and tells him he has come to kill him, 478; bears Diomedes to the ground and fights with the hundred thieves, 479; in less than an hour he kills sixty of them and drives Diomedes and the others to flight; runs after Diomedes, pulls him off his horse, unarms and binds him, and throws him before the horses, which devour him, 480; with the arms of Diomedes he returns to Philotes, and tells him his adventure; gives Philotes the arms and sends him with them to Truce to demand submission of the citizens, 481; enters the city himself with his Greeks; is conducted to the palace; puts to death all evil-doers; ordains judges over the people and returns to the royaume of Licye, where he remains with fair Yole, 482; 483; 484; 485; 486; receives a letter from Deianira, 487; reads it, 488; writes an answer and sends it to her through her squire Licas, 489;

490; 491; 492; receives a second letter from Deianira, is smitten with remorse; shuts himself up for a time, not allowing any one to come near him; on the pretext of wishing to sacrifice to Apollo he departs with Philotes, 493; meets Lycas, who asks him if he has any message for Deianira; he promises to go to her or send for her after he has made his sacrifice, 494; Lycas brings him a poisoned shirt; receives, and not thinking any evil, puts it on, 495; soon feels the effect of the terrible poison and knows that he must die; perceiving Lycas (496) he blames him for having deceived him, and then dashes him against a rock; in his great agony he runs over hills and valleys and pulls out great trees; returns to the temple and curses Deianira, 497; 498; takes his club and throws it into the fire; prepared for the sacrifice, gives his bow and arrows to Philotes and asks him to recommend him to Yole and to his friends, lies down in the flames and dies,

499; 501; 505; 563; 564

**Hercules, Colompnes or pylers of, 396**

**Hesperus, son of Japetus, 81**

**Hesperye, Esperye, Hesperye, Esperie, Hisperye, land of, 179; 262; 265; (Hisperye), 266; 396; 399; 428; 439; 446**

**Hesperiyena, Esperyena, Esperiens, Hisperiens, 179; 195; 400; Hesperiens, 404; 405; (Hisperiyens), 407; 409; 410; 413**

**Heynawd, Palatyne of (Hainault), 5<sub>u</sub>; 6<sub>n</sub>**

**Hisperye. See Hesperye**

**Holand (Holland), 4<sub>x</sub>; 5<sub>u</sub>; holland, 6<sub>n</sub>**

**Hyspan, who received from Hercules the countries of Gerion and Cacus, after him called Spaigne (Hispania), 398; 399; Hispane, 407; Hispan, 410; 411; 421; 423; 427; 428**

**Iconie. See Yoonie**

**Ilion. See Ylion**

**Ipolitus, a man killed by his stepmother and raised from the dead by means of a wonderful herb discovered by Esculapius, 83**

**Italy. See Ytaly**

**Ixion. See Yxion**

**Janus, Janus, kyng of Laurence, 177; (hospitably receives Jupiter and tells him about his father Saturn)**



- Japetus, Jopetus, *Japetus***, son of Tytan, 81  
**Jaques, St.**, 426; converted Spain to the Christian faith  
**Jasius**, son of Corythus, 33; 34; 35; 36  
**Jason**, son of Eson, 252; 313; 314; 316; 317; 319; 320; 328; 347; 348; 349  
**Jocasta**, daughter of kyng Creon, wife of Layus and sister of Megera, the first wife of Hercules, 346  
**Joppen**, port of, 214; 217; 221  
**\*Juno**, daughter of Saturn and wife of Jupiter, birth of, 26; is brought up in Parthemye, where she is often visited by her father, 33; welcomes her brother Jupiter, on his return from Paphes, and falls in love with him; goes back to Parthemye, 84; where he often goes to see her; they are married and have a daughter named Hebe, 85; is in Parthemye with her husband, 89; when he tells her he is going to Archade, 90; she informs Saturn where he is, 92; is sent for by Vesca and Cibelle, 102; is jealous and curses Danes, 109; welcomes her husband, feasts him and his friends, 175; makes him great cheer, 176; has a son by him called Vulcan; blames Jupiter for the birth of Proserpine and tells him he has dishonoured her, 178; Jupiter returns to her at Crete, 225; where they study magic; they go to the wedding of Amphitriion and Alcumena, 226; becomes jealous when Jupiter praises Alcumena in her presence, 227; hears that Alcumena is with child, and becomes still more jealous and suspicious of Jupiter, 234; resolves to kill Alcumena, and secretly leaves Crete; enters a temple of Diana near Arciancie and speaks to Galantyse, 235; asks after Amphitriion and Alcumena; tries to kill Alcumena by means of sorcery, 236; remains in the temple three days; is noticed by Gallantyse, 237; who deceives her; runs out of the temple, 238; is troubled at her want of success and laments her fate, 239; resolves to kill the son of Alcumena. returns to Crete, assembles the serpents, 240, and takes home two of the most venomous; leaves Crete secretly when her husband is away and arrives at Arciancie; finds the room where the children are, 241; puts the two serpents into the room when they are all asleep, 242; goes away angry that she has not killed Hercules, 243; being in the crowd assembled to see Hercules, she tells

the people that he is the son of Jupiter, 244; withdraws from the press, takes another form and returns to Crete, 245; is at war with Erictus, makes peace with him and becomes acquainted with Hercules, whom she tells of the lions of Nemea, 297; asks him to return to her when he has vanquished them, 298; 302; is sorrowful at the death of a relative slain by Busira, and also that Hercules has not been killed by the lions; lives no longer with her husband; receives and feasts Hercules; tries to find some other way to destroy him; flatters him, 304; and tells him of Busira, 305; rejoices when he goes to conquer him, 306; is sorry when he returns in safety, 308; is glad to find Thebes in the hands of Hercules' enemies, 343; takes charge of the wounded Linus, 345; whom she incites to calumniate Megera, and falsely accuse her of adultery, 346; Goddess Juno, 521; 522; temple of, 644  
 Jupiter, the Auncient, the wise kyng of Aetyque, 50; 131; father of Pilonnus, 170

Jupiter, born of Archade, father of Epaphus, 103

\*Jupiter, Jupyter, Jubyter, son of Saturn and Cybelle, 7, 8; birth of, 26; is saved by Vesca from his mother who intends, according to her husband's instructions, to kill him, 27; laughs at the damsel who will kill him, 28; is saved from death, 29; is taken by a damsel to the daughters of Melliseus in the city of Oson, 31; 32; 33; 38; invites the Epiryens to avenge the death of their comrade and to chastise Lichaon, 41, 42; his advice is accepted, 43; addresses the Pelagiens at the marketplace of their city, tells them how cruel their king is, 44; asks their assistance and advice how to punish Lichaon; is chosen their leader and captain, 45; 46; 47; when seeking Lichaon he finds Calisto his daughter in tears, 48; tries to console her, 49; 50; refuses to become king, but consents to be captain, 51; thinks of Calisto's beauty and wishes to see her, 52; goes in the disguise of a woman to the convent of Diane where she is, 53; is admitted; learns to spin and work in silk; thinks all the time how he can see Calisto, 54; finds her one day alone by a well and reveals his passion to her, 55; in spite of her resistance has his will with her and begets a son upon her, 56; returns to the Epiryens who welcome him; out on hunt-

ing he finds an opportunity to speak to Calisto, who refuses to listen to him; returns to Melliseus, 57; 58; orders his son, who attempts to kill Calisto, to be taken into custody, 59; comforts Calisto, keeps Archas in his palace, 60; is sent for by Cibelle to defend Crete against Tytan and his sons, 69; 70; rejoices to hear that he is the son of Saturn, 71; gathers his forces and goes to Crete, 72; near the city he halts and sends Archas to Tytan, who defies him, 73; 74; gives him battle, 75; performs great feats of valour, 76; kills Tytan, 77; and also Liohaon, drives Egeon to flight; is challenged by Typhon to single combat, 78; overcomes him and throws him into a river, 79; enters Crete as victor and is welcomed by his father, mother and relatives, 80; is acknowledged by Saturn as son, and sent to fight against Appollo of Paphes, 81; gloriously terminates this expedition; returns to Crete, falls in love with his sister Juno, 82; his passion is reciprocated, 84; marries her; has a daughter named Hebe, 85; 86; 87; 88; in Parthemye where he stays with Juno, 89, he receives a secret message from his mother that Saturn is in arms against him; leaves Parthemye and goes to Archade, 90; waits to see what his father will do; hears from Saturn's messengers, 91; that his father wishes to speak alone with him, 92; refuses to go without escort, 93; musters his forces, makes Saturn retreat, 94; sends ambassadors to his father, 95; 96; 97; gives a new battle to Saturn; fights very bravely, 98; encounters his father, but will not strike him, 99; warns his father to leave the battle, 100; drives Saturn's people to flight, 101; is crowned King of Crete, 102; 103; 108; greatly desires to see Danes, the daughter of Acrisius, and to deliver her from the tower, 109; decides to go thither; takes with him many jewels to bribe the guardians; arrives at the tower in the disguise of a servant; speaks to the matrons, 110; tells them that he brings presents from King Jupiter of Crete; is allowed to enter a little room near the gate, 111; is feasted there by the damsels; distributes his presents between them, 112; receives a gracious message from Danes, returns to Crete and has more jewels made, 113; goes again to the tower; showing his treasures, he asks for permission to speak to Danes,

114; 115; converses with the chief matron, an old lady, 116; who at last yields to his wishes; speaks to Danes, is greatly impressed by her beauty, 117; lavishes his jewels upon the damsels; speaks in private with Danes, tells her who he is, and that he loves her, 118; 119; 120; entreats her to go with him and be his love, 121; 122; 123; is feasted by Danes, 124; is allowed to sleep for the night in a secret chamber, 125; 126; 127; thinks all night of Danes and cannot sleep, 128; gets up, creeps to Danes' room; finds the door open, enters, 129; after having passed the night with Danes, he returns early in the morning to his bed; does not wake until he is called, 130; arranges with Danes that he will go back to his country and return with an army to fetch her, 131; 139; 143; when he has finished his preparations the news is brought him, that his father marches towards him with the Troians; awaits their approach in a narrow pass, 144; 145; excuses his conduct to the messenger and tells him he will defend himself if they attack him, 146; when he is at the head of his army an eagle flies round him, and is near him as long as the battle lasts, 147; will not fight his father; kills many Troians and thinks all the time of Danes, 148; when the battle is ended at night, the eagle follows him and sits upon his tent; has a banner made with an eagle in gold upon it, 149; visits the wounded, prepares everything for the morrow, 150; rides at the head of the centaures, 151; although impatient to see Danes, he sees the necessity of pursuing the Troians by sea; enters a temple of Mars, where the eagle follows him, 153; sacrifices it to Mars; follows the Troians, 154; arrives at the port of Troye, lands, 155; 156; 157; encounters Troos, 158; fights with Gaminedes, 159; wounds and overcomes him, spares his life and takes him prisoner, 160, 161; sups with Ixion and the Centaures; sends for Gaminedes, whose valour he praises; declares his intention of starting the next day for Arges, 163; 164; 165; 168; bids his mariners to hasten as he is anxious to be with Danes, 170; all his ships are wrecked; comes to a strange country; is anxious about Danes, 171; meets Egeon in the see of Egec; yields to the request of Gaminedes and gives him his arms; they become companions and friends,

172; fights with Egeon and overcomes him, 173; does great feats of arms, conquers the pirates; binds Egeon with 100 chains of iron, 174; after a year's absence he at last returns to Crete, where Juno and his people welcome him, 175; gathers another army to fetch Danes; meets a nobleman who tells him Danes' fate; returns to Crete in great grief, falls in love with Ceres, his aunt, 176; knows her fleshly; she has daughter by him; conquers Sicily and the island of Lemnos; arrives in Italy, is well received by Janus; hears that his father is in the neighbourhood; goes to him and makes peace with him, 177; Nychostrate, the wife of Evander, teaches him nycromancy; goes back to Crete where he finds Juno delivered of Vulcan, Ceres of Proserpine; gives Ceres in marriage to Siccum to satisfy Juno; makes Siccum king of Sicily and the city of Syracuse; sends Vulcan to Lemnos, 178; 179; 186; makes an alliance with Troos through Gaminedes, and gives Ylicon a *vigus* of gold, 202; 208; when he is with Vulcan at the obsequies of Acrisius, he meets Perseus, goes back to Crete and exercises himself in science and magic, 225; is present with Juno at the wedding of Amphitriion and Alcumena, whom he greatly admires, 226; is smitten with her beauty, excites Juno's jealousy; in the wish to overcome his passion goes out hunting only accompanied by Gaminedes; is asked through a messenger to help King Creon in a war; collects an army and goes to Thebes, where he hopes to find Alcumena, but in vain, 227; wishes to go to the castle of Arciancie, where she dwells, but fears Amphitriion's jealousy; helps Creon to besiege Thelleboye, which is taken; when he sees Amphitriion depart he makes a plan, 229; departs also with Gaminedes, to whom he reveals his intentions, 230; has the latter's promise to help him to the best of his power; arrives at Arciancie at night; is taken by the porters for Amphitriion and conducted to Alcumena's room; wakes her, 231; spends the night with her, has his will with her; enchants all the people in the castle, sends Gaminedes out to keep watch for Amphitriion, 232; makes Alcumena sleep and transforms himself into one of her servants, 233; leaves the castle with Gaminedes, excites Juno's wrath by praising Alcumena, 234, 235; 239; 241;

244; 245; 246; 248; declares that Hercules is not his son,  
252; 257; 287; 304; 320; 342; Hercules is called the son  
of god Jupiter, 454; 506; 509; god of the Troians, 528

**Kente**, in the weeld, birthplace of William Caxton, 4<sub>a</sub>

**Lacedomone**, in Greece, 251

\***Laomedon**, kyng of Troye, son of Ylion, 202; 203; 270; 271;  
272; 273; 274; 275; 276; 279-82; 285-88; 289-95;  
297; 342; 347-51; 505; 507; 512; 513; 548

**Laryse**, *Larissa*, a cyte nyhe Tenadon, 286

**Latyne**, son of Hercules and Facna or Fatua, queen of Lau-  
rence, 458

**Laurence**, cyte of, 177; quene of, 454; 456; 458

**Layus**, son of Agenor, 346; was crowned kyng of Thebes, and  
wedded Jocasta, the daughter of kyng Creon

**Ledeum**. See *Lodeum*

**Le Peure**, Raoul, the compiler of "Le Recueil des histoires  
de Troye," 3; 6<sub>a</sub>; 502<sub>a</sub>

**Lemos** (Lemnos), yle of, 177; 178; porte of, 348

**Leoncius**, *leonovus racompte* (as *L. reheroeth*), 47<sub>17</sub>

**Lerne**, cyte of, *ydre, palus de lerne*, ydre of, palus of, 388; (kyng  
of) 389; 390; 393

**Liber Pater**, one of the kynges conquered by Perseus, 226

**Libiens**, *Libyens*, people of Libye, 354; 355; 356; 361;  
*Lybyens*, 362; 363; 364

**Libye**, a daughter of Epaphus, 103; 364

**Libye**, name of Affrike, 33; 81; 187; (rocks of), 190; 198;  
199; 303; 353; 357; 364; 366; 491

**Licas**, *Lycas*, squire of Deianira, 483; 484; 485; 486; 487;  
489; 493; 494; 495; 496; 497; 500

**Lichaon**, *Lychaon*, kyng of Pelage, eldest son of Tytan, 38;  
39-42; 44; 45; 46; 47; 48; 49-52; 66; 67; 76; 77; 78

\***Licoe**, cite of, royame of Hercules, 224; 347; 394; 395; 396;  
482; 483; 487; 488; 489; 499; 566; 575

**Lidgts**, Dan John, the monks of Burye, wrote the Sege of  
Troye, 502<sub>a</sub>

**Ligurgis**, *Ligurys* (*Lycurgus*), law of, 246

**Linosus**, son of Egistus and husband of Ypermestra, 103; 203

**Lodeum**, *Lodeum*, one of the centaures, 318; *Ledeum*, 319

**Lombardy**, *Lombardis* (Lombardy), 427; 428

- London, cyte of, 3<sub>n</sub>  
 Lotryk (Lorraine), 3<sub>n</sub>; 5<sub>n</sub>; Lothryk, 6<sub>n</sub>  
 Luxenburgh (Luxemburg), 5<sub>n</sub>  
 Lybye, Lybyens. *See* Libye, Libyens  
 Lycas. *See* Licas  
 Lymburgh, 5<sub>n</sub>; Lymbourgh, 6<sub>n</sub>; (Limburg)  
 Lynceus, one of the centaures, 320; 329; 337; 338; 339; 340;  
 341; 342-46  
 Madyam, *Madiam*, son of Habraham, and father of Affer,  
 35<sup>2</sup>  
 Magnesie (Magnesia), 251  
 "Mala aurea sustulit," 284. *See* Bocace and Varro  
 referring to the meaning of the Greek *mala*, "sheep"  
 and "apples."  
 Malion, *Mallion*, nephew of Vlizes, 406; 408  
 Marcey, *Massille*, cyte of, 357  
 Margarete, duchesse of Bourgoyne, wife of Philip the Good,  
 mistress of W. Caxton, 3<sub>n</sub>; 5<sub>n</sub>; 501<sub>n</sub>; 502,  
 Mars, god, 14; 26; 153; 154; 244; 454  
 Mauree, *les parties des Maures*, 262; † identical with Mauri-  
 tayne  
 Mauritayne, *Mauritaine* (Mauritania), 364; *Mauritaine*,  
 cyte of, 366; *Moritane*, king of, 366  
 Mauritaynes, *Mores* (Mauri), inhabitants of Mauritayne, 365  
 Mechlyn (Mechlin or Mechelen), 5<sub>n</sub>; 6<sub>n</sub>  
 Medea, *Medes* (daughter of king Ates of Colchis), 348  
 Meduse, eldest daughter of kyng Porcus, one of the Gorgones,  
 179; 180; 181; 182; 183-86; 188-199; (heed of), 201;  
 treasures of, 221; (heed of), 223  
 Medyterane, *Mediterrane*, *Mediterraine* (Mediterranean), *see*,  
 357; *Medeterrane*, 408  
 Megeda, *Megida*, cyte of, 394; (Megida), 395; 398; 401;  
 403; 406; 408; 415  
 Megera, daughter of King Creon of Thebes, first wife of  
 Hercules, 246; 254; 255; (Megere), 257; 262; 267;  
 283; 298; 308; 309; 310; 311; (Megra), 312; 315; 342;  
 343; 344-46  
 Megydans, *Megidans*, inhabitants of Megida, 401  
 Melane (Milan), 428  
 Melleager, kyng of Achaye, 54

- Mellisee**, daughter of kyng Mellyseus, 30; 31  
**Mellyseus**, lord of the cyte of Oson, kyng, 14; 29; 30; 57; 70; 71; 72; 76; 79; (**Melleseus**), 80; 126  
**Molorcus**, *Molorcus*, *Molorcus*, herdeman, pastor, 299; **Molorcus**, 302  
**Melose**. *See* **Mollose**  
**Menalipe**, *Menalipe*, sister of Synope, 368; 369; 370  
**\*Menelaus**, son of Philistenes, 132; son of Tandarus, 258; husband of Helayne, kyng of Grece, 7; 132; 258; 505; 528, 529; 531; 533; 538-39; 541; king of Sparte, 545; 572; 579; 583-85; 588; 592; 593-97; 606; 608; 612; 619; wife of, 624; 625; 631-33; 635-36; 640; 643; 646; 648; 652; 658; 664; 668; 672; 676; 678; 680; 686; 694  
**\*Menerue**, *Mynerue*, *Minerue*, the wise and subtyl virgyn, 38; 662; 666; 667; 668; temple of, 677  
**Memphyn**, *Memphin*, cyte of, 306  
**Micenes**,<sup>1</sup> cyte of, 226; (**Mycens**)  
**\*Mollose**, *Molose*, kyng of, 144; 316; **Melose**, 320; **Melose**, 322; **Molose**, 689; cyte of, 694  
**Monchaio**, *Moncayo*, mountain of, 416; **Monchayo**, 421; 423; 436  
**Molorous**. *See* **Melorous**  
**Monster of the see**, 273; 274; 275; 276; 277; 278; 279; 280; 281; 282; slain by Hercules  
**Montaigne**, *Montaigne*, 353; † an island  
**Moorea**, *Mores* († **Mauri**), 364; 365; 366  
**Moryane**, *Moriens*, 364 † identical with **Mauritayne**  
**Moryana**, *Moriens*, inhabitants of Moryane, 365  
**Mynous**, *Ninous*, one of the centaures, 318  
**Mynerue**. *See* **Menerue**  
**Myrondone**, *Mirmidoins*, kyng of, 252; **Myrodonne**, cyte of, 347  
  
**Nabugodonosor**, *Nabugodanosor*, 414; 415; (deceives the people of Coroigne and conquers their city)  
**Namur**, 54; 62

<sup>1</sup> This is evidently identical with the "Michames" mentioned in the third book.



- Naples**, 33<sup>1</sup>; see of Apulie or Naples,<sup>2</sup> 169; kyng of, 170; cyte of, 186; porte of, 187; they of, *les apuliens*, 193; they of, *ceux d'apulie*, 195; 198; 199; 201; 215; 216; 217; 218-21; 222-24
- Nauare, Nauerre, Nauarre** (Navarre, Navarra), kyng of, 415; Nauarre, 423
- Nauarroys**, inhabitants of Nauarre, 423
- Neleo, Nelo**, a son of Saturn, and father of the eleven geants of Cremona, 428
- Nemea**, forest of, 297; lyons of, forest of, 298; 299; 305
- Neptune**, son of Saturn, 32; 33; 84; 86; 176; 179; 180; 388; 494; 181; 182; 183-85
- Nericos**, an yle of Grece, 61; 81
- Nero**, the emperor, 235
- Nessus**, one of the centaures, 318; 384, 385; 386; 387;
- \***Nestor**, duc, 349; 514; the auncient duc of the prouynce of Pillon, 528; 538; 542; 571; 579; 585; 629-32; 634; 636; 640; 642; 681
- Nestor**, one of the eleven geants of Cremona, 428; 429; 430; 431; 435
- Noe** (Noah), 9.; alle the children of
- Nychostrate, Nycostrate**, the wife of King Euander, also called Carmente, 178
- Octa**, forest of, 451
- Oeneus**, king of Calcedonye, father of Deianira, 370-73; 375; 378; 379; 384; 385
- Oethea, Othea**, mounte of, 493; 494; (?) 495
- Olympades, les olympiades** (Olympias, Olympiades), 246; Olimpade, 261
- Olympus, Olimpus, Olympus, Olympius**, mountain of, 239; 240; 248; 249; 253; 261
- Orpheus**, husband of Proserpine, 320; 321-24; 326; 335
- Oson**, cyte of, 14; 30; (montaigne of), 69; 72
- Osonyens**, people of the cyte of Oson, 74
- \***Ovide**, the poet, 38<sub>m</sub>; *Metamorphoses*, Book XII. of, 554<sub>m</sub>
- Palatynee of Heynawd**, 5<sub>m</sub>; **Palatyne**, 6<sub>m</sub>; *Palatin de heynawd*

<sup>1</sup> See note 1 on page 727.

<sup>2</sup> In the French text only "en la mer de apulie." Naples is never mentioned.

- Palectyna**, see of, kyng of, 214  
**\*Palladium**, 132; 659-61; 663; 664; 671; 672; 673  
**\*Pallas**, goddess, 179, 180; 184; 188; 521; 522; 536; 659; 660; 663; 664  
**Pallas**, a geant, 38  
**Palus of Ierne**. See **Ierne**.  
**Paphea**, kingdom of, 80; cyte of, 81; 82; 84  
**Parce**. See **Perse**, **Perce**  
**Parthemye**, *Parthamis*, cyte of, **Perthenye**, 26; 31; 33; 84; 85; 89; 90; 92; 144  
**Parthemyens**, people of the cyte of **Parthemye**, 72; 85  
**Patraoe**, *Patrus*, cyte of, 383; 384  
**Pegase**, a shippe, 196; 197; 200; 207  
**Pegasus**, the flying horse, 196; 198; hors volant, 214  
**Pelage**, cyte of, 38; *pellage*, 40; 44; 48; 50; 57; 59; 60  
**Pelagiens**, *Pellagions*, afterwards named the **Archadiens**, the inhabitants of the cyte of **Pelage**, 38; 39; (*pellagions*), 40; (*pelaygyens*), 41; 42; 43; 44; 45; 46; 47; 51; 52; 60; 69  
**Palleus**, duc, 347  
**Pelops**, the son of **Tantalus**, 132; 135; 136; 137  
**Pepoe**, *Pelops* († **Peloponnesus**), 251  
**Perceus**. See **Perseus**  
**Perceye**, *Perbis*, (†) 251  
**\*Perse**, **Perse**, 226; king of, 542; 573; 577; 588; 594; **Perce**, 619; 620; people of, 643; 644  
**Persepolis**, cyte of, 226  
**Perseus**, **Perceus** (233); son of **Jupiter** and **Danea**, the daughter of **Acrisius**, 7; 125; birth of, 167; is abandoned with his mother **Danea** in a little boat, 168; they are rescued by a fisherman; although nearly dead with cold, revives before the fire, 169; is provided for by **King Pilonnus**, 170; 179; daily entreats his mother and the **King** to let him seek adventure; is sent by **Pilonnus** to conquer **Medusa**, 186; is knighted by **King Pilonnus**, takes leave and enters his ship; is prevented from landing by **King Athlas**, 187; arrives in **Medusa's** country; divides his men into three companies, and conducts the first division himself so prudently that he lands and forces **Medusa** to retreat into her city, 188; receives **Medusa's** messenger, tells him he intends to free the people from **Medusa's** rule, 189; and that he will assault her city the next day, 190; 192; is

told of the approach of Medusa's army by his sentinels, and ranges his men in battle; performs noble feats of arms, 193; smites down the royal banner, 194; kills one of Medusa's sisters and makes his enemies fear him, 195; puts them to flight, enters the city with them, kills all the men, but spares the women and children; has pity on Medusa, takes her kingdom from her and banishes her; makes a ship called Pegase from her riches, 196; travels in this ship from country to country and becomes famous. His ship is filled with the treasures of Medusa; he appropriates her arms or ensign, and goes to Septe to conquer king Athlas, 197; after two days' fighting withdraws his men and sends half the treasure to Pilonnus asking for a thousand soldiers; sees them coming and goes to meet them; rejoices to find his brother Danus in command of fifteen hundred men; gives a feast in his honour; sails into Septe and shows his brother the port, 198; telling him if they conquer it, it will be due to his help; makes Danus a knight and orders his men to arms, 199; puts all in order for the battle; lands and beats down all before him; gives Athlas a heavy stroke, 200; puts his enemies to flight, 201; enters the city without resistance; passes the night in rejoicing, the next day has the city gates beaten down, orders every man to take his booty, and sails away, 202; 203; boards the ship of Bellorophon and asks who they are and where they are going, 207; sympathises with Bellorophon and offers to accompany him to Sicily and afterwards take vengeance on Pricus, 208; asks Bellorophon to come into his ship and send his mariners home; arrives in Sicily and goes with Bellorophon to vanquish the Chymere, 209; fights with the serpents, lions, and chievres, 210; is anxious for Bellorophon's safety, 211; is alarmed when the rock falls, and goes to rescue Bellorophon, 212; searches the mountain with Danus; praises Bellorophon; they make sacrifices, take the serpents' heads and lion skins, 213; and enter their ships; arrives in Syrie, 214; is received courteously by king Amon, 215; takes pity on Andromeda and offers to fight the monster, asking her hand as his reward, 216; arms himself joyously, takes leave of Andromeda and asks her to pray for him, 217; is attacked by the monster and

gives him a stroke with his glayue, leaves his glayue sticking in the monster's throat, 218; and kills him; King Amon embraces him, and asks him to name his reward; he only asks for Andromeda, 219; is defied by Phineus; tells him to make ready for a war, as he will not relinquish Andromeda, 220; is brought into the city with Andromeda in triumph; they are married; he then sails away with his wife, 221; is courteously received by king Creon, with whom he makes alliance; arrives at Arges and summons Pricus to surrender; is menaced by Pricus; divides his army into three parts, 222; puts the followers of Pricus to flight and enters the city of Arges, 223; sends for his grandfather, and re-instals him as king; is adopted by Acrisius and given the government of the city; sends many of the Argiens to inhabit the country of Lycye; lives in Arges with his wife, by whom he has many children; governs the country well and loves the king Acrisius, 224; unintentionally kills Acrisius; laments his death and buries him honourably; his father Jupiter comes with Vulcan to the funeral of Acrisius; they tell each other their adventures, 225; leaves Arges and goes to Micenes, but does not remain there, as the death of Acrisius dwells in his mind; goes with a great army to the Orient, where he conquers a country which he names Perse, founds a city there called Persepolis, after he has vanquished and put to death Liber Pater; provides for his children, Alceus and Electrion reigning in Thebes, Bacedemon in Perse, Erecteus upon the Red Sea, and Scelenus in Micenes, 226

**Perthemye.** See Parthemye

**Peter, St.,** 235

**Petreaus,** one of the centaures, 318

**Phebus,** god, 388

**Phelip,** duc of Burgoyne, 3.; **Philippe,** 6.,

**Phenyc** (Phoenice or Phoenicia), 396

**Phenya, Phœnix,** son of Agenor and kyng of Phenyc, 396

**Pheotones,** one of the centaures, 318; **Phiotones,** 319

**Philiris,** the second wyfe of Saturne, 178

**Phillistenes,** son of Thiestes the son of Pelops, 132

**Phylistenes,** son of Phenya, the kyng of Phenyc, kyng of Gallyce, afterwards named the preest of Hercules, 396

- Phylotes, Philotes**, brother of king Athlas, or son of Athlas (262), also called Esperus, 197; 262-270; 279-80; 283-84; 291; 298; 300; 302; 304; 306; 308; 315; 329; 337; 338; 339; 342; 346-7; 351; 356-60; 390; 396; 427; 432; 478; 481; 482-83; 493-95; 497; 499; 501
- Phyneus**, kyng of Lenno, 343
- Phyneus**, kyng of Palestyne, 214; 217; 219; 220; 221
- Picus**. See **Prycus**
- Pilonnus, Pilonius, Pilonne, Pilonnus**, king of Naples, son of the Auncient Jupiter, husband of Danes, 170; (**Pilonne**), 186; 187; 198
- Pirothus, Pyrothus, Pirithons, ? Pirithous**, son of Yxion, 314; 315; 316; 317; 319; 320; 326; 327; 328; 329; 330-33; 337; 386
- Piseon**, one of the centaures, 318; 319
- Plaute**, firste comodye of, 246.
- Plipheros**, kyng of, 61
- Plumus, Plumus, ? Plinius**, 221.
- Pluto**, son of Saturn, 32; 33; 84; 86; 176; kyng of Moloss, 320; 321; 322; 323; 324; 325; 326; 327; 328; 329; 331; 335
- Politycoques**, the, of Aristotell, 365.
- \***Polixene**, the third daughter of Pryant, 388; 507; (**Polyxena**), 544; 618; 620; 621; 622; 626; 628; 629; 636; 637; 638; 641; 667; 669; 670; 673; 674; 700
- \***Pollux, Polus**, brother of Castor and Helayne, 349; 513; 529; 538; 539; 540
- Porcus**, kyng of Esperye, 179
- Portyngale, Portugal** (Portugal), mountains of, 394
- Pricus**, son of Abas, brother of Acrisius, 203; 204; 205; 206; 207; 208; (**Prycus**), 222; 223
- Promethous**, son of Japetus, 81
- Proserpine, Proserpyne**, daughter of Ceres, wife of Orpheus, 178; 320; 321; 322; 323; 324; 325; 326; 329; 331; 335; 336; 337
- \***Pryant**,<sup>1</sup> son of Laomedon; laments the fate of his sister Exione, 274; is made knight by his father, 287; fights bravely against the Greesks, 289; elected captain of 30,000 men, 290; comes to battle with his division,

<sup>1</sup> The form Pryant or Priant for Priamus is to be explained through the ignorance of the scribes. The "Priam" of the Latin texts was misunderstood by them.

couches his spear against Theseus, 292; bears him to the ground, does marvels of arms; when going to rescue his people, Hercules stuns him with a mighty stroke, 293; and takes him prisoner, 294; 296; is released by Linceus, and sent to Troye, where he is received with great joy, 342; 350; 505; 506; 507-12; 513-20; 523-28; 529; 533; 534; 536; 537; 542-44; 551-52; 556-60; 561-62; 566-68; 577-78; 590, 591; 596-98; 601-603; 605; 609-12; 614-16; 618-20; 623-24; 626; 629-30; 633; 635; 636; 638-40; 641-42; wife and daughter, of, 644-6; 650-56; 657-58; 660-61; 663-67; 671; 674; 680; 692; 695; 700

**Prycus**, kyng of Calidonia, father of Fanus or Famus, and son of Saturn (?); cousin of Cacus (?); **Picus**, 178; 437; 438; 439; 454; 459; 460; 460-64; 465; 467; 469; 471  
**Pyragmon**, *Piragmon*, one of the governours of Lemnos, 178

**Raoul**. *See* Lefeure

**Recuyell**, *recusill*, *recule*, of the histories of Troye.  
*See* Troye.

**Reed See**, 226; where Erecteus reigned  
**Rome**, *capytale* of, 177; 221

**Salamanque** (Salamanca), *cyte* of, 426; 427

**Salina**, 5<sub>11</sub>; **Salyna**, 6<sub>24</sub>

**Samos**, *cyte* of, 37

**Saturne**, *Satorn*, (9); *Satorne*, (10); son of Uranus and Vesca, 7; 8; 9; named a god, 10; 11; 12; he excuses himself to Tytan, 13; has the greater part of the people on his side, and swears to Tytan that if he marries he will put all his male children to death, 14; dwells with his mother and sisters; is crowned King of Crete, 15; builds a city called Crete; ordains a hundred and four counsellors, 16; teaches his people to work in metals and to shoot with bow and arrow, 17; also to sail and row in boats; he is often vexed that he has promised not to marry, 18; he falls in love with his sister Cibelle, and marries her, 19; puts his first-born son to death, and when his wife is with child again, goes to Delphos to inquire of the oracle; the priest puts him near the altar, where he swoons, 20; and the god Appollo appears to him; when he recovers

he departs sorrowfully, enters his ship and returns home, 21; laments his fate, and determines to kill the babe up on its birth, 22; he becomes melancholy, 23; commands his wife to kill her child as soon as it is born, 24; insists upon being obeyed, 25; and tells Cibelle he will kill her as well as her child if she does not do his will, 26; 27; 28; 29; 30; 31; drinks the cup of wine brought to him by Vesca, thinking it contains the heart of his son; remains solitary and melancholy for a time; engenders two more sons and a daughter on his wife, 32; thinks he has no children living but Juno, whom he often visits, 33; 41; 43; he calls himself son of heaven and of earth, 60, 61; receives a letter from his brother Tytan, 62; sends for Cibelle and asks her what she has done with his children; assembles his counselors, 63; and asks their advice, 64; determines to defie Tytan, and goes to fight against him, 65; 66; the followers of Tytan wound and take him prisoner, 67; and imprison him with his wife, 68; 69; does not believe that Jupiter is his son, 70; 71; 72; 73; 74; hears the noise of the battle between Tytan and Jupiter and rejoices, 75; is at the gate to receive Jupiter honourably, 80; becomes reconciled to Jupiter and commissions him to make war with King Appollo of Paphes, 81; goes with his wife to the dedication of the temple of Cibelle, 85; remembers the prophecy of the god Appollo, and begins to hate Jupiter, 86; determines to destroy him, and assembles his counsellors, 87; tells them his intention, 88; arms himself and calls his people to arms, 89; will not tell Cibelle where he is going, 90; pursues Jupiter and sends two messengers to him, 91; commanding him to come alone to speak with him, 92; besieges Archade and summons the Archadiens to give Jupiter up, 93; orders the assault of the city, but is obliged to retreat, 94; is annoyed at this defeat, looks after the wounded, 95; sends a defiance to Jupiter and the people of Archade, 97; leads his soldiers against them and promises gifts to any one of them who takes his son, 98; notwithstanding Jupiter's gentle words, he smites him as fiercely as he can, 99; does not heed the fact that his men are being beaten, is often saved from the Archadiens by Jupiter, but pays no atten-

- tion to his advice, 100; his chariot is smitten in pieces, his men flee, and he is forced to do so also; is hotly pursued by Archas, and obliged to take ship and does not return to Crete, 101; 102; 136; he sails by lonely and deserted places, arrives at Troy, where he wishes to rest and revitayll his ship, 139; speaks with King Troos, 140; who receives him with great courtesy; when he feels that the Troians think favourably of him, he calls Troos and his two sons, 141; and asks them to advise him how to punish Jupiter; thanks Troos for his help, and decides to go at once into Crete with Gaminedes; appoints the shipping of Troy, 142; gathers his army, takes leave, and arrives at the first port of Crete; lands and lodges his men for the night; hears that Jupiter is near, 143; halts, and speaks to his men, 144; consents to send first to Jupiter demanding obedience, 145; 146; swears the death of Jupiter; is alarmed at the conduct of the eagle 147; leads his men against Jupiter, and tries to come to blows with him, 148; retreats in the evening, 149; arranges his army for the next day, 150; forced to retreat, 152; enters his ship in despair, 153; does not return with the Troians, but sails eastward, 154; 155; 160; 161; 162; makes peace with Jupiter, and agrees to let him reign in Crete, 177; remains in Italy, and is married again to a woman named Philiris, by whom he has a son called Picus, 178; 239; 320; 428
- Saturnyena**, the followers of Saturne, 61; 62; 67; 98; 100; 101
- Stelenus**, *Stelenus*, the eldest son of Perseus and Andromeda, 224; 226
- Soenno**, third daughter of Porcus, 179
- Secile**, *Sicille*, *Seville*, *Cocille* (Sicily), 61; 62; **Soecyll**, **Secyille**, 177; 178; **chymere of**, 206; 207; 208; 209; 320; **Cocyll**, 326; **Secille**, 335; 417; **Cocyll**, 425
- Secyliens**, 321; **Cocyliens**, 322 (the inhabitants of Sicily)
- Seneca**, *Senecus*, fyrst tragedye of, 392,
- Septa**, city of, 196; 197; 198
- Sera**. *Ses Ceres*
- Seres**. *Ses Ceres*
- Seuyls**, *Seville* (Seville, Sevilla), cyte of, 397
- Sheep**, or **moutons**, the golden, 263; 264; 265; 270; 274; 283; 284



- Siocam, Siocam**, husband of Seres, 178  
**Sinophe.** *See* Synope  
**Siracusa.** *See* Cyracuse  
**Siria, Sirye (Syria)**, 214; **Syrie**, 221  
**Siriens, Siriens**, 214; **Siryens**, 217; 218; 219; **assiriens**, 221  
**Sithee, Sythye, Sithie, Siokis, Siokis (Scythia)**, 366; 367;  
**Sythea**, 369; **Sithye**, 397  
**Soeropes**, one of the three governours of Lemnos, 178  
**Spaigne, Espaigne**, 81; *see of*, *anoyently named esperye*, 179;  
 188; **Spayne**, 265; **cronyques of**, 346<sub>m</sub>; 390<sub>m</sub>; 394<sub>m</sub>;  
 county of, 394; 420; **cronicles of**, 421<sub>m</sub>; 426; 427;  
**Espaygne**, 428; 483; 491  
**Symon magus**, 235  
**Synope, Sinoppe, Sinope**, queen of Sythye, 368; **Sinophe**,  
 370  
**Sythes, Sythye.** *See* Sithee  
**Tandarus, Tindarus**, father of Menelaus, 258; 259; 260; 261  
**Tantalus**, kyng of Frigie, 38; 131; 132; 133; 134; 135;  
 136; 137  
**\*Tenadon, Tenedon, Thenedon (Tenedos)**, 286; 287; port of,  
 534; 536; **Thenedon**, 552; 555; 556; playn of, 562; port  
 of, 565; 568; 665; 666  
**Terracene, Teiracene, Terracone (Tarracina)**, cyte of, 418;  
**Teracone**, 426, founded by Hercules, and given to the  
 son of the king of Ancone  
**Thebans**, inhabitants of Thebes, 341  
**Thebes**, cyte of, 222; 223; 226; 228; 229; 236; king of, 246;  
 247; 251; 252; 283; 285; 298; 299; 313; 329; 337;  
 338; 339; 340; 341-45; 346-47; 351; 483  
**Thelamomax.** *See* Thelamon  
**\*Thelamon**, kyng of Salamyne, also named **Thelamon**  
**Ajax (Thelamomax)**, or only **Ajax, Thelamon ajax**,  
 349; 512; 513; 530; 532; (**Thelamon ajax**), 541;  
 545; 572; 575; 579; 583-86; 588-90; 609; 612; 626-27;  
 635; 636; 646; 647; (either Thelamon or his son), 667;  
 668; 671-72; 673; 675; 676; 682; 687  
**Thelamon ajax**, son of Thelamon and Exione. *See* List B  
**Thelleboye, Telleboye, Thelleboye**, kyng of, 228; cyte of, 229  
**Thenedon.** *See* Tenadon  
**Thesalonyques, Thesalonicus (Thessalonica)**, 287; **Thessa-**

lonyque, 315; 316; (thessalonyoque); 326; 329; 334; 337; 343

**Theseus**, son of kyng Egeus of Athens, is sent by his father King Egeus of Athens, to be brought up with Hercules, 247; at the command of his father enters the lists to wrestle with Hercules, who throws him as gently as he can, 253; he then goes among the ladies who are watching the game, 254; goes with Hercules to conquer the sheep, 264; is called by Hercules when he has conquered Philotes, 270; witnesses the preparations made by Hercules to combat the monster, 277; thinks Hercules will be devoured by the monster, 279; goes with the others to look at the dead monster, 280; returns to Greece with Hercules, 283; is in the second division of the army against King Laomedon, 290; goes with Amphitriion to join the first division led by Hercules; fights bravely; is the first to see Pryant coming and couches his spear against him, 292; is thrown to the ground by Pryant; in his anger smites off the heads of more than thirty Troians; fights valiantly, 293; is present at the knighting of Hercules, 313; jousts with Hercules, 314; is at the wedding of Pirothus, 316; goes in chase of the Centaures, 317; fights with the Centaures, 319; is marvellously valiant, 320; Theseus and Pirothus meet Ceres, 326; offers to undertake the recovery of Proserpine, 327; will not be dissuaded from his enterprise or accept the assistance of Hercules and Jason, 328; goes with Pirothus to Helle and arrives at the entrance of the city, 329; they begin to descend the steps when they are attacked by Cerberus, 330; tells Cerberus they come to fetch Proserpine, 331; Cerberus strikes off a piece of his shield; fights with Cerberus; is angry at the death of Pirothus and attacks Cerberus fiercely, 332; is nearly overcome by Cerberus when he is rescued by Hercules, 333; sits down and watches the battle between Hercules and Cerberus; dresses his wounds; prays Hercules not to kill Cerberus, but let him die by the sentence of Ypodame, 334; remains at the gate of Helle while Hercules enters the city, 335; rejoices when he sees him return with Proserpine and presents a chain that he has found to him, 336; returns to Thessalonyque, helps to comfort Ypodame and goes with Hercules to

- Thebes, 337; sets out with Hercules in search of adventure 346; 347; goes with Hercules to make war against Laomedon, 349; goes in search of adventure with Hercules on the sea, 351; comes to the battle against Antheon, 355; is left with Affer in charge of the host, 357; guides the second battle with Affer, 361; fights against the king of Cothulye and finally kills him and scatters his men; does wonders and beats back the Cothulyens for three hours, 363; 366; fights against Ypolite, 368; they bare each other to the ground and fight on foot; is nearly conquered by Ypolite, when he is reproved by Hercules; he then overcomes Ypolite, 369; and marries her; he takes leave of Hercules and goes home with his lady, 370; receives Hercules joyfully when he visits Athenes, 393; goes with Hercules to make war upon Gerion, 396; is made captain of the second division, 404; comes to the battle, fights valiantly and helps to pursue Gerion, 407; takes a boat with Hispan and fifty men and tries to land; they fight valiantly, 410; and perform marvels of arms, 411; comes to the battle against King Prius and does things worthy of memory, 462; prepares to make an assault upon the city, 465; goes into the palace, 469; passes the time with Hercules, 471; takes leave of Hercules and goes to Athenes and to Thebes, 483
- \*Thessaylle (Thessalia) (afterwards named Hell, 33), 82; 84; 86; 251; 258; 316; 323; Thessayl, 326; 337; 385; porte of, 511; 689; 690; 693; barons of, 694
- Thiestes, son of Pelops, 132
- Thyphon. *See* Typhon
- \*Trace, *Tracs*, port of, forest of, kyng of, 476; 478; haven of, the porter of the palais of, 481; 482; 491; king of, 506; 545; 628
- Trache, *Tracs*, 37; (the port of the city of Samos being in Trache)
- Tracyens, *Traciens*, people of Trace, 481; 482
- Tripolye (Tripolis), 251; Trypolyn, 353
- Triton, a river, 38
- \*Troians, 38; 131; 133-42; 143-53; 154-56; 158; 161; 163; 272-75; 277-78; 280-82; 286-95; 342; 350; 523; 529-30; 533-34; 537; 538; 540; 546-48; 552; 555; 558; 561; 562; 570-75; 581-84; 586; 588-92; 593-95; 598-601; 603; 606-8; 609; 611-12; 614;

- 616; 619; 620; 622; 625-33; 635; 636-38; 640;  
642-45; 648; 650; 655-56; 657-58; 660-62; 664-66;  
668; 671-72; 674; 682-83; 694; 699; 702
- \*Troos, Tros, third king of Dardane (after him named Troye)  
son of Erutonium, 38; 131-34; 136; 137; 138; 139; 141;  
142; 143; 157; 158; 161; 162; 164; 202
- \*Troye, Troies, Troyes, cyte of, 33; 37; 38; 131-33; 137-42;  
146; 149; 154-55; 159-60; 162-64; 170; 202; 226;  
270-78; 280-90; 292; 293; 342; 347; 348-51; 388;  
505; 507; 512; 514; (port of), 515; 524; 526-27; 529;  
533-37; 539-44; 545; 547; 551; 552; (royaume of), 554;  
555; 557-59; 562; 566; (royame of), 568; (port of), 569;  
570; 574-75; 582-83; (admiral of), 588; 590; 594;  
596; 599; 603-606; 618-20; 627-28; 635; 644; 645;  
650-53; 655; 658; 660-61; 663-69; 671-72; royame  
of, 677; 678; 681-82; 687-88; 689-91; 695-96; 699
- Troye, the recuyell (recueill or recule) or gadryng togeder  
of the histories of, 3.; 6.; (of the Troian hystories),  
7.; 296<sup>u</sup>; 297.; 701<sup>n</sup>; destructions of, 505; 702
- Trypolyn. See Tripolye
- Tybre, ryver of, 177; 460
- Tyngle, kyng of, 366
- Typhon, kyng of Scile and Cipres, 61; 66; 78; (thyphon),  
79; 80
- Tyre, *Thir*, people of, 419; 426
- Tytan, brother of Saturne, eldest son of Vranus and Vesca, 8;  
9; is loved less by his mother than his younger brother  
Saturn, on account of his ugliness, 10; entreats his  
mother to alter her decision, 11; and tells her she ought  
to care more for his advancement than Saturn's, 12; is  
much troubled by his mother's words, suspects Saturn of  
a conspiracy against him and tells him he will be his  
mortal enemy for life, 13; is rebuked by his mother; says  
he will not suffer Saturn to be king; collects his adherents;  
is counselled by the wise men to allow Saturn to reign on  
condition that he kills all his male children, 14; after  
making this agreement he leaves Crete with his wyfe,  
children and friends; conquers various countries, which  
he gives to his children; sends spies to find out if Saturn  
marries and if he puts to death all his male children, 15;  
19; 20; 23; 25; 39; 43; 48; finds out that Saturn has

several sons living, 60; assembles his sons to make war upon Saturn; is full of joy to see the courage of his sons, 61; they assemble at the port of Secyle and gather their forces; arrive in Crete and destroy and waste the country; when they reach the city he sends a letter to Saturn, saying he has broken his oath and forfeited his kingdom, 62; 63; 64; upon hearing Saturn's answer he swears he will not return until they have fought the battle, 65; 66; in the evening Tytan and his sons attack Saturn, wound and take him prisoner, put the Saturniens to flight, enter the city and kill the inhabitants, 67; imprisons Saturn and Cibelle, and is crowned king of Crete; will not listen to the entreaties of his mother and sister; puts to death all of Saturn's party and robs and kills the citizens, 68; 69; 70; 71; is summoned by Jupiter to go out of the city and release Saturn and Cibelle, defies Jupiter, 73; assembles his sons and tells them the news; decides to fight with Jupiter, 74; ranges his men in battle; leaves a hundred in charge of the city, 75; fails not to do his best, 76; is wounded and afterwards killed by Jupiter, 77, 78; 80; is buried honourably by Saturn, 81; 86; 143

**Tytannoys, Tytanoys, followers of Tytan, 66; 67; 75; 76; 77; 78; 81; 89; 173**

\***Vlixes, 7; 406; 541; kyng of Trace, 545; 556; 558-60; 561; 571-72; 579; 586; 596; 601; 630-32; 635; 636; 656; 658-61; 668; 671-72; 673; 676; 678; 679; 682; 684; 687; 688; 695-99**

**Vranus, alias Celion, son of Ether, 9; 10; 11; 12; 13**

**Valeryte, cyte of, 401**

**Varro, Book de Agricultura, 284, ...; (a celebrated Latin writer who died 28 B.C. Of his numerous works the Book *de re Rustica* is the only one preserved)**

\***Venus, 102; 515; 521; 522; 527; 528; feast of, 529; temple of, 591**

**Vesca, suster and wyf of Vranus, 9; 10; 11; 12; 13; 14; 15; 19; 26; 27; 28; 29; 30; 31; 68; 70; 75; 80; 102**

**Vexoes, kyng of Egypte, 366**

**Vulcan, son of Juno, 178; 179; 225; 226; Wloan, 425**

- Yconia, Iconia, Yeonia**, 313; 314; 385; **Ycoone**, 483; 486  
**Yconyens**, people of Yconia, 377  
**Yda**, quene, 180  
**Ydra**, monster, 389; 390; 391; 392; 393  
**Yle with the moutons, Fisle aux moutons**, 262; **yle with the sheep**, 265; 270  
**\*Yllion**, son of Troos, 131; 132; 133-36; 138; 148; 157-58; 161-62; 164; 176; 202; 659  
**\*Yllon**, palais of, 202; 277; castle of, 281; 286; cyte of, 287; 295; 296; 351; palais of, 508; 516; hall of, 598; 609; palais of, 614; 659; 666; 667; 668  
**Yllee, Yole, Yolla**, daughter of kyng Prycus of Caledonie, sweetheart of Hercules, 439; (**Yole**), 469; 470; 471; 472; 473-75; 478; 482; 483; 484; 486; 487; 488; 489; 490; 491-93; 499; 500  
**Ypocleus, Ypycleus, Ypiocleus**, son of Alcumena and Amphitricon, 239; 242; 243  
**Ypermastra, Parmestra, Ypermastru**, daughter of Danaus, 103; 203  
**Ypodame, Ypodane, Ypodama**, wife of Pirothus, 315; 316; 317; 319; 320; 328; 334; **Ypodane**, 337  
**Ypolyta**, sister of Menalipe, one of the women of Amasone, 368; 369; 370  
**Ysiphyle**, queen of Lemnos, the second wyfe of Phynus, 348  
**Ysis**, mother of Epaphus, 103 ("of Jupiter born of archade and of a damoyael named Ysis came a son named Epaphus")  
**\*Ytalye (Italy)**, 177; (**Ytaly**), 415; 436; (**Italy**), 440; 441; 442; 454; 470; 683  
**Ytalyens, Ytaliens**, 447; 448; 451; 452; 453; 454  
**Ytalus**, kyng of Cyracuse, 177  
**Yxion**, kyng of Themayle, father of Pirothus, 258-60; 314; 316  
**Yxion**, kyng of Moloss, 144; 147; 149; 150; 153; 157; 163; 171; 177  
**Yeland (Zealand)**, 5; 54; 63  
**Zorastes, Zorcastes (Zorcaster)** science of, 303

## LIST OF NAMES AND PLACES.

### B. BOOK III. TEXT PP. 505-701.

**Achalaphus, Athlaphus**, kyng, G.<sup>1</sup>, 579; leader of the fourth bataylle; ? identical with Ascalapus, 545

**Achastus, Acastus**, G., a moche olde and auncyent kyng, father of Lychomedes, Menalapus, Phylistenes, Thetis, 689; 690; 691; 692; 693

\***Achaye**, royame of, 513, 535, 698

\***Achilles**, son of Peleus, kyng of Theesayle, and Thetis, surnamed A. of the noble cyte of Phaces, G., 388; comes to the assistance of Menelaus, 540; 541; brings twenty-two ships from his noble city of Phaces, 546; is chosen to go with Patroclus to the oracle at Delphi, 548; makes large offerings and demands an answer from the oracle, 550; is joyous of the answer. Makes the acquaintance of Calchas, feasts him and takes him with him, 551; goes with Calchas and Patroclus to the tent of Agamenon, 552; 562; is sent with Telephus to conquer Meesse. Fights with king Theutram, wounds him mortally, but spares his life at the request of Telephus, 563; goes with Telephus to the palace of Theutram, 564; returns with his ships laden with provisions; leaves Telephus in

<sup>1</sup> As it is in many passages very difficult to understand the exact meaning of the text, owing to the repeated occurrence of the same name or names belonging to persons and places on the Greek and on the Trojan sides and to both, I have adopted the plan of distinguishing the Greeks and their allies by an additional G. to the name and the Troians by an additional T. From this rule I have not even departed when it was manifest—as, e.g., in the case of Achilles or Hector—that the bearer of a name was a Greek or a Trojan.

Mease and commands him to send provisions diligently to the Greeks ; goes to the tent of Agamenon and tells his adventures, 565 ; his valour is praised by the Greeks and he is joyfully welcomed by his Myrmidones, 566 ; enters the battle and slays all before him, returns victorious, 574 ; 578 ; cannot go to the battle because his wounds are not healed, 579 ; 590 ; cannot be comforted for the death of Patroclus and erects a rich sepulchre to him, 591 ; leads the first division, encounters Hector and is thrown to the ground, fights valiantly, meets Hector again and is thrown to the ground a second time, remounts, attacks Hector fiercely and receives a heavy blow on the head, 592 ; laments the death of his cousin Prothenor, 593 ; is asked by the Greeks to do all he can to kill Hector ; promises to do so, 594 ; assails Hector and breaks his helm, is attacked by Hector, 595 ; assails Hector in company with his cousin Thoas, 596 ; addresses himself to Huppon, 598 ; slays him, and also king Philis, 599 ; encounters Hector and is thrown to the ground, tries to lead away Hector's horse, 600 ; requests Hector to go into his tent and upbraids him for the death of Patroclus, 602 ; accepts Hector's challenge to single combat, but is prevented from fighting by his friends, 603 ; leads seven thousand men, 606 ; slays duc Biraon and Euforbe and many other noblemen ; is angry at the death of his cousin Menon, takes a strong spear and runs upon Hector, who gives him a stroke that makes him fall to the ground, 607 ; fights with Troyllus ; is defended by his people, succoured by Thelamon and the duc of Athenes and set upon his horse, 609 ; puts the Troians to flight, kills Margarston, 612 ; sees Hector kill many nobles of Greece and attacks him with Polyceus ; assails Hector fiercely to avenge the death of Polyceus, but is wounded by Hector ; binds his wound and returns with a great spear intending to kill Hector ; goes up to him secretly and wounds him mortally ; is assailed and badly wounded by king Menon, 613 ; is carried to his tent by his men, 614 ; 616 ; is angry at the deposing of Agamenon, 618 ; goes to Troy on the anniversary of Hector's death, 620 ; falls in love with Polixena, returns to his tent sorrowfully, 621 ; is unable to sleep, and plans to send his private messenger



to queen Hecuba, demanding her daughter and promising to make the Greeks depart from Troy if she consents, 622; has some hope of accomplishing his desire, sends his messenger the third day again, 623; is hopeful that through his good services he will be able to induce the Greeks to make peace with the Troians, assembles the nobles and addresses them on the subject, 624; is sorrowful when they refuse to listen to his proposals, and commands his Myrmidones not to arm themselves any more against the Troians, 625; 626; 627; is reproached by Ebes for refusing to help his countrymen; asks tidings of one of his servants, will not change his purpose, 628; 629; receives the messengers of Agamenon gladly, but refuses to go to battle, and advises them to make peace with the Troians, 630; 631; 632; 633; receives Agamenon and Nestor with great joy; will not consent to go to battle, but agrees that his men shall go without him; sends his Myrmidones to Agamenon, 634; is grieved to find so many of his men killed and wounded, 635; is undecided if he will keep his word or not, 636; hears the sound of the battle, and is told of the fight of the Greeks and the slaughter of his Myrmidones; arms hastily, goes to the battle, fights valiantly, wounds and is wounded by Troyllus, 637; heals his wounds during the truce and proposes to kill Troyllus, commands his Myrmidones to enclose him and keep him prisoner till he comes, 638; kills Troyllus cruelly and binds his body to the tail of his horse, dragging it through the host; is assailed by Menon, who reproaches him for the death of Troyllus, and gives him a great wound; is rescued and put upon his horse by his men, 639; returns to the battle, encounters Menon, by whom he is wounded again; tells his men to enclose Menon; kills him cruelly, but is first wounded by him, 640; when he hears the messenger of queen Hecuba, 641, goes at once to the temple of Apollyn, where he is slain by Paris and his knights; his body is to be thrown to the dogs, but is preserved at the request of Helenus; his death is much lamented by the Greeks, and a noble sepulchre is erected to him near the gate Tymbre, by the permission of King Pryant, 642; 643; 644; 646; 647; 662; 668; 669; 670; 690; 693; 694; 700

- Achilleides**, son of Pyrrus (the son of Achilles) and Andrometha, 694
- Adrastus**, *Adrastus*, a secretary of Pyrrus, G., 690
- Adrastus**, *Adrastus*, kyng, T., 566
- \***Affrike**, *Affricque* (Africa, called Libya by the Greeks, one of the three parts of the ancient world), 519
- Afiamolur**, *Firmalor*, bastard brother of Glaucon, the son of Glauton, kyng of Licye, T., 575
- Agalus**, *Alagus*, kyng, G., 571
- \***Agamenon**, kyng of Michames (Mycenæ), G., 7; 528; is sent for by his brother Menelaus, whom he advises and encourages, 539; is chosen commander-in-chief of the host of the Greeks, 540; 541; brings a hundred ships full of armed knights from his royaume of Michames, 545; 546; assembles the nobles and speaks to them of the injuries done them by the Troians, 547; continues his speech, suggests a messenger should be sent to the oracle at Delphi, 548; Calchas is presented to him, 551; holds an assembly of noblemen in his tent, 552; sends a message to the host that every man should hold himself ready to start, 553; is asked by all the princes of Greece to sacrifice his daughter Effigenie (Iphigenia), in order to appease the wrath of Diana and still the tempest; consents very sorrowfully, 554; distributes the spoils from the castles of Sarabana and Thenedon to his army, assembles the nobles on the plain of Thenedon and addresses them, 556; 557; 558; 559; 560; calls a council on the provisioning of the army, 562; 565; lands at the port of Troy, 572; makes his people pitch their tents in proper rank and order, 574; orders minstrels and trumpeters to comfort the host, 575; arranges his men, 578; leads the last division, 580; puts his troops in array early, 591; holds a parliament of nobles in his tent, encounters Hector, 594; by whom he is wounded; fights with king Pandolus, 595; is so much wounded by the bastard brethren of Hector that he is carried to his tent as dead, 596; asks Pryant at the request of Calchas to give up the latter's daughter Breseyda, 601; when he hears of the compact between Hector and Achilles goes hastily to them and forbids it, 603; comes to the rescue of the Greeks, 608; requires truce of king Pryant, 610; assembles the nobles and addresses them, defends himself

against Palamydes who is dissatisfied with his government, 616; is content that some one else should conduct the host of the Greeks; summons the nobles to a parliament and addresses them, 617; 618; is sent to Thelephus at Messae and returns safely with his ships laden with provisions; is received with joy, 625; is again made commander-in-chief after the death of Palamydes, 629; sends messengers to ask the assistance of Achilles, 630; 631; hears the answer of Achilles and makes it known to the nobles, asks their advice, 632; gathers his forces and attacks the Troians; is thrown to the ground by Troyllus, but remounted by the help of his followers; sends to Pryant for six months' truce, 633; goes with due Nestor to the tent of Achilles and prays him to come to the battle, thanks him greatly when he agrees to send his men; puts his troops in array, 634; comes to the battle, 635; demands truce, is beaten by king Phylomenus and rescued by Thelamon, 636; demands the bodies of Achilles and Archilocus from King Pryant, assembles the nobles and asks their advice about continuing the war, 642; makes his host pitch their tents near the city, 644; asks Pryant several times to send his men to battle, 645; gives Pyrrus the arms and all the other possessions of his father, 647; comes to the battle, 648; Anthenor is presented to him, commissions the king of Crete, Dyomedes and Vlixes to make peace with the Troians, 656; after the burning of Troy, assembles the nobles in the temple of Mynerue and requires them to hold faith with Eneas and Anthenor and to divide the spoils justly; helps to save Helayne from the wrath of the Greeks; Cassandra is given him as his reward, 668; demands information of the whereabouts of Polixene from Anthenor, 669; 671; judges that the Palladium should remain with Vlixes; takes precautions against a secret attack from Thelamon, 672; hates Pyrrus, 673; 675; asks leave to depart into his own country, sails off, 676; 677; 678; escapes from king Naulus and returns safely to Michames, where he is murdered by Egistus, the lover of his wife, Clytemestra, 680; 681; 684; 686

**Agreste, Argeste, yle of, 567; cheuallerye of the royaume of, 577**

**Alcanus, kyng, T., 576; 582**

- Achamas, Athamas**, Duc, from royaume of Trachie, T., 566  
**Aloynous**,<sup>1</sup> kyng, G., 687; 688  
**Alixandre**, surname of Paris, 506  
**Amastus**, kyng, T., 566; from the prouynce of tholocon  
**Amasonne, Amassonne, Amasons, Amasonis**, royaume of, 567; 644; prouynce of, queen of, 645  
**Amphymacus**, kyng, T., from the prouynce of tholocon, 566  
**Amphymacus**, kyng, of the prouynce of Calydene, G., 545; slain by Eneas, 599; 700  
**Amphymacus**, Duc of Rusticane, G., 546  
**Amphymacus**, Duc, G., belonging to the suite of kyng Thelamon, 545; styled "erie," 579  
**Amphymacus**, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 651; 652; 653; 654; 655; 658; 659  
**Anchisatus, Anchisatus**, son of Thelamon and Thymissa, G., 676  
**Anchises**, father of Eneas, 506; 650; 683  
**Andrometha, Andromata, Andromatha**, wyfe of Hector, 544; 610; (**Andromeda**), 611; 614; 667; 669; 693; 694  
**Andylla**, yle of, 553  
**Ansernims, Anserimus**, one of the dukes of Boecye, G., 567  
**Antenorides, Aminorides**, one of the gates of Troye, 507  
**Anthenor**, T., 505; is sent by Priant to Greece to bring back his sister Exione, 510; arrives in Thessaly but is badly received by king Peleus, 511; his reception by Thelamon in Salamis is no better, 512; is similarly treated by Castor and Pollux, who reside in Achaye, 513; enrages the old duke Nestor so much by his message that he has to flee in order to save his life; returns to Troy, 514; on his return tells Priant his adventures, 515, 516; 525; accompanies Paris to Greece, 527, 528; 536; 543; 583; is beaten by Philemenis, 596; is called to the council of the nobles, 597; goes with Eneas and Troyllus to Helayne, 598; is taken prisoner by the Greeks, 600; 601; 648; takes council with Eneas and Anchyses, 650; advises Priant to make peace with the Greeks; is reproved by Amphimacus, 652; and by Priant, 653; leaves the

<sup>1</sup> In "Le Recueil" Aloynous is not mentioned, his part being filled up by Anthenor who is also described as the father of Nestor. Probably Caxton corrected this error.

court with Eneas much irritated; makes a plot to deliver Troy to the Greeks, 654; is sent for by the king and comes before him with an armed escort; is chosen to negotiate with the Greeks, 655; is let down from the walls and taken before Agamenon; discloses his intentions to the Greeks, who take him into their service; obtains the body of Penthasilee; returns to the city with Cassilyus, 656; tells falsehoods to Priant and the people, and suggests that he should be sent again to the Greeks, 657; promises Helayne to reconcile her with her husband; has a conversation with the Greeks, requests the Greeks to banish Amphimacus who has displeased him, 658; tells Vlixes and Diomedes that he cannot deliver the city to them as long as the Palladium remains in it, 659; promises to obtain the Palladium by bribing the priest who keeps it, 660; asks Priant to summon his nobles, and declares the Greeks want a large indemnity; obtains the Palladium for gold from the priest and sends it to Vlixes, 661; 664; advises the king to have the horse of brass taken into the city, 665; 666; guides the Greeks into the palace of Iliion and is a witness when Priant is slain by Pyrrus, 667; asks the Greeks to spare Helenus, 668; betrays Polixene's hiding-place to the Greeks, 669; 671; makes peace between Pyrrus and Agamenon; leaves Troy, 673; is sent for by the Troians to be their king, but is soon banished again at the instance of Eneas; his ships are attacked by pirates, 674; arrives in Gerbandye, founds a city and governs it wisely, 675; 699

**Anthypus**, kyng, G., slain by Hector, 700

**Anthypus**, *Anthiopus*, one of the dukes of Rusticane, G., 546

**Antypus**, Antipus, kyng, T., slain by Dyomedes, 599; 700

**Apius**,<sup>1</sup> *Appius*, a passyng wyse mayster, 663

\***Appolyn**,<sup>2</sup> Appolyne, Appolin, Apollo, 546, 548; 549; 550-51; 601; 605; 620; 641-42; 662; 666-67; 669; 693

**Arastous**, kyng, T., 596; beaten by Vlixes

**Archelaus**, one of the kynges of Boecye, G., 545; 571; 579; 593

<sup>1</sup> According to "Le Recueil," Apius and not Synon is the maker of the horse. The passage runs thus: "Ce cheual fist vng moult saige maistre nomme appius."

<sup>2</sup> In the Latin MSS. the accusative "Appolinem" is generally written "Appoliñ." This has suggested the form, "Appolin."

- Archillogus**, kyng, cozyn of the knight Bretes, G., 593; 700;  
**Archillogus**, son of Duc Nestor, G., 636; slain with Achilles  
 in the temple of Appolyn, 642  
**Archillogus**, son of the kyng Theleus, T., of the royaume of  
 Oheres, 567; [that was of the affynye of kyng Fryant],  
 son of the kyng Thesus, 580; 596  
**Archillogus**, brother of Thesus, kyng of Trahie, T., 575  
**Archymens**. *See* **Arsymens**  
**Archymenus**, *Orobimeneus*, king, G., 700  
 \***Arges**, cite or royaume of, 546  
**Arsymens**, seygnourye of, 681; **Archymens**, 682  
**Ascalapus**, *Atalaphus*, duc of the prouynce of Oroconomye, G.,  
 545  
**Ascalus**, *Atalus*, kyng, G., 571  
**Assandrus**, *Assandrus*, an hyghe and myghty man of the Oyte  
 of Thesayll, that was at that tyme a trewe frende of  
 Pyrrus, G., 690  
**Assandrus**, brother of Egee, the wife of Dyomedes, G., 681  
 \***Assiry**, kyng of, 550  
**Astromatas**, son of Hector and Andrometha, T., 610  
**Athamas**, kyng, G., 682  
**Athomens**, kyng, G., 599; slain by Hector.  
 \***Atthenes**, **Athenes**, cyte of (port of), 545-46; 551; 553;  
 579; 582; (duc of), 587; 592; 609; (port of), 617; (duc  
 of), 619; 625-34; 648; 686  
**Aulides**, yle of, 699; abode of queen Circe; afterwards Thela-  
 gonus, her son by Vlixes, was elected king of this island  
**Austerus**, *Austernus*, kyng, T., 700; slain by Achilles  
**Ayax**. *See* **Thelamon**  
**Ayax**, G., 541; 586; 588; 640; 643; 644; killed by Paris,  
 700  
**Ayax alsus**, G., 579; (677); either identical with **Ayax** or  
 with **Thelamon ayax**, the son of king Thelamon  
**Ayax Oyleus**. *See* **Thelamon ayax**, son of Thelamon and  
 Exione  
  
**Bastidus**, duc, G., 612; slain by Hector  
**Belus**, kyng of Assirie, of whom "the ryght begynnyng of  
 ydolatrie came," 550  
**Biraon**, Duc, T., slain by Achilles, 607  
**Boecye**, royaume of, 545; people of, 579

**Boecye**, pronounce of, whence the dukes came to the assistance of Pryant, 567

**Boetes**, brother of Epistheus, both kings of Burtyn, T., 567

**Breseyda**, *Brisayda*, daughter of Calchas, sweetheart of Troyius, afterwards of Diomedes (Boccaccio's Grissida, Chancer's Cryseyda), 542; 601; 602; 603; 604; 605; 606; 608; 610; 633; 634

**Bretes**, a knyght, the cousin of kyng Archilogus, G., 593; slain by Hector

**Broyasse**, royame of, 546

**Brum**, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 636

**Burtyn**, royame of, 567

**Calcas**, bysshoppe of Troye, son of Thistram, a passyng wyse man, 542; 546; **Chalchas**, 551; 552; **Calchas**, 553; 601; 604; 605; 632; 663; 669; 670

**Calcybus**, fosterfather of Orestes, G., 680

**Calydone**, *Calcidone*, 545, † identical with **Calidone**

**Capidus**, one of the kings of Larisse, T., 566

**Carpadye**, kyng of, 546

**Carpenor**, kyng of Carpadye, G., 546; 580

**Carras**, kyng, T., 566; 596

\***Cartage**, *Cartaige*, 683 (the celebrated city of Carthago)

**Cassandra**, second daughter of Pryant, 506; 526; 527; 537; 544; 591; 662; 666; 667; 668; 675; 677

**Cassibelanus**, T., one of the bastard sons of Pryant (**Cassilaus**), 585; 587; 591

**Cassilaus**. *Ses Cassibelanus*

**Cassilus**, kyng, "a moche auneyent man," G., 656; **Cassilyus**, 657

\***Castor**, G., brother of Pollux and Helayne, 513; 529; 538; 539; 540

\***Caxton**, William, 701; 702

**Cedonyus**,<sup>1</sup> kyng, G., 588

**Cedus**, **Cedeus**, kyng, brother of Epistropus, G., slain by Hector, 599

**Celidones**, T., slew Moles of Oreb, nephew of kyng Thoas of Tholye, 588

<sup>1</sup> Not mentioned in "Le Recueil." The passage "The newwe of kyng thoas Mandon smote oute an eye of kyng cedonyus" is in the French text: "le regent du roy thoas occist mandon de clere."

- Celidus**, kyng, 579; G., the most fayr kyng of the world, 583; slain by Polydamus; † identical with Oedus, Oedus  
**Cetharya**. *See* Cythare  
**Cetus**, son of Naulus and brother of Palamydes, G., 677; 678; 679; that otherwyse was callid Cetus, 680; 681  
**Chalchas**. *See* Calcas  
**Chaucer**,<sup>1</sup> book of "Troilus and Cresseida," 601<sub>2</sub>; Chawcer, 604;  
**Chemenense**, *Themenenes*, kingdom of, 546  
**Cheres**, royame of, 567  
**Chetas**, one of the gates of Troie, 507  
**Cheusa**, *Crousa*, eldest daughter of Pryant, and wyfe of Eneas, 506  
**Chinaras**, *Thinaras*, one of the household of Achastus, slain by Pyrrus, 692  
**Cyclades**, yles of, 548 (Cyclades, islands in the Ægean Sea)  
**Ciroca**, the mother of Thelagonus (by Vlizes), 695; 696; 698; 699  
**Cisayne**, *Cycania*, kyng of, T., 576; † Remus  
**Clitemestra**, daughter of Ydumeus and Tharasis of Crete, 681  
**Clytemestra**, wyfe of Agamenon, killed by Orestes her son, 680; (Clitemestra), 681; 684; 685; 687  
**Collesis**, kyng of Cresome, G., 546  
**Cortiremerralum**, *Cortirre merralum*, a cyte founded by Anthenor, 675  
**Coryphus**, duc, G., killed by Hector, 612  
**Creon de la pierre**, a knyght, G., 581  
**Cresseida**, name Chaucer gives to Bresseida. *See* "Chaucer" and "Troilus and Cresseida," 8  
**Cresome**, *Cresome*, royame of, 546  
**Cressus**, kyng of Grece, G., 626; killed by Deyphebus  
**\*Crete**, kyng of, 545; 581; 656; 681; 686; 687; 688; 693  
**Criste**. *See* Jesus  
**Crisus**, a Greek priest, who advised with Calchas the making of the horse of brass, 663  
**Croys**, kyng, T., 611  
**Cryspus**, a secretary of Pyrrus, 690 (sent with Adrastus to Asandrus)

<sup>1</sup> The references to Chaucer are not found in "Le Recueil," but added by Carton. The same is to be said of Lydgate and his Troy-Book.



Cupemus, kyng, T., 700

\*Cypres, kyng of, G., 579

Cyrces. *See* Circes

Cythare, *Cytarce*, *Cytharce*, yle of, 529; 530; 532; 558;  
Cetharys, 651

Dalpmee, *Dalpuica*, kyng, G., 599; slain by Hector

Dardane, one of the gates of Troye, 507; 575

Dares, *Daires*, of Frygie, 505<sub>m</sub>; 541<sub>i</sub>; 542<sub>m</sub>; 544<sub>m</sub>; 554<sub>m</sub>;  
588<sub>m</sub>; 589<sub>s</sub>; 618<sub>m</sub>; 633<sub>s</sub>; 699<sub>m, 12, 27</sub>; 701<sub>m</sub>; 702<sub>i</sub>.

Deanor, brother of the kyng of Gaull, T., 588

Delos, yle of, "in the myddes of the yles ciclades," 548;  
"some calle thys yle Ortygye for as moche as the byrdes  
þ<sup>t</sup> men call Ortiges / in English they ben quayles were  
first seen there," 549

\*Delphos, 546; Delphe (evidently by mistake for Delos),  
548; 550; 688; yle of, 693; 694

Demophon, *Demophon*, kyng, G., 682

Deufrobe, *Euforbe*, the great philosopher, father of Pantheus,  
525; 526; ? Eufrobe (d'eufrobe)

Deyphebus, son of Nausica and Thelamotus, 693

Deyphebus, T., the third son of Pryant, 506; 522; 524; 527;  
528; 536; 543; 574; 577; 585; 594; 597; 606; 611;  
626; 629; 630; 632; 641

\*Diane, born on the island of Delos, sister of Appollo; 548;  
549; 553; 554

Diotes, þe Greke, 699<sub>m</sub>; 701<sub>m, 2</sub>

Dinadorus, T., one of the bastard sons of Pryant, 584

Docius, kyng, G., 700; killed by Hector; ? identical with  
Doxunois

Doreus, kyng, G., 599; slain by Hector

Dorius, erle, G. (one of the four erles accompanying Thel-  
amon ayax), 579

Doxunois, kyng, G., 545, comes with fifty ships to Athens

Dyadamie, *Deyademis*, wife or mistress of Achilles, mother of  
Pyrrus, 689

Dymaicus, *Dymarcus*, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, 576

Dyomedes, G., kyng of Arges, comes to the assistance of Mane-  
laus, 540; 541; brings eighty-two ships from Arges, 546;  
556; is chosen to go with Vlizes to Troy, 558; speaks  
mockingly to King Pryant, 560; answers Eneas insolently,

561; is asked by Vlixes to hold his peace, 562; his advice is taken by the Greeks, 568; 569; leads the two-and-twentieth division, 579; leads the second division, comes to the battle and encounters Troyllus, 592; takes Troyllus and would have led him away if the Troians had not hindered him, 593; is attacked by Troyllus, but defends himself valiantly, 595; 597; slays king Antipus, 599; kills the Sagittaire with a mighty stroke, 600; is sent with Vlixes to Pryant, 601; becomes enamoured of Bresayda, 604; strikes Troyllus down from his horse and sends it to Breseyda, 606; is pleased to hear that Breseyda has gladly accepted Troyllus' horse; is beaten by Polidamas, 608; suffers a great deal with his love for Breseyda, 610; attacks Troyllus and would have killed him if Menelaus had not interposed, 612; comes with Palamydes and twenty thousand men to succour the Greeks hard oppressed by the Troians, 626; is sent with Nestor and Vlixes to Achilles by Agamenon to induce him to help the Greeks again, 630; tries with Nestor to persuade Achilles, but in vain, 631; is struck down by Troyllus and carried to his tent by the Greeks on his shield, 633; is visited by Breseyda in his tent, who promises to give him her love as soon as he has recovered, 634; joins again in the battle, 635; is struck down by Penthasile, who deprives him of his shield and gives it to her maidens, 646; comes again to battle with Agamenon, Menelaus and Menesteus, 648; succours, with Pyrrus and Thelamon, the Greeks who are driven to flight by Penthasile, 649; is with the king of Crete and Vlixes charged by Agamenon to negotiate with Anthenor, 656; is selected by the Greeks with Vlixes to go with Eneas and Anthenor to Troy, 658; hears with Vlixes of Anthenor's treason, 659; 660; swears first on the side of the Greeks to hold the peace, 664; has the Palladium in his charge, which Vlixes gives him before his departure, 673; 677; is said to have slain Palamydes by treason with Vlixes, 678, 679; to avenge the death of his brother-in-law, kills many knights of Telephus, 681; his people, at the wish of his wife, refuse to receive him; flees when he hears that Theuter will kill him, 682; the Troians send for him and offer to make him their king; helps them to defeat their enemies,

is called back by his wife, who is afraid that he will come to punish her, 683; 684; 700

**Ebes**, son of the Kyng of Trace, G., 628

**Ecedyus**, kyng, G., 700; slain by Hector; † identical with **Cedeus**

**Effygenye**, *Effigenie* (Iphigenia), daughter of Agamenon, 553; **Effigenie**, 554

**Efronyus**, T., *Effromus*, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, 626

\***Egee**, see of, 676

**Egee**, daughter of Polymytee, kyng of Arsymens and wyfe of **Dyomedes**, 677; 681; 683

**Egistus**, lover of Clytemestra, usurper of the royame of **Michames** (Mycenæ), 680; 684; 685; 687

**Egyptus**,<sup>1</sup> the father of Hecuba and Kyng of Trace, 506

\***Egypte**, "the ydoles of egypte fyll down to the erthe alle to broken and brusyd after the prophesie of ysaye," 549

**Eliane**, *Aliana*, regne of, 567

**Emargeron**, *Euargeron*, T., one of the bastard sons of Pryant, 635

**Eneas**, son of Anchises and Venus of **Munidia**,<sup>2</sup> and husband of **Cheusa**, eldest daughter of King Pryant, T., 506; is commissioned by King Pryant to go into Greece with **Paris**, 527, 528; returns triumphantly to Troy with **Paris**, 536; 543; is angry when **Dyomedes** speaks disrespectfully to the king, 561; leads the seventh division, 577; comes to the battle with his men, encounters **Ajax** and is thrown to the ground, 586; leads the second division, 594; comes with **Troyllus** to the rescue of **Hector**, encounters **Dyomedes**, and is beaten and mocked by him, 595; puts himself between **Paris** and **Menelaus**, leads **Paris** into the city, advises King Pryant not to kill King **Thoas**, 597; goes with **Troyllus** and **Anthenor** to see **Helayne**, 598; slays King **Amphymacus**, 599; leads the fifth division, 606; leads the second division, 611; comes between King **Myses** and **Menelaus**, 612; leads the eighth division, 618; is beaten by **Menesteus**, 636; goes to the battle, 646; takes counsel with **Anchises**, **Anthenor** and **Polidamas**, 650;

<sup>1</sup> In "Le Recueil" he is called "Plex"; by Guido delle Colonne, he is not mentioned at all.

<sup>2</sup> "Munidia," not mentioned in "Le Recueil."

tries to restrain the words of Amphymachus, 653; is angry when reproved by King Pryant and answers the king sharply, finds out that the King intends to kill him and Anthenor and arranges to go to council with an armed escort, 654; plots with Anthenor to deliver the city to the Greeks; advises the people to make peace with the Greeks, tells the king they will make peace whether he agrees to it or not, 655; goes with Anthenor to the camp of the Greeks, 657; treats of the plot with the Greeks, 658; 659; 660; advises King Pryant to allow the horse of brass to be brought into the city, 665; 666; conducts the Greeks with Anthenor, sees Pyrrus kill King Pryant, takes pity on Polixena and puts her in a secret place, 667; comes with Anthenor and prays the Greeks to save the life of Helenus, 668; 671; is reproached by the Greeks for having broken his oath and banished from Troy, the ships of Paris are given him at his request, 673; is vexed that Anthenor is not also banished, advises the Troians to recall him and make him their king in order to have a chance of attacking him; when Anthenor arrives he reminds the Troians that he was the cause of Polixena's death, and induces them to banish him from the city, 674; is allowed by the Greeks to stay a certain time in Troy in order to repair his ships, 682; advises the Troians to send for Dyomedes; starts with his father Anchises; his adventures are described by Virgil, 683; 699; 700

**Eneidos.** See Virgile

**Enemius, Euenus,** kyng of Lichon, T., 566

**Epistius, Epistius,** brother of Boetes, both kings of Burtyn, T., 567

**Epistropus, Epistropus,** one of the kyngs of Focyden, G., 545; 579; 584; 599; 700

**Epistropus,** kyng of the regne of Eliane, T. brought a "marvelous beste" called "Sagittayra," 567; 599; 611

**Epitagonen, T.,** one of the bastard sons of Pryant, 577

**Erigona, Erigona,** daughter of Egistus and Olytemestra, 680; Erigona, 687

**Eraphyina,** kyng of Orohomyna, G., 546

**Eryalus.** See Euryalus

**Eucoryus,** kyng, T., 700

**Eudras,** kyng, T., leads with Philon the "chevalerye of Agreste," 577; 585

- Ethiops**, regne of, 567  
**Ethyopyens**, kyng of the, 572  
**Euforbe**, *Euforbe*, a much noble man, T. 607, slain by Achilles  
**Euforbis**, *Euforbis*, kyng, T., 700, slain by Achilles;  
 † identical with Euforbe  
**Eufrene**, an admyrall of the Troians, 577  
**\*Europe**, 519, "alle Affricque and Europe ben suggettys  
 vnto the Grekes"  
**Euryalus**, *Curialus*, companion of Dyomedes, G., 546; styled  
 Kyng Eryalus, 596  
**Exampitus**, *Xantipus*; *Sampitus*; *Xantipus*; *Exampitipus*;  
*Exantipus*, kyng of Frigie, T., 576; † identical with  
*Sampitus*, 582  
**Exampitus**, kyng, G., 700; killed by Hector; † identical  
 with *Sampitus*, 579  
**\*Exione**, *Exionne*, daughter of Laomedon, 505; 507; 509;  
 510; 512; 515; 516; 517; 519; 520; 523; 525; 528;  
 530; 532; 533; 557; 560; 589; 625  
**Exiones**, kyng, G., 579  
  
**Famuell**, *Famuell*, T., "bete the kyng Prothenor to the  
 erthe," 588  
**Foccyden**, *de fortes*, royame of, 545  
**Forensis**, kyng, lord of the cyte of Trasem, G., 684  
**Fortunus**, one of the dukes of Boecye, T., 567  
**\*Frigie**, Dares of, 505; kyng Exampitus of, 576; kyng of,  
 586; kyng Myseres of, 612; kyng of, 671  
**Frygis**, *Pigris*, cyte of, whence Duc Tynelus came, 545  
**Fumus**, *Finumis*, kyng, G., 700, slain by Hector  
**Fureus**, *Sineus*, kyng, G., 546  
  
**Galathe**, *Galate*, *Galateam*, the horse of Hector, 577; 580;  
 584; 600  
**Gallor**, kyng, T., 566  
**Gamedes**,<sup>1</sup> according to Virgil, a son of Pyrant, "whom  
 Jupiter rauysshed and maad hym hys botyller," 506  
**Gaull**, *roi du gal*, kyng of, T., 588  
**Gerbandye**, *Guerbandee*, prouynce of, 675

<sup>1</sup> This is evidently a mistake. Virgil only mentions a Ganymedes, the son of Tros (according to Lucan, the son of Dardanus). Compare: Virg., "Æn.," 5, 252, and Homer, "Ilias," 28, 231.

- Geripulus, kyng, G., 579  
 Glacon, T., son of Anthenor, "broder of Polidamas from an other moder," 648  
 Glancion, *Glacion*, kyng, G., 580  
 Glaucon, *Glancion*, son of the kyng of Lycye, T., 575  
 Glausta,<sup>1</sup> first wyfe of Thelamon, 676  
 Glanton, *Glancion*, kyng of Lycye, T., 566, probably the same as Glacon styled "the son of the kyng of Lycye."  
 \*Grece, 505; 510; 511; 513; 515; 516; 520; 524-28; 529; 531; 532; 534; 539; 540; 544; 545; 547; 548; 558; 559; 586; 595; 597; 608; 613; 626; 632; 652; 653; 656; 664; 668; 670; 673; 677; 678; 686; 691; 693  
 \*Grekes, 506; 509; 515-17; 519-20; 523-26; 528; 530; 532; 538; 541; 542; 545-46; 550; 551-52; 554-56; 560; 561-65; 566-68; 570-75; 577-78; 581; 584-91; 593-94; 596-608 (admirall of); 609-10; 612-15; 618-20; 622-24; 625-30; 632-33; 635-40; 641-47; 649-56; 657; 658; 660; 662-72; 673; 675; 676-79; 682; 686; 699; 700; 701  
 Guideus, some of, *le fils guideus*, G., 595  
 \*Hebe, daughter of Jupiter and Juno, 506  
 Hecuba, a noble lady, daughter of King Egeus of Trace, wyfe of Pryant, 506; 527; 537; 544; 598; 610; 611; 614; 620-24; 640; 641; 642; 667; 670  
 Hector, 7; 505; eldest son of Pryant, T. 506; is in Panonye, and therefore not at the first assembly of the barons, 509; 515; answers his father's speech, 518; tries to dissuade him from going to war with the Grekes, 519; finishes his speech, 520; 527; 543; 544; fights valiantly with the Grekes, kills King Prothesalaus; all flee before him, 573; leaves the battle to refresh himself; re-enters the city in the evening, 574; puts his men in order early, 575; gives advice to Troilus, 576; asks Paris not to fight with the Grekes until he comes; mounts his horse and rides to his father, 577; asks him to keep a reserve force in case of need, and promises to let him know the state of the battle; passes before all his troops and rides to the front, 578; his shield is pierced by Patroclus; kills Patroclus and alights to take his arms, but is prevented

<sup>1</sup> Not mentioned in "Le Recueil."

by King Menon, kills many Greeks, 580; tries again to take the arms of Patroclus, but is prevented by King Menon and King Ydumeus, is surrounded by Greeks and kills many, 581; fights valiantly, 583; is wounded by Menon, kills a Grecian admiral, is warned to go out of the battle by Theseus, whom he thanks courteously; rescues Polidamas; his horse Galathe is slain and he is in great danger, 584; mounts a fresh horse, will not let Theseus be taken prisoner, kills many Greeks to avenge the death of Cassilaus, fights bravely, and nearly puts the Greeks to flight, 585; is smitten by Philoteas, whom he wounds; puts himself in the greatest press and keeps his people together, 586; withdraws his men and speaks encouragingly to them, then leads them again against their enemies; tries to put the Greeks to flight, is wounded in the face by King Humerus, whom he kills; goes to his father and returns with 3000 fresh knights, 387; jousts with Ajax, attacks Menesteus and Theuter, slays a thousand knights in this assault alone; kills Menon and alights to take his arms, is prevented by Menesteus, who gives him a great wound, 588; has his wound dressed and returns to the battle, kills a thousand knights, and none have courage to fight with him; encounters Thelamon Ajax, and finds that he is his cousin, 589; embraces him, and asks him to come to see his relations in Troy, agrees to leave the battle for that day at his request, 590; puts his men in order and rides to the front, encounters Achilles; they are both unhorsed; remounts, fights valiantly, encounters Achilles again and bears him to the ground, tries to take his horse; they meet again, Achilles gives him many strokes with his sword, and receives a heavy blow on the head; they are parted by their people, 592; fights fiercely, kills Bretes and wishes to take his horse, when he is assailed by Archylogus and Prothenor, and kills both of them, 593; leaves the city with his army and rides to the front, encounters Agamenon, 594; wounds him, is assailed by Achilles, but rescued by Troylus and Eneas; attacks Achilles and nearly takes him, when he is wounded by the son of Guideus; beats Dyomedes to the ground, fights again with Achilles, 595; is assailed by Thoas and Achilles, wounds Thoas and is rescued by his

bastard brothers, 596; assails Menelaus and wishes to take him prisoner but is prevented by the Greeks; makes the Greeks retreat, 597; agrees to the counsel of Eneas, 598; slays king Athomeus; is assailed by Epistropus and Oedus, kills Epistropus, and is attacked by Oedus and a thousand knights; kills Oedus; in his sorrow for the death of Philis slays Dalpnee and Doreus; recovers the field by his prowess, 599; slays duc Polixenes, encounters Achilles, they unhorse each other, calls to his followers to rescue his horse Galathe! which is being led away by Achilles; his horse is recovered and he gladly remounts him, 600; does not agree to the truce with the Greeks, 601; goes one day during the truce to the camp of the Greeks, enters the tent of Achilles at his request, 602; challenges Achilles to single combat and takes his gage; returns to Troy, 603; arranges his men and goes to the front, 606; kills King Philis, is assailed by Pampitus whom he also kills; is wounded in the face and retreats to the walls, where he sees his mother and sisters and is ashamed; kills Menon; is assailed by Achilles, bears him to the ground and bids him beware, 607; fights valiantly; is healed of his wounds during the truce and plays in the hall of Ilion, 609; reproaches his wife who beseeches him not to go to battle that day, 610; is angry because his father also wishes him not to go; reproaches his wife again and arms himself; refuses to disarm when she falls at his feet with her two little sons; resists the entreaties of his mother, sisters, and queen Helayne; leaves the palace armed and mounts his horse, but is compelled to return by his father, 611; but will not disarm himself; when he hears of the death of Margareton, goes to the battle without his father's knowledge; kills Duc Coryphus and Duc Bastidus, thrusts himself into the greatest press, making the Greeks flee at his coming, 612; rescues Polidamas, kills Leocides and many other Greeks, is assailed by Achilles and Polyceus; kills Polyceus and wounds Achilles; takes a baron of Greece prisoner and is leading him away, when Achilles comes secretly and wounds him mortally; he falls dead to the ground, 613; his death is lamented by all the Trojans, 614; his sepulchre and the embalming of his body, 615;



- 616; 618; anniversary of his death, 620; 622; 623; 625; 630; 631; 632; 641; 645; 648; 667; 669; 694; 699; 700
- \***Helayne**, wife of Menelaus, sister of Castor and Pollux, 505; 527; 528; 529-35; 536-41; 556; 558; 559; 578 (nephew of); 583; 591; 598; 611; 623-25; 644; 651-53; 658; 664; 665; 668; 672; 686; 693
- Helenus**, fourth son of Pryant, a priest, T., 506; 523; 524; 527; 543; 642; 668; 669
- \***Hellesponte**, see of, 683
- Helms**, *Helms*, erle, from the provynce of Orconomye, G., 545
- Helyas**, *Elias*, *Chias*, one of the gates of Troye, 507
- \***Hercules**, son of Jupiter and Alcumena, the wife of Amphitryon, 505; son of, 562; 563; 564
- Hermone**, *Hermione*, *Heremone*, daughter of Helayne and Menelaus, 529; 686; 687; 688; 693; 694
- Hermycides**, son of Thelamon and Glausta, G., 676
- Herodes** (king of Judæa), 549
- Hiripisus**, T., 582, a companion of Hupon
- Historia ecclisiastica**, 549 <sub>is</sub>; evidently meant for Holy Scriptures.
- Homerus**, 70, <sub>is</sub>, mentioned by W. Caxton
- Horrestes**, *Herestes*, *Horestes*, son of Agamenon and Olytmestra (*Horestes*), 680; 681; (*Horostes*), 684; 685; 686; 687; 688; 693; 694
- Hors of brasse**, 660; 663; 664; 665; 666
- Humelius**, *Humelius*, kyng, G., 586; probably identical with **Humerus**.
- Humerus**, *Humerus*, kyng, G., 579; 586; 587; 700
- Huppon**, kyng of Larysse, T., 576; Hupon, 582; 598
- Huppon the auncyent**, T., 596; slain by Polimytes
- Ilion**. See **Ylion**
- Italye**. See **Ytalye**
- Jecomas**, son of kyng Kedras, T., 585 (both save **Philon**)
- Jewes**, the, "And amonge the Jewes yamaell was the first that made ydols," 549
- Jhesu Criste**, *Jhesus Criste*, 549
- Joseph**, father of Jesus, 549

- Juno, goddess, 521; 522; temple of, 644  
 \*Jupiter, son of Saturn, 506; "that god Jupiter was alle the  
 esperance and trusts of the kyng Pryant," 509; 528
- Kynges, the thre (who deceived King Herodes), 549
- \*Laomedon, king of Troye, son of Ylicon, 505; 507; 512;  
 513; 548  
 Laomedon, son of Hector and Andrometha; he was after-  
 wards crowned by his brother Achilleides, king of  
 Themayle, 610; 694  
 Laryssa, royame of, 566; 576; 579; 598  
 Latona, mother of Appollo and Diana (Locana),<sup>1</sup> 548  
 Leocides, an admyral of Grece, 613; killed by Hector.  
 Lenutus, kyng, G., 700; slain by Hector.  
 Lichoan, *Lichoanis*, royame of, 566  
 \*Lioye, royame of, 566; kyng of, 575  
 Lidorus, kyng, G., leads, together with Sampitus, the nine-  
 teenth division, 579  
 Loarea, son of Ydumeus, G., 693  
 Locana. *See* Latona  
 Lopms, *Lopius*, duke, brother-in-law of Polybetes, the kyng  
 of Rythes, G., 546  
 Lychomedes, kyng, G., father of Dyadamie, the mother of  
 Pyrrus, 689  
 Lymouyus, kyng, T., slain by Achilles, 700
- Machaon, *Mathaon*, kyng, G., *Mathaon*, 542; 546; 579;  
 582  
 Mandon, *Mandon de clere*, T., 588; *see* the note to Cedonyus  
 Margareton, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 588;  
 slain by Achilles, 612  
 Marie, saynte, the gloryous virgyne, 549  
 Mathaon, G., 542; identical with Machaon  
 Menalipus, *Menelapac*, *Menelipes*, *Menalipas*, son of Achastus,  
 G., 689; 691; 692

<sup>1</sup> The first two printed editions have both "Locana" for Latona. In the French text the passage runs thus: "Locana enfanta appotin et diana." Carton evidently thought "Locana enfanta" surnames of Appolyn, for in his text we read: "Locana enfanta Appolyn." In Guido delle Colonne the passage runs: "latona eniza est appolinem et Dianam."

- \***Menelaus**, son of Tandarus, husband of Helayne, king of Greece, G., (258); 505; is sailing to the city of Pyre to visit Duc Nestor, when he meets the ships of Paris, 528; passes the Troians without knowing who they are, 529; 531; 533; receives at Pyre the news that his wife is ravished and is very sorrowful, 538; is comforted by Agamenon, 539; 541; arrives with forty ships from his kingdom of Sparte at the port of Athenes, 545; joins in the battle against the Troians, 572; is the leader of the fifth division, 579; marches against the Troians with all his people, 583; fights with Thelamon against the Troians, 584; 585; slays an admiral of Troy, 588; leads the third division, 592; 593; 594; wounds Paris grievously, 595; is shot by Paris with an envenomed arrow; is carried to his tent, but, after having his wound dressed, returns to the battle, 596; 597; comes to the battle with seven thousand knights, 606; 608; separates Troyllus and Dyomedes, who are fiercely fighting, 612; assails, with Menesteus, the king of Perse, surrounds him, kills him and drives the Troians back, 619; 624; 625; 631; advises the Greeks not to make peace with the Troians now that Deyphebus and Hector are slain, 632; is thrown to the ground by Troyllus, 633; 635; fights in the eighteenth battle with Paris, 636; with Menesteus compels the Troians to flee, 640; is chosen to fetch Pyrrus, the son of Achilles, 643; returns with Pyrrus, 646; comes with Menesteus and all their men to the battle, 648; 652; 658; receives Helayne from Pryant, with the request not to harm her, 664; together with Agamenon and Vlixes, prevents the Greeks from carrying out Thelamon's proposal to burn Helayne, 668; with Agamenon declares that Vlixes should have the Palladium; is abused by Thelamon, and holds himself near Vlixes, 672; asks with Agamenon for leave to return to their countries, 676; 678; 680; arrives, after great perils at sea, in Crete, assembles his lords at Athenes to sentence Horrestes, 686; goes to Theasyle to help his daughter, but is compelled to return, 694.
- Menesteus**, Duke of Athens, G., 579; 582; 587; 588; 592; 609; 619; 625; 634; 636; 640; 643; 646; 648; 686
- Menerus**. See Mynerus

- Menon**, kyng, G., cousin of Achilles, 544; 579; 580; 581; 588; 607; slain by Hector, 700
- Menon**, kyng, T., 573; *edemon* 613; 618; 633; 639; 640; 641; 694; slain by Achilles, 700
- Mercurye**, god, 521; **Mercuryus**, appears to Paris in his vision, 522
- Mereon**, *Mircorum*, *Merion*, one of the kynges of Crete, G., 545; **Meron**, 579
- Merion**, son of Ydumeus, G., 693
- Messe**, royaume of, 562; yle of, 563; 565; cyte of, 625
- Metamorphoses of Ouyde**, xiith book of, 554.
- Michames**, *Michenes*, *Michaines*, royaume of, 545; 680; 684; 686 (Mycens)
- Miseres**, of Troye, 582; "escryed to the troians that Troillus was prysonner"
- Mistor**, *Nustor*, one of the kynges of Larysse, T., 566
- Moderus**, kyng, T., 585
- Moles of Oreb**, nephew of Thoas, kyng of Tholye, *le regent du roy thoas*, G., 588
- \***Molosa**, cyte of, 689; 694
- Munidle**,<sup>1</sup> Venus of, wife of Anchises and mother of Eneas, 506; identical with Venus the goddesse
- \***Mynerus**, temple of, 662; 666; 667; 668; 677
- Myrondones**, *Mirmidoines* (Myrmidones), men of Achilles, 574; 625; 634; 635; 636; 637; 638; 640; 647; 648; 650; 700
- Myseres**, kyng of Frygye, T., 612; probably identical with **Miseres**
- Naulus**, kyng, father of Palamydes, G., 542; 546; 568; 677; 678; 679; 687
- Nausica**, daughter of Alcyous and wife of Thelamotus, 688; 693
- Neptolonyus**, *Neptholomius*, kyng, G., 542; 596; 619
- Neptolonyus**, kyng, T., killed by Achilles, 700
- Neptolonyus**. *Ses Pyrrus*
- Nereus**, kyng, G., slain by Eneas, 700
- \***Nestor**, duc, the ancient, of the prouynce of Pillon, G., 514; 528; 538; 542; 571; 579; 585; 629-32; 634; 636; 640; 642; 682

<sup>1</sup> This surname of Venus is not to be found in "Le Recueil."

- Nestor**, kyng, T., one of "the foure kynges that cam fro the prouynce of tholoson," 566
- Nycomedes**, beell sire of Pyrrus, who nourished and taught Pyrrus "the feet of Armes," G., 643; 646
- Nynus**, kyng, son of Belus, kyng of Assirye, 550
- Obtyneus**, *Obtomeus*, kyng, T., slain by Dyomedes, 700
- Oeneus**, *Eneus*, kyng of Cypres, G., leader of the three-and-twentieth division, 579
- Orchomene**, *Orthomene*, some part of Greece, 546; (*Eurphylyus*)
- Orconomye**, *Yconie*, prouynce of, 545
- Oreb**, *Moles* of, nephew of kyng Thoas, G., slain by Celidones an admyrall of troye, 588. *See Moles*
- Ortiges**, "the byrdes that men calle, in engliash they ben quayles," 549
- Ortygye**, yle, another name of Delos, 549
- \***Ovide**, the poet, *Metamorphoses*, Book xii. of, 554.
- Oyleus ayax**, *Oylus aiac*. *See Thelamon ayax*, son of Thelamon and Exione
- Palamydes**, Duke, son of Kyng Naulus, G., 542; 546; arrives with thirty ships and many knights at Tenedos, excusing his late arrival on account of a recent illness, 568; lands and joins in the battle against the Troians, 573; expresses his discontent with the leadership of Agamenon, 591; is beaten, sorely wounded, and upbraided by Polidamas, 596; 614; again murmurs against Agamenon, by whom he is rebuked, 616; is chosen commander-in-chief by the Greeks, 617; does not resemble Agamenon much in wit and discretion; arranges his people for battle, 618; assembles all the kings and nobles of the host in parliament and addresses them, 624; summons the noblest of the host to a council; has his ship repaired, 625; kills Deyphebus with a mighty stroke of his spear, 626; is sought by Paris; kills Sarpedon; is shot with an envenomed arrow by Paris and dies, 627; his death is much regretted by the Greeks, 629; 631; 677; 678; 679; 687; 700
- \***Palladium**, "a meruayllous thyng descended fro the heuen," 659; 660; 661; 663; 664; 671; 672; 673
- \***Pallas**, *Palas*, goddess, 521; 522; 536; 659; 660; 663; 664

- Pampitus**,<sup>1</sup> *Examtipus*, kyng, G., 606; 607; ? identical with **Sampitus**, 579, and **Examptitus**, 700
- Pandorus**, *Pandobus*, *Pandorus*, kyng, T., 566; **pandolus**, 595
- Pannonye**, *Pauonie*, was "subgette vnto kyng Pryant," 509; 524; **panonye**, 527; from the "royame of pauonye cam the kyng peessemus and the duc stupex," 566
- Pantesilee**, *Panthasilee*, queen of Amasonne, T., 644; 645; 646; 647; 648; 649; maydens of, 650; *Panthasile*, 656; 664; 700; slain by Pyrrus
- Pantheus**, *Panthalus*, son of Deufrobe (Eufrobe), the great philosopher, T., 525; 526; 527
- Paphagore**, *Phaphagonis*, regne of, "that is at the sonne rysyng in the ceeste, full of alle richesses," 567; **Paphaghone**, 643; *idem*, 646, and 647
- Paroe**. See *Perse*
- Parys**, *Paris*, surnamed **Alixandre**, second son of Pryant, and husband of Helayne, T., 506; 515; advises his father to demand Ekione from the Greeks, 520; relates his vision of Venus, Pallas and Juno, 521; 522; 523; is told to go with Deyphebus into Pannonye to collect knights, 524; 525; 526; returns from his errand, 527; sets out on his expedition; meets the ship of Menelaus on the coast of Greece, 528; goes to the temple of Venus and is greatly admired by the Greeks, 529; is smitten with the beauty of Helayne, who is much pleased with him, 531; speaks to Helayne, advises his companions to ravish Helayne, 532; his plan is accepted; takes Helayne to his ship, 533; arrives at Troy and comforts Helayne, 534; declares that he will take her to wife, 535; does all in his power to please Helayne, has her beautifully dressed, leads her into Troy and marries her with the consent of his father, 536; his wedding is celebrated with great pomp, 537; 538; 539; is much beloved by his people, 543, 558; 559; fights fiercely, 574; requests his brother to march against the Greeks, 577; his horse is killed by Vlixes, and he is thrown to the ground, 586; wounds Menesteus, 587; compels the Greeks to flee, 588; 593; shoots many Greeks, and wounds them, 594; fights with Menelaus, who throws him down and grievously wounds him, 595; shoots a poisoned arrow at

<sup>1</sup> This name does not occur in "Le Recueil."

- Menelaus, 596; 597; joins the battle with three thousand fighting men and archers, 606; issues out of Troy, 611; 612; 618; 619; laments much the king of Perse, 620; agrees to Hecuba's proposal, 623; 626; promises Deiphobus to avenge him; kills Palamydes with a poisoned arrow, with Troyllus puts fire into the Greeks' ships, 627; tells the dying Deiphobus that he has killed Palamydes, 629; 630; 632; 635; jousts with Menelaus, 636; is greatly grieved at the death of Troyllus, 639; 640; promises his mother to kill Achilles, 641; murders Achilles and the son of duc Nestor in the temple of Appollo, 642; slays many Greeks, 643; shoots a poisoned arrow at Ajax, but is killed by him, 644; 651; 652; 673; 700
- Patroclus, duc, G., 540; 548; 550; 552; 578; "this patroclus was a moche noble duc and ryche and louyd so moche Achylles that they were bothe of one Allyance," 579; kyng P., slain by Hector, 580; 581; 588; 591; 602; 700
- Paucus, "a ryuer runnyng through Troye," 508
- Fauonye. *See* Pannonye
- Peleus, kyng of Thessayle, father of Achilles, G., 511; 512; 689; 690; 692; 693; 694
- Pellus, another name of Cetus, G., 680
- Penelope, *Penelope*, wyfe of Vlizes, 688
- Pergama (*plur.* of Pergamus, the citadel of the city of Troy, often used for Troy itself), 703
- \*Perse, Perce, kyng of, T., 542; 573; 577; 588; Perce, 594; Parce, Perce, 619; 620; people of, 643; 644
- Perseus, *Perseus*, kyng of Ethiopie, T., 567; *Perseus*, kyng of the Ethyopyens, 572; *Perseus*, kyng of Perse, 577
- Pessemus, *Pessemusus*, kyng of the royame of Panonye, T., 566
- Phaces, the noble cyte of Achilles, 546
- Philaca, *Phirarre*, *Philarde*, duchy, 546; (Prothocathus and prothesalaus, the dukes of philaca), *Philarde* (the kyng prothesalaus), 570
- Philemenus, Philemeus, *Philemenis*, kyng of Paphagore or Paphagone, T., 567; 572; 611; 634; 636; (*Philomenus*), 643; 646; (*Philomenis*), 647; (*phylomenis*), 648; 664
- Philemenus, G., bete Anthenor, 596
- Philia, kyng, T., slain by Achilles, 599
- Philia, kyng, G., slain by Hector, 607

- Philistenes**, son of Achastus, G., 689; slain by Pyrrus, 691  
**Philon**, kyng of the royaume of Agreste, son of Eedras, T., 577; 585  
**Philoteas**. *See* Phylotus  
**Philotetes**, kyng of Larisse, G., 579  
**Phimonus**, son of Achalaphus, G., 579  
**Philotus**, *Philotis*, kyng, G., 579; *Phylotas*, 585; *Philoteas*, 586; 596  
**Phybus**, kyng, G., 700; slain by Hector  
**Pilax**, kyng of Trachie, T., 566; *see* **Egypteus**, king of Tracie  
**Pillon**. *See* **Pyllon**  
**Plebeus**, kyng, T., slain by Achilles, 700  
**Polemon**, kyng, G., slain by Hector, 700  
**Polibetes**, *Polibetes* (from the prouynce of Oalydone), G., 545; 700; slain by Hector  
**Polibetes**, kyng of Rythea, G., 546  
**Polidamus**, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 576  
**Polidarius**, erle, G., 542; 579; in the companye of Thelamon  
*ayax*, kyng of Salamyne  
**Polidorus**, according to Virgile a son of Pryant, T., 506; 671; (Virg., "*Aeneis*," III. 21, etc.)  
**Polimytes**, *Polymytes*, kyng of Arsymena, father of Egee, G., 596; 681  
**Poliphebus**, kyng, G., 546  
**Polixeme**, *conte d'accon*, erle, G., 545; in the companye of Thelamon, kyng of Salamyne  
**\*Polixena**, the third daughter of king Pryant, 507; (*Polyxena*), 544; 618; 620; 621; 622; 626; 628; 629; 636; 637; 638; 641; 669; 670; 673; 674; 700  
**Polixenes**, a noble duc, G., slain by Hector, 600; kyng *Polixenus*, 700  
**Polixenus**, a nobleman, G., 584; slain by Dinadorus  
**\*Pollux**, *Polus*, brother of Castor and Helayne, G., 513; 529; 538; 539; 540  
**Polimestor**, *Polimestor*, kyng, T., is slain by Thelamon, 671  
**Polyceus**, a noble duc of Greece, G., 613  
**Polydamas**, son of Anthenor, T., 505; 527; 536; 544; 583; 584; 596; 597; 600; 608; 611; 612; 613; 618; 634; 636; 639; 643; 646; 647; 648-50  
**Polydaryus**, kyng, G., 542; **Polidarius**, erle, 579  
**Pollydrya**, son of kyng Machaonor, or of kyng Collesin, G., 546



**Polymytes. See Polimytes****Precessus, Precessus**, kyng, T., 577**Prometheus**, "made the fyrste (ydole) amonge the paynens and taughte other the maner how to make hem," 550**Prothalus**, kyng, G., 580; ? identical with Prothoylus.**Prothenor**, brother of Archelaus, both kynges of Boeoe, cousyn or parent of Achilles, G., 545; 571; 579; 583; 588; 590; 593; 700; slain by Hector**Prothenor**, kyng T., 700; slain by Dyomedes**Protheselaus**, kyng of Philarde, 542; **Prothesalus**, one of the dukes of Philaca, G., 546; 570; 572; **Prothesalaus**, 573; folke of, 579; 591; 700; slain by Hector**Prothocatus**, brother of Prothesalus, both dukes of Philaca, G., 545; 546**Prothoylus**, kyng of Ohemenense, G., 546

\***Pryant, Priant, Priamus** (505-6), son of Laomedon, king of Troye, T., 505; 506; when making war in a foreign land, hears of his father's death and the destruction of Troy by Hercules, hastens home, makes lamentations and commences rebuilding the city, 507; collects the inhabitants of the surrounding country and makes them dwell in the city; builds a palace for himself called Ilion, 508; when he sees the strength of his city, thinks of taking revenge upon the Greeks. Assembles his barons and speaks to them, 509; rehearing the wrongs done them by the Greeks, he suggests sending a messenger to demand Exione, 510; 511; 512; 513; 514; is grieved that his messenger has been so rudely treated, and gives up the hope of recovering Exione, unless by force; thinks of sending a fleet to do injury to the Greeks, 515; assembles his nobles and speaks to them of punishing the Greeks, 516; is glad when they acquiesce, calls his sons and incites them to take vengeance, 517; puts all in the hands of Hector, 518; 519; 520; is pensive at the words of Helenus, 523; sends Paris and Deyphebus into Panonye to collect men to accompany them to Greeca, 524; assembles the citizens and asks their advice, 525; 526; will not change his purpose for any warning; commissions Eneas, Anthenor, and Polydamas to go with Paris, 527; makes a parting speech to them, 528; 529; 533; when he hears what Paris has done in Greeca, commands the Troians to hold

a festival, 534; comes to meet Paris, helps Helayne to dismount and leads her into the palace, consents to her marriage with Paris, 536; has Cassandra imprisoned, 537; 542; 543; 544; sends Calchas to the oracle at Delphos, 551; 552; 556; 557; 558; receives the messengers of the Greeks, 559; speaks angrily to them and bids them be gone; does not allow his followers to hurt them, 560; 561; 562; 566; 567; 568; 577; promises to do all that Hector asks him and recommends him to the care of the gods, 578; makes a truce with the Greeks, 590; laments the death of Cassibelanus, 591; 596; calls his council and wishes to have Thoas put to death, 597; is dissuaded from his purpose, 598; makes a truce with the Greeks 601; sends Bressyda to her father, 602; is the only man willing that the single combat between Hector and Achilles shall take place, 603; 605; demands a truce from the Greeks for six months during which time he buries his six bastard sons honourably, 609; 610; sends to Hector, entreats him not to go to battle, runs after him and stops his horse, 611, and makes him return, 612; faints at the sight of Hector's body; has a rich sepulchre made for him, 614; ordains priests to pray continually for Hector, 615; pays them well; accords a truce of two months to the Greeks, 616; wishes to avenge the death of Hector and arranges his men himself; strikes Palamydes to the ground, kills many Greeks and does marvels of arms, 618; continues to kill the Greeks and fights more valiantly than all the others, 619; gains the battle, demands a truce from the Greeks, and sends the body of Peres to be buried in his own country, 620; consents unwillingly to the marriage of Achilles and Polixena on the condition that Achilles first keeps his promise, 623; 624; 626; laments the deaths of Deyphebus and Sarpedon, 629; accords a truce of two months to the Greeks, 630; agrees to a truce of six months, 633; 635; 636; is angry that Achilles has broken his word, 638; 639; laments the death of Troyllus, 640; demands a truce from the Greeks, 641; grants the request of Agamenon and allows the Greeks to erect a sepulchre to Achilles, near the gate Tymbre, 642; deeply laments the death of Paris, 644; refuses to fight again with the Greeks until the queen of

- Amazone arrives, 645; receives her with joy and gives her many jewels, 646; 650; is angry at the speech of Anthenor and Eneas, 651; hears their counsel, 652; reproves them strongly, 653; and arranges that Amphymacus shall lie in ambush and kill them, 654; sends for them, but tells Amphymacus not carry out his intention; calls the men of Troy to a parliament; all agree to make peace with the Greeks, he alone is unwilling to do so, but at last consents, 655; 656; assembles all the Troians to hear Anthenor, afterward weeps, plainly seeing treason beneath his fair words, 657; assembles all the Troians in his palace, 658; 660; calls all his people to council, 661, 663; swears to keep the peace with the Greeks; returns Helayne to Menelaus, asks them all to do her no injury, 664; unwillingly consents to the horse of brass being brought into the city, 665; hears the cries of his people and knows the city is taken, enters the temple of Appollo and kneels before the high altar, 666; where he is slain by Pyrrus, 667; 671; 674; 680; 692; 695; 700
- Pyllon**, *Pillon*, where duc Nestor sojourned, 514; *Pillon*, prouynce of, 545
- Pyre**, *Pirre*, *Pyre*, cyte of, 528; the seat of duc Nestor, 538
- Pyrrus**, *Pirrus*, otherwise called *Neptolonyus*, son of Achilles and Dyadamie, G., 643; 644; 646; 647; 648; 649; 650; 667; 669; 670; 673; 688; 689; 690; 691; 692; 693; 694; slew the "quene Panthasilee, kyng Pryant, and the fayr mayde Polixene," 700
- Quyntelynus**, *Quintholemis*, *Quintilenus*, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 585; *quyntylynus*, 587
- Remus**, kyng of Thaborye, T., 566; 583; 596
- Rodes**, kyng Telephus, from (Rhodes on the island of Rhodes), 546; kyngs of, 579
- Rusticane**, *Rusticaire*, duchy of, 546
- Rythee**, *Richee*, royame of, 546
- Sadellus**, T., "slewe an admyrall of the grekes," 588

<sup>1</sup> The passage in Guido's "Historia Troiana" runs thus: "rusticane provincie qui dicta est helida"!!!

- Sagamon**, brother of kyng Menon, T., 573; killed by Palamydes  
**Sagittayre**, *Sagittaire*, "a beste that behynde the myddes was an hors & to fore a man, etc.," T., 567; 597; killed by Dyomedes, 600  
**Salamyne**, *Salmine*, seat of kyng Thelamon, 512; 545; people of, 579; them of, 583; 682  
**Samestare**, *Samestaire*, cyte of, 529; where Castor and Pollux lived  
**Sammus**, *Savinus*, one of the thre dukes of Boceye who came to the assistance of Pryant, T., 567  
**Sampitus**, kyng, G., 579; † identical with *Exampitus*, 700; and *Pampitus*, 606; 607  
**Sampitus**, kyng, T., 582; † identical with *Exampitus*, 576  
**Sarabana**, a castle near Troy, 554; 556  
**Sarpedon**, son of kyng Glanton of Lioye, and one of the strongest knights of the world, cousin of Pryant, T., 566; 596; 611; 619; 627; slain by Palamydes, 629  
**Soelenus**, *Stelenus*, kyng, G., 596  
**Securabor**, one of the bastard sons of Pryant, T., 581  
**Securidam**, "the right stronge knyght," in the company of Prothenor, G., 579  
**Sedius**, *Thedius*, one of the two kynges of the royaume of Foeyden, G., 545; † identical with *Oedus*, *Oedeus*, 599, and *Oelidus*, 579; 583  
**Sepelladem**, port of, 690  
**Simagon**, son of kyng Thiction, or kyng of Thiction, from the regne of Ethiopa, T., 567  
**Sparte**, royaume of, 545; *Sparte*, 579  
**Stupex**, duc, from royaume of panonye (*Panonye*), T., 566  
**Synon**,<sup>1</sup> *Simon*, "This hors [the one of brass] made a passyng wyse mayster as Apus was" G., 663; 665; 666  
  
**Tantalus**, G., 541  
**\*Tenedon**, port of Tenedos, 534; 536; *Themodon*, 552; 555; 556; playn of, 562; port of, 565; 568; 665; 666  
**Tetides**, *Thetides*, kyng of Gerbandya, to whom Anthenor went after being banished from Troy, 675

<sup>1</sup> According to "Le Recueil," Apus made the hors, but Simon concealed himself in it. Compare my note to Apus.

**Teutram.** *Ses Theutram*

**Thaborye, Thabarie,** royaume of, 566

**Tharasia, Thasaris,** wyfe of Ydumeus, kyng of Crete, mother of Olitemestra, 681

**Thelagonus,** son of Vlixes and Circe, 695; 696; 697; kills his own father without knowing him, 698; 699

**Thelamon ayax,** son of Thelamon and Exione, 589; 590; **Ayax oyleus, oyleus,** 677

\***Thelamon ayax,** kyng of Salamyne, generally only called

Thelamon, G., 505; speaks roughly to Anthenor, 512; 513; 530; 532; 541; arrives with fifty ships from his kingdom

of Salamyne at the port of Athenes, 545; lands and joins in the battle with the Troians, 572; 575; is the leader of the seventh division, 579; slays many Troians, 583;

drives the Troians back with Menelaus, and is sorely wounded, 584; 585; is very sorry that the Greeks have

to retreat, 586; beats and wounds Margareton, 588; 589; 590; with Menesteus rescues Achilles from Hector, 609;

fights with Polidamas and throws him off his horse, 612; is hurt by Deyphebus, 626; fights against Paris and

Troyllus and drives them away from the ships, 627-28; helps the Greeks to recover the field, 635; strikes Philo-

meus to the ground and wounds him sorely, 636; is thrown to the ground by Penthasile, 646; knights Pyrrus

on his arrival, throws down Penthasile and is beaten to the ground by her, 647; 648; keeps Andrometha and Cassan-

dra in the temple of Mynerva, 667; advises the Greeks to burn Helayne, 668; desires to have the Palladium, 671;

quarrels with Vlixes and threatens to kill him, abuses Agamenon and Menelaus for having decided against him,

672; is found slain in his bed, 673; 675; 676; 682; 687

**Thelamon Chyleus,** (?) who brought "sixe and thritty shippes," G., 545

**Thelamotus,** son of Vlixes and Penelope, 688; 693; 697; 698; he rules in Achaye, 699

**Thelamus, Thelemus,** a companion of Dyomedes, G., 546

**Thelaphus, Thelephalus,** kyng of Rodes, G., 546

**Thelephus,** son of Hercules, G., 562; 563; 564; "that afore was but a duc was made kyng of Messe," 565;

625; 681

- Thelcus**, kyng of Cheres, T., 567  
**Thenter**, *Thencor*, duc, G., 545; in the companye of Thelamon; kyng, 583; 584; 585-88; 676; broder of Thelamon, 682  
**Theorius**, *Checorius*, kyng of Breyse, G., 546  
**Thephus**, *Thesus*, erle, in the company of Thelamon, kyng of Salamyne, G., 545  
**\*Thessaylle**, *Thessails*, (Thessaly), 511; 689; 690; 693; 694  
**Thesus**, erle, in the company of kyng Thelamon, G., 579; kyng, father of Archilogus, 580; 584; **Thesusus**, 585  
**Thesus**, *Thesusus*, kyng of Trahie, T., 575; 596  
**Thetia**, wyfe of Peleus, kyng of Thessayle, mother of Achilles; she was daughter of Acastus, 692; 694  
**Theuter**. *Ses Thenter*  
**Theutram**, *Teucram*, **Teutram**, kyng of Messe, **Teutram**, 562; **theutram**, 563; 564; 565  
**Thiction**, *Thicion*, **Thicion**, kyngs, and kyngs of, T., 567  
**Thistram**, "a passing wyse man," father of Calchas, 551  
**Thoant**, a priest, who stole the Palladium, T., 660; 661; 662  
**Thoas**, kyng of Tholye, G., 545; 572; 579; 585; 587; 594; cousin of Achilles, 596; 597; 598; 601; 625; 634  
**Tholoson**, provynce of, 566  
**Tholye**, royame of, 545  
**Thymyssa**,<sup>1</sup> second wyfe of Thelamon, mother of Anchisatus, 676  
**Toscanna**, *Thoscanna*, where Eneas and his navy arrive, 683; (Tuscany)  
**\*Trace**, port of, king of, 506; 545; 628  
**Trachie**, royame of, 566; whence came "the kyngs pilex and the duc alchamas" to the assistance of Pryant  
**Tragedye**, first of. *Ses Seneca*  
**Trahie**, royame of kyng Thesusus, who helped the Troiana, 575  
**Trasem**, cyte of, *Forensis* was lord of it, 684  
**\*Troiana**, 523; 529-30; 533-34; 537; 538; 540; 546-48; 552; 555; 558; 561-62; 570-75; 581-84; 586; 588-92; 593-95; 598-601; 603; 606-8; 609; 611-12; 614; 616; 619-20; 622; 625-33; 635-38; 640; 642-45; 648; 650; 655-58; 660-62; 664-66; 668; 671-72; 674; 682-83; 694; 699; 702  
**\*Troye**, **Troyes**, **Troie**, cyte of, 33; 37; 38; 131-33; 137-42

<sup>1</sup> Not mentioned in "Le Recueil."

146; 149; 154; 155; 159-60; 162-64; 170; 202; 226;  
 270-78; 280-90; 292-93; 342; 347; 348-51; 388; 505;  
 507; 512; 514; port of, 515; 524; 526-27; 529; 533-37;  
 539-44; 545; 547; 551-52; (royame of), 554; 555;  
 557-59; 562; 566; (royame of), 568; (port of), 569;  
 570; 574-75; 582-83; admiral of, 588; 590; 594; 596;  
 599; 603-606; 618-20; 627-28; 635; 644; 645; 650-53;  
 655; 658; 660-61; 663-69; 671-72; (royame of), 673-76;  
 677-78; 681-82; 687-88; 689-91; 695-96; 699

**Troyenne**, one of the gates of Troye, 507

**Troyllus**, **Troilus**, fifth son of Pryant, T., 506; condemns the  
 advice of his brother Helenus and advises his father to  
 send ships to Greece, 524; 574; 576; does marvels of  
 valour, is rescued by Alcanus, 582; is made by Hector  
 leader of the first battle, fights with Dyomedes, 592;  
 is saved from Dyomedes through the valour of the  
 Troians, 593; 594; dismounts and fights on foot with  
 Dyomedes, 595; 597; goes with Eneas and Anthenor to  
 Helayne, 598; 601; loves and is loved by Breesyda, 603;  
 604; goes to battle, 606; 607; is thrown down by  
 Diomedes, who sends his horse to Breesyda, 608; is  
 attacked by Achilles and defends himself valiantly, 609;  
 is the first to issue out of Troy, 611; fights with Dyomedes,  
 is saved from death by the timely intervention of Mene-  
 laus, succeeds in remounting Polidamas, 612; 618; goes  
 with Paris to the port and puts fire to the ships of the  
 Greeks, 627; 629; 632; is attacked by Dyomedes, smites  
 him very hard, is carried on his shield to his tent,  
 is attacked by Menelaus, strikes down Agamenon, 633;  
 bears Menesteus to the ground, 634; is remounted by his  
 bastard brothers, fights bravely against the Myrmidons,  
 635; is angry at the death of his bastard brother Brum,  
 636; compels the Greeks to retreat by his valour, hurts  
 and is hurt by Achilles, 637; fights bravely, 638; is sur-  
 rounded by the Myrmidons and shamefully slain by  
 Achilles, 639; 640; is buried honourably, 641; 700

**Troilus** and **Creesyda**, the boke of, by G. Chaucer, 601, 604;

**Tymbria**, one of the gates of Troye, 507; **Tymbre**, 642

**Tynelus**, **Mebus**, duc, "fro his cyte of Frygis" (*Pigris*), G.,

\***Ulixes**, kyng of Trace, is the fairest of all the Greeks, G., 541; comes with fifty-two ships from his kingdom of Trace to the rendezvous of the Greeks in the port of Athens, 545; 556; he and Dyomedes are sent as messengers to Troy, 558; speaks to Pryant, 559; 560; asks Diomedes to say no more, 561; joins with many people in the battle, 571; is beaten down from his horse and slightly wounded by Philomenus, whom he then gives a mighty blow at the throat, 572; is leader of the fourteenth division, 579; is hurt by Troyllus whom he hurts again, 586; beats king Arastous and takes his horse from him, 596; is sent with Diomedes to Pryant to ask for truce, 601; is commissioned, by Agamenon with Nector and Diomedes, to speak to Achilles; asks Achilles what has caused him to change his mind, 630; is answered by Achilles, 631; 632; joins in the battle with his people, 635; fights with Polidamas, 636; is selected, with the king of Crete and Dyomedes, to negotiate with Anthenor, 656; tells the Troians the demands of the Greeks, 658; asks Anthenor why he tarries so long in carrying out his plan, 659; 660; receives the Palladium, 661; dissuades the Greeks from killing Helayne, 668; is accused by Thelamon before Agamenon, 671; declares that through his valour and wit Troy was conquered, keeps the Palladium by the desire of Agamenon, and Menelaus, 672; is abused by Pyrrus; departs from Troy secretly, leaving the Palladium with Dyomedes, 673; 676; 678; 679; 682; 684; arrives with two ships, which he has hired in Crete; Ydumeus takes pity on him, 687; hears news about his wife, sees his son Thelamotus, returns to Trace; his son marries Nausica, the daughter of Alcyonous, abides for some time in his kingdom, 688; has a vision in which he is killed by his son, 695; has his son Thelamotus taken into custody; his son by Circe, Thelagonus, comes to Trace, 696; fearing that Thelamotus has come to kill him, descends, and is killed by Thelagonus, who does not know him, 697; 698; 699

\***Venus**, goddess (of Munidia), wyfe of Anchises, mother of Eneas, 506; 515; 521; 522; 527; 528; feast of, 529; temple of, 591

**Virgile** (*Æneis*), 506.; 590.; *Virgyle*, enaydos 683



- Yda**, forest of, 521; where Paris had a vision of the three goddesses, Venus, Pallas, and Juno
- Ydumeus**, one of the kynges of Crete, G., 545; 579; 581; uncle of Horestes, 681; 684; 686; 687; leaves "two sones after hym, Merion and Loarca," 693
- Yle**, the grete, off the "prouynce / named Gerbandye / where of the kyng Tetides was lord and kyng," 675
- Yle**, the, where "quene Hecuba ended and fynysshed her lyf," 670; "And her sepulcre appereth yet in the same yle vnto this day," 670
- \***Ylion**, son of Troos, 659
- \***Ylion**, palais of, 508; 516; hall of, 598; 609; palais of, 614; 659; 666; 667; 668
- Yponeus**, kyng, T., slain by Achilles, 700
- Ynde**, lasse, 520; ynde the myneur, evidently to be understood in the sense of the Ancients, *i.e.*, Æthiopia, 568
- Ysaye**, prophesie of, 549
- Ysle**, nyghe Amazonne, the Amazons went in "Appryll, maye and Juyn vnto the men (who lived there) to haue theyr companye," 645
- Ysmaell**, was the first "that made ydole amonge the Jewes," 549
- \***Ytalye** (Italy), 683

## GLOSSARY.\*

- A BACK**, *adv.* back, 94<sub>m</sub>; 261<sub>;</sub>  
 aback 555<sub>m</sub>  
**Abandon**,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* abandonment, giving  
 up, 45<sub>m</sub>  
**Abandone** and forsake, 488<sub>m</sub>;  
 abandone and gyue ouer, 199<sub>;</sub>;  
 485<sub>m</sub>; 488<sub>m</sub>; abandoned and  
 gaf hit ouer, 223<sub>m</sub>; 310<sub>;</sub>;  
 abandoned and gyuen ouer,  
 165<sub>m</sub>  
**Abashe**, *v.* (fr. *esahir*), *to abash*,  
 abayshe, 183<sub>m</sub>; abashed, 89<sub>;</sub>;  
 abashid, 162<sub>m</sub>; 166<sub>m</sub>; 214<sub>m</sub>;  
 228<sub>m</sub>; 233<sub>m</sub>; 391<sub>m</sub>; 461<sub>m</sub>;  
 678<sub>m</sub>; abashid and shamed,  
 254<sub>m</sub>; abashid and surprisid,  
 204<sub>m</sub>; abashid and esmayed,  
 662<sub>m</sub>; abaisid, 417<sub>r</sub> See  
 esbays  
**Abaschement**, *sb.* dread, terror (fr.  
 esbahissement), 43<sub>m</sub>; 228<sub>m</sub>;  
 365<sub>m</sub>; abaischement, 417<sub>w</sub>. See  
 embaschement  
**Abate**, *v.* (fr. *abatre*), *to abate*,  
*diminish*, abate ne mynyshe,  
 376<sub>;</sub>; abatyth or leyth down,  
 461<sub>m</sub>  
**Abayshe**, *v.* (fr. *abaissier*), *to abase*,  
 abashe, 308<sub>m</sub>; abassing, 269<sub>m</sub>;  
 abayshe and put down, 137<sub>m</sub>;  
 abayshid and don, 151<sub>;</sub>  
**Abbeste**, *sb.* asbestos (fr. *abbeste*  
*cest vne pierre precieuse*), 31<sub>m</sub>  
**Abedde**, *adv.* in bed 231<sub>m</sub>  
**Abhomynable**, *adj.* 163<sub>m</sub>; *abominable*  
**Abhomynacion**, *sb.* abomination,  
 12<sub>m</sub>; 58<sub>;</sub>; abhomynacyon,  
 499<sub>m</sub>; abhomynacyon and  
 abaschement, 43<sub>m</sub>  
**Abhorryng** and eschewyng, 41<sub>m</sub>

\* This is the first glossary to "The Recuyell of the histories of Troye" ever compiled. The language of the first English printed book is, to say the least of it, very peculiar, owing to the facts, that Caxton's "rude engliss" had probably become somewhat rusty during his long absence abroad, and, that his knowledge of French must have been rather superficial. It is therefore not wonderful when William Fiston, who corrected the text for Th. Creede's edition (1607), doubted Caxton's being an Englishman. (Comp. vol. i. pp. cii & ciii.) The peculiarities of the language, which I have as far as possible noted in the glossary are of three kinds: (1) Mistakes and blunders of the most trivial sort in the translation. (2) Words adopted from the French, either in their original forms or corrupted, such as one would look for in vain in any other English text; (3) The use of two words, either absolutely or nearly synonymous, in expressing the same thing. The numbers refer to pages and lines. In many cases, where the sense of words is quite clear, I have not thought it necessary to gloss them at all. The French words, added in brackets, are not etymons, but the equivalents of the English words in the French original text.

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates: "et le mectioient en leur habandon" by "and put them in theyr abandon."

- Abillite, *sb.* ability, 210<sub>m</sub>; habilites, *pl.* 253<sub>s</sub>  
 Abill, *adj.* able, 86<sub>m</sub>  
 Abillements, *sb. pl.* See habillements  
 Abisme, *sb.* 417<sub>m</sub>; abysme, 451<sub>s</sub>; abysmes, *pl.* 139<sub>s</sub>; 448<sub>m</sub>; abisme and swallow, 7<sub>m</sub>; abisme and swolowe, 310<sub>m</sub>; abismes and swolowe, 273<sub>m</sub>; abismes and botoms, 258<sub>s</sub>  
 A bord,<sup>1</sup> *on board*, 338<sub>s</sub>  
 Aborde, *v.* (fr. aborder), aborde this poort, 200<sub>s</sub>; aborded hit (the ship), 207<sub>s</sub>  
 Abrood, *adv.* abroad, 26<sub>m</sub>; a brood, 17<sub>m</sub>; 191<sub>m</sub>; 245<sub>s</sub>; 308<sub>m</sub>  
 Abusion, *sb.* (fr. abusjon), abuse, 181<sub>m</sub>; 204<sub>m</sub>; 230<sub>m</sub>; 491<sub>m</sub>  
 Abyde, *v.* to abide, 191<sub>s</sub>; abyd, 639<sub>m</sub>; abide, 314<sub>m</sub>; abode, 51<sub>m</sub>; 186<sub>s</sub>; abood, 154<sub>m</sub>; 185<sub>m</sub>; 437<sub>m</sub>; 688<sub>m</sub>; abyden, 155<sub>s</sub>; 82<sub>m</sub>; abiden, 47<sub>s</sub>; 223<sub>m</sub>; a bood, 626<sub>m</sub>; a biden, 682<sub>m</sub>; abide and continue, 183<sub>m</sub>; abide and endure, 60<sub>m</sub>; abide and dwelle, 15<sub>s</sub>; 173<sub>s</sub>; 606<sub>s</sub>; abyde and reste, 429<sub>m</sub>; abyde and susteyne, 649<sub>s</sub>; abyde and tarye, 155<sub>s</sub>; 610<sub>m</sub>; abideth and resteth, 126<sub>s</sub>; abydeth and awayteth, 236<sub>s</sub>; abode and taried 326<sub>m</sub>; abood and restid, 462  
 Accomplishid and fullfild, 65<sub>s</sub>  
 Accounte *v.* to tell, narrate, accountid, (fr. compta), 297<sub>m</sub>  
 Acertaynly, *adv.* certainly (fr. acertes, adcertes), 67<sub>m</sub>; 233<sub>m</sub>; 278<sub>m</sub>; 405<sub>m</sub> Compare certainly, 98<sub>m</sub>; 170<sub>s</sub>  
 Acerteyne, *v.* ascertain, acerteyned, 492<sub>m</sub>; ascertainyed, 497<sub>m</sub>; adcertayned, 515<sub>m</sub>  
 Achauffe, *v.* See eschauffe  
 Ache and smerte, 163<sub>s</sub>  
 Achiened and made, 202<sub>m</sub>  
 Accompanye, *v.* to associate with, accompanied, 209<sub>m</sub>  
 Acorde, *v.* to accord, 14<sub>m</sub>; accorded, 14<sub>m</sub>; accorde and agree, 603<sub>m</sub>; 673<sub>m</sub>; accorded and agreed, 313<sub>m</sub>; 456<sub>m</sub>; 669<sub>s</sub>  
 Acorde and makynq of this pees, 177<sub>m</sub>  
 Accountyd and abatid (=fr. tout compte et rabatu), 128<sub>m</sub>  
 Acqueyntance and comynycacion, 183<sub>s</sub>  
 Actours ne doars, 441<sub>m</sub>; auctour and makar, 251<sub>s</sub>  
 Acurse, *v.* to curse, acurid, 138<sub>s</sub>; 165<sub>m</sub>  
 Adaunte, *v.* to subdue, tame (fr. adanter and dompter), 17<sub>m</sub>; 208<sub>m</sub>; adaunte and maistris, 206<sub>s</sub>; adaunte and overcome, 160<sub>s</sub>  
 Ademont yron, *sb.* (fr. aymant), adamant, 336<sub>m</sub>  
 Adiouste, *v.* to add (fr. ajouter), adiousted, 411<sub>m</sub>; 577<sub>s</sub>; adiousted and gaf, 284<sub>m</sub>; he adiousted fayth and gaf credence, 87<sub>s</sub>  
 Adomage, *v.* See endomage  
 Adoun, *adv.* down, 536<sub>m</sub>  
 Adowbed and made redy, 65<sub>m</sub>; 445<sub>m</sub>  
 Adresse, *v.* to direct, 327<sub>s</sub>; adresshid,<sup>2</sup> 219<sub>m</sub>; to stand up (the hair), 485<sub>m</sub>; adressid = clever, skilful, 207<sub>m</sub>; 457<sub>m</sub>  
 Adubbe and make knyght, 312<sub>m</sub>  
 Aduyronned and sette round aboute, 209<sub>m</sub>  
 Aduyse, *sb.* advice, 690<sub>m</sub>; Aduyse, *v.* to advise, 650<sub>m</sub>; aduysed, 676<sub>m</sub>; aduysed and take counceyll, 652<sub>s</sub>; auyse, 229<sub>m</sub>; 632<sub>s</sub>; auysed, 619<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates: "il fist virer sa galeye" by "he maad to vyre his galeye a bord."

<sup>2</sup> Caxton translates: "tant le quist que finablement Il y adreca et lui perca le cuer de ce coup," by "And at laste he fonde hit And fynably he adresshid so that he persed the herte!"

- Aduyse, auyse, v.** to aim at, to see, perceive, auisid, 689<sub>m</sub>; auyseed, 627<sub>m</sub>; aduyseed and seen, 621<sub>m</sub>.
- A ferde, pp.** terrified, 242<sub>m</sub>; a ferd 524<sub>m</sub>; aferd, 462<sub>m</sub>; not to be aferd ner take no drede, 333<sub>m</sub>; aferd and affrayed, 151<sub>m</sub>; [affrayed, 56<sub>a</sub>].
- A ferre, adv.** afar, at a distance, 68<sub>m</sub>; 244<sub>m</sub>; 256<sub>m</sub>; 256<sub>m</sub>.
- A flote, adv.** afloat, 382<sub>m</sub>.
- A fore, pp.** before, 14<sub>m</sub>; 682<sub>m</sub>; afore, 62<sub>m</sub>; a forne, 521<sub>m</sub>.
- A fote, adv.** afoot, on foot, 609<sub>m</sub>; 637<sub>m</sub>; a foota, 625<sub>m</sub>; "a foot" | fr. = vng soul pas, 309<sub>m</sub>.
- Affaires and werkes, 19<sub>m</sub>; 550<sub>m</sub>.**
- Affamed, pp.**; affamed of lalousie, 498<sub>m</sub>; (fr. affame), enfamyshid, 410<sub>m</sub>.
- Affine, v.** (fr. affiner), to refine, 17<sub>m</sub>.
- Affraye, sb.** attack, fright, 94<sub>m</sub>; 341<sub>m</sub>; 466<sub>m</sub>; at the afray = a leffort (!) 204<sub>m</sub>.
- Afye and truste, 215<sub>m</sub>.**
- After or behynde, 525<sub>m</sub>.**
- Afterward = fr. arriere** | 695<sub>m</sub>.
- Agayn, adv.** again, 48<sub>m</sub>; a gayn 47<sub>m</sub>.
- Agayn, prp.** against, 22<sub>m</sub>; 26<sub>m</sub>; 45<sub>m</sub>; 212<sub>m</sub>; agyn, 22, agaynst, 14<sub>m</sub>; a gaynst, 46<sub>m</sub>; ageynst, 25<sub>m</sub>.
- Agaynsaye, v.** to contradict, 102<sub>m</sub>; agayn saye, 182<sub>m</sub>; gaynsaye, 182<sub>m</sub>; contraried ner agayn sayd, 43<sub>m</sub>.
- Agloute, v.** (fr. agloutir), aglouted, 376<sub>m</sub>; aglowtyng, 135<sub>m</sub>; aglot-tyd of his glory (fr. glout de gloire), 84<sub>m</sub>.
- A goo, adv.** ago, 476<sub>m</sub>.
- Agree and graunte, 14<sub>m</sub>; agreed and consentid 634<sub>m</sub>; agreed and graunted, 356<sub>m</sub>; agreed and accorded, 108<sub>m</sub>; 385<sub>m</sub>; 609<sub>m</sub>; 610<sub>m</sub>; 620<sub>m</sub>; 633<sub>m</sub>; 641<sub>m</sub>.**
- Agreement and consente, 536<sub>m</sub>; agreement and will, 643<sub>m</sub>.**
- A hyghe, adv.** aloud, on high, 237<sub>m</sub>; on hyghe, 335<sub>m</sub>; 338<sub>m</sub>; 350<sub>m</sub>.
- A lande, adv.** ashore, 289<sub>m</sub>; 323<sub>m</sub>; 329<sub>m</sub>; 478<sub>m</sub>; 574<sub>m</sub>; a lande, 215<sub>m</sub>.
- Alday, adv.** 53<sub>m</sub>; 101<sub>m</sub>; aldays, 205<sub>m</sub>.
- Alegge, v.** (fr. allegier), to allege; allegyd, 671<sub>m</sub>.
- Algate, adv.** always, in any case, 526<sub>m</sub>.
- A liue, adv.** 81<sub>m</sub>; 165<sub>m</sub>; a lyue, 594<sub>m</sub>; alyue, 696<sub>m</sub>; on lyue, 616<sub>m</sub>.
- All, adv.** all, wholly, 53<sub>m</sub>; 56<sub>m</sub>; 70<sub>m</sub>; 71<sub>m</sub>.
- All aboutes, adv.** 345<sub>m</sub>; 443<sub>m</sub>.
- Allegiance, sb.** alleviation, 238<sub>m</sub>.
- Alle thyng, 115<sub>m</sub> = every thing or all things ?**
- Alleyway, adv.** = fr. toutes uoyes, 52<sub>m</sub>; 56<sub>m</sub>; 68<sub>m</sub>; 79<sub>m</sub>.
- Alle way, adv.** always, 186<sub>m</sub>; all way, 186<sub>m</sub>.
- Aloonly, adv.** 93<sub>m</sub>; alonly, 380<sub>m</sub>; alonli, 419<sub>m</sub>; alonely, 602<sub>m</sub>.
- Allowable, adj.** praiseworthy, 519<sub>m</sub>.
- Alowe, v.** to praise (fr. loer), aloweth, 484<sub>m</sub>; alowyn, 217<sub>m</sub>; alowed, 517<sub>m</sub>; 558<sub>m</sub>; 642<sub>m</sub>; 657<sub>m</sub>; allowed, 328<sub>m</sub>; 533<sub>m</sub>; alowe and preys, 159<sub>m</sub>; allowed and preysyd, 510<sub>m</sub>; 556<sub>m</sub>; allowed and approued, 548<sub>m</sub>.
- Also = so, 267<sub>m</sub>; 532<sub>m</sub>; also longe so, 355<sub>m</sub>.**
- Alther, gen. pl. of all, 607<sub>m</sub>; alle ther, 606<sub>m</sub> (compare alle other, 299<sub>m</sub>).**
- Alyghte, v.** to alight, to get down from a horse, alyght, 691<sub>m</sub>; alighted, 588<sub>m</sub>.
- Alyghte ne brenne, 662<sub>m</sub>.**
- Amasse and take, 477<sub>m</sub>.**
- Ambassade, sb.** embassy, 95<sub>m</sub>; en- bassade and legacion, 41<sub>m</sub>; embassade, 39<sub>m</sub>; 70<sub>m</sub>.
- Ameruaylle, v.** See esmeruaylle.
- Amene, v.** See esmene.
- Amite, sb.** east, 178<sub>m</sub>.
- Amoneste, v.** admonish, amonested, 433<sub>m</sub>; 655<sub>m</sub>; amoneste and

- warne, 682<sub>m</sub>; amonested and warned, 587<sub>s</sub>.
- Amorous, *adj.* 119<sub>14</sub>; 267<sub>m</sub>; 457<sub>s</sub>; amorous, 119<sub>m</sub>; 257<sub>m</sub>; 348<sub>s</sub>.
- Ample, *adj.* *ample, liberal*, 117<sub>15</sub>.
- Ample (fr. *amplier*) and encrease, 60<sub>m</sub>.
- Ampliacion, *sb.* 104<sub>m</sub>; ampliacion and encrease, 202<sub>m</sub>.
- A mysse, *adv.* in a faulty manner, 680<sub>m</sub>.
- Amytie, *sb.* *amity, friendship*, 43<sub>15</sub>; friendship and amytye, 512<sub>m</sub>; 623<sub>15</sub>.
- Anamoured. *See* enamoured.
- Ancylle and handmayde, 474<sub>s</sub>; ancylle and seruant, 495<sub>m</sub>.
- Andueld or stedy, 434<sub>19</sub>.
- Anenste, *pp.* *towards, against*, 54<sub>11</sub>; 217<sub>m</sub>; anenst, 10<sub>m</sub>; 111<sub>m</sub>; 115<sub>m</sub>; 144<sub>s</sub>; (aienst, 92<sub>s</sub>; ayeust, 10<sub>m</sub>).
- A newe, *adv.* on a newe, 328<sub>m</sub>; 474<sub>m</sub>.
- Anger and yre, 511<sub>m</sub>.
- Angerly, *adv.* angrily, 585<sub>15</sub>.
- Angry and wrothe, 654<sub>s</sub>; angry and sorrowful, 471<sub>m</sub>.
- Anguysshous, *adj.* *full of anguish*, 121<sub>m</sub>; 190<sub>15</sub>; 412<sub>s</sub>; anguysshously, *adv.* 322<sub>s</sub>.
- Anoder, *adj.* *another*, 431<sub>m</sub>.
- Anone, *adv.* *instantly*, 5<sub>15</sub>; anon, 15<sub>m</sub>; a non, 76<sub>s</sub>; anone and sone, 542<sub>s</sub>.
- Anoyance, and greef, 372<sub>s</sub>; error and noyance, 46<sub>m</sub>.
- Anoye, *sb.* (fr. *ennuye*), 46<sub>s</sub>; 95<sub>s</sub>; anoyes and greues, 285<sub>m</sub>.
- Anoyed and greuyd, 379<sub>14</sub>; 437<sub>15</sub>.
- Antecessours, *sb. pl.* (fr. *antecessours*), *ancestors*, 287<sub>15</sub>.
- Anulle and put down, 38<sub>15</sub> (anulle, 25<sub>m</sub>).
- Aourne v., (fr. *ornier*), *to adorn*, 448<sub>17</sub>; aourned, 508<sub>15</sub>; aourned and lerned, 506<sub>m</sub>.
- Aournementes, *sb. pl.* *adornments* (fr. *atours*) 274<sub>m</sub>.
- Apertyses, *sb. pl.* (fr. *apertises*), *proof or display of valour*, appertyses, 608<sub>m</sub>; 648<sub>11</sub>; games and apertyses, 246<sub>s</sub>.
- A poynt (fr. *à point*), 298<sub>s</sub>; 469<sub>s</sub>; apoynt, 218<sub>m</sub>; 326<sub>s</sub>; 333<sub>s</sub>; 432<sub>15</sub>.
- Apparayll, *sb.* (fr. *instruments*), 171<sub>s</sub>; apparayll and ordenance 313<sub>17</sub>.
- Appease, v. *to pacify*, 25<sub>m</sub>; 26<sub>s</sub>; appese, 49<sub>15</sub>; 317<sub>s</sub>; appayse, 276<sub>s</sub>; appeasid ner confortid, 641<sub>s</sub>.
- Appertenantes, *sb. pl.* *appurtenances*, 235<sub>m</sub>.
- Appertisementes, *sb. pl.* (fr. *appertises*), 139<sub>m</sub>.
- Applye, v. (fr. *appliquer*), 553<sub>m</sub>.
- Arasche, v. (fr. *esrachier*), 514<sub>14</sub>; araced, 639<sub>1</sub>; arachid (fr. *esgratiner*), 211<sub>14</sub>; enrached, 119<sub>s</sub>; enrached, 199<sub>s</sub>; rached, 266<sub>m</sub>; rasyd, 587<sub>15</sub>; rachid (!) and assaylyd, 211<sub>1</sub>; pallid and rachid, 301<sub>17</sub>.
- Araye, *sb.* *array, order, dress, show*, 378<sub>m</sub>; 380<sub>s</sub>; arale, 407<sub>s</sub>; aray, and gere, 58<sub>11</sub>; araye and vestementes, 281<sub>15</sub>; araye and ordenance, 290<sub>17</sub>.
- Araye, v. *to put in order, to dress* arayde, 216<sub>s</sub>; aray and adresse, 184<sub>m</sub>; araye and adresse, 185<sub>s</sub>; araye and doube, 155<sub>11</sub>; arrayyng and apparaylyng, 459<sub>s</sub>; arayed and apparaylid, 192<sub>s</sub>; arayed and aourned, 536<sub>15</sub>; arayed and adoubyd, 53<sub>m</sub>; 169<sub>m</sub>; arayed and renged, 193<sub>s</sub>.
- Arayment, *sb.* *dress, garments*, 288<sub>s</sub>.
- Arblasters, *sb. pl.* (fr. *arbalastier*), 290<sub>15</sub>; 570<sub>m</sub>.
- Archier, *sb.* *archer*, 290<sub>m</sub>; archers and arblasters, 290<sub>m</sub>.
- Areche, v. *to reach*, 406<sub>s</sub>; 612<sub>m</sub>; arecheth, 289<sub>s</sub>; araight, 46<sub>m</sub>; 563<sub>m</sub>; 573<sub>m</sub>; 649<sub>m</sub>; arought, 462<sub>s</sub>.
- Arengge, v. *to rank, to set in order*, arenged, 223<sub>s</sub>; arenged, 349<sub>m</sub>.
- Arete, v. *to remain, rest*, 182<sub>11</sub>; arestyd, 209<sub>m</sub>.
- Areysed and made agayn, 296<sub>11</sub>.

- Argued and stroof to gyder, 34. ;  
 Armees, *sb.* army, 89<sub>m</sub>; 349<sub>m</sub>; 439<sub>m</sub>; 475<sub>m</sub>; armes, 91<sub>m</sub>;  
 Armes=*foote of arms*, 427<sub>m</sub>; armes and strengthes, 190<sub>m</sub>;  
 Armour, *sb.*, 642<sub>m</sub>; armeurs, 300<sub>m</sub>; armures, 91<sub>m</sub>; 199<sub>m</sub>; 206<sub>m</sub>; armour ne harnoye, 321<sub>m</sub>;  
 Arowe, *adv.* in a row, 124<sub>m</sub>;  
 Arrowaid (! fr. arrouser) and bedewyd, 500<sub>m</sub>;  
 Arryeden, *they arrived*, 552<sub>m</sub>;  
 Artefysiall, *adj.* artificiall, 425<sub>m</sub>;  
 Arte mathematyque, 559<sub>m</sub>; arte and crafte, 425<sub>m</sub>;  
 Aryse, *v.* 267<sub>m</sub>; 335<sub>m</sub>; aroos, 10<sub>m</sub>; aroos and sourded, 39<sub>m</sub>;  
 As=as if, 465<sub>m</sub>;  
 Ascapid, 210<sub>m</sub>; escapid, 210<sub>m</sub>;  
 Ascrye, *v.* See escrye  
 A side, *adv.* aside, 321<sub>m</sub>;  
 A slepe, *adv.* asleep, 241<sub>m</sub>;  
 A sonder, *adv.* asunder, 28<sub>m</sub>;  
 A sotted, *pp.* (fr. affole), 612<sub>m</sub>;  
 Aspie, *vb.* See espie  
 Aspre, *adj.* harsh, cruel, 636<sub>m</sub>; aspre and sharpe, 236<sub>m</sub>; asperly and dedly, 101<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assautes and assaylyng, 186<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assaye, *sb.* trial, 432<sub>m</sub>; assayes, *pl.* 432<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assaylans, *pl.* the assailants, 468<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assaylle, *v.* to attack, 146<sub>m</sub>; assaylyd, 593<sub>m</sub>; assallid, 609<sub>m</sub>; assaulted, 465<sub>m</sub>; assayleden, *they assailed*, 596<sub>m</sub>; 599<sub>m</sub>; 619<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assembles, *pl.* assemblies, 452<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assure, *v.* assured, 195<sub>m</sub>; assowered, 122<sub>m</sub>; assured and trouthed them togyder, 85<sub>m</sub>;  
 Ashes, *pl.* 94<sub>m</sub>; 499<sub>m</sub>; ashis, 32<sub>m</sub>; aashen, 23<sub>m</sub>; 52<sub>m</sub>; 499<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assiege, assége, *v.* to besiege, 568<sub>m</sub>; assieged, 36<sub>m</sub>; 464<sub>m</sub>; 683<sub>m</sub>; asseged, 379<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assistance, anenst them (fr. assistance à elles), to bring face to face with, 111<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assistentes, *pl.* assistants, 26<sub>m</sub>;  
 Assoylle, *v.* to absolve, pardon, explain, solve, 391<sub>m</sub>; assoyled, 686<sub>m</sub>;  
 A stale (! fr. et la tindrent estal contre les troyens), 627<sub>m</sub>;  
 A stonyed, 260<sub>m</sub>; astonyed, 173<sub>m</sub>; 332<sub>m</sub>; 411<sub>m</sub>; estoned, 294<sub>m</sub>;  
 Astrologyen, *sb.* astrologer, 187<sub>m</sub>;  
 Astronomyen, *sb.* astronomer, 360<sub>m</sub>; astronomyens, *pl.* 490<sub>m</sub>;  
 Aswoune, *adv.* on swoon, 341<sub>m</sub>; 670<sub>m</sub>; a swowne, 538<sub>m</sub>; 698<sub>m</sub>;  
 At alaventure (fr. alaventure)<sup>1</sup> 36<sub>m</sub>; 387<sub>m</sub>; at all auenture, 223<sub>m</sub>; 346<sub>m</sub>;  
 Ataynt,<sup>2</sup> *sb.* (fr. attente), 181<sub>m</sub>;  
 A trauserse = à la trauserse (!) 619<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attamed (fr. entamer) and begon, 39<sub>m</sub>; entamed, 144<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attayne, *v.* (fr. atteindre), 65<sub>m</sub>; 269<sub>m</sub>; <sup>3</sup>attainte, 206<sub>m</sub>; attaynte, 489<sub>m</sub>; 662<sub>m</sub>; attayned, 361<sub>m</sub>; atteyned, 501<sub>m</sub>;  
 Atte=at the, 265<sub>m</sub>; 420<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attemperatly, *adv.* temperately, 134<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attempre, *v.* (fr. attemper), to attemper, 28<sub>m</sub>; 64<sub>m</sub>; attempryd, 543<sub>m</sub>; 544<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attende, *v.* (fr. tendre) to aim at, 401<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attende, *v.* (fr. attendre) to await; wait for, attended, 113<sub>m</sub>; 660<sub>m</sub>; attendyng and abydyng, 486<sub>m</sub>; attended and abiden, 65<sub>m</sub>; abode and attended, 137<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attones, *adv.* at once, 429<sub>m</sub>; 430<sub>m</sub>; 431<sub>m</sub>; 442<sub>m</sub>; 464<sub>m</sub>; 630<sub>m</sub>; 701<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attonche, *v.* to touch, 50<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attrybue, *v.* to attribute, 428<sub>m</sub>;  
 Attyre and araye, *sb.* 483<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> In all the cases enumerated the French equivalent is "alaventure." It is not quite clear whether Caxton has put "at" before "alaventure" or whether he wishes to express "at all adventure."

<sup>2</sup> Caxton translates: "Je me treuve en la plus vaine attente," by "I fynde my self in a grete playne and vayne ataynt!"

<sup>3</sup> The French "atteindre a playn coup" is rendered by "attayne to smyte philotes a playn strook!"

- Attyred and aourned, 527<sub>m</sub>  
 A two, 644<sub>m</sub>  
 Auale, *v. to lower, to descend, to make descend*; auale and goo aback, 332<sub>m</sub>; aualed, 656<sub>s</sub>  
 (Of) Anantage = fr. *davantaige*, 403<sub>m</sub>  
 Auayle, *v. to avail, auayleth* (fr. vault), 21<sub>m</sub>; auailed, 433<sub>m</sub>; auayllen, 239<sub>m</sub>  
 Auayll and prouffit, 616<sub>m</sub>  
 Auctoryte and power, 249<sub>;</sub>; 274<sub>m</sub>; 402<sub>m</sub>  
 Auctour and makar, 251<sub>;</sub>  
 Auenant, *sb. after the auenant*, 299<sub>m</sub>; at auenant, 451<sub>;</sub> (fr. a laduenant)  
 Auenaunt, *adj. graceful, fayr and auenaunt*, 513<sub>;</sub>  
 Auenge, *v. to revenge*, 187<sub>m</sub>. Compare *venge*  
 Auent, *v. (fr. esuenter), to refresh with air*, 597<sub>;</sub>  
 Auentureuse, *adj. adventurous*, 9<sub>m</sub>  
 Augmente and encrease, 294<sub>m</sub>; augmentyng and encreasyng, 38<sub>;</sub>; augmentid and encreasid, 699<sub>;</sub>; augmentid and waxe more, 303<sub>m</sub>  
 Auncyent, *adj.* 14<sub>m</sub>; 692<sub>m</sub>; auncyent and olde, 518<sub>m</sub>; 619<sub>;</sub>; olde auncyent, 658<sub>;</sub>; 669<sub>m</sub>; 689<sub>m</sub>  
 Auoultrye, *sb. adultery*, 342<sub>;</sub>  
 Auyse. See *adyuse*  
 Awake, *v.* 232<sub>;</sub>; 233<sub>;</sub>; awoke, 231<sub>m</sub>; 233<sub>m</sub>; 324<sub>m</sub>; awakyd and callyd, 134<sub>;</sub>; awakyd and quykenyd, 455<sub>m</sub>  
 (In) A wayte = en aguet, 641<sub>m</sub>; 666<sub>m</sub>; 685<sub>;</sub>  
 Awayte, *v. to await, awayting* (fr. *escoutant*), 219<sub>m</sub>; awayted (fr. *guettoient*), 468<sub>;</sub>; awaytyng and attendyng, 493<sub>m</sub>  
 Awerke, *adv. to work*, 340<sub>m</sub>  
 Awondred, *pp. wondered*, 442<sub>m</sub>  
 Awter, *sb. altar*, 16<sub>m</sub>; 20<sub>m</sub>  
 Axe = fr. *hardiesse*, 158<sub>m</sub>  
 Axe and demande, 438<sub>;</sub>; axed and demanded, 207<sub>m</sub>
- Ayde and helpe, *sb.* 260<sub>m</sub>; 293<sub>m</sub>; 562<sub>m</sub>; 578<sub>;</sub>; *v.* 228<sub>;</sub>  
 Ayen, *adv. against*, 616<sub>m</sub>  
 Ayer, *sb. air*, 18<sub>m</sub>; 27<sub>m</sub>; 43<sub>m</sub>; aier, 168<sub>m</sub>; ayres, 22<sub>m</sub>; eyer, 157<sub>m</sub>; ayer and darknes | en cest air caligine, 550<sub>m</sub>  
 Ayeul and granfader, 518<sub>m</sub>. Compare *belefader* = ayeul, 690<sub>m</sub>; and *beel sire*, 643<sub>;</sub>  
 Aygre, *adj. acid, sour, sharp*, 157<sub>m</sub>; aygrely *adv.*, 66<sub>m</sub>; aygerly, 160<sub>m</sub>; aygre and sharpe, 401<sub>m</sub>; eygre, 23<sub>m</sub>; 400<sub>;</sub>; eygrely, 76<sub>m</sub>; 77<sub>m</sub>; 210<sub>;</sub>; 433<sub>;</sub>; eygre and siera, 193<sub>;</sub>
- BAGUES and Jewellis, 647<sub>m</sub>; bagues and owohes, 110<sub>;</sub>; bagues or jewels, 484<sub>m</sub>; bagues and juellis, 197<sub>m</sub>; jewels and bagues, 295<sub>;</sub>  
 Balayne or hulke, 273<sub>m</sub>  
 Bame, *sb. balm*, 615<sub>m</sub>  
 Bancke of the see = *dicque de la mer*, 217<sub>m</sub>  
 Bannyshe, *v. to banish, bannyd*, 41<sub>m</sub>; bannyshid, 59<sub>m</sub>; bannyshid and excolled, 207<sub>m</sub>  
 Banyere, *sb.* 149<sub>m</sub>; 150<sub>;</sub>; banyer, 151<sub>;</sub> banyer roiall 350<sub>;</sub>  
 Barate, *sb. deceit, treason*, 656<sub>m</sub>; barate and dyscoerte, 671<sub>m</sub>  
 Basillique, *sb. basilisk*, 82<sub>m</sub>; 131<sub>m</sub> basylliques, 84<sub>;</sub>  
 Battayll, *sb. battle*, 354<sub>;</sub>; *acies*, 188<sub>m</sub>; 354<sub>;</sub>; 578<sub>m</sub>  
 Bayard, *sb. a bay horse*, 4<sub>m</sub>  
 Be, *pp. by*, 42<sub>m</sub>; 94<sub>m</sub>  
 Beaute, *sb.* 13<sub>;</sub>; beaute, 51<sub>m</sub>; 124<sub>m</sub>  
 Beauteuous, *adj. beauteous*, 84<sub>m</sub>  
 Bebledd, *pp. covered with blood*, 667<sub>m</sub>  
 Becke, *sb. beak*, 373<sub>;</sub>  
 Becliffe, *vb. to embrace, becliffe*, 690<sub>m</sub>; beclypt, 80<sub>m</sub>; beclipped, 355<sub>m</sub>; beclippid, 141<sub>m</sub>; beclypt and kyste, 130<sub>;</sub>  
 Become, *v.* 441<sub>m</sub>; became, 194<sub>;</sub>; 224<sub>m</sub>; becomen, 161<sub>m</sub>

- Bede, *sb.* *bed*, 12 ;  
 Bedewed, *pp.* (fr. *arrouse*), 101 ;  
 Beefe or oxen, 441 ;  
 Beell sire, *sb.* (fr. *aysul*), 643 ;  
 Befalle, *v.* 20 ;; befall, 476 ;  
 befall, 387 ;; 434 ;; befalle,  
 36 ;; 57 ;; 154 ;; 335 ;  
 Beggar = *l.* *bergier*, 82 ;  
 Begyle and deceyue, 54 ;; 486 ;;  
 begyled and deceyued, 238 ;  
 Begynne, *v.* 4 ;; 458 ;; 519 ;;  
 began, 4 ;; 600 ;; begonne,  
 296 ;; 519 ;; 625 ;; 701 ;;  
 begon, 39 ;; 64 ;; begonnen,  
 253 ;; 297 ;; begonne and open,  
 65 ;; begonne and stablisahid,  
 261 ;  
 Behated, *pp.* *hated*, 440 ;  
 Behede, *v.* (fr. *decooper*), beheded,  
 210 ;; heded, 210 ;; beheded  
 and amyten in pocy, 100 ;  
 Behoefnyd, *pp.* 569 ;; behouyd,  
 323 ;  
 Beholde, *v.* *to behold*, behald, 19 ;;  
 behelde, 19 ;; beholde, 79 ;;  
 beholde and auyse, 485 ;; be-  
 holde and see, 119 ;; 255 ;;  
 404 ;; 437 ;; 441 ;; behelde  
 and sawe, 225 ;; 488 ;; beholden  
 and seen, 255 ;; be beholden  
 and be seyn, 531 ;; behelde and  
 thoughte, 211 ;  
 Belefader, *sb.* (fr. *ayeul*), 203 ;;  
 690 ;  
 Beleue, *v.* (fr. *demourer*), *to remain*,  
 122 ;; 441 ;; bleuyth, 41 ;;  
 beleft, 160 ;; belefte, 162 ;;  
 bleuen, 327 ;  
 Beleue, *v.* *to believe*, 122 ;; 179 ;  
 618 ;  
 Beleuyd, 134 ;; beleuyd, 252 ;;  
 106 ;; beleueth = *l.* fr. *acroist*,  
 333 ;; beleue and gyue fayth,  
 70 ;; beleue ne gyue fayth,  
 610 ;; gyfe fayth and beleue,  
 342 ;  
 Beleyde, *pt.* 555 ;  
 Bemenyng, *p.* *prs.* *bemoaning*,  
 394 ;  
 Bernes and rayes, 194 ;  
 Ben, *be, v.* *to be*, 17 ;; 33 ;; 51 ;;  
 he be, 25 ;; 88 ;; we be, 35 ;;  
 93 ;; we ben, 34 ;; 111 ;; we  
 bee, 207 ;; 198 ;; 380 ;; they  
 ben, 36 ;; 42 ;; 72 ;; they bee,  
 74 ;; they be, 71 ;; ye be 51 ;;  
 123 ;; be, *pp.* 30 ;; 33 ;; 171 ;;  
 ben, *pp.* 48 ;  
 Benefetes, *sb.* *pt.* *benefits*, 5 ;  
 Benyngnyte, *sb.* *benignity, kindness*,  
 13 ;  
 Benyolence, *sb.* *benevolence*, 6 ;  
 Beplayne and sorow, *v.* 49 ;  
 Bere, *sb.* *bear*, 59 ;  
 Bere, *v.* *to bear*, 30 ;; bare, 12 ;;  
 15 ;; 30 ;; 31 ;; 42 ;; 43 ;;  
 644 ;; born, 26 ;; 29 ;; 50 ;;  
 borne, 29 ;; bere ne abide,  
 152 ;  
 Besege, *v.* *to besiege*, beseged, 81 ;;  
 353 ;; 381 ;  
 Besette and arrayed, 509 ;  
 Besgue, *adj.* (fr. *besgue, bégue*),  
*stammering*, 543 ;  
 Besoyne, *v.* (fr. *besoynger*), 656 ;;  
 besoyngnerd, 291 ;  
 Besoyne and werk, *sb.* 31 ;  
 Bespoken, *pp.* (fr. *emparle*), 73 ;;  
 541 ;  
 Bespredd, *v.* *to spread*, bespradd,  
 485 ;  
 Besprenge, *v.* *to sprinkle*, be-  
 spranct, 270 ;; be sprenot and  
 be bled, 34 ;  
 Bespringe and assayll, *v.* 192 ;;  
 bespryng and destrole, 34 ;  
 Bestad, *pp.* *hard bestead, sorely*  
*imperilled, overcome*, 418 ;  
 Beste rurall, *sb.* (fr. *beste rural*),  
 373 ;  
 Bestiall, *sb.* *cattle*, 356 ;; bestall,  
 210 ;  
 Besy, *adj.* *busy*, 227 ;; 327 ;;  
 661 ;  
 Besynes, *sb.* *business*, 4 ;; besy-  
 nesse, 4 ;  
 Betake, *v.* *to take, deliver*, betoke,  
 178 ;; 222 ;; 329 ;  
 Be thinke, *v.* *to think upon*, be-  
 thought, 437 ;  
 Be tymes, *adv.* *betime, betimes, in*  
*good time*, 617 ;; 622 ;; 630 ;



- Betyng and smytyng, 319<sup>11</sup>; bete and faughte, 259<sup>m</sup>  
 Beware and take no fyance, 99<sup>12</sup>  
 Bewayle, *v. to bewail*, 49<sup>12</sup>; bewaylid ne bewept, 469<sup>m</sup>; bewaylid and sorowed, 273<sup>m</sup>; bewaylid and complayned, 274<sup>12</sup>  
 Bewaylingis, *sb. pl. lamentations*, 459<sup>s</sup>; bewayllyngis, 500<sup>1</sup>  
 Bewepe, *v. to weep for*, bewepte, 48<sup>m</sup>; bewepte, 58<sup>m</sup>; 458<sup>12</sup>; bewept, 29<sup>s</sup>; 31<sup>m</sup>; 274<sup>m</sup>; bewepete, 27<sup>12</sup>; 319<sup>12</sup>; bewepte and bewaylid, 501<sup>m</sup>  
 Be yonde, *pp. beyond*, 262<sup>m</sup>  
 Bittir, *adj. bitter*, 11<sup>s</sup>  
 Blandisshyng (fr. blandissements), *fatteries*, 97<sup>s</sup>  
 Bleu, *pp. See belene*  
 Blonke, *adj. (fr. blons), fair*, 541<sup>12</sup>  
 Blont,<sup>1</sup> *adj. blunt*, 210<sup>12</sup>  
 Blowe, *v. to blow*, blew, 265<sup>m</sup>; blowen, 265<sup>m</sup>  
 Bonde and thrall, *adj.* 276<sup>12</sup>  
 Booke, *sb. book*; 7<sup>s</sup>; bookys, 7<sup>s</sup>; bookes, 7<sup>s</sup>  
 Booll, *sb. bull*, 384<sup>12</sup>  
 Boot, *sb. boat*, 168<sup>s</sup>; 169<sup>s</sup>; bootes, *pl.* 18<sup>s</sup>  
 Boothe, *adj. and pron. both*, 15<sup>s</sup>  
 Borda,<sup>2</sup> *sb. board*, 679<sup>m</sup>  
 Bordone, *sb. (fr. bourdon), staff, rod*, 266<sup>m</sup>; bordon, 266<sup>m</sup>  
 Botyller, *sb. buller*, 506<sup>m</sup>  
 Bourgoys, *sb. pl. citizens*, 274<sup>s</sup>; 525<sup>s</sup>; burgeyses, 605<sup>m</sup>  
 Bowe and lowte, 334<sup>12</sup>; bowe and folde, 343<sup>m</sup>  
 Bow torquoys (fr. arc turquois 521<sup>11</sup>. Compare a strong bowe and a turquoys, 600<sup>r</sup>. See turquoys  
 Boyes and garsons, 205<sup>m</sup>  
 Boyll, *v. to boil*, boyll, 387<sup>12</sup>; boyllyng, 410<sup>m</sup>  
 Boystous, *adj. (fr. robuste), rough strong, boisterous*, 76<sup>11</sup>; boistous, 120<sup>s</sup>; boystously, 280<sup>12</sup>  
 Brassid, *prt. (fr. brassient)*, 434<sup>s</sup>  
 Brayded, *prt.; beaten small, pounded*, 31<sup>m</sup> (fr. mirent en pouldre).  
 Brayed,<sup>2</sup> *prt. (= fr. baerent)*, 300<sup>s</sup>  
 Breef, *adj. brief, short*, 141<sup>s</sup>  
 Breke, *v. to break*, 281<sup>s</sup>; brak, 77<sup>m</sup>; 98<sup>s</sup>; 242<sup>11</sup>; 384<sup>m</sup>; brake, 626<sup>m</sup>; 649<sup>12</sup>; brakke, 259<sup>12</sup>; broken, 200<sup>m</sup><sup>4</sup>; 679<sup>m</sup>; brekyng and losyng, 58<sup>m</sup>; brekyng and foynyng (fr. baisier), 291<sup>s</sup>; brake and bruseyd, 570<sup>m</sup>  
 Brenne, *v. to burn*, 447<sup>12</sup>; 662<sup>12</sup>; brente, 556<sup>s</sup>; 663<sup>s</sup>; 668<sup>s</sup>; brenned, 286<sup>12</sup>; brende, 286<sup>12</sup>; brente, 628<sup>12</sup>; 660<sup>m</sup>; 668<sup>s</sup>; brent, 441<sup>12</sup>; brennyng = 1 ordoyant, 303<sup>12</sup>; brenne and burye (fr. ensepuellir), 243<sup>m</sup>; brente and soden, 499<sup>m</sup>  
 Bridell,<sup>3</sup> *sb. bridle*, 156<sup>1</sup>  
 Broder, *sb.* 8<sup>s</sup>; 15<sup>12</sup>; brother, 15<sup>12</sup>; brederan, 7<sup>11</sup>; brethern, 63<sup>m</sup>; 84<sup>12</sup>; 172<sup>m</sup>  
 Brood, *adj. broad*, 385<sup>m</sup>  
 Broyllid, *prt. (fr. brayolent)*, 497<sup>12</sup>; bruylid, 497<sup>m</sup>

<sup>1</sup> The passage, "Car la pointe et le trenchant de son espee les fist terriblement Ingerer contre ses armes," is translated by Caxton thus: "For the point and the egghe of his swerd was made terribly blont and smote ayenst her hard scales and skynnes!"

<sup>2</sup> "Il tournoient dautre part et se mirent en la mer" = "they turned on that other borde & made to see ward."

<sup>3</sup> Caxton translates: "Les lyons baerent les gueulles" by: "the lyons at the approchyng brayed in her throtes!"

<sup>4</sup> "Quil lui cuida venir rompre le passalge" = "that purposed to have come broken the passage!"

<sup>5</sup> Caxton translates the French "qui est ce qui ne prendra le fraïn au dens" (i.e., *who will now run away*) by: "who is he that now will not holde the bridell by the teth!"

- Brass, *v.* (fr. *briser*), *brusid*, 405<sub>m</sub>; *brussyd*, 564<sub>m</sub>; 570<sub>m</sub>; *brosyng*, 293<sub>m</sub>; *brussid* and *frussid*, 468<sub>m</sub>.
- Brusshement, *sb.* *ambush*, 382<sub>m</sub>.
- Bruyt, *sb.* *noise*, 225<sub>m</sub>; *bruyt* and *crye*, 67<sub>m</sub>; *booste* and *bruyt*, 461<sub>m</sub>; *bruyt* and *brayyng*, 446<sub>m</sub>; *bruyt* and *noyse*, 67<sub>m</sub>; 98<sub>m</sub>; 138<sub>m</sub>; 251<sub>m</sub>; 259<sub>m</sub>; 293<sub>m</sub>; 354<sub>m</sub>; 361<sub>m</sub>; 399<sub>m</sub>; 404<sub>m</sub>; 464<sub>m</sub>; 478<sub>m</sub>; *bruyt* and *pompes*, 313<sub>m</sub>.
- Brygant and theef, 47<sub>m</sub>.
- Bryge, *sb.* *bridge*, 696<sub>m</sub>; *brygge*, 281<sub>m</sub>; 697<sub>m</sub>; *brigge*, 385<sub>m</sub>.
- Brynge, *v.* *to bring*, 315<sub>m</sub>; 329<sub>m</sub>; *brought*, 15<sub>m</sub>; *brought* and *condayt*, 155<sub>m</sub>; *brought* and *carried*, 66<sub>m</sub>.
- Burthe, *sb.* *birth*, 11<sub>m</sub>; 98<sub>m</sub>.
- Burthen, *sb.* *burden*, 114<sub>m</sub>; *burthou*, 318<sub>m</sub>.
- Busabous, *sb.* (fr. *buissons*), 201<sub>m</sub>.
- Busynes, *sb. pl.* *a kind of trumpet*, 376<sub>m</sub>; *busines* and *tabours*, 399<sub>m</sub>.
- Butin, *sb.* *booty*, 202<sub>m</sub>; *butyn* and *gayne*, 556<sub>m</sub>.
- Bye, *v.* *to buy*, 217<sub>m</sub>; 263<sub>m</sub>; 657<sub>m</sub>; *boughte*, 283<sub>m</sub>; *bought*, 660<sub>m</sub>.
- Byen venne, *sb.* *welcome*, 175<sub>m</sub>; 260<sub>m</sub>; *bien venne*, 466<sub>m</sub>.
- By hynde, *pp.* *behind*, 318<sub>m</sub>.
- Bylda, *v.* *to build*, 16<sub>m</sub>.
- Bynde, *v.* *to bind*, 639<sub>m</sub>; *bonde*, 274<sub>m</sub>; 337<sub>m</sub>; 443<sub>m</sub>; 472<sub>m</sub>; 639<sub>m</sub>; *bounden*, 14<sub>m</sub>; 40<sub>m</sub>; 336<sub>m</sub>.
- Byte, *v.* *to bite*, 16<sub>m</sub>; *byting*, 210<sub>m</sub>; *bote*, 16<sub>m</sub>; *boot*, 211<sub>m</sub>.
- Bytte, *sb.* *bite*, 500<sub>m</sub>.
- CALLED and named, 10<sub>m</sub>.
- Canell, *sb.* *canell of the necke*, ? *collar-bone*, 697<sub>m</sub>.
- Canellya, *sb. pl.* (fr. *quarreaux*), *the channels or canals*, 295<sub>m</sub>.
- Canst or mayst, 107<sub>m</sub>; *can* and *knowe*, 523<sub>m</sub>.
- Capitayn and chief, 338<sub>m</sub>; *captayns* and *conduytours*, 592<sub>m</sub>.
- Caste, *v.* *to cast, throw*, 102<sub>m</sub>; 208<sub>m</sub>; 515<sub>m</sub>; *caste*, 499<sub>m</sub>; 697<sub>m</sub>; *casted*, 43<sub>m</sub>; 376<sub>m</sub>; 461<sub>m</sub>; *casts*, 218<sub>m</sub>; *cast*, 193<sub>m</sub>; *castid*, 275<sub>m</sub>; *caste hem down* and *put hem vnder*, 255<sub>m</sub>.
- Casters, *sb. pl.*, *men who cast*, 75<sub>m</sub>.
- Cause and occasion, 511<sub>m</sub>; *cause* or *trespas*, 509<sub>m</sub>; *causes* and *reasons*, 304<sub>m</sub>.
- Cawtele, *sb.* *causing*, 664<sub>m</sub>; *cautele* or *trayson*, 578<sub>m</sub>.
- Cellers, *sb. pl.* *cellars*, 689<sub>m</sub>.
- Ceptre, *sb.* *scopre*, 15<sub>m</sub>; 22<sub>m</sub>; *ceptres*, 9<sub>m</sub>.
- Certes, *adv.* 8<sub>m</sub>; *certayn* = *certes*, 106<sub>m</sub>; 333<sub>m</sub>.
- Cesse, *v.* *to cease*, 254<sub>m</sub>; 470<sub>m</sub>; *cessyng*, 68<sub>m</sub>; 92<sub>m</sub>; 212<sub>m</sub>; *cessid*, 171<sub>m</sub>. *See also cesse*.
- Chambret, *sb.* *little room*, 112<sub>m</sub>; *chambrete*, 112<sub>m</sub>.
- Chambryere, *sb.* (fr. *chamberiere*), *servant, chambermaid*, 490<sub>m</sub>.
- Chamell, *sb.* *camel*, 360<sub>m</sub>.
- Champayne, *sb.* *field*, 289<sub>m</sub>; *champaigne*, 422<sub>m</sub>; *champaignes*, 91<sub>m</sub>; *feldes* and *champayns*, 364<sub>m</sub>.
- Champe, <sup>1</sup> *sb.* ? *field*, 603<sub>m</sub>.
- Chantement, *sb.* *See enchantement*.
- Chapelet, *sb.* *wreath, garland*, 321<sub>m</sub>; *chappelet* of *lawyer*, 250<sub>m</sub>; *chapellet* or *gariond*, 82<sub>m</sub>.
- Chartounce, *sb.* *precious stone*, 498<sub>m</sub>.
- Chare, *sb.* *car, cart*, 577<sub>m</sub>; *chares*, 66<sub>m</sub>; 454<sub>m</sub>; *chare* (fr. *carre*), 65<sub>m</sub>; 75<sub>m</sub>.
- Charge, *sb.* *charge and adiaracion*, 87<sub>m</sub>; 88<sub>m</sub>; *charge and message*, 481<sub>m</sub>; *charge and keepyng*, 385<sub>m</sub>; *charge and burthen*, 256<sub>m</sub>.
- Charge, *v.* *charge and adiare*, 87<sub>m</sub>;

<sup>1</sup> The French equivalent "Le Recuyell" is "ahatine," which is on the same page, l. 18, translated by "hayte & bargayn."

- charging and smyting, 369<sub>11</sub>;  
 chargid and ladid, 625<sub>m</sub>; chargid  
 and laden, 454<sub>m</sub>; chargid and  
 leyde, 527<sub>m</sub>  
 Charmed and enchanted, 242<sub>2</sub>  
 Charms and sortes, 178<sub>4</sub>; 233<sub>3</sub>  
 Chasse, *sb.* hunting, chase, 612<sub>m</sub>  
 Chauffe, *v.* (fr. *chauffer*), to *chafe*,  
*make warm, become warm*, 288<sub>14</sub>;  
 chauffing, 17<sub>m</sub>; chauffyd,  
 511<sub>m</sub>; chauffid, 35<sub>m</sub>; 418<sub>m</sub>;  
 496<sub>6</sub>; chauffing ne greuyng,  
 255<sub>22</sub>  
 Chaungid and torned, 606<sub>1</sub>  
 Chayre, *sb.* chair, seat, chayres, 86<sub>m</sub>  
 Cherish<sup>1</sup> and kepe, 48<sub>12</sub>  
 Chesse, *v.* to choose, select, 120<sub>m</sub>;  
 443<sub>11</sub>; chesse, *imperat.* 127<sub>m</sub>;  
 we chesse, 617<sub>m</sub>; they chesse,  
 558<sub>m</sub>; they chesse, 617<sub>m</sub>; chesse,  
 252<sub>1</sub>; 439<sub>11</sub>; chosen, 273<sub>3</sub>; 617<sub>m</sub>  
 Cheualrye, *sb.*, chivalry, 187<sub>4</sub>;  
*knighly deeds*, chyualrye, 369<sub>m</sub>;  
 377<sub>11</sub>; 699<sub>m</sub>; cheualryes, 350<sub>m</sub>;  
 chivalerie and dubbyng knyght  
 of a noble man, 313<sub>12</sub>  
 Cheualrous, *adj.* chivalrous, 195<sub>m</sub>;  
 cheualereuses, 367<sub>11</sub>; cheual-  
 ouraly, 368<sub>m</sub>; cheualerously,  
 462<sub>m</sub>  
 Chief and ende (1 fr. à chief de son  
 desire), 624<sub>4</sub>  
 Chief and captayn, 189<sub>11</sub>; chyef  
 and capitayne, 198<sub>11</sub>  
 Chier, *sb.* cheer, countenance, 57<sub>11</sub>;  
 141<sub>11</sub>; chiere, 66<sub>1</sub>; chyere, 84<sub>11</sub>;  
 chere, 127<sub>m</sub>; 241<sub>11</sub>  
 Chierite, *sb.* charity, love, friendship,  
 513<sub>m</sub>  
 Chilyrd (1 fr. croisie), 542<sub>12</sub>  
 Chieure, *sb.* goat, 209<sub>m</sub>; chieures,  
 269<sub>m</sub>; 210<sub>m</sub>; 212<sub>4</sub>  
 Child, *sb.* chyld male, 104<sub>11</sub>; chyld-  
 ren, 10<sub>11</sub>; children, 33<sub>3</sub>;  
 children males, 14<sub>m</sub>; 60<sub>11</sub>; 71<sub>1</sub>;  
 chyldren males, 14<sub>m</sub>; children  
 male, 23<sub>m</sub>; men children, 15<sub>m</sub>;  
 18<sub>m</sub>  
 Childing, *sb.* child-bearing, 235<sub>3</sub>;  
 236<sub>11</sub>  
 Circuyd and goon aboute, 213<sub>m</sub>  
 Circuyte, *sb.* circuit, 507<sub>m</sub>  
 Citeseins, *sb.* pl. citizens, 176<sub>11</sub>;  
 cyteseyns, 402<sub>1</sub>; citeseins and  
 dwellars in townes, 246<sub>11</sub>  
 Clarions, *sb.* a kind of trumpet, 148<sub>1</sub>;  
 151<sub>1</sub>; 164<sub>m</sub>; 200<sub>2</sub>  
 Cler and euydent, 12<sub>m</sub>; cler and  
 nette, 267<sub>11</sub>  
 Clered and lyght, *pt.* 98<sub>7</sub>  
 Cleue, *v.* to cleave, adhere, clette,  
 344<sub>m</sub>; 411<sub>m</sub>; cleuyd, 332<sub>11</sub>  
 Clippyng, embracing, 56<sub>2</sub>  
 Cloos, *sb.* close, 345<sub>m</sub>  
 Closed and shette, 106<sub>1</sub>; closed  
 and shytte, 107<sub>2</sub>  
 Closure, *sb.* enclosure, 615<sub>m</sub>  
 Cloth, *sb.* 149<sub>m</sub>; cloyth, 149<sub>m</sub>  
 Clothe, *v.* clothed, 281<sub>11</sub>; 321<sub>m</sub>;  
 cladde, 344<sub>1</sub>; 396<sub>m</sub>; 692<sub>11</sub>;  
 clothe and araye, 536<sub>7</sub>; clothed  
 and habyllid, 429<sub>m</sub>  
 Clubbe, *sb.* club, 433<sub>11</sub>; clobbe,  
 277<sub>11</sub>; 336<sub>11</sub>  
 Coffre, *sb.* coffer, 494<sub>m</sub>; cofres,  
 221<sub>1</sub>; cofres, 494<sub>m</sub>  
 Colour, *sb.* vnder fayned colour  
 (fr. sousz fainte de bonne  
 amour), 297<sub>m</sub>; vnder colour of  
 (fr. souz vmbre de), 530<sub>1</sub>;  
 651<sub>m</sub>; forsworne by that colour  
 (fr. qu'il ne se pariuoyent a ce  
 faire), 664<sub>11</sub>  
 Columpne, *sb.* column, 396<sub>m</sub>;  
 397<sub>m</sub>; colompnes, 396<sub>m</sub> Com-  
 pare pylers  
 Comble, *sb.* top, highest point,  
 420<sub>2</sub>  
 Come, *v.* comen, 243<sub>m</sub>; comyng  
 vp (aduenement), 69<sub>m</sub>; come,  
 440<sub>1</sub>; comen, 92<sub>11</sub>; 161<sub>11</sub>;  
 691<sub>1</sub>; come and folowe (avenir),  
 537<sub>1</sub>; to come and shall happen  
 (avenir), 551<sub>1</sub>; come and arryue,  
 403<sub>11</sub>; cam and arruyd, 143<sub>m</sub>;  
 come and attain vnto, 374<sub>m</sub>;

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "cherhier sa vie miserable" by "cherish and kepe his myserable lyf!"

- came after and folowed, 325<sub>m</sub>;  
 came and marchid, 432<sub>m</sub>;  
 comen and extrayt, 439<sub>m</sub>;  
 they comen brought (!), 221<sub>m</sub>;  
 comyng and discent, 62<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comette, *v.* 343<sub>m</sub>; comytte, 236<sub>m</sub>;  
 comysed, 233<sub>m</sub>; 526<sub>m</sub>; comised,  
 249<sub>m</sub>; comysid, 133<sub>m</sub>; 284<sub>m</sub>;  
 commysed, 45<sub>m</sub>; 76<sub>m</sub>; 422<sub>m</sub>;  
 commysid, 656<sub>m</sub>; 658<sub>m</sub>;  
 comysed and doon, 287<sub>m</sub>; com-  
 mysed and ordeyned, 15<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comforte and chere, *v.* 471<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comandement, *sb.* *order*, 114<sub>m</sub>;  
 comandemans, 97<sub>m</sub>; com-  
 mandementes, 121<sub>m</sub>; com-  
 mandement and counceyll, 4<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comonte, *sb.* (*fr.* *les communes*) *the*  
*commons*, 307<sub>m</sub>.  
 Compaigne, *sb.* 14<sub>m</sub>; compaignye,  
 19<sub>m</sub>; compaigne, 89<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comparant (*fr.* *comparent*), 253<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comparyd and lykanyd, 102<sub>m</sub>;  
 compared and lykned, 323<sub>m</sub>;  
 lykned and compared, 180<sub>m</sub>.  
 Competente, *adj.* *suitable*, *sufficient*,  
 255<sub>m</sub>; competently, 140<sub>m</sub>.  
 Complacion, *sb.* (*fr.* *consolation*),  
 49<sub>m</sub>.  
 Complainte and pietous bewayl-  
 inges, 168<sub>m</sub>.  
 Complayne and bewalle, 55<sub>m</sub>.  
 Complaysid (*fr.* *complaisant*),  
 232<sub>m</sub>.  
 Composid and made, 414<sub>m</sub>; 549<sub>m</sub>.  
 Compyse, *v.* (*fr.* *comprendre*),  
 426<sub>m</sub>; comprise, 227<sub>m</sub>; com-  
 prysing, 116<sub>m</sub>; 546<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comutacion, *sb.* (! *fr.* *communica-*  
*tion*), 520<sub>m</sub>; 525<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comyn, *adj.* *common*, 10<sub>m</sub>; 13<sub>m</sub>;  
 35<sub>m</sub>; 244<sub>m</sub>; 16; 702<sub>m</sub>; comuna,  
 55<sub>m</sub>; 247<sub>m</sub>; comune (*fr.* *au*  
*commun*), 314<sub>m</sub>; comunely, 516<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comynyoned, *communicated*, 475<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comynyocion, *sb.*, 182<sub>m</sub>; 458<sub>m</sub>.  
 Comysaires, *sb. pl.* *messengers*,  
 93<sub>m</sub>.  
 Concluded and purposed, 36<sub>m</sub>.  
 Concordes or peas, 651<sub>m</sub>.  
 Condemne, *v.*, to *condemn*, con-  
 demped, 45<sub>m</sub>; 58<sub>m</sub>; 167<sub>m</sub>;  
 condampnyd, 205<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conduyte or conduyde, *v.* to *guide*,  
*conduct*, conduyte, 66<sub>m</sub>; 92<sub>m</sub>;  
 conduyted, 188<sub>m</sub>; conduyted,  
 291<sub>m</sub>; 300<sub>m</sub>; conduyte and  
 lede, 51<sub>m</sub>; 288<sub>m</sub>; conduyte and  
 spede, 53<sub>m</sub>; conduyte and  
 gouerne, 152<sub>m</sub>; conduyted and  
 brought, 132<sub>m</sub>; conduyted and  
 ledde, 361<sub>m</sub>; conduyted and  
 gayded, 361<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conduyte, *sb.* *conduct*, 138<sub>m</sub>;  
 195<sub>m</sub>; 528<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conduytour, *sb.* *conductor*, *leader*,  
 528<sub>m</sub>; conduitur, 45<sub>m</sub>; con-  
 duitour and ledar, 42<sub>m</sub>; con-  
 duitours and capitaynes, 364<sub>m</sub>.  
 Confounds, confunde, *v.*, to *con-*  
*found*, 134<sub>m</sub>; confounded,  
 195<sub>m</sub>; confoundyd, 195<sub>m</sub>.  
 Congye, *sb.* *leave*, 676<sub>m</sub>; congie  
 and lese, 427<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conlonocion, *sb.* *conjunction*, 695<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conlured and charged, 63<sub>m</sub>;  
 conluryng or pynyng (*fr.* *geby-*  
*ner ne conlurer*), 447<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conne, *v.* to *know*, *be able*, 361<sub>m</sub>,  
 (*fr.* *acquerra*); conne, 191<sub>m</sub> (*fr.*  
*scaires*); sholde have conne  
 do, 452<sub>m</sub>; we the conne gyne  
 reward, 452<sub>m</sub>; coude (*accurent*),  
 236<sub>m</sub>; 634<sub>m</sub>; maad all the  
 sayle they coutha, 154<sub>m</sub>; the  
 beste wise they coutha, 150<sub>m</sub>;  
 coude, 35<sub>m</sub>; coude and myght,  
 483<sub>m</sub>.  
 Connyng, *sb.* *cunning*, 5<sub>m</sub>; 18<sub>m</sub>;  
 701<sub>m</sub>; cunnyng, 10<sub>m</sub>; cunnyng  
 and scyens, 10<sub>m</sub>.  
 Conquerre, *v.* to *conquer*, 177<sub>m</sub>;  
 352<sub>m</sub>; conquerd, 177<sub>m</sub>; 196<sub>m</sub>.  
 Consayte, *sb.* (*fr.* *conseiller*), 7<sub>m</sub>;  
 consaytes, 9<sub>m</sub>; 147<sub>m</sub>; consult  
 and knowlesche, 120<sub>m</sub>.

<sup>1</sup> Carton translates "Quil la confondy morte" by "that she confoundyd ded!"

- Consistorie, *sb.* (fr. *consistoire*)  
 34<sub>m</sub>; consistorie or parliament,  
 127<sub>m</sub>  
 Consummacion, *sb.* *completion*,  
 459<sub>m</sub>  
 Consummed, *pt. completed*, 499<sub>m</sub>.  
*Compare* consumed, 202<sub>m</sub>  
 Conspyred (1 fr. *aguisee*), 498<sub>m</sub>  
 Contemplare, *v.* *to contemplate*,  
 374<sub>s</sub>; 502<sub>m</sub>  
 Contempnacion, *sb.* (fr. *contemp-  
 nacion*) 44<sub>s</sub>  
 Contenden, *they contend*, 654<sub>m</sub>;  
*contendedden*, 631<sub>m</sub>  
 Contente and appese, 36<sub>m</sub>  
 Contenu, *sb.* *contents*, 253<sub>s</sub>;  
 258<sub>m</sub>  
 Contraried ner agayn sayd, 43<sub>m</sub>  
 Contre, *sb.* *country*, 70<sub>s</sub>; 144<sub>s</sub>;  
*contrey*, 49<sub>m</sub>; 415<sub>m</sub>; *contrees*,  
*pl.* 138<sub>m</sub>; *contrees and landes*,  
 624<sub>m</sub>  
 Contreunge, *v.* *to avenge*, 337<sub>m</sub>  
 Contynence,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* *continence*, 109<sub>m</sub>  
 Conuersid and felawshipt, 54<sub>m</sub>  
 Couerte and torne, 106<sub>m</sub>; 190<sub>s</sub>;  
*couertyd and torned*, 180<sub>m</sub>;  
 185<sub>m</sub>  
 Couenyent (= 1 fr. *couuenoit*),  
 530<sub>m</sub>  
 Coole, *sb.* *coal*, 567<sub>m</sub>  
 Oooper, *v.* *to encounter*, *coopyng*,  
 259<sub>m</sub>; *copyng*, 368<sub>m</sub>  
 Coppe, *sb.*, *top* (fr. *couppeau*),  
 405<sub>m</sub>; 466<sub>m</sub>; 486<sub>s</sub>  
 Copper and laton, 107<sub>m</sub>; *copper*,  
 106<sub>m</sub> (= 1 fr. *fer*)  
 Corage, *v.* *to take courage*, *to  
 encourage*, 77<sub>m</sub>; 412<sub>m</sub>; *coragid*,  
 156<sub>m</sub>; *corage and vertue* (fr.  
*sesuertuer*), 190<sub>m</sub>  
 Cornes, *sb.*, *pl.* *corn*, 18<sub>s</sub>; 177<sub>m</sub>  
 Corps and body, 453<sub>m</sub>  
 Corrompe, *v.* *to destroy*, *defile*, 49<sub>s</sub>;  
*corruptid*, 348<sub>m</sub>  
 Corryge and chastyce, 390<sub>m</sub>  
 Costlewe, *adj.* *costly*, 271<sub>m</sub>  
 Cosyns and kynnesmen, 339<sub>m</sub>;
- cosyns and alyes, 274<sub>s</sub> (= fr.  
*parens*)  
 Couenable, *adj.*, *proper*, *fit*, 32<sub>m</sub>  
 Couere and hyde, 660<sub>m</sub>; *coueryd  
 and hydde*, 622<sub>m</sub>  
 (in) Couert and in her stomach  
 (fr. *en couert*), 109<sub>m</sub>  
 Coueyte and desire, *v.* 455<sub>m</sub>;  
*couoyte*, 180<sub>m</sub>; *desired and  
 coueyted*, 321<sub>m</sub>  
 Couleures, *sb.* *pl.* (fr. *couleures*),  
*a reptile of the serpent species*,  
 184<sub>m</sub>; 185<sub>m</sub>  
 Coulpe, *culpe*, *sb.* *crime*, *sin*, *guilt*,  
 500<sub>m</sub>; *culpe*, 36<sub>m</sub>; *culpe and  
 synne*, 29<sub>m</sub>; 88<sub>m</sub>; 448<sub>s</sub>; *coulpe  
 and blame*, 501<sub>m</sub>; *culpe and  
 trespas*, 670<sub>m</sub>  
 Counte and reherce, 453<sub>m</sub>  
 Countee, *sb.* *county*, *shire*, 3<sub>m</sub>  
 Counterlet, *adj.* *deformed*, 10<sub>s</sub>  
 Counterpeysed (fr. *contrepesant*),  
 25<sub>s</sub>; *contrepesed infamy* (1 fr.  
*contrepesement de linfamie*),  
 42<sub>m</sub>  
 Couoytise and desire, *sb.* 227<sub>m</sub>  
 Couoytous, *adj.* *covetous*, 180<sub>m</sub>;  
*coueytous*, 201<sub>m</sub>  
 Couraiges, *sb.* *pl.* *miracles*, 84<sub>m</sub>  
 Cours and ende, 202<sub>m</sub>  
 Courseur leuyng (fr. *coursier vil*),  
 250<sub>s</sub>  
 Courteyned and hanged bedde (fr.  
*en lit tendu*), 492<sub>m</sub>  
 Courtoisie, *sb.*, 182<sub>m</sub>; *courtosies*,  
 114<sub>m</sub>; *courtoyses*, 50<sub>s</sub>  
 Courtoali, *adj.*, 347<sub>m</sub>  
 Coyffe, *sb.* *coif*, *cap*, 639<sub>s</sub>  
 Craoche, *v.* *to spit* (fr. *crachier*),  
 498<sub>m</sub>; *craochyng*, 337<sub>m</sub>  
 Craft, *sb.* *power*, *art*, *ability*, *deceit*,  
 94<sub>m</sub>; *craft and arte*, 426<sub>m</sub>;  
*craft and sorte*, 240<sub>m</sub>  
 Creable, *adj.* *credible*, 284<sub>m</sub>  
 Credence ne affiance, 498<sub>m</sub>  
 Cremesin, *adj.*, *crimson*, 149<sub>m</sub>; 194<sub>m</sub>  
 Crossed and folden, 237<sub>m</sub>  
 Crye and clamours, 132<sub>m</sub>; *cryes*

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's "that there was no more contynence founden" is supposed to be a rendering of "qu'il ny eut plus en luy continence tenue!"

- and showtes, 147; ; cryes (1 fr. ouers) 160<sub>m</sub>  
 Crye and blote, 445<sub>m</sub>; crye and braye 537; ; crye and wepe, 243<sub>m</sub>; cryed and brayed, 445<sub>m</sub>  
 Cryme and synne, 103<sub>m</sub>  
 Cryse, *adj.* (fr. *crispe*), 541<sub>m</sub>; heary and crispe (fr. *valu*), 543<sub>m</sub>  
 Cubites, *sb. pl. cubits* (measure), 269<sub>m</sub>  
 Culpe, *sb. See* coulpe  
 Culturesses or labourers, 179<sub>m</sub>  
 Curres and chares, *sb. pl. ears*, 66<sub>m</sub>  
 Curse and anathematysse, 146<sub>m</sub>  
 Currid and euyll, 308; ; currid and vnhappy, 496<sub>m</sub>; cursed enuyes (1 fr. *maledictions*), 308<sub>m</sub> *Compare* curses and maledictions, 109<sub>m</sub>  
 Cutte, *v. to cut*, 28<sub>m</sub>; cutte, *pt.* 345; ; cutted, 301; ; cuttid, 649<sub>m</sub>  
 Cattyng (fr. *trenchant*), 211<sub>m</sub>; cattynges, 350<sub>m</sub>  
 Cyte, *sb., city*, 3<sub>m</sub>; cytees, 9<sub>m</sub>  
**DAMPNABLE**, *adj.* 50; ; *damnable* (1 fr. *dommaigeable*), 489<sub>m</sub>  
 Dampne, *v., to condemn*, 166<sub>m</sub>; dampned and confounded, 327<sub>m</sub>  
 Damysell, *sb. damsel*, 28<sub>m</sub>; damoy-sell, 49<sub>m</sub>  
 Dangerous, *adj. dangerous*, 526<sub>m</sub>; dangerous, 298<sub>m</sub>  
 Dangier, *sb. danger*, 648; ; daungiers, *pl.* 88<sub>m</sub>; dangers and paryllis, 676<sub>m</sub>  
 Dar, *v. to dare*, 309<sub>m</sub>; darst thou, 173<sub>m</sub>; we dare, 116<sub>m</sub>; we dar, 115<sub>m</sub>; darste, 5<sub>m</sub>; 47<sub>m</sub>; dorste, 18<sub>m</sub>; darst, 23<sub>m</sub>; 199<sub>m</sub>  
 Darrain, (1 fr. *d'arrain*), 125<sub>m</sub>; 163<sub>m</sub>; 168<sub>m</sub>; 208<sub>m</sub>; 224<sub>m</sub>; dar-rayn, 108<sub>m</sub>; darayn, 110<sub>m</sub>; 203<sub>m</sub>  
 Daunte, *v. (fr. dompter), to force, tame*; dauntyd, 186<sub>m</sub>; 364<sub>m</sub>; daunted, 369<sub>m</sub>  
 Daye ne terme, 236<sub>m</sub>  
 Daygne, *v. to design*; daygned, 223<sub>m</sub>  
 Debate and fighte, 220<sub>m</sub>; debatyd, (1 fr. *rabatu*), 93<sub>m</sub>  
 Debonayre, *adj. mild, gentle*, 675<sub>m</sub>  
 Deceynable, *adj.* (1 fr. *decepuant*), 541<sub>m</sub>  
 Deceyud and begyled, 185<sub>m</sub>  
 Declyne ne disworahyppe, 617<sub>m</sub>  
 Dede, *adj. dead*, 644<sub>m</sub>  
 Dedes and festes, 489<sub>m</sub>  
 Deduyng, (1 fr. *deuisant*), 232<sub>m</sub>  
 Deduytes and plesances, 55<sub>m</sub>  
 Dedyne, *v. to dedicate*, (1 fr. *dedier*), dedyfed, 85<sub>m</sub>; 153<sub>m</sub>  
 Defendaunt, myself (1 fr. *en mon corps defendant*), 268<sub>m</sub>  
 Defendours, *sb. pl. defenders*, 643<sub>m</sub>  
 Deffame, *v. to slander*, 204<sub>m</sub>  
 Defaulte, *sb. defect, fault*, 19<sub>m</sub>; default, 12<sub>m</sub>; defawte, 5<sub>m</sub>; 6<sub>m</sub>  
 Defowled and put vndre foot, 123<sub>m</sub>; defowlid and violid, 662<sub>m</sub>  
 Degree, *sb. step, degree*, 330<sub>m</sub>; in her degre (1 fr. *a son gre*), 216<sub>m</sub>; degrees or stayres, 422<sub>m</sub>; degrees or stappes, 509<sub>m</sub>  
 Delectation and besy cure, 227<sub>m</sub>  
 Deliberacion, *sb.* 118<sub>m</sub>; 127<sub>m</sub>  
 Delices, *sb. pl. delights*, 180<sub>m</sub>; delices, 203<sub>m</sub>  
 Deliten, *they delight in*, 208<sub>m</sub>  
 Deliner, *adj. quick, active*, 225<sub>m</sub>  
 Deluge and flood, 275<sub>m</sub>  
 Deluysse, *sb. deluge*, 548<sub>m</sub>  
 Delyber, *v. to deliberate* (fr. *delliberer*), delyberid, 118<sub>m</sub>; dellibered, 503<sub>m</sub>  
 Delyvtes, *sb. crimes*, 446<sub>m</sub>  
 Demayne, *sb. (fr. domaine), property belonging to a lord*, 286<sub>m</sub>  
 Demerite, *sb.* 120<sub>m</sub>; demerites, 209<sub>m</sub>; 327<sub>m</sub>  
 Demourly, *adv. demurely*, 54<sub>m</sub>  
 Demolisahid and destroyed, 527<sub>m</sub>  
 Denne, *v. to din, sound, resound*, denned, 300<sub>m</sub>  
 Denye ne forsake (fr. *ignorer*), 447<sub>m</sub>  
 Departe and vnfolde, 237<sub>m</sub>; departe and sea, 299<sub>m</sub>; departid and goon, 41<sub>m</sub>

- Departement, *sb.* *departure*, 187<sub>11</sub> ;  
 224<sub>11</sub> ; 348<sub>21</sub>  
 Depesshe, *v.* (fr. *despescher*), *de-*  
*peschid*, 45<sub>17</sub>  
 Deporte, *v.* (fr. *deporter*) ? *renounce*,  
 523<sub>21</sub> ; 527<sub>11</sub>  
 Deppest, *superl.* *deepest*, 437<sub>21</sub>  
 Der, *adj.* *dear*, 11<sub>11</sub>  
 Derision and skorne, 13<sub>11</sub> ; *deri-*  
*sion and moquerye*, 191<sub>11</sub>  
 Derke, *adj.* *dark*, 7<sub>21</sub> ; 161<sub>11</sub> ;  
 241<sub>21</sub> ; *derkest*, 401<sub>11</sub> ; *derke*  
 and *tenebrous*, 327<sub>21</sub> ; *derke and*  
*tenebres* (fr. *tenebres espes*),  
 437<sub>17</sub>  
 Derknes, *sb.* *darkness*, 192<sub>21</sub> ; *der-*  
*knes*, 96<sub>21</sub>  
 Descouenable, *adj.* *unsuitable, im-*  
*proper*, 32<sub>11</sub>  
 Descouere, *v.* *to become visible,*  
*to discover*, 382<sub>21</sub> ; *discouerid*,  
*pp.* 137<sub>11</sub> ; *discouuarte, pp.* 75<sub>11</sub> ;  
*discouerte*, 613<sub>21</sub> ; *discouerd and*  
*shewyd*, 223<sub>11</sub> ; *discouerd and*  
*shewid*, 481<sub>21</sub>  
 Desdayn, *sb.* *disdain*, 56<sub>11</sub> ; *des-*  
*daigne*, 701<sub>11</sub>  
 Desyre and will, 312<sub>11</sub>  
 Desyre and have appetyte, (! fr.  
*appetons*), 518<sub>21</sub> ; *desired and*  
*coueyted*, 321<sub>21</sub> ; *desired ne re-*  
*quyred*, 183<sub>21</sub>  
 Desloyed and vnbounden (fr. *des-*  
*loye*), 498<sub>17</sub>  
 Desolate and discomforted, 48<sub>21</sub> ;  
*dismayed and desolate*, 53<sub>21</sub>  
 Desperance, *sb.* (fr. *desesperance*),  
*despair*, 413<sub>21</sub>  
 Desplaysant, *adj.* *disagreeable, un-*  
*pleasant*, 224<sub>11</sub> ; 296<sub>11</sub> ; *displai-*  
*sant*, 212<sub>21</sub> ; 436<sub>21</sub> ; *dysplaysant*,  
 90<sub>11</sub>  
 Displaysir, *sb.* *displeasure*, 137<sub>11</sub> ;  
 327<sub>11</sub> ; *displaysir*, 18<sub>11</sub> ; 55<sub>21</sub> ;  
*dysplaisir*, 43<sub>11</sub> ; *dysplayira*,  
*pl.* 560<sub>21</sub> ; *displaysir and anye*,  
 78<sub>21</sub>
- Despleid, *pp.* *displeased*, 57<sub>11</sub> ; *dis-*  
*pleid*, 57<sub>11</sub>  
 Despouruoyed, *pp.* (fr. *despouruee*)  
 139<sub>11</sub> ; *dispouruoid*, 322<sub>11</sub>  
 Despoyle, *v.* (fr. *despouiller*), *to*  
*despoil, take away, despoyled*,  
 82<sub>11</sub> ; 676<sub>11</sub> ; *dispoyle*, 518<sub>11</sub> ;  
 685<sub>21</sub>  
 Despyte, *v.* (fr. *despiter*), 605<sub>11</sub> ;  
*dispytyng*, 239<sub>21</sub>  
 Dearoye, *v.* (fr. *dearoyer*), *destroyed*,  
 67<sub>21</sub> ; *desrayed*, 377<sub>11</sub> ; *disrayed*,  
 413<sub>21</sub> ; *disroyed*, 363<sub>11</sub>  
 Desheullyd, *pp.* *disheulled*, 68<sub>21</sub>  
 Destaynte, *adj.* *pale, discoloured*,  
 485<sub>11</sub>  
 Destrayned, *pp.* (fr. *destraint*),  
 388<sub>11</sub>  
 Destrayt, *adj.* (fr. *destrait*), 77<sub>11</sub>  
 Destroye and spille, 132<sub>11</sub> ; *de-*  
*stroyed and wasted*, 62<sub>21</sub> ; *de-*  
*stroyest and brekest the peas*,  
 96<sub>11</sub>  
 Destruction generall, 195<sub>21</sub> ; *de-*  
*struccion perdurable*, 89<sub>21</sub> ; *de-*  
*struction and pylyng*, 295<sub>21</sub> ;  
*deth and destruccion*, 45<sub>21</sub>  
 Destrybuyng and departyng, 102<sub>11</sub>  
 Destyne, *sb.* *destiny*, 276<sub>11</sub> ; *desty-*  
*nee*, 104<sub>21</sub> ; 454<sub>11</sub>  
 Destyne, *pp.* (fr. *destinee*), 397<sub>21</sub>  
 Determinatly, *adv.* (fr. *determine-*  
*ment*), 554<sub>11</sub>  
 Deuoyr, *sb.* *duty*, 74<sub>11</sub> ; 100<sub>21</sub> ;  
 404<sub>11</sub> ; *deuoir*, 76<sub>21</sub> ; 93<sub>21</sub> ; *deuo-*  
*ira*, 148<sub>11</sub>  
 Deuyns and saages, 696<sub>11</sub>  
 Deuysed and ordeyned, 473<sub>21</sub>  
 Dicque, *sb.* *dike*, 280<sub>21</sub> ; *dycque*,  
 281<sub>11</sub>  
 Diffete, *v.* *to destroy, undo* (fr.  
*deffaire*), 496<sub>11</sub> ; *deffetyng*,  
 233<sub>11</sub> ; *deletyd*, 31<sub>21</sub> ; *deffeted*,  
 291<sub>21</sub>  
 Digne, *adj.* *worthy*, 203<sub>11</sub> ; 251<sub>11</sub> ;  
 464<sub>11</sub>  
 Disaualle, *v.* (fr. *deualler*) 266<sub>21</sub>  
 Discent, *sb.* *descending*, 62<sub>21</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Compare the French text : "ou clingneres vos yeux a souffrir le corriger et vous despescher de son malice," with Caxton's rendering of it.

- Discipate and destroyed, 339<sub>u</sub> ;  
 dissypate and destroyed, 65<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Discombred, *pp.* (fr. *descombred*),  
 452<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Discomfort, *sb.* 207<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Disconfort, *pp.* 23<sub>u</sub> ; disconforted  
 and distalentid, 642<sub>m</sub> ; desoon-  
 fortyd, 137<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Disconfyte, *pp.* 614<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Discoverid, *descoverte*. *See* *des-  
 couere* ;  
 Discoverture and knowleche, 70<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Disculpe, *v.* *to declare one's inno-  
 cence*, 493<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Discuted, *pp.* (fr. *dispute*), 672<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Disdaineuse, *adj.* (fr. *desdaing-  
 neuse*), 375<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Disgarnysshid, *pp.* 401<sub>m</sub> ; 632<sub>u</sub> ;  
 disgarnysshid and vnpurueyed,  
 381<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Dishonner, *sb.* 156<sub>v</sub> ; deshonnours,  
 184<sub>u</sub> ; dishonoure and shame,  
 652<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Dialogue, *v.* (fr. *deslogier*), 418<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Dismallid, *pp.* 354<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Dismembryd, *pp.* 537<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Dimesurably, *adv.* *beyond measure*,  
 159<sub>u</sub> ; 200<sub>m</sub> ; 332<sub>v</sub> ; desme-  
 surably, 46<sub>m</sub> ; 350<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Disobeyssant, *adj.* *disobedient*, 142<sub>u</sub> ;  
 dysobeyssant, 122<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Disolute, *adj.* *or pp.* *dissolute, licen-  
 tious*, 39<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Disparcle, *v.* *to scatter, to become  
 scattered* (fr. *esparpillier*), dis-  
 parklid, 67<sub>u</sub> ; 89<sub>m</sub> ; 214<sub>u</sub> ; dis-  
 paroled, 336<sub>m</sub> ; *Compare* *spar-  
 pelid*, 152<sub>v</sub> ; *and* *sparole* ;  
 Dispayre, *v.* *to despair, dispayred*,  
 77<sub>m</sub> ; dispeyred, 51<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Dispense, *sb.* (fr. *despenoe*), *spend-  
 ing*, 541<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Dispitously, *adv.* (fr. *despite-  
 ment*), 365<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Displaye, *v.* *to display, unfold*,  
 288<sub>v</sub> ; displayed, 172<sub>u</sub> ; 294<sub>u</sub> ;  
 displaying, 172<sub>v</sub> ; dysplaye,  
 114<sub>m</sub> ; desployed, 114<sub>u</sub> ; des-  
 ploye and vnbynd, 115<sub>m</sub> ; des-  
 ploye and putte forth, 417<sub>m</sub> ;  
 opende and desployed, 100<sub>m</sub> ;
- Dispreyse, *v.* *to blame, dispreyseat*,  
 159<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Dispyte, *sb.* 422<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Disrenged and broken, 363<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Disroyed. *See* *desroye* ;  
 Dissimulacion, *sb.* *pretence*, 547<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Dissimyle, *v.* *to dissimulate, hide,*  
*pretend*, 652<sub>v</sub> ; dissimyled, 244<sub>v</sub> ;  
 629<sub>u</sub> ; dissimlid and fayned,  
 204<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Dissipacion and destruction, 208<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Distemprid, (fr. *destrempee de  
 pleurs*) 29<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Distorne, *v.* (fr. *destourner*), 529<sub>v</sub> ;  
 destournest, 527<sub>v</sub> ; 588<sub>m</sub> ; des-  
 tourned, 561<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Distrowblid, *pt.* (fr. *destourba*),  
 612<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Distrybued, *pt.* (fr. *distribua*),  
 556<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Disworship and fawlte, 204<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Disyably, *adv.* (fr. *disysement*),  
 83<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Doall and sorrow, 591<sub>u</sub> ; doell  
 and sorowe, 322<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Dolaunt and sorowfull, 538<sub>u</sub> ;  
 doleant and sorowful, 370<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Doleances, *sb.* *pl.* *sorrowes, doleance  
 and sorowe*, 162<sub>u</sub> ; 245<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Dolour and payne, 496<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Damage, *sb.* *damage, loss*, 55<sub>m</sub> ;  
 193<sub>m</sub> ; domagies, 547<sub>u</sub> ;  
 domayge, 100<sub>v</sub> ; 137<sub>u</sub> ;  
 domayges, 525<sub>u</sub> ; domalge,  
 594<sub>u</sub> ; domalges, 512<sub>u</sub> ;  
 domage and hurte, 13<sub>v</sub> ; 653<sub>m</sub> ;  
 658<sub>u</sub> ; domages and losses,  
 657<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Domage and hurte *v.* (fr. *adom-  
 magier*), 517<sub>v</sub> ;  
 Domageable, *adj.* *hurtful*, 173<sub>u</sub> ;  
 domalgiable, 355<sub>v</sub> ; domageable  
 and noyous, 209<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Domageous, *adj.* *hurtful, detri-  
 mental*, 201<sub>u</sub> ; 609<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Dompter, *sb.* (fr. *dompteur*), the  
 tamer, 473<sub>m</sub> ;  
 Domynatour, *sb.* *lord, master*,  
 523<sub>u</sub> ;  
 Domyne ner regne, 43<sub>u</sub> ; domyne  
 and go aboue, 206<sub>u</sub> ;



- Doo, don, done,<sup>1</sup> v. doo, 368<sub>m</sub> ;  
 don, 307<sub>m</sub> ; done, 54<sub>m</sub> ; doon, pp.  
 11<sub>m</sub> ; 72<sub>m</sub> ; don, pp. 44<sub>m</sub> ; 36<sub>m</sub> ;  
 73<sub>m</sub> ; doo, pp. 236<sub>m</sub> ; 459<sub>m</sub> ; we  
 don, 64<sub>e</sub> ; thou doost, 145<sub>m</sub> ; do  
 and vsen, 518<sub>m</sub> ; do and sue  
 armes, 247<sub>m</sub> ; don and trespass,  
 22<sub>m</sub> ; do on his clothes and  
 araye hym, 254<sub>m</sub> ; dide or dyde  
 do, with an infinitive: 15<sub>m</sub> ; 16<sub>e</sub> ;  
 38<sub>m</sub> ; 50<sub>m</sub> ; 52<sub>m</sub> ; 53<sub>m</sub> ; 60<sub>e</sub> ;  
 66<sub>e</sub> ; 68<sub>m</sub> ; 72<sub>m</sub> ; 85<sub>m</sub> ; 87<sub>m</sub> ;  
 95<sub>m</sub> ; 103<sub>m</sub> ; 113<sub>m</sub> ; 125<sub>m</sub> ;  
 132<sub>m</sub> ; 135<sub>m</sub> ; 142<sub>m</sub> ; 144<sub>m</sub> ;  
 145<sub>m</sub> ; 170<sub>m</sub> ; 185<sub>m</sub> ; 197<sub>e</sub> ;  
 225<sub>m</sub> ; 240<sub>m</sub> ; 244<sub>e</sub> ; 252<sub>m</sub> ;  
 287<sub>m</sub> ; 288<sub>e</sub> ; 294<sub>e</sub> ; 321<sub>m</sub> ;  
 337<sub>m</sub> ; 349<sub>m</sub> ; 351<sub>m</sub> ; 353<sub>m</sub> ;  
 355<sub>m</sub> ; 366<sub>m</sub> ; 375<sub>m</sub> ; 381<sub>m</sub> ;  
 382<sub>m</sub> ; 395<sub>m</sub> ; 396<sub>m</sub> ; 397<sub>m</sub> ;  
 404<sub>m</sub> ; 415<sub>m</sub> ; 423<sub>e</sub> ; 426<sub>m</sub> ;  
 436<sub>e</sub> ; 445<sub>m</sub> ; 453<sub>m</sub> ; 481<sub>e</sub> ;  
 507<sub>m</sub> ; 508<sub>m</sub> ; 522<sub>m</sub> ; 530<sub>m</sub> ;  
 536<sub>e</sub> ; 537<sub>m</sub> ; 550<sub>e</sub> ; 556<sub>m</sub> ;  
 557<sub>m</sub> ; 565<sub>e</sub> ; 574<sub>m</sub> ; 579<sub>m</sub> ;  
 589<sub>e</sub> ; 591<sub>e</sub> ; 608<sub>m</sub> ; 609<sub>m</sub> ;  
 611<sub>m</sub> ; 613<sub>m</sub> ; 614<sub>m</sub> ; 617<sub>m</sub> ;  
 620<sub>e</sub> ; 625<sub>m</sub> ; 627<sub>m</sub> ; 629<sub>m</sub> ;  
 637<sub>m</sub> ; 638<sub>e</sub> ; 644<sub>m</sub> ; 645<sub>m</sub> ;  
 673<sub>m</sub> ; 677<sub>m</sub> ; 679<sub>m</sub> ; 680<sub>e</sub> ;  
 683<sub>m</sub> ; 685<sub>m</sub> ; 698<sub>m</sub> ; 695<sub>e</sub> ;  
 696<sub>m</sub> ; doth do, with an infinitive,  
 402<sub>m</sub>
- Doubtance or feer, 145<sub>m</sub> ;  
 doubtances and feeres, 124<sub>m</sub> ;  
 dountance and fere, 328<sub>e</sub>
- Doubte, v. to fear, 88<sub>m</sub> ; doubtyd,  
 197<sub>m</sub> ; doubte, 73<sub>m</sub>
- Doubte or suspicion, 335<sub>m</sub> ; doute,  
 220<sub>m</sub> ; doubtas, 183<sub>m</sub>
- Douteuous, adj. doubtful, 55<sub>e</sub> ;  
 doubtseus and dangerous,  
 510<sub>m</sub>
- Drawe, v. to draw, drews, 281<sub>m</sub> ;  
 262<sub>e</sub> ; drowe, 151<sub>m</sub> ; drawn,  
 3<sub>e</sub> ; drawe and shote, 66<sub>m</sub> ;  
 drawn and shotte, 94<sub>m</sub>
- Drede and feer, sb. 380<sub>m</sub> ; 381<sub>m</sub> ;  
 696<sub>e</sub> ; doubte or drede, 429<sub>m</sub>
- Drede, v. to fear, dredeth ne  
 fereth, 429<sub>m</sub> ; dredda, 89<sub>m</sub> ;  
 433<sub>e</sub> ; 475<sub>m</sub> ; 654<sub>e</sub> ; dredd,  
 229<sub>m</sub> ; dredde and redoubtd,  
 542<sub>e</sub> ; redoubtd and drad,  
 145<sub>e</sub> ; 263<sub>m</sub>
- Dremed, *dreamt*, 234<sub>m</sub>
- Dreyng and clensing (fr. net-  
 toyant), 334<sub>e</sub> ; purging and  
 clensing, 334<sub>e</sub>
- Drowned and sonken, 677<sub>e</sub>
- Drynke, v. to drink, 232<sub>e</sub> ; 233<sub>m</sub> ;  
 dronke, 316<sub>m</sub> ; drankes, 323<sub>e</sub> ;  
 dronken, 677<sub>m</sub> ; 691<sub>m</sub>
- Dryenes or drought, 275<sub>m</sub>
- Dubbe and make knyght, 199<sub>m</sub>
- Duc, sb. leader, duke, 3<sub>e</sub> ; 7<sub>m</sub> ; duc  
 and ledar, 352<sub>m</sub>
- Due, adj. due, 29<sub>m</sub> ; deu, 32<sub>m</sub> ;  
 dew, 20<sub>e</sub>
- Dure, v. to endure, last, 211<sub>m</sub> ;  
 605<sub>m</sub> ; duryd, 85<sub>m</sub> ; 171<sub>e</sub> ;  
 duryng, 602<sub>e</sub> ; dured, 194<sub>e</sub> ;  
 637<sub>m</sub> ; dure ne reste, 618<sub>m</sub> ; not  
 pardurable ner dured not longe,  
 321<sub>m</sub>
- Duste and pouldre, 259<sub>m</sub> ; duste  
 and pouldir, 43<sub>m</sub>
- Dwelle, v. to dwell, 177<sub>m</sub> ; 236<sub>e</sub> ;  
 dwelde, 226<sub>m</sub> ; 322<sub>m</sub> ; dwelleand  
 abyde, 683<sub>m</sub> ; dwellid and  
 enhabited, 11<sub>m</sub> ; 263<sub>m</sub> ; dwelde  
 and abode, 398<sub>e</sub> ; dwellyd and  
 abood, 389<sub>e</sub>
- Dweller, sb. one who dwells, 9<sub>m</sub> ;  
 dwellars, 246<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> The following are a few examples illustrating the use of "to do" in "The Recuyell": y haue do be nourished, 63<sub>m</sub> ; dyde hem reste, 143<sub>m</sub> ; she hath do norissh, 71<sub>m</sub> ; hath do make, 110<sub>m</sub> ; 402<sub>m</sub> ; 499<sub>m</sub> ; 547<sub>e</sub> ; ye must nede do shyne, 191<sub>m</sub> ; haue do forgid, 107<sub>e</sub> ; I shall do accompanye, 107<sub>e</sub> ; dyde hem dye, 79<sub>m</sub> ; he will do hem dye, 71<sub>m</sub> ; I shall do the haue hit, 219<sub>m</sub> ; made do brenne, 243<sub>m</sub> ; wold do strangle, 241<sub>e</sub> ; for to do growe, 268<sub>e</sub> ; I shall do be doon, 514<sub>m</sub> ; had doon to be taken, 663<sub>m</sub>

- Dyched wyth grete dichea, 37<sub>m</sub>  
 Dyffend, *v. to defend*, 363<sub>m</sub>  
 Dyfficyle, *adj. hard, difficult*, 624<sub>14</sub>;  
 difficyle and hard, 548<sub>3</sub>  
 Dymynushed and lassed, 400<sub>2</sub>  
 Dyne and etc, 304<sub>m</sub>  
 Dysocyte and barate, 671<sub>m</sub>  
 Dyshelmyd, *pt. (fr. desheaulma)*,  
 480<sub>14</sub>  
 Dyanaturell, *adj. unnatural*, 96<sub>17</sub>  
 Dysobeyssance, *sb. disobedience*,  
 416<sub>1</sub>  
 Dyspendyd, *pp. (fr. despendu)*  
*spent*, 624<sub>m</sub>  
 Dysplaysance, *sb. unpleasantness*,  
 359<sub>7</sub>; displaysance, 240<sub>m</sub>  
 Dystresse and passion, 208<sub>10</sub>  
 Dyuersite, *sb. diversity*, 171<sub>17</sub>
- HAGE**, *sb. age*, 33<sub>1</sub>; 203<sub>m</sub>; 696<sub>m</sub>;  
 age, 42<sub>1</sub>; 51<sub>m</sub>  
 Eche oon, *pron. each one*, 151<sub>18</sub>;  
 echon, 147<sub>7</sub>; 213<sub>m</sub>  
 Edyote and statute, 303<sub>m</sub>  
 Eeres, *sb. pl. the ears*, 88<sub>17</sub>  
 Effectueually, *adv. affectionately*,  
 (1 fr. affectuusement), 512<sub>8</sub>;  
 effectounaly, 658<sub>2</sub>; affectounaly,  
 470<sub>10</sub>  
 Eftesone, *adv. again, soon after*;  
 now—efte sone (fr. maintenant  
 —maintenant), now—then, 455<sub>11</sub>  
 Egale, *adj. equal*, 188<sub>18</sub>  
 Egghe, *sb. edge (fr. le trenchant)*,  
 210<sub>17</sub>; 211<sub>14</sub>  
 Egghes,<sup>1</sup> *sb. pl. ? hedges*, 83<sub>m</sub>  
 Elephant, *sb. See oliphant*  
 Empesshement, *sb. hindrance*,  
 263<sub>m</sub>; empesshement, 449<sub>11</sub>;  
 554<sub>2</sub>; 669<sub>13</sub>  
 Empryse, *sb. undertaking, enter-  
 prise*, 137<sub>18</sub>; 268<sub>m</sub>; 655<sub>14</sub>; em-  
 pryse, 328<sub>7</sub>; enpryse, 554<sub>7</sub>  
*Compare enterpryse, sb.*  
 Empryse, *v. to undertake*, 268<sub>m</sub>;  
 510<sub>m</sub>; emprised, 245<sub>m</sub>; enpryse,  
 513<sub>2</sub>; enprysid, 251<sub>1</sub>; 347<sub>m</sub>  
*Compare enterpryse, v.*
- En, *pp. (1 fr. en) in*, 38<sub>2</sub>;  
 187<sub>m</sub>; 309<sub>1</sub>; 398<sub>m</sub>; 459<sub>17</sub>  
 Enamoured, *pp. 475<sub>7</sub>*; anamoured,  
 469<sub>1</sub>  
 Enbarryd, *pt. (fr. embarra), made  
 (his club) to enter*, 350<sub>13</sub>  
 Embassade, *sb. See ambassade*  
 Embassadours, *sb. ambassadors*,  
 95<sub>10</sub>; embassadours, 39<sub>m</sub>; en-  
 bassatour, 465<sub>1</sub>  
 Embasement, *sb. (fr. estahisse-  
 ment), dread, terror*, 319<sub>m</sub>; en-  
 baysshement, 183<sub>m</sub>. *Compare*  
*abasshement.*  
 Embrace, *v. to embrace*, 199<sub>2</sub>; en-  
 bracing, 219<sub>m</sub>; 370<sub>m</sub>; embrace  
 and beclyppe, 492<sub>m</sub>  
 Embussshement, *sb. ambush*, 526<sub>12</sub>;  
 embusshes, 448<sub>m</sub>  
 Embusshyd, *pp. put in an ambush*,  
 654<sub>12</sub>  
 Enchaument, *sb. enchantment*,  
 231<sub>2</sub>; ohantement, 233<sub>1</sub>; en-  
 chantements, 696<sub>18</sub>; enohante-  
 mens, 231<sub>1</sub>  
 Enclose, *v. to surround, enclosed*,  
 392<sub>2</sub>; 330<sub>2</sub>; enclosed, 640<sub>18</sub>; in  
 cloos, 640<sub>11</sub>; cloos, 322<sub>m</sub>  
 Encountre, *v. to meet, attack, en-  
 countrid*, 594<sub>m</sub>; 691<sub>1</sub>; encoun-  
 trid and met, 59<sub>m</sub>; encountrid  
 and mette, 176<sub>12</sub>; 483<sub>m</sub>; 573<sub>10</sub>  
 Encresyng, 9<sub>m</sub>; encresyng and  
 ampliacion, 202<sub>m</sub>  
 Ende and expyracion, 221<sub>m</sub>  
 Ended and fynysshid, 3<sub>10</sub>; 670<sub>m</sub>  
 Endlongand ouerthwart, *adv. along  
 and across*, 195<sub>2</sub>; endlonge and  
 ouerthwart, 410<sub>1</sub>  
 Endoctryne and teche, 18<sub>10</sub>  
 Endomage, *v. (fr. endomagier)*,  
 653<sub>12</sub>; adomage, 380<sub>m</sub>; adom-  
 age, 467<sub>14</sub>  
 Enduce, *v. to teach (fr. introduire)*,  
 enduced, 208<sub>12</sub>; enduce and  
 teche, 33<sub>10</sub>; enduced and  
 taughte, 18<sub>2</sub>; 94<sub>m</sub>; enduced  
 (fr. duitte), 645<sub>11</sub>; enduced (fr.

<sup>1</sup> The French text runs thus: " par austeres montaignes chardons et espines."

- duits), 192<sub>15</sub>; *introduysing* and *enformyng*, 394<sub>1</sub>
- Enduce**, *v.* to induce (fr. induire), 631<sub>27</sub>; introduced (!) 497<sub>1</sub>; induced, 577<sub>2</sub>; *indusyng*, 15<sub>21</sub>
- Endure** and *suffre*, 534<sub>21</sub>
- Enfamysshid**, *pp.* See *affamed*
- Enfermed** and *shitte*, 107<sub>22</sub>
- Enflame**, *v.* (fr. flamboyer) 64<sub>22</sub>
- Enfoundre**, *v.* to knock down, to smask, *enfoundrid*, 592<sub>21</sub>; *enfoundred* and *frusshid*, 434<sub>22</sub>
- Engenderen**, they engender, 35<sub>22</sub>
- Engyne**, *sb.* understanding, skill, 30<sub>22</sub>; *engyna*, 17<sub>21</sub>; *engyne humayn*, 505<sub>1</sub>; *engyne* and *entendement*, 125<sub>1</sub>; *engyne* and *witte*, 393<sub>22</sub>
- Enhabite**, *v.* to inhabit, 37<sub>22</sub>; 224<sub>22</sub>; 446<sub>22</sub>; *enhabited*, 81<sub>22</sub>; 353<sub>22</sub>; *enhabytyd*, 171<sub>22</sub>; *inhabited*, 444<sub>22</sub>; *enhabyte* and *kepe*, 397<sub>22</sub>; *enhabited* and *ocupied*, 213<sub>22</sub>; *enhabited* and *peupled*, 426<sub>12</sub>
- Enhabiteur** and *dweller*, 16<sub>2</sub> Compare *inhabitauns*
- Enhauncement**, *sb.* (fr. exaulcement), 308<sub>22</sub>
- Enhaunse**, *v.* to enhance, exalt, to raise, to lift up, 18<sub>22</sub>; 24<sub>22</sub>; 26<sub>22</sub>; *enhausyng*, 9<sub>22</sub>; 22<sub>22</sub>; *enhausid*, 73<sub>22</sub>; *enhaused*, 9<sub>22</sub>; 16<sub>22</sub>; 34<sub>22</sub>; *enhausced*, 39<sub>22</sub>; *hauscid*, 300<sub>22</sub>; *enhauscyd* and *exaltyd*, 500<sub>22</sub>; *enhaused* and *lyfte*, 336<sub>22</sub>; *enhausid* and *lift*, 142<sub>22</sub>;—*exhaunce* (fr. exaulcer); 56<sub>22</sub>; *exhausced*, 56<sub>22</sub>
- Enioye**, *v.* See *esioye*
- Enke**, *sb.* ink, 249<sub>12</sub>
- Enleuen**, *num.* eleven, 3<sub>22</sub>
- Enlumyne**, *v.* to enlighten, illumine, shine, *enlumyneth*, 267<sub>22</sub>; *enlumyned*, 42<sub>22</sub>; *enlumyned* and *shoon*, 489<sub>22</sub>
- Enmachyned**,<sup>1</sup> and *greyud*, 275<sub>22</sub>
- Ennortament**, *sb.* exhortation, 640<sub>22</sub>
- Enpayre**, *v.* to impair (fr. empirer), 615<sub>22</sub>; *enpayred*, 479<sub>22</sub>
- Empesshe**, *v.* to hinder, prevent *empessbeth*, 659<sub>22</sub>; *empesshyng* 477<sub>2</sub>
- Empesshement**, *sb.* See *empesshement*
- Enplenysse**,<sup>2</sup> *v.* to fill, replenish, 51<sub>22</sub>; *enplenysshid*, 344<sub>2</sub> Compare *replenisshe*
- Enpryntid**, *pp.* printed, 701<sub>22</sub>
- Enpryse**, *sb.* and *v.* See *empyse*
- Enquere**, *v.* to inquire, 189<sub>22</sub>; *enquired*, 214<sub>22</sub>; *enquyred*, 224<sub>22</sub>
- Enrached** (= ! fr. arachie), 119<sub>2</sub> See *arache*
- Enrachyned** (!) and *roted*, 371<sub>22</sub>
- Enrage**, *v.* to put in a rage, to make furious, *enraged*, 607<sub>22</sub>; *araged*, 28<sub>22</sub>; 34<sub>22</sub>; 43<sub>22</sub>; 637<sub>22</sub>; 670<sub>22</sub>
- Ensaiyanted** (!) and with *childe* (fr. enohantes), 645<sub>22</sub>
- Enseygne**, *v.* to teach (fr. enseygnier), 517<sub>22</sub>; *enseygneth*, 373<sub>22</sub>; *enseigned*, 477<sub>22</sub>; *ensigned*, 304<sub>22</sub>; 692<sub>22</sub>; *enseigneth* and *gyueth hem therto*, 518<sub>22</sub>; *ensigne* and *mynystre*, 16<sub>22</sub>; *enseygned* and *taught*, 426<sub>22</sub>
- Enseygnes**, *sb.* pl. signs, tokens, 135<sub>22</sub>; 351<sub>22</sub>; *ensignes* and *tokens*, 444<sub>22</sub>
- Enspyre**, *v.* to inspire, *enspyred*, 42<sub>22</sub>; 182<sub>22</sub>; 184<sub>22</sub>
- Enstranglid**. See *estrangle*
- Entamed**. See *attamed*
- Entaylle**, *v.* (fr. entayller), to engrave, carve, *entallid* and *cutte*, 330<sub>22</sub>; *entaylled* and *cornen*, 30<sub>22</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Carton translates "machine en troyes une tres grande pestelence" by "enmachyned and greyud troye with a right grete pestelence."

<sup>2</sup> "That enplenyssh the world" is intended for "que le monde rekenquissiez!"

- Entencion, *sb.* *intention*, 132<sub>11</sub> ;  
 intencion, 172<sub>2</sub> ; 227<sub>m</sub> ; enten-  
 cion and purpose, 230<sub>m</sub> .
- Entende, *v.* (fr. *tendre* or *entendre*,  
 137<sub>11</sub> ; 260<sub>m</sub> ; entending, 83<sub>11</sub> ;  
 entended, 22<sub>2</sub> ; entended, 149<sub>2</sub> ;  
 175<sub>1</sub> ; 179<sub>m</sub> ; 204<sub>2</sub> ; 219<sub>4</sub> ;  
 407<sub>m</sub> ; 572<sub>12</sub> ; entended his  
 eeres, 122<sub>12</sub> ; entende and take  
 bede, 222<sub>m</sub> ; here ner entende,  
 95<sub>11</sub> .
- Entendement, *sb.* *understanding*,  
*reason*, 391<sub>1</sub> ; 455<sub>2</sub> ; entende-  
 mentes, 128<sub>2</sub> ; entendement and  
 rayson, 373<sub>2</sub> ; entendement,  
 53<sub>1</sub> ; mynde and entendementes,  
 128<sub>2</sub> ; wytte ne entendement,  
 127<sub>11</sub> .
- Entente, *sb.* *intent*, 78<sub>1</sub> ; 597<sub>1</sub> .
- Enterpryse, *sb.* *undertaking*, *enter-  
 prise*, 179<sub>11</sub> ; enterprises, 190<sub>11</sub> ;  
 enterprises and fettes, 304<sub>m</sub> ;  
 empryse, 137<sub>m</sub> ; empryse, 554<sub>1</sub> .
- Enterpryse, *v.* *to undertake*, *enter-  
 prisid*, 30<sub>11</sub> ; enterprysed, 594<sub>m</sub> ;  
*Compare* empryse
- Entierly, *adv.* *entirely*, 12<sub>m</sub> .
- Entoxicat, *adj.* (fr. *extoxillie*),  
*saturated*, 497<sub>1</sub> .
- Entraylles and guttis, 496<sub>m</sub> .
- Entrecountred, 586<sub>2</sub> ; entrecoun-  
 tryd, 600<sub>m</sub> (fr. *sentrecoururent*)
- Entree, *sb.* *entrance*, 409<sub>m</sub> .
- Entrelarded, *pp.* *interlarded*, 125<sub>1</sub> .
- Entremeted, *pt.* (= 1 fr. *il ne  
 sentremist*), 310<sub>11</sub> .
- (At this) entremetyng and faytes  
 (= 1 fr. *a oes entrefaites*), *in  
 the meantime*, 294<sub>m</sub> .
- Entrete, *v.* *to treat* (fr. *traitier*),  
 entretyd, 275<sub>4</sub> ; entrete euyll  
 (fr. *mal mener*), 466<sub>11</sub> .
- Entretene and holde, 642<sub>m</sub> ;  
 entretene and holde, 418<sub>m</sub> ; en-  
 tretene and kepe, 631<sub>1</sub> ; entre-  
 tene and holde to geder, 193<sub>m</sub> .
- Entroducoeth. *See* introduce and  
 induce
- Enuahye and assayle, *v.* 525<sub>11</sub> .
- Enuaye (fr. *enuahye*) and assault,  
*sb.* 479<sub>m</sub> .
- Enuertued. *See* esuertue
- Enuolupe, *v.* *to envelope* (fr. *enuo-  
 luper*, *enueloper*), *enuolupid*,  
 455<sub>4</sub> ; *enuolupp*, 87<sub>2</sub> ; *enuolup-  
 ped*, 100<sub>2</sub> .
- Enuye and couetyse, *sb.* 103<sub>m</sub> .
- Equynocations, *sb. pl.* ? *pronuncia-  
 tions*, 702<sub>4</sub> .
- Er, *adv.* and *prep.* *ere*, *early*, *before*,  
 100<sub>m</sub> ; 173<sub>1</sub> ; 399<sub>m</sub> ; 675<sub>m</sub> .
- Ere, *v.* *to plough*, 523<sub>1</sub> ; *eryng*,  
 18<sub>4</sub> ; *eryng*, 95<sub>m</sub> ; *eryng* and  
 labouryng the erthe (fr. *cultiner*  
 and labourer), 10<sub>m</sub> .
- Errour and noyance, *sb.* (1 fr. *vne  
 grand erreur d'enuye*), 46<sub>m</sub> .
- Esbaied, *pp.* *abashed* (fr. *esbahi*),  
 70<sub>11</sub> ; esbayed, 63<sub>4</sub> ; 63<sub>m</sub> ; 82<sub>m</sub> ;  
 216<sub>11</sub> ; 219<sub>11</sub> . *Compare* abashe
- Esbatemens, *sb. pl.* *plays*, *sports*  
 (fr. *esbas*), 530<sub>11</sub> ; *playes* and  
*esbatementis*, 42<sub>m</sub> ; 321<sub>11</sub> .
- Esbatre and playe, *v.* 508<sub>2</sub> .
- Esboulling, *pp. pres.* *boiling*, 412<sub>m</sub> .
- Escarmouche. *See* scarmush
- Eschauffe, *v.* *to warm*, *heat* (fr.  
*eschauer*) ; *eschauffeth*, 267<sub>m</sub> ;  
*schauflid*, 94<sub>11</sub> ; 150<sub>m</sub> ; 184<sub>11</sub> ;  
 603<sub>14</sub> .
- Escolyers, *sb. pl.* *scholars*, *students*,  
 396<sub>2</sub> .
- Escrye, *v.* *to cry out*, *escried*, 318<sub>m</sub> ;  
 322<sub>2</sub> ; *escried*, 46<sub>11</sub> ; *ascrye*,  
 341<sub>11</sub> ; *ascryed*, 299<sub>2</sub> ; 331<sub>m</sub> ;  
*ascried* and *saide*, 34<sub>m</sub> .
- Escryue and write, 384<sub>m</sub> .
- Esioye, *enioye*, *v.* *to enjoy*, *be glad*,  
*enioye*, 15<sub>2</sub> ; *enjoyed*, 53<sub>2</sub> ; *es-  
 loye*, 139<sub>m</sub> ; *esioye* and *be glad*,  
 70<sub>m</sub> .
- Esamaye, *v.* *to dismay*, 617<sub>2</sub> ; 660<sub>2</sub> ;  
*esmaied*, 325<sub>4</sub> .
- Esmerueylye, *v.* *to wonder*, *be sur-  
 prised* (fr. *esmerueiller*), *esme-  
 ruaylyd*, 82<sub>m</sub> ; *esmeruayllid*,

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "si obetine en sa malvolence" by "enuolupp in his obstynacion!"

- 444<sub>m</sub>; esmeruelled, 425<sub>m</sub>; ameruaylyd, 158<sub>s</sub>.
- Esmeue, *v. to move, touch*, esmeuyd, 34<sub>m</sub>; 46<sub>m</sub>; 66<sub>m</sub>; 123<sub>m</sub>; 332<sub>m</sub>; 318<sub>m</sub>; ameuud, 306<sub>m</sub>.
- Esperance, *sb. hope*, 616<sub>s</sub>; 641<sub>m</sub>; esperance ne hope, 644<sub>m</sub>; 666<sub>m</sub>; esperance and truste, 509<sub>s</sub>.
- Esperite, *sb. See sperite*.
- Espioes, *sb. pl. spies*, 567<sub>s</sub>.
- Esponsailles, *sb. pl. wedding, marriage*, 103<sub>m</sub>; 184<sub>m</sub>; 226<sub>m</sub>; espousayles, 85<sub>m</sub>; espowailles and mariage, 312<sub>m</sub>.
- Esponse, *v. to wed, marry*, espousid, 221<sub>m</sub>; espowid, 680<sub>m</sub>; espowsyd and weddid, 353<sub>m</sub>; 506<sub>s</sub>; spousid, 85<sub>s</sub>; spousid and wedded, 19<sub>m</sub>.
- Esprise, *v. to be smitten*, esprised, 310<sub>s</sub>; 531<sub>m</sub>; esprysed, 374<sub>m</sub>; 618<sub>m</sub>.
- Espyre, *v. to spy*, 15<sub>v</sub>; 235<sub>v</sub>; 465<sub>m</sub>; espied, 310<sub>m</sub>; 331<sub>m</sub>; aspied, 292<sub>m</sub>; 317<sub>m</sub>; aspyed, 286<sub>m</sub>; 368<sub>m</sub>; espyed and sawe, 139<sub>m</sub>.
- Espyes, *sb. pl. spies*, 15<sub>v</sub>; 91<sub>v</sub>; espies and waytars, 133<sub>m</sub>; espyes and scowrers, 143<sub>m</sub>.
- Esquyer, *sb. squire*, 249<sub>m</sub>; esquyers, 254<sub>s</sub>.
- Estate, *sb. (fr. estat)*, 42<sub>m</sub>; astate, 672<sub>s</sub>.
- Estaunche, *v. to satisfy (fr. estanchier)*, 32<sub>m</sub>.
- Esteme, *v. to estimate*, estemed, 157<sub>m</sub>; extymed, 284<sub>m</sub>; extemed, 251<sub>m</sub>.
- Estoned. *See astonyed*.
- Estranger, *sb. stranger*, 476<sub>s</sub>; estranglers, 305<sub>m</sub>; estranglers, 140<sub>m</sub>; 303<sub>m</sub>; strangler, 307<sub>m</sub>; stranglers, 303<sub>m</sub>; strangers, 197<sub>m</sub>.
- Estrangle, *v. to strangle, choke*, 240<sub>m</sub>; enstranglid, 305<sub>s</sub>; estranglid, 302<sub>s</sub>; strangle, 241<sub>m</sub>; strangled, 243<sub>m</sub>; stranglid, 242<sub>m</sub>; 302<sub>s</sub>.
- Estudye, *sb. study*, 426<sub>m</sub>; 426<sub>m</sub>; studie, 360<sub>m</sub>.
- Estudyents, *sb. pl. students*, 394<sub>s</sub>; 499<sub>m</sub>.
- Esuertue, *v. to take courage, to become encouraged, encourage (fr. esuertuer)*, 191<sub>m</sub>; 376<sub>m</sub>; esuertued, 242<sub>m</sub>; enuertuyed, 42<sub>m</sub>; 355<sub>v</sub>; enuertued, 169<sub>s</sub>; 434<sub>m</sub>.
- Ete, *v. to eat, etc*, 299<sub>m</sub>; etc, *pl.* 124<sub>m</sub>; 150<sub>m</sub>; eten, 299<sub>m</sub>; etc and deuoure, 478<sub>m</sub>.
- Eter, *sb. eater*, 48<sub>m</sub>.
- Euyll and harmes, 352<sub>m</sub>; euylls and hurtes, 665<sub>m</sub>.
- Euyll ease, *sb. (fr. malle sante)*, 242<sub>m</sub>; euyll health and ease, 301<sub>s</sub>; euyll happe, 421<sub>m</sub>; euyll hour (fr. malheur), 240<sub>m</sub>; euyll willars, 336<sub>m</sub>; 434<sub>m</sub>; euyll wyll, 237<sub>m</sub>; euyll and currid, 297<sub>m</sub>; euyll pleid and contente, 178<sub>m</sub>.
- Ewre, *sb. (fr. eur, heur)*, 519<sub>m</sub>; ewre and happe, 472<sub>s</sub>; fortunes and ewres, 22<sub>s</sub>.
- Ewrens, ewrous, *adj. (fr. eureux, heureux)*, ewrens, 69<sub>m</sub>; 455<sub>m</sub>; ewrensly, 526<sub>m</sub>; ewrous, 455<sub>m</sub>; ewrews, 125<sub>m</sub>; ewrous and happy, 119<sub>m</sub>; 457<sub>m</sub>; 519<sub>s</sub>; 561<sub>m</sub>; euren and happy, 55<sub>m</sub>.
- Exaudycion, *sb. realisation*, 104<sub>m</sub>; exaudicion and parfayt pensifnes (fr. pensement), 125<sub>m</sub>.
- Exoepcion or reseruyng, 273<sub>m</sub>.
- Excersite, *sb. (1) exercise, practice*, 250<sub>m</sub>; 256<sub>m</sub>; excersites, *pl.* 17<sub>s</sub>; excersites, *pl.* 54<sub>m</sub>; 177<sub>s</sub>; —(2) *army, host*, 285<sub>m</sub>; 326<sub>m</sub>; 396<sub>s</sub>; 403<sub>m</sub>; 416<sub>s</sub>; 475<sub>m</sub>; —(3) *suite, attendance, company*, 326<sub>m</sub>; 483<sub>m</sub>.
- Excersite,<sup>1</sup> *v. to exercise*, 268<sub>s</sub>; 398<sub>s</sub>; excersiced, 247<sub>m</sub>; 606<sub>s</sub>; excersysed, 225<sub>m</sub>.
- Exhaunce. *See enhaunce*.
- Exiled and banysshid, 436<sub>m</sub>.
- Extemed, extymed. *See esteme*.
- Exylement, *sb. banishment*, 372<sub>m</sub>.

<sup>1</sup> Probably this is originally *exercice*, the "t" owing its origin to a misprint.

- Eye, *sb. eye*, 189<sub>m</sub>; *eyen*, *pl.* 19<sub>m</sub>; 41<sub>s</sub>; 49<sub>s</sub>.  
 Eyer, *sb.* See *ayer*.  
 Eygle, *sb. eagle*, 662<sub>m</sub>.  
 Eygre, *adj.* (fr. *aigre*). See *aygre*.  
 Eyres, *sb. pl. the heirs*, 261<sub>m</sub>; 564<sub>m</sub>; 660<sub>s</sub>.
- FACION, *sb. manner, fashion*, 80<sub>m</sub>; *facions*, 66<sub>m</sub>; 522<sub>m</sub>; *facion and maner*, 244<sub>s</sub>; *wise and facion*, 232<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fader, *sb. father*, 11<sub>m</sub>; 48<sub>s</sub>; *fadres*, *gen. sing.* 12<sub>m</sub>; *fadres*, *pl.* 96<sub>m</sub>.  
 Failyng,<sup>1</sup> 301<sub>m</sub>.  
 Falle, *v. to fall, happen*, 29<sub>s</sub>; 115<sub>m</sub>; *fall*, 52<sub>s</sub>; *fille*, 147<sub>m</sub>; 189<sub>m</sub>; 224<sub>m</sub>; 273<sub>m</sub>; *fill*, 20<sub>m</sub>; 24<sub>m</sub>; 76<sub>m</sub>; *fyll*, 5<sub>s</sub>; *fylle*, 58<sub>m</sub>; *fallen*, 675<sub>m</sub>; *falle and happene*, 20<sub>m</sub>.  
 False, *v.* (fr. *faulser*), *to falsify, deceive, break, fail*, 19<sub>m</sub>; *falsyd*, 673<sub>m</sub>.  
 Familyer, *adj.* 211<sub>m</sub>.  
 Familye and meyne (fr. *maison*), 299<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fantasies,<sup>2</sup> *sb. pl.* 24<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fare, *v. to go*, *how fare they*, 236<sub>s</sub>; *the mooste welfaryng man* (fr. *adrecie*) 455<sub>s</sub>; *the most best well faryng man*, 473<sub>m</sub>; *the beste faryng and klenliest men*, 529<sub>m</sub>.  
 Faste and sewrly, 130<sub>m</sub>; *faste and sore*, 242<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fatte and encrasse, *v.* (fr. *encrasser*), 524<sub>s</sub>.  
 Faneur, *sb. favour*, 72<sub>s</sub>.  
 Faute, *sb. fault, mistake*, 99<sub>m</sub>; 136<sub>m</sub>; 324<sub>m</sub>; *fawte*, 117<sub>s</sub>.  
 Fawcion, *sb.* (fr. *falcon*), *falcon*, 557<sub>m</sub>.
- Fayerye,<sup>3</sup> *sb. ? faulerie, deceit*, 527<sub>s</sub>.  
 Faygn, *v. to feign, pretend, feigned*, 57<sub>m</sub>; *faynen*, 59<sub>s</sub>; 540<sub>m</sub>; *faygnen*, 394<sub>m</sub>.  
 Faylle, *v. to fail*, *faylyd*, 75<sub>m</sub>; *failed*, 75<sub>m</sub>; *fayllid and ex-spyred*, 361<sub>s</sub>.  
 Fayte, *sb. deed, feat*, 700<sub>s</sub>; *fayt*, 230<sub>m</sub>; *faytes*, 203<sub>s</sub>; 224<sub>m</sub>; *faytes and dedes*, 472<sub>m</sub>; 505<sub>r</sub>.  
 See *feet*.  
 Feall, *adj. trusty, faithful*, 641<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fecche, *v. to fetch*, 129<sub>m</sub>; 144<sub>s</sub>; 262<sub>m</sub>; *fette*, 127<sub>m</sub>.  
 Feet, *sb. deed, feat*, 122<sub>m</sub>; 123<sub>m</sub>; 179<sub>m</sub>; 409<sub>s</sub>; *fette*, 122<sub>m</sub>; *feetes*, 7<sub>m</sub>; 207<sub>m</sub> (see *fayte*); *feetes and vaylliances*, 257<sub>m</sub>; *feetes and dedes*, 341<sub>m</sub>; 370<sub>m</sub>; 463<sub>s</sub>; *feet or werke*, 302<sub>s</sub>; *feet ne entrepryse*, 210<sub>s</sub>.  
 Felaw and broder, 209<sub>s</sub>.  
 Feldes and champayns, 364<sub>s</sub>.  
 Fela, *v. to feel*, 236<sub>m</sub>; 386<sub>m</sub>; *y fele me*, 21<sub>m</sub>; *felte*, 12<sub>s</sub>; 212<sub>m</sub>; 236<sub>m</sub>.  
 Felle, *adj. fell, fierce, cruel*, 93<sub>m</sub>; 302<sub>m</sub>; *fell*, 485<sub>m</sub>; *fell and en-nymed*, 294<sub>m</sub>; 299<sub>m</sub>.  
 Felon, *felonne, adj. vicious, wicked*, 68<sub>m</sub>; 674<sub>m</sub>; *most felonst*, 241<sub>s</sub>; *felonaly and rudely*, 687<sub>s</sub>; *felonnous*, 76<sub>m</sub>; 340<sub>m</sub>.  
 Felonnee, *sb. pl. felons*, 538<sub>m</sub>.  
 Femelette, *sb. little woman*, 488<sub>m</sub>.  
 Femynyn chambres, *sb. pl. womb*, 11<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fendly and deuellisah, 236<sub>m</sub>.  
 Fere, *feer, sb. fear, dread*, 190<sub>m</sub>; *feres of anguysshe*, 243<sub>m</sub>; *feere and doubte*, 147<sub>m</sub>; *feres and doubte*, 121<sub>m</sub>; *feres and drede*, 569<sub>m</sub>; 610<sub>m</sub>.

<sup>1</sup> The equivalent in "Le Recueil" for Caxton's "grete fiersnes and failyng that he had maad" is: "de la grand radeur et du grant escueil quil auoit prins!"

<sup>2</sup> "Melencolieux fantosmes" = (!) "melancolyous fantasies."

<sup>3</sup> The passage which corresponds to Caxton's "what fayerye hath meuyd the to be brought to suche paryllis," is in "Le Recueil" "qui te meult de toy soubmettre," etc.

- Fere and drede, *v.* 88<sub>11</sub>; 116<sub>6</sub>; 190<sub>10</sub>; fered ne dredde, 650<sub>20</sub>  
 Ferfull, *adj.* (fr. *peoureux*), *timid*, 108<sub>3</sub>; ferdfull (= *terrible*), 420<sub>13</sub>; ferd full, 330<sub>6</sub>  
 Ferme and stable, *adj.* 183<sub>21</sub>; 204<sub>3</sub>; 289<sub>11</sub>; ferme and stronge, 410<sub>21</sub>  
 Ferre, *adj.* *far*, 57<sub>20</sub>; 74<sub>23</sub>; 75<sub>13</sub>; 90<sub>21</sub>; 138<sub>23</sub>; 186<sub>19</sub>; 256<sub>21</sub>; fer, 299<sub>4</sub>; farther, 62<sub>21</sub>; forther, 201<sub>1</sub>; further, 256<sub>21</sub>; 617<sub>14</sub>; farthest, 256<sub>21</sub>  
 Feste and cheer, 147<sub>17</sub>; feste and gladnes, 85<sub>10</sub>  
 Feste, feste, *v.* *to feast, entertain*, fested, 228<sub>16</sub>; 412<sub>3</sub>; feste and make chiere (fr. *festoyer*), 489<sub>1</sub>; fested and made chere, 314<sub>23</sub>; festoye and make chyer, 283<sub>23</sub>; festoyng, 125<sub>17</sub>; festoyeng, 141<sub>2</sub> (fr. *festoyement*)  
 Festue,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* *bit of straw*, 97<sub>21</sub>  
 Flanced and trouthplight, 218<sub>1</sub>  
 Fiers and hardy, 38<sub>3</sub>; fiers and enyll, 40<sub>6</sub>  
 Fierste, *sb.* *fierceness*, 77<sub>23</sub>; 148<sub>11</sub>; 204<sub>10</sub>; fyerste, 362<sub>23</sub>; 581<sub>21</sub>; fyerste and angre, 362<sub>23</sub>; fiers-tees, *pl.* 197<sub>20</sub> *Compare* fiersnes, 362<sub>23</sub>; 571<sub>21</sub>  
 Fierste, *sb.* *boldness, valour*, 646<sub>10</sub>  
 Fighte, *v.* *to fight*, 258<sub>23</sub>; fought, 271<sub>1</sub>; faughte, 259<sub>23</sub>; foughten, 22<sub>3</sub>; 38<sub>23</sub>; 234<sub>23</sub>; fight and smyte, 99<sub>23</sub>; fought and smote, 75<sub>23</sub>  
 Figure and facion, 194<sub>23</sub>; figures and shappe, 244<sub>23</sub>; figure and state, 244<sub>23</sub>  
 Fille, *v.* *to fill*, fillid, 418<sub>14</sub>; fillyd, 307<sub>7</sub>; fyllyd, 615<sub>21</sub>; flide, 197<sub>10</sub>; 271<sub>1</sub>; fylid, 410<sub>3</sub>; 413<sub>23</sub>; 420<sub>13</sub>  
 Filthid, *pp.* or *adj.* *defiled*, 36<sub>21</sub>  
 Fin, *adj.* *fine*, 249<sub>20</sub>  
 First or (= fr. *anant que*), 145<sub>14</sub>  
 Fishar, *sb.* *fisherman*, 169<sub>11</sub> 20  
 Fisiciens, *sb. pl.* *physicians*, 167<sub>2</sub>; fisicians and medicines, 166<sub>12</sub>  
 Flambooushyng (fr. *flamboyant*), 292<sub>14</sub>  
 Flateresse fortune, 412<sub>17</sub>  
 Flee, *v.* *to fly*, 292<sub>4</sub>; flew, 211<sub>14</sub>; 259<sub>23</sub>; 407<sub>10</sub>; flawe, 149<sub>3</sub>; 317<sub>23</sub>; flownen, 291<sub>10</sub>  
 Flee, *v.* *to flee*, 223<sub>23</sub>; 295<sub>3</sub>; 307<sub>3</sub>; fle, 47<sub>3</sub>; fleying, 47<sub>23</sub>; fleed, 272<sub>14</sub>; 295<sub>14</sub>; fled, 81<sub>12</sub> 23; 295<sub>17</sub>; fledde, 47<sub>3</sub>; 223<sub>23</sub>; 682<sub>11</sub>; fledd, 56<sub>7</sub>; flee and goo a back, 355<sub>14</sub>; fledde a way and escaped, 465<sub>23</sub>  
 Flees, *sb.* *fleets*, 347<sub>13</sub>; 348<sub>23</sub>  
 Flood, *sb.* *river* (fr. *fleuve*), 38<sub>23</sub>; 78<sub>23</sub>; (fr. *le ruant*), 79<sub>23</sub>  
 Florrishe, *v.* (fr. *flamboyer*), 378<sub>3</sub>; floryshe, 18<sub>23</sub>; florysh and shyn, 421<sub>2</sub>  
 Flote, *sb.* *fleet* (fr. *flotte*), 206<sub>23</sub>; 286<sub>23</sub> 21; 434<sub>1</sub>  
 Flowre, *v.* (fr. *fleurir*), *flowering*, 19<sub>23</sub>; floure, 11<sub>3</sub>; flowre, 137<sub>23</sub>  
 Folde and wynde, 495<sub>3</sub>; folded and enuoluped, 495<sub>11</sub>  
 Folle, *sb.* *foolishness*, 221<sub>20</sub>  
 Folly, *adv.* *foolishly*, 122<sub>23</sub>; foltyly, 624<sub>23</sub>  
 Folowe and pourslewe, 428<sub>11</sub>  
 Foloweden, *they followed*, 155<sub>20</sub>  
 Fondementis, *sb. pl.* *the foundations*, 510<sub>3</sub>; fondementes terrestre, 500<sub>23</sub>  
 Force, *sb.* *hit is force* (fr. *il est force*), 36<sub>23</sub>; 49<sub>13</sub>; 58<sub>7</sub>; 65<sub>23</sub>; of force, 218<sub>23</sub>; force and strength, 78<sub>17</sub>; 194<sub>3</sub>; 257<sub>23</sub>; 263<sub>23</sub>; 330<sub>23</sub>; 369<sub>23</sub>; 417<sub>23</sub>; 430<sub>23</sub>; force and necessite, 156<sub>3</sub>; force and valeur, 630<sub>23</sub>; force and vertue, 260<sub>23</sub>; force ne violence, 224<sub>3</sub>  
 Fore, *pp.* *for*, 12<sub>3</sub>  
 Forfrushe, *v.* *to dash to pieces*, forfrushith, 289<sub>3</sub>; forfrushed,

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's "We shall not longe drawe the festue," corresponds to "Nous ne te amerons point longuement" in "Le Recueil."

- 212,; 335; 365; 462; for-  
frusshid, 336; forfrusshid and  
distemperid, 26; Forge, v. (fr. tistre and marteler),  
forge and make armes, 38; forge  
and make, 9; forge and  
smote, 225; Forgete, v. *to forget*, forgate, 32;  
228; 230; 302; forgete,  
638; forgotten, 81; 251; for-  
gotten and put in oubliance,  
285; Forlong or stade (fr. estade),  
249; forlong and stadye, 256;  
Formeste, *adj. the foremost*, 618;  
formest in the fronte to fore,  
98; 147; Fornyces, *sb. pl. brothels*, 247;  
Forsake, v. *y forsake not* (= fr. je  
n'ignore pas), 12; forsake not  
ne leue, 518; Forsayd, *pp. aforesaid*, 5; for-  
sayde, 7; Forseen that (fr. pourueu que),  
180; 220; 250; Fortefyed and reinforced, 569;  
For to = to, *before an infinitive*, 6;  
33; 44; 60; etc. Fortunat,<sup>1</sup> *adj. fortunate*, 189;  
fortunat and happy, 155; Fortune and burthe, 11; for-  
tunes (fates), 7; fortunes and  
ewres, 22; fortune,<sup>2</sup> 97; Foul, fowle, *adj. ugly, dirty, pol-  
luted*, 10; 10; 39; 43;  
foule and horryble, 41; foul  
and abhomyable, 40; foull  
and courbbecky, 178; fowle  
(! fr. velu), 391; Founded and made, 196; Foundre (fr. fouldroyer) and bete  
down, 419; Foundre (fr. fendre), 400; Fourbesshour and begynner (fr.  
fourbisseur), 17; Fourseye, fourroye, v. *to throng*,  
thrust (fr. fourrer), fourseyed,  
599; fourroyed, 407; four-  
roied, 377; fourseyed and  
threstyd, 599; Fourme, *sb. form, shape*, 218;  
695; Fourte, *num. the fourth*, 61; Fowle, v. *to defile, pollute, fowlyng*,  
9; fowle and raulsahe, 331;  
fowled or put a back, 132; Fowlys, *sb. pl. birds*, 150; Foynes, v. *fence, thrust, foyned*,  
259; Foynes, *sb. pl. strokes, cuts*, 259; Foysen, *sb. abundance, power*,  
506; 585; foysen, 619; Franke and free, 447; Fraunchise, v. (fr. affranchir),  
fraunchised, 694; fraunchyse  
and make fre, 189; 277; Fraunchise, *sb. 52*; fraunchyses  
and lybertees, 682; Fraunchysar, *sb. 289*; Frawde or malengyne, 661; Frayll, *adj. fragile*, 621; fraile,  
21; Frenedes and kynnesmen, 217; kennesmen and frenedes, 217;  
(fr. parents) Fresshe and newe, 101; 378; Fro, *pp. from*, 14; from, 11; fra,  
74; Froward (! fr. nuisible), 191; Frowne and grugge (fr. fremir),  
41; Frusshie, v. *to dash to pieces*,  
frusshid, 157; 466; frusshyd,  
480; frusshyng and brusyng,  
213; froussyng and brekyng,  
22; Fruyt, *sb. fruit*, 20; 24; frutes,  
171; Fumees, *sb. smoke*, 499; fumees  
and smoke, 424; 425; 426; Fureur, *sb. wrath*, 37; 71;

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "Aduiegne au bon droit bonne fortune" by "god spede the right & fortune!"

<sup>2</sup> "Fortunat" ought to be "Fortune," and the sentence, instead of running: ". . . the gorgonnes fortunat, whiche meduse," . . . ought to run: "the gorgonnes. Fortune whiche," etc.



- 669<sub>4</sub>; furour, 35<sub>27</sub>; 626<sub>23</sub>;  
 fureurs, 434<sub>10</sub>; furours, 119<sub>14</sub>;  
 fureur and maletalent, 479<sub>27</sub>;  
 Furies, *sb.* (! fr. *fioures*), 119<sub>14</sub>.  
*Compare* feures, 412<sub>23</sub>.  
 Furnyssah<sup>1</sup> and fighte, 145<sub>11</sub>.  
 Furth, *adv.* forth, 400<sub>23</sub>; 654<sub>23</sub>.  
 Furthwyth incontinent, 494<sub>23</sub>.  
 Fyerste. *See* fierste.  
 Fylthe, *sb.* filth, 528<sub>3</sub>.  
 Fyn and ende, 537<sub>23</sub>.  
 Fynably, *adv.* finally, 219<sub>2</sub>; fin-  
 ably, 138<sub>4</sub>; 195<sub>23</sub>; fynablely, 83<sub>11</sub>.  
 Fyndar, *sb.* inventor, 10<sub>23</sub>; inuen-  
 tor and fynder, 21<sub>23</sub>.  
 Fynde, *v.* to find, 6<sub>23</sub>; 228<sub>23</sub>;  
 fonde, 35<sub>23</sub>; 38<sub>23</sub>; 48<sub>23</sub>; fond,  
 15<sub>23</sub>; 10<sub>17</sub>; founde, 623<sub>7</sub>; foun-  
 den, 38<sub>23</sub>; 78<sub>14</sub>.  
 Fyne, *v.* to refine, fyned, 18<sub>23</sub>. *See*  
 affine.  
 Fyne, *v.* to finish, end, 622<sub>17</sub>.  
 Fynssahid and ended, 86<sub>23</sub>; 261<sub>23</sub>;  
 fynssahid and taken, 30<sub>23</sub>.  
 Fyre arteficiall, 436<sub>13</sub>.
- GADER, *v.* to gather, 186<sub>23</sub>; gadre  
 to gyder, 331<sub>1</sub>; gaderd, 35<sub>1</sub>;  
 62<sub>23</sub>; 143<sub>4</sub>; 345<sub>17</sub>; gadryd, 7<sub>23</sub>;  
 658<sub>23</sub>.  
 Galant ner queynte, 246<sub>23</sub>.  
 Galeye, *sb.* galley, 177<sub>23</sub>; 207<sub>1</sub>;  
 galayes, 174<sub>23</sub>; gallees, 173<sub>23</sub>.  
 Games and apartyes, 246<sub>4</sub>; games  
 and playes, 508<sub>11</sub>.  
 Garde, *sb.* 667<sub>23</sub>; garde and keep-  
 yng, 337<sub>23</sub>; 345<sub>23</sub>.  
 Garderobe, *sb.* wardrobe, 474<sub>1</sub>.  
 Gardes and kepara, 225<sub>23</sub>; gardyens  
 and kepara, 110<sub>23</sub>.  
 Garment, *sb.* 306<sub>4</sub>; garnementis,  
 321<sub>11</sub>; garentes and robes,  
 615<sub>13</sub>.  
 Gate, *sb.* 192<sub>17</sub>; gates, 222<sub>13</sub>; yate,  
 54<sub>23</sub>; yates, 192<sub>23</sub>.
- Gayge, *sb.* pledge (fr. *gaige*), 603<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gaynsaye and withstande, 182<sub>23</sub>.  
 Geant, *sb.* giant, 38<sub>23</sub>; 417<sub>23</sub>;  
 geantes, 432<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gelde, *v.* to emasculate, geldyd,<sup>2</sup>  
 102<sub>23</sub>.  
 Genelagye, *sb.* genealogy, 34<sub>23</sub>;  
 39<sub>23</sub>; 50<sub>11</sub>.  
 Generacions, *sb.* children, 33<sub>23</sub>; gene-  
 racion and liguges, 120<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gentylmanly, *adj.* (! fr. *gente*),  
 425<sub>23</sub>; gentilmanly cyte (!) 286<sub>11</sub>;  
 gentilmanliest, (gentement), 531<sub>23</sub>;  
 gente, 253<sub>11</sub>; gentilly, 507<sub>23</sub>.  
 Genytoys, *sb.* *pl.* genitals, 102<sub>23</sub>.  
 Geomancie, *sb.* geomancy, *divination*  
*by figures and lines drawn on the*  
*earth*, 178<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gete, *v.* to get, 198<sub>23</sub>; 220<sub>23</sub>; gate,  
 10<sub>11</sub>; 37<sub>23</sub>; 188<sub>23</sub>; 211<sub>23</sub>; goten,  
 191<sub>23</sub>; 219<sub>13</sub>; 671<sub>23</sub>; gete and  
 gader, 186<sub>23</sub>; get and wyne,  
 470<sub>11</sub>; gate and conquerd, 226<sub>23</sub>.  
 Ghest, *sb.* guest, 127<sub>23</sub>.  
 Ghilles, *sb.* *pl.* (fr. *narines*), *gills*,  
*breathing organs of fishes*, 278<sub>23</sub>.  
 Glad and loyous, 60<sub>23</sub>; 312<sub>23</sub>; 389<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gladeth and loyeth, 141<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gladnes and comfort, 438<sub>23</sub>.  
 Glaue, *sb.* sword, 218<sub>23</sub>; glene,  
 148<sub>23</sub>; glaynes, 291<sub>4</sub>; glayues,  
 135<sub>11</sub>; glayue ne swerde, 78<sub>23</sub>;  
 200<sub>11</sub>.  
 Glorye and honour, 255<sub>23</sub>; glorye  
 ne worshippe, 512<sub>11</sub>; glorye and  
 worahypp, 430<sub>23</sub>.  
 Glose, *v.* to explain, pervert, 124<sub>23</sub>.  
 Gioton, *sb.* ghaton, 319<sub>23</sub>; giouton,  
 388<sub>11</sub>.  
 Gon, *v.* to go, 265<sub>11</sub>; gowe, 35<sub>23</sub>;  
 go, 36<sub>23</sub>; goo, 53<sub>23</sub>; wente, 18<sub>11</sub>;  
 goon, 46<sub>23</sub>; gun, 223<sub>23</sub>; goo and  
 saylle, 18<sub>23</sub>; goo aback and re-  
 cule, 278<sub>23</sub>; 608<sub>23</sub>; goo away ne  
 escape, 471<sub>4</sub>; go down and de-

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's "we shall do that we may doo by our power and furnyssah and fighte freely," etc., corresponds to the French "nous ferons ce que nostre pouoir pourra furnir."

<sup>2</sup> Caxton renders the French "chassa son pere et getta ses genitoires" by "geldyd his father and caste his genytours."

- olyne, 136; goyng a back and  
 recueyllyng, 292<sub>m</sub>; wente and  
 departid, 263<sub>m</sub>; wente and  
 saylled, 552<sub>m</sub>; went and as-  
 cended, 65<sub>m</sub>; goon a back and  
 withdrawen, 190<sub>m</sub>; goon and  
 vanysabd, 426<sub>1</sub>; goon many a  
 contre, 374<sub>m</sub>  
 Gannes bombardes, *sb. pl. guns*,  
*canons* (fr. *canons bombardes*),  
 94<sub>m</sub>  
 Goodnes and wele, 96<sub>m</sub>  
 Goot, *sb. goat*, 31<sub>2</sub>  
 Gorreau, *sb.* (fr. *gorreau* ?), 493<sub>1</sub>  
 Goters, *sb. pl. gutters* (fr. *ruis-  
seaux*), 195<sub>m</sub>  
 Gouvernance, *sb. government*, 453<sub>m</sub>  
 Gouverne and conduyte, 197<sub>m</sub>  
 Goulffre, *sb.* (fr. *gouffre*), *gulf*,  
*abyss*, 278<sub>m</sub>  
 Gowles, *sb. pl.*, *the heraldic name  
for red, gules* (fr. *goules*), 573<sub>m</sub>;  
 578<sub>m</sub>  
 Grace and fauour, 35<sub>1</sub>  
 Granted and accorded, 307<sub>m</sub>  
 Gree, *sb. favour, goodwill*, 191<sub>m</sub>;  
 254<sub>1</sub>; 495<sub>m</sub>; gre, 503<sub>1</sub>; gree and  
 consente, 591<sub>m</sub>; gree and wylle,  
 169<sub>1</sub>; degre (1), 216<sub>1</sub>  
 Greef or harme, 31<sub>m</sub>; greef and  
 pesaunt annoyance, 89<sub>m</sub>  
 Greale, *adj. long and thin*, 542<sub>m</sub>  
 Grete and huge, 59<sub>1</sub>; 157<sub>m</sub>; 221<sub>m</sub>;  
 gretter, 94<sub>1</sub>; more gretter, 70<sub>1</sub>;  
 grettest, 23<sub>1</sub>; grettil and desir-  
 oualy, 109<sub>1</sub>  
 Gretenes and stature (fr. *grand-  
eur*), 479<sub>1</sub>  
 Grette and salued, 484<sub>1</sub>  
 Greuans, *sb. harm, hurt*, 50<sub>m</sub>  
 Greue,<sup>1</sup> *v. to grieve, injure*, 166<sub>1</sub>;  
 greuyd, 612<sub>1</sub>; greued,<sup>2</sup> 98<sub>1</sub>;  
 greuyng and anoyng, 678<sub>1</sub>  
 Greuous, *adj. grievous*, 537<sub>m</sub>;  
 greuous and vnhappy, 330<sub>m</sub>  
 Grope, *v. to grope, handle*, groped,  
 233<sub>m</sub>; groped and tasted, 234<sub>1</sub>  
 Grosse, *adj. rough*, 168<sub>m</sub>  
 Grosse, *v. to copy a writing in dis-  
tinct characters, engross*, grossyd,  
 250<sub>m</sub>  
 Growe and shyne, 247<sub>m</sub>; growyng  
 and encreusyng, 19<sub>1</sub>; grewe and  
 encreaid, 10<sub>1</sub>; grewe and aroose,  
 278<sub>1</sub>; grewe and enlargid,  
 496<sub>m</sub>  
 Gryet, *sb. grief*, 369<sub>m</sub>; greef,  
 269<sub>1</sub>  
 Grynyng, *pprs. grinning*, 173<sub>m</sub>  
 Guardoun, *sb. reward*, 512<sub>m</sub>;  
 guerdon and reward, 44<sub>m</sub>  
 Galpe, *sb. large draught*, 280<sub>1</sub>  
 Gaysarme, *sb. battle-axe*, 148<sub>1</sub>;  
 405<sub>m</sub>; guisarmes, 66<sub>m</sub>; gay-  
 sarmes, 66<sub>m</sub>; 91<sub>m</sub>; 340<sub>m</sub>  
 Guyse, *sb. guise, manner*, 488<sub>m</sub>;  
 guyse and forme, 238<sub>m</sub>; guyse  
 and custome, 620<sub>m</sub>; gyse and  
 maner, 499<sub>m</sub>  
 Gyl, gif, gyle *v. to give*, 126<sub>m</sub>;  
 263<sub>m</sub>; 342<sub>m</sub>; I geue, 206<sub>1</sub>; gaf,  
 20<sub>m</sub>; 213<sub>m</sub>; gafe, 202<sub>m</sub>; gaaf,  
 80<sub>m</sub>; gaua, 30<sub>m</sub>; gyuen, 416<sub>m</sub>;  
 gyue and rendre, 325<sub>1</sub>; gyuen  
 and yelde, 83<sub>m</sub>. See yeue  
 HABILITES. See abilite  
 Habilled and ensigned, 634<sub>m</sub>  
 Habillemens, *sb. garments, cloth-  
ing*, 45<sub>m</sub>; habillemens<sup>2</sup> con-  
 uenyent vnto armes, 249<sub>1</sub>; 252<sub>m</sub>;  
 264<sub>m</sub>; 404<sub>m</sub>; 432<sub>1</sub>; habylle-  
 mens, 318<sub>1</sub>; abillements, 130<sub>m</sub>;  
 abillementis, 210<sub>m</sub>  
 Habitauns, *sb. pl. inhabitants*,  
 508<sub>m</sub>; habitantes, 529<sub>m</sub>; 640<sub>m</sub>;  
 habitauns and Indwellars, 327<sub>m</sub>  
 See inhabitauns  
 Habite, *sb. dress, habit, habites*,  
*pl.* 281<sub>m</sub>; habite diaguysed,

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "Neanmoins pour mort quelconques le ne greueray le fruit que je porte" by "for as for deth hit shall not greue / saue for the fruyt that I bere."

<sup>2</sup> "That his fader was so greued" = "que son pere le molestoit au fort!"

<sup>3</sup> "Pour Illec soy habiller aux armes!"

- 323<sub>m</sub>; habyte Ryall, 530<sub>m</sub>;  
 habyte vnknowen, 342<sub>m</sub>  
 Habondance, *sb.* abundance, 58<sub>m</sub>;  
 abondance, 18<sub>m</sub>  
 Habonde, *v.* to abound, 315<sub>s</sub>; ha-  
 boundeth, 230<sub>m</sub>; habondyng,  
 11<sub>s</sub>; habowndyng, 31<sub>m</sub>; ha-  
 bonded, 9<sub>m</sub>  
 Haboundant, *adj.* abundant, 16<sub>m</sub>;  
 haboundaunt, 125<sub>r</sub>; habound-  
 auntly, 26<sub>m</sub>  
 Had or felte, 100<sub>m</sub>  
 Halowe, *v.* (fr. celebrer), 184<sub>m</sub>;  
 620<sub>m</sub>; halowed, 529<sub>m</sub> (*compare*  
 sollempnyed, 529<sub>m</sub>); halowed  
 and made solempny, 202<sub>m</sub>  
 Hammers or marteaux, 434<sub>m</sub>  
 Hange, *v.* to hang, 685<sub>m</sub>; henge,  
 21<sub>m</sub>; 211<sub>m</sub>; 623<sub>m</sub>; 683<sub>m</sub>;  
 687<sub>s</sub>; hanged, 687<sub>m</sub>  
 Happe, *sb.* (fr. eur), 182<sub>m</sub>; euyll  
 happe, 36<sub>m</sub>; happe and fortune,  
 438<sub>m</sub>; happe or vnhappe, 121<sub>m</sub>  
 Happe, *v.* to happen, 250<sub>m</sub>; 220<sub>s</sub>;  
 454<sub>s</sub>; happed, 681<sub>m</sub>; happid,  
 14<sub>m</sub>; happyd, 691<sub>m</sub>; 693<sub>m</sub>;  
 happe or falle, 522<sub>m</sub>; happen  
 and come, 591<sub>m</sub>; happend and  
 befall, 147<sub>m</sub>  
 Happy and ewrens, 159<sub>m</sub>; 285<sub>m</sub>;  
 370<sub>m</sub>. *See* ewrens  
 Harded and indured, 69<sub>s</sub>  
 Hardely, *adv.* bravely (fr. hardie-  
 ment), 520<sub>m</sub>  
 (At) Hardest (= fr. au fort), 124<sub>s</sub>  
 Hardy and presumptuous, 13<sub>m</sub>  
 Harme and euyll, 440<sub>m</sub>; harme  
 ner encombraunce, 97<sub>s</sub>; harmes  
 and losses, 142<sub>m</sub>  
 Harmyng (fr. domagyable), 65<sub>s</sub>  
 Harnois and armes, 359<sub>m</sub>; har-  
 nois and armours, 317<sub>s</sub>  
 Hardyed, 210<sub>s</sub>; hardyed and en-  
 couraged, 462<sub>m</sub>  
 Hardynesse, *sb.* (fr. durte), hard-  
 ness, 484<sub>m</sub>  
 Hardynes, *sb.* boldness, 515<sub>m</sub>;  
 522<sub>m</sub>  
 Hasty tyme, 248<sub>m</sub>; hasty dayes,  
 417<sub>m</sub> (fr. prouchain jours)  
 Hate and despyte, 36<sub>m</sub>  
 Hauen and porte, 198<sub>m</sub>. *See*  
 poorte  
 Haultesse, *sb.* pride, nobility, high-  
 ness, 186<sub>m</sub>  
 Hauncid. *See* enhaunse  
 Haunte, *v.* to frequent, practice,  
 make use of, 17<sub>m</sub>; 52<sub>m</sub>; 246<sub>m</sub>;  
 603<sub>m</sub>; hauntid, 473<sub>s</sub>  
 Hauntyse, *sb.* handling (fr. han-  
 tise), 183<sub>m</sub>; 262<sub>m</sub>; 472<sub>m</sub>;  
 491<sub>m</sub>; hantyse, 491<sub>m</sub>  
 Haucok, *sb.* havoc, an ancient hunt-  
 ing or war cry, 351<sub>s</sub>  
 Haytye, *sb.* bargain (fr. achatine),  
 603<sub>m</sub>; haytye and bargayn,  
 603<sub>m</sub>  
 Hede, *sb.* heed, care, attention, 56<sub>s</sub>;  
 87<sub>m</sub>; heede and garde, 578<sub>s</sub>  
 Hede, *sb.* head, 281<sub>s</sub>; heed, 46<sub>s</sub>;  
 102<sub>m</sub>; 281<sub>r</sub>; heed and gover-  
 nour, 629<sub>m</sub>; 674<sub>s</sub>  
 Heded. *See* behede  
 Heet, *sb.* heat, 17<sub>m</sub>  
 Hele, *v.* to conceal, cover, 140<sub>m</sub>;  
 539<sub>m</sub>; hele ner couere, 140<sub>m</sub>  
 Helle, *sb.* the lower regions (fr. les  
 enfers), 626<sub>m</sub>  
 Helpars and aydeurs, 539<sub>m</sub>  
 Helpe, *v.* to help, assist, support,  
 230<sub>m</sub>; 257<sub>m</sub>; 258<sub>m</sub>; halpe,  
 355<sub>m</sub>; helped, 433<sub>m</sub>; holpen,  
 293<sub>m</sub>; 674<sub>m</sub>; helpe ner assayle,  
 390<sub>r</sub>  
 Helpe and ayde, 566<sub>r</sub>. *See* ayde  
 and helpe  
 Helthe, *sb.* (fr. salut), 29<sub>m</sub>; helthe  
 and wele, 305<sub>m</sub>; 605<sub>m</sub>  
 Hem, *pron.* him, 587<sub>s</sub>  
 Hem, *pron.* them, 5<sub>m</sub>; 22<sub>m</sub>; 28<sub>r</sub>;  
 45<sub>m</sub>, etc.  
 Her, *pron.* their, 6<sub>m</sub>; 18<sub>m</sub>; 30<sub>s</sub>;  
 45<sub>m</sub>  
 Herbegeours and fourriers, 458<sub>m</sub>  
 Herdeman or shepard, 82<sub>m</sub>; herd-  
 man and shepherd, 83<sub>m</sub>. *See*  
 pastour and herdeman  
 Herd and vnderstood, 252<sub>s</sub>  
 Here, *pron.* her, 59<sub>m</sub>; 129<sub>m</sub>;  
 186<sub>s</sub>; 232<sub>s</sub>; 369<sub>m</sub>; heer, 683<sub>m</sub>;  
 hyre, 52<sub>m</sub>; heres, 237<sub>m</sub>  
 Here, *sb.* hear, 68<sub>s</sub>; heer, 184<sub>m</sub>

- Heritage, *sb.* *inheritance*, 13<sub>m</sub> ;  
 heritages, 61<sub>m</sub> ; *herytages*, 11<sub>m</sub> ;  
 12<sub>m</sub> .  
 Herityer, *sb.* *heir*, 565<sub>m</sub> .  
 Herkene and espie, 88<sub>m</sub> .  
 Herme, *sb.* *harm*, 59<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hert and courage, 38<sub>m</sub> ; herte and  
 courage, 52<sub>m</sub> .  
 Herte, *sb.* *hart*, 691<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hether, *adv.* *hither*, 55<sub>m</sub> ; 92<sub>m</sub> ;  
 164<sub>m</sub> ; 624<sub>m</sub> ; *hither*, 497<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hetherto, *adv.* *hitherto*, 653<sub>m</sub> ;  
 hederto, 389<sub>m</sub> .  
 Heuen or zodyaque, 540<sub>m</sub> ; heu-  
 enes, *pl.* (*fr.* *cielx*), 22<sub>m</sub> ; 416<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hey and peysant, 307<sub>m</sub> .  
 Heye or dreyd strawe (*fr.* *erbe*  
*seiche*), 247<sub>m</sub> .  
 Heyr, *sb.* *heir*, 71<sub>m</sub> ; heyres and  
 successours, 452<sub>m</sub> . See *eyres*  
 and *herityer* .  
 Hidouse, *adj.* *hideous*, 214<sub>m</sub> .  
 Here, *adv.* *here*, 297<sub>m</sub> .  
 Historiographers and poetes, 284<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hit, *pron.*, *it*, 4<sub>m</sub> ; *hyt*, 4<sub>m</sub> etc.  
 Holda, *v.* *to hold, keep, retain*,  
 holdeth, 13<sub>m</sub> ; *haldeth*, 492<sub>m</sub> ;  
 held, 15<sub>m</sub> ; *helden* (*they held*),  
 131<sub>m</sub> ; 303<sub>m</sub> ; *holde*, 81<sub>m</sub> ; *holden*,  
 12<sub>m</sub> ; 25<sub>m</sub> ; 98<sub>m</sub> ; 491<sub>m</sub> ; 568<sub>m</sub> ;  
*holde ne reteyne*, 477<sub>m</sub> ; *holde*  
*and entretiene*, 477<sub>m</sub> ; *hoide* and  
*kepe*, 230<sub>m</sub> ; 252<sub>m</sub> ; *holde* and  
*endure*, 276<sub>m</sub> ; *hold* and *letted*,  
 14<sub>m</sub> ; *holden* and *named*, 108<sub>m</sub> ;  
*holden* and *bounden*, 305<sub>m</sub> ;  
*holde* and *bounden*, 145<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hole, *sb.* *hole*, 373<sub>m</sub> ; *holl*, 426<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hoola*, 446<sub>m</sub> ; *hooles*, 210<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hoolis*, 445<sub>m</sub> ; *hool*, 31<sub>m</sub> ; *hole*  
*or oone*, 446<sub>m</sub> .  
 Homycide and mansleer, 23<sub>m</sub> .  
 Homyides and slaughter, 303<sub>m</sub> .  
 Honest and worshipfull, 248<sub>m</sub> .  
 Honneste, *sb.* *honesty*, 41<sub>m</sub> .  
 Honour and worship, 15<sub>m</sub> ; 198<sub>m</sub> ;  
 199<sub>m</sub> ; 225<sub>m</sub> ; 251<sub>m</sub> ; 254<sub>m</sub> ;  
 275<sub>m</sub> ; 284<sub>m</sub> ; 297<sub>m</sub> ; 305<sub>m</sub> ;  
 309<sub>m</sub> ; 315<sub>m</sub> ; 328<sub>m</sub> ; 370<sub>m</sub> ;  
 427<sub>m</sub> ; 442<sub>m</sub> ; 459<sub>m</sub> ; 489<sub>m</sub> ;  
 498<sub>m</sub> ; 558<sub>m</sub> ; 625<sub>m</sub> ; 650<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hoola, *adj.* *whole*, 295<sub>m</sub> ; 604<sub>m</sub> ;  
 645<sub>m</sub> ; *hool*, 537<sub>m</sub> ; *hooly*, 245<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hool and helid, 222<sub>m</sub> ; *hool* *ner*  
*good*, 35<sub>m</sub> ; *hool* and *sound*,  
 44<sub>m</sub> ; *hole* and *sounde*, 525<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hool* and *sounde*, 578<sub>m</sub> ; *hole*  
*and quyete*, 95<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hoopa, *sb.* *hope*, 54<sub>m</sub> ; 164<sub>m</sub> ; *hope*  
*and truste*, 72<sub>m</sub> ; 515<sub>m</sub> ; 578<sub>m</sub> ;  
 614<sub>m</sub> ; 616<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hoot, *adj.* *hot*, 17<sub>m</sub> ; 275<sub>m</sub> ; 470<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hoote*, 314<sub>m</sub> .  
 Horrible and ferdfull, 278<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hors, *sb.* *pl.* *the horses*, 151<sub>m</sub> ; 259<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hors volant*, 214<sub>m</sub> .  
 Horyons and strokes, 295<sub>m</sub> ; *hori-*  
*ons* and *strokes*, 355<sub>m</sub> ; 46<sub>m</sub> ;  
 99<sub>m</sub> ; 101<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hounteuse and abbomynable, 41<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hountous* and *shamefull*, 448<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hountous* and *ashamed*, 130<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hountously, *adv.* *shamefully*,  
 378<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hous or loggyng, 302<sub>m</sub> ; *hous* and  
*place*, 526<sub>m</sub> .  
 How be *hyt*, *adv.* *notwithstanding*.  
*yet, howeuer*, 149<sub>m</sub> ; 428<sub>m</sub> ; *how*  
*hit be*, 191<sub>m</sub> etc.  
 How well, *adv.* (*fr.* *combien*), 100<sub>m</sub> ;  
 122<sub>m</sub> ; 151<sub>m</sub> ; *how well that* (*fr.*  
*combien que*), 58<sub>m</sub> ; 93<sub>m</sub> ; 206<sub>m</sub> .  
 Huge and grete, 368<sub>m</sub> .  
 Humayn, *adj.* *human*, 117<sub>m</sub> ; *thyng*  
*humayne*, 518<sub>m</sub> ; *nature hu-*  
*mayne*, 518<sub>m</sub> . Compare *manly* .  
 Humelye and meke, 472<sub>m</sub> ; *hume-*  
*lyed* and *meked*, 472<sub>m</sub> ; 500<sub>m</sub> ;  
*bumble* and *meke*, 500<sub>m</sub> ; *humi-*  
*lieng* and *mekyng*, 189<sub>m</sub> ; *hume-*  
*lyed*, 42<sub>m</sub> ; *humelled*, 469<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hurte, *v.* *to hurt, do harm, injure*,  
 308<sub>m</sub> ; *hurtle*, 334<sub>m</sub> ; 449<sub>m</sub> ;  
*hurtild* and *borded*, 400<sub>m</sub> ; *hurte*  
*and domage*, 515<sub>m</sub> ; *hurtyng* and  
*appayring*, 472<sub>m</sub> ; *hurte* and  
*slayn*, 293<sub>m</sub> ; *hurte* and *wound-*  
*ed*, 496<sub>m</sub> ; 591<sub>m</sub> ; *hurte ner my-*  
*namba*, 308<sub>m</sub> ; *hurted* and  
*wounded*, 359<sub>m</sub> ; *hurted* and  
*grewyd*, 448<sub>m</sub> .  
 Hurte and domayge, 557<sub>m</sub> ; *hurtes*

- and domages, 630<sub>m</sub>; 651<sub>s</sub>;  
686<sub>m</sub>; hurtes and losses, 160<sub>s</sub>;  
hurtis and yllys, 539<sub>m</sub>  
Hyde, *v. to hide, conceal*, 84<sub>s</sub>;  
185<sub>m</sub>; 320<sub>1</sub>; 438<sub>m</sub>; hid, 32<sub>m</sub>;  
hydde, 622<sub>s</sub>; hyded, 673<sub>m</sub>;  
hidde ne conceald, 481<sub>7</sub>; hyd  
and conerte, 499<sub>s</sub>  
Hye, *adj. high*, 3<sub>12</sub>; 12<sub>m</sub>; 18<sub>m</sub>;  
hyghe, 5<sub>s</sub>; hihlye, 38<sub>12</sub>; hiest,  
48<sub>s</sub>; hie, 168<sub>4</sub>; hye and fiere,  
160<sub>m</sub>; hye and lowde, 322<sub>m</sub>  
Hyenes, *sb. highness*, 5<sub>12</sub>; 6<sub>1</sub>  
Hyer (= fr. ja=déjà), 183<sub>17</sub>
- IGNORANT (ye be) and knowe not,  
275<sub>10</sub>  
Impetuous, *adj.* 350<sub>12</sub>; 381<sub>s</sub>; im-  
petousement, *adv.*, 383<sub>11</sub>; im-  
petueusly and ferd full, 330<sub>s</sub>  
Impitye, *sb. wickedness*, 498<sub>m</sub>  
Incontynent, *adv. immediate*, 90<sub>s</sub>;  
82<sub>m</sub>; in contynent, 563<sub>m</sub>  
Inoreable, *adj. incredible*, 281<sub>s</sub>;  
302<sub>s</sub>  
Indeffamable, *adj. ? inexpressible*,  
116<sub>m</sub>  
Indigne, *adj. unworthy*, 6<sub>17</sub>; 487<sub>m</sub>;  
indygne and not worthy, 311<sub>10</sub>;  
indygne and vnworthy, 50<sub>s</sub>; 502<sub>s</sub>  
Industrye and crafte, 144<sub>m</sub>  
Infamie, *sb. infamy, vileness*, 44<sub>m</sub>;  
infamye, 41<sub>7</sub>  
Infelicyte, *sb. unhappiness*, 50<sub>10</sub>  
Infernals, *adj. pl.*, 669<sub>12</sub>  
Infortunat, *adj.* 110<sub>m</sub>; 240<sub>12</sub>  
Infortune, *sb. misfortune*, 102<sub>12</sub>;  
240<sub>10</sub>; 274<sub>m</sub>; infortunes, 49<sub>s</sub>  
Inhabitable, *adj. uninhabitable*,  
209<sub>10</sub>; 213<sub>m</sub>  
Inhabitauns, *sb. pl. inhabitants*,  
482<sub>m</sub>; inhabitauntes, 651<sub>m</sub>  
Inhabited. *See* enhabited  
Inhonest, *adj. dishonorable*, 32<sub>s</sub>  
Inhumanyte and terrybillite, 327<sub>m</sub>  
Inhumaynly and horribly, 337<sub>17</sub>  
Iniure and wronge, 42<sub>s</sub>; iniurye  
and wronge, 346<sub>s</sub>; iniuryes and  
wronges, 557<sub>s</sub>; iniurye and  
hurte, 664<sub>m</sub>; iniurye and shame,  
517<sub>m</sub>
- Iniustly and vnrighfully, 39<sub>11</sub>  
Innatural, *adj. unnatural*, 27<sub>s</sub>;  
innaturell, 24<sub>m</sub>  
Inne, *prep.* in, 338<sub>s</sub>  
Innocencye, *sb. innocence*, 257<sub>s</sub>  
Inordinate (=! fr. ordoyees), 49<sub>17</sub>  
I nowh, *adv. enough*, 124<sub>12</sub>; 124<sub>17</sub>  
Inpacyens, *adj. impatient*, 439<sub>m</sub>;  
inpacyent, 49<sub>m</sub>  
Inpetuosyte, *sb. impetuosity*, 383<sub>11</sub>  
Insanable, *adj. incurable*, 525<sub>11</sub>  
Insurreccion and rebellyon, 36<sub>m</sub>  
Intentedement. *See* ententement  
Interpretest and construest, 25<sub>m</sub>  
Intituled, *pp. entitled*, 3<sub>1</sub>  
Introduccion, *sb. teaching, instruc-  
tion, information*, 346<sub>s</sub>; 353<sub>s</sub>;  
360<sub>12</sub>  
Introduce, *v. to instruct, teach, in-  
troduced*, 497<sub>s</sub>; entroduceth,  
417<sub>m</sub>; introdusyng and enform-  
yng, 394<sub>1</sub>  
Inuentor and fynder, 21<sub>m</sub>
- JALOUSYE *sb., jealousy*, 227<sub>m</sub>; ja-  
lousyes, 234<sub>m</sub>; jelowsie, 109<sub>m</sub>;  
jelousie, 109<sub>m</sub>  
Jeopardye, *sb. jeopardy, hazard*,  
216<sub>m</sub>; 309<sub>m</sub>; jeoparde, 119<sub>s</sub>;  
jupart, 152<sub>11</sub>  
Jewels and bagues, 295<sub>17</sub> *See*  
baghes and jewellis  
Jogelynges and japes (fr. gongles),  
tricks, 493<sub>s</sub>  
Journey, *sb. a journey, a day's  
work*, 299<sub>1</sub>; journees, 270<sub>m</sub>;  
journeyes, 337<sub>s</sub>  
Joye and gladnes, 102<sub>m</sub>; 481<sub>s</sub>;  
joye and honour, 564<sub>12</sub>; joye  
and pleasir, 19<sub>m</sub>; joye and play-  
sir, 222<sub>m</sub>; joye and plaisir,  
105<sub>1</sub>; joye and worahipp, 536<sub>m</sub>  
Joyned and gyuen (fr. vny et con-  
joint), 12<sub>s</sub>  
Joyntures, *sb. pl. joinings*, 212<sub>s</sub>  
Joyous, *adj. joyous*, 70<sub>m</sub>; joyous  
and glad, 111<sub>s</sub>; 234<sub>m</sub>; 237<sub>m</sub>;  
260<sub>s</sub>; joyous and gladde, 352<sub>m</sub>  
Jugement, *sb. judgment*, 117<sub>s</sub>; 672<sub>m</sub>  
Juges, *sb. pl. the judges*, 249<sub>m</sub>;  
jugges, 65<sub>11</sub>

- Juge, juggle, *v. to judge*, juggeth, 13<sub>11</sub>; jugyng, 117<sub>1</sub>; jugeth, 140<sub>11</sub>; jugged, 28<sub>11</sub>; 217<sub>1</sub>; jugyd, 672<sub>11</sub>; juggid, 25<sub>1</sub>; 30<sub>11</sub>; juggle and condempne, 45<sub>1</sub>; juged and put vnder, 191<sub>11</sub>.
- Jumentis, *sb. pl. twins* (fr. jumentis), 540<sub>11</sub>.
- Jupart, *sb. See* jeopardye.
- Juste, *adj. straight, correct*, 290<sub>11</sub>; juste and right, 641<sub>11</sub>.
- Justycyer, *sb. judge, ruler*, 542<sub>11</sub>.
- KALE, *v. to cool*, 494<sub>11</sub>.
- Kennyng, *sb. "cognitio"*, 401<sub>11</sub>.
- Kepe and nourysahe, 245<sub>11</sub>.
- Klenliest, *superl. cleanliest*, 529<sub>11</sub>.
- Knowe and vnderstand, 72<sub>1</sub>; 484<sub>11</sub>; knowe and woot well, 311<sub>11</sub>; knowen and vnderstand, 123<sub>1</sub>.
- Knowleche, *sb. knowledge*, 12<sub>11</sub>; knowlege, 358<sub>11</sub>.
- Knowleche, *v. to acknowledge*, knowleohid, 39<sub>11</sub>.
- Knyghtly and cheuaulrously, 259<sub>11</sub>.
- Knyght officer, 253<sub>1</sub>.
- Kreke, *v. in the first krekyng of the day* (fr. au point du jour), at daybreak, 37<sub>1</sub>.
- Kyngdome and royame, 203<sub>11</sub>.
- Kynne and oosyns, 622<sub>1</sub>; kynnysmen and parentals, 656<sub>11</sub> (fr. parens).
- Kysse, *v. to kiss*, kyssed, 29<sub>11</sub>; kysid, 217<sub>11</sub>; 231<sub>11</sub>; kyste, 80<sub>11</sub>; 129<sub>11</sub>; 141<sub>11</sub>; 346<sub>11</sub>; kyst, 29<sub>11</sub>.
- LABOUR, labore, *v. (1) to cultivate the fields*, 18<sub>11</sub>; 95<sub>11</sub>; labouryng, 141<sub>11</sub>; laboured, 18<sub>1</sub>; (2) to endeavor, laboured, 14<sub>11</sub>; 52<sub>11</sub>; 114<sub>11</sub>; laboured and sollycted, 19<sub>11</sub>; laboured and traneyllyd, 254<sub>1</sub>.
- Labour and besynes, 308<sub>11</sub>; labour and payne, 12<sub>11</sub>; 445<sub>1</sub>.
- Labourers, *sb. husbandmen*, 522<sub>11</sub>; laboreurs, 389<sub>11</sub>.
- Labourens, *adj. laborious*, 121<sub>11</sub>.
- Lachesse, *sb. negligence, laziness*, 150<sub>11</sub>.
- Lade, *v. to load*, laded, 113<sub>11</sub>; laded, 360<sub>1</sub>; laden, 202<sub>11</sub>.
- Lake or ponde, 390<sub>11</sub>.
- Lamented and sorowed, 645<sub>11</sub>.
- Land and cuntry, 139<sub>1</sub>; land and terrytorye, 373<sub>1</sub>.
- Lange, *v. See* longe.
- Lappid and wond, 30<sub>11</sub>.
- Large and brood, 330<sub>11</sub>.
- Largely, *adv. so much, so many*, sleying them largely, 322<sub>1</sub>; 340<sub>11</sub>; 345<sub>1</sub>; 355<sub>1</sub>; 365<sub>11</sub>.
- Largesse, *sb. pl. bounties*, 117<sub>11</sub>; 285<sub>11</sub>.
- Lase, *sb. snare, lace*, 649<sub>11</sub>; laas, 584<sub>11</sub>.
- Lase, *v. to fasten*, 612<sub>11</sub>.
- Lasse, *comparat. less*, 7<sub>1</sub>; 12<sub>11</sub>; 49<sub>11</sub>.
- Laste and furthestest, 398<sub>1</sub>.
- Late, *v. to let*, 23<sub>11</sub>; 35<sub>11</sub>; 111<sub>11</sub>; latyng, 106<sub>11</sub>; lete, 241<sub>11</sub>; late and suffre, 123<sub>11</sub>.
- Laude and preysyng, 455<sub>1</sub>; 701<sub>1</sub>; lawde and preysing, 244<sub>11</sub>; 261<sub>11</sub>.
- Laughter, *sb.* 260<sub>11</sub>; laughter, 353<sub>11</sub>.
- Lawhe, *v. to laugh*, 27<sub>1</sub>; 122<sub>11</sub>; 169<sub>11</sub>; langhe, 26<sub>11</sub>; laughing, 29<sub>1</sub>; laughed, 27<sub>11</sub>; lawhed, 243<sub>11</sub>.
- Lawrer, *sb. laurel*, 15<sub>11</sub>.
- Laye, *v. to lay*, laye, 229<sub>11</sub>; leyd, 5<sub>1</sub>; leyde, 41<sub>1</sub>; 235<sub>11</sub>; 241<sub>11</sub>; leyde, 621<sub>11</sub>; leye and put hand on, 305<sub>11</sub>; leyng (fr. tendant), 44<sub>1</sub>.
- Lede, *v. to lead*, 164<sub>11</sub>; ladd, 46<sub>11</sub>; ladde, 290<sub>1</sub>; 609<sub>11</sub>; lad, 585<sub>11</sub>; 613<sub>11</sub>; 634<sub>11</sub>; ledde, 670<sub>11</sub>; lede and bryng, 357<sub>1</sub>; lede and coudyete, 575<sub>11</sub>.
- Leder, *sb. leather*, 91<sub>11</sub>; lether, 148<sub>11</sub>.
- Leaf, *sb. leaf*, 3<sub>11</sub>; 380<sub>11</sub>; leaves, 424<sub>11</sub>.
- Leefful, *adj. allowable*, 617<sub>11</sub>.
- Leepe, *v. to leap*, run, 151<sub>11</sub>; lepe, inf. 242<sub>1</sub>; lepe, *pt.* 210<sub>11</sub>; 210<sub>11</sub>; 252<sub>11</sub>; 433<sub>11</sub>; leep, *pt.* 279<sub>11</sub>; 301<sub>11</sub>; 400<sub>11</sub>; leepe, *pt.* 291<sub>1</sub>.

- Legacion and embassade, 41<sub>m</sub>  
 Legat, *sb.* messenger, ambassador, 73<sub>m</sub>  
 Legierte and swiftenes, 461<sub>m</sub>;  
 legyerte and lyghtnes, 624<sub>m</sub>  
 Legitime and born in lawful marriage, 342<sub>m</sub>; legytisme, 517<sub>m</sub>  
 Lene, *v.* to lean, 118<sub>s</sub>  
 Lene, *v.* to lend, grant, 21<sub>m</sub>  
 Lenger, longest. *See* longo  
 Lengthyd,<sup>1</sup> 537<sub>1</sub>  
 Lerne, *v.* (fr. faire *connoistre*), to teach, 307<sub>1</sub>  
 Lese, *v.* to lose, 238<sub>1</sub>; 443<sub>1</sub>; 636<sub>1</sub>; 666<sub>1</sub>; leessing, 131<sub>m</sub>. *See* lose  
 Lette, *v.* to hinder, to make late, 56<sub>m</sub>; 431<sub>m</sub>; lettyng, 286<sub>1</sub>; letted, 14<sub>1</sub>; 581<sub>1</sub>; 588<sub>m</sub>; lettyd, 363<sub>1</sub>; 653<sub>m</sub>; lette, *pp.* 208<sub>1</sub>; lette and withdrawe, 109<sub>m</sub>  
 Leue, *v.* to leave, 195<sub>m</sub>; 298<sub>m</sub>; leuyng, 11<sub>1</sub>; 202<sub>m</sub>; leftte, 413<sub>m</sub>; lifte, 244<sub>m</sub>; lyfte, 159<sub>m</sub>; 242<sub>1</sub>; leue and departe, 478<sub>1</sub>; leftte and bleuen, 327<sub>m</sub>; leftte and seased, 314<sub>m</sub>  
 Leue and congle, 323<sub>m</sub>  
 Leuer, *comparat.* deareer, preferable, sooner, rather, 15<sub>1</sub>; 57<sub>m</sub>; 116<sub>m</sub>; 184<sub>m</sub>; 614<sub>m</sub>; 670<sub>m</sub>; leuyr, 56<sub>m</sub>; 33<sub>1</sub>  
 Leueye, *v.* to raise money, leueyed, 661<sub>m</sub>  
 Leuyd, *pt.* of leue, = to believe, 86<sub>m</sub>  
 Leyser, *sb.* leisure, 101<sub>m</sub>; leyzer, 218<sub>1</sub>; 627<sub>m</sub>  
 Laysse, *sb.* (fr. leesse), 576<sub>1</sub>  
 Licence and congle, 140<sub>m</sub>; lyoence and leue, 248<sub>m</sub>; 615<sub>m</sub>  
 Lie, *v.* to lie, luyng, 19<sub>m</sub>; 128<sub>m</sub>; 212<sub>m</sub>; lieth, 107<sub>m</sub>; laye, 20<sub>1</sub>; 32<sub>m</sub>; 79<sub>1</sub>; 114<sub>m</sub>; 221<sub>m</sub>; 232<sub>1</sub>; 234<sub>m</sub>  
 Liftte, *adj.* left, 200<sub>m</sub>; 219<sub>1</sub>; 269<sub>m</sub>; leftte, 169<sub>1</sub>  
 Light and clerte, 382<sub>m</sub>  
 Like as (= fr. *Isolt*), 109<sub>s</sub>  
 Like no pareille, 216<sub>1</sub>  
 Liste, *prs. sing. subj.* may it please, 6<sub>1</sub>; lyste (desires), 604<sub>1</sub>  
 Liuer, *v.* to desire (fr. *liurer*), liuerd, 197<sub>m</sub>  
 Loange and preysyng, 492<sub>m</sub>; loanges and preysynges, 489<sub>m</sub>; loenge, 199<sub>m</sub>  
 Logge, *v.* to lodge, dwell, 189<sub>m</sub>; 423<sub>1</sub>; 437<sub>1</sub>; logged, 289<sub>m</sub>; 440<sub>1</sub>; 575<sub>1</sub>; loggid, 460<sub>m</sub>; loggyd, 424<sub>m</sub>; 575<sub>1</sub>  
 Loke on and beholde, 278<sub>m</sub>; lokyng or beholdyng, 325<sub>m</sub>  
 Longe, *v.* to belong, longeth, 220<sub>m</sub>; langeth, 62<sub>m</sub>; longyng, 440<sub>m</sub>; langyng, 492<sub>m</sub>; longed, 508<sub>m</sub>  
 Longe, *adj.* long, 211<sub>m</sub>; 418<sub>m</sub>; longer, 58<sub>1</sub>; langer, 24<sub>1</sub>; 165<sub>1</sub>; 392<sub>m</sub>; 636<sub>m</sub>; lengest, 643<sub>m</sub>  
 Loos, *sb.* fame, report, 284<sub>m</sub>; loos and bruyt, 256<sub>m</sub>; loos and name, 118<sub>m</sub>; loos and preysyng, 257<sub>m</sub>; 281<sub>m</sub>; 436<sub>m</sub>; loose and preysyng, 558<sub>m</sub>; loos and pryse, 620<sub>1</sub>  
 Lorde and maistre, 14<sub>1</sub>; 401<sub>m</sub>; lordie and mayster, 108<sub>1</sub>  
 Lordship and seignourye, 9<sub>m</sub>; 439<sub>1</sub>  
 Lose, *v.* to lose, 206<sub>m</sub>; 325<sub>m</sub>; lost, 223<sub>m</sub>. *See* lese  
 Loosd, *pt.* (1 fr. *fulcorant*), 300<sub>m</sub>  
 Loos and perdition, 190<sub>1</sub>  
 Lothlynes, *sb.*, loathsome, 12<sub>m</sub>  
 Louyng, louynges (11 fr. loenge, loenges); louyng and preysyng, 304<sub>m</sub>; louynges and preysynges, 283<sub>m</sub>; 308<sub>1</sub>; louynges and thankynges, 393<sub>m</sub>. *Compare* loange.  
 Lowe and basse, 323<sub>1</sub>  
 Loyall, *adj.* 700<sub>1</sub>; loyall and true, 329<sub>1</sub>  
 Lukke and good happe (fr. *eur*), 434<sub>1</sub>  
 Luxurye, *sb.* 321<sub>1</sub>; luxurye and lecherye, 330<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates: "Et pour ce renforca la feste et la loye," by "And therefore the feste was lengthyd thurgh oute all the cyte And the foye that endured yet after eyghte dayes booll!"

- Luxurious, *adj.* 346<sub>;</sub>; lecherous, 321<sub>;</sub>  
 Lyfte. *Ses leus*  
 Lyghte, *v. to light*, 369<sub>m</sub>; 382<sub>m</sub>;  
 lyghte, 666<sub>;</sub>  
 Lyghte, *v. to make less heavy, to alight*, lighte, 536<sub>m</sub>  
 Lyghtnyng or tempest, 425<sub>m</sub>  
 Lynage, *sb.* 655<sub>;</sub>; lignage, 655<sub>;</sub>  
 Lytill, *adj.* 14<sub>m</sub>; litill, 23<sub>;</sub>; lityl, 31<sub>m</sub>  
 Lyueden, *they lived*, 59<sub>;</sub>  
 MACOR, *sb. clab* (fr. machue), 148<sub>m</sub>;  
 maces, 66<sub>;</sub>; 91<sub>m</sub>  
 Magique, *sb. magic*, 225<sub>m</sub>; magike, 226<sub>m</sub>  
 Makyng and foundyng, 177<sub>m</sub>;  
 maad and dyde, 440<sub>m</sub>; made  
 olene and purgid, 423<sub>;</sub>; made  
 and brought forth, 239<sub>m</sub>; made  
 and performed, 453<sub>m</sub>; made  
 and accomplished, 459<sub>m</sub>; made  
 joye and were glad, 239<sub>m</sub>; made  
 covenant and bargayned, 206<sub>m</sub>;  
 maad and hewyd, 330<sub>;</sub>; made  
 agayn and amended, 149<sub>m</sub>;  
 made and celebrered, 85<sub>m</sub>  
 Maleaventure, *sb. accident*, 293<sub>;</sub>  
 Maledictions and curses, 109<sub>m</sub>  
 Malehurte and vnhappynes (fr.  
 malehurte), 677<sub>m</sub>; malehurte  
 and vnhappynesse, 690<sub>m</sub>  
 Malencoll, *sb. melancholy*, 23<sub>m</sub>;  
 malencolle, 21<sub>m</sub>; malencolye,  
 23<sub>m</sub>; malencooly, 32<sub>m</sub>; melan-  
 colik, 105<sub>;</sub>  
 Malencolyous, *adj. melancholic*, 24<sub>m</sub>  
 Malengyne, *sb. malice, evil disposi-  
 tion*, 700<sub>;</sub>  
 Maleure and myshappe, 490<sub>m</sub>;  
 maleheure and myshappe, 339<sub>;</sub>;  
 maleheure and mysaventure,  
 268<sub>m</sub>  
 Maleureus, *adj. unhappy, miser-  
 able*, 165<sub>m</sub>; maleurous and vn-  
 happy, 162<sub>;</sub>  
 Malfacteur, *sb. evil-doer, criminal*,  
 malfacteurs, 16<sub>;</sub>; malfacteur,  
 35<sub>m</sub>; malfactour, 35<sub>m</sub>  
 Malgracyous, *adj. rude*, 68<sub>m</sub>  
 Maltalent, *sb. evil disposition*, 405<sub>;</sub>  
 Malta, *pt. melted*, 18<sub>;</sub>  
 Manacod, *pt. threatened*, 35<sub>;</sub>;  
 222<sub>m</sub>; compare menasid, 134<sub>m</sub>  
 Mandement, *sb. order, command*,  
 250<sub>m</sub>; 251<sub>;</sub>; mandementes,  
 356<sub>m</sub>; mandemens, 261<sub>m</sub>  
 Maner, *sb. manner*, 32<sub>;</sub>; manere,  
 52<sub>m</sub>; 118<sub>m</sub>; 142<sub>m</sub>; maners,  
 45<sub>m</sub>; manieres, 13<sub>;</sub>; manyer,  
 18<sub>;</sub>; 52<sub>;</sub>; 84<sub>m</sub>; manyers, 54<sub>m</sub>;  
 110<sub>m</sub>; manyre, 162<sub>;</sub>; alle maner  
 excellence, 227<sub>m</sub>; alle maner  
 men, 248<sub>;</sub>; alle maner thynges,  
 264<sub>m</sub>; alle maner contres, 262<sub>m</sub>;  
 in many maner wyse, 641<sub>;</sub>;  
 in ony maner wyse, 50<sub>;</sub>; in  
 maner of possession, 663<sub>;</sub>; in  
 maner an hope, 230<sub>m</sub>; in a  
 maner dispair, 230<sub>m</sub>; maner of  
 games, 246<sub>;</sub>; suche maner do-  
 mages, 651<sub>m</sub>  
 Man serpentyne, 391<sub>m</sub>; man alear,  
 63<sub>m</sub>; manslears and hangemen,  
 307<sub>m</sub>; men distroyers, 35<sub>m</sub>;  
 men children, 15<sub>m</sub>; 61<sub>m</sub>  
 Many (1 fr. menus), 53<sub>;</sub>  
 Manyfestest and shewyst, 159<sub>m</sub>  
 Marbell, *sb. marble*, 189<sub>m</sub>  
 Marchans, *sb. merchants*, 389<sub>m</sub>;  
 marchantes, 188<sub>;</sub>; 446<sub>m</sub>; mar-  
 chautes, 246<sub>m</sub>  
 Marchandise, *sb. merchandize*, 241<sub>;</sub>  
 Marches and contrees, 10<sub>m</sub>  
 Marterar, *sb. (1 fr. marrastre) wicked  
 stepmother*, 29<sub>m</sub>  
 Martereuse, *sb. (fr. chartriere),  
 prisoner*, 107<sub>m</sub>  
 Martirdom, *sb. torment, martyr-  
 dom*, 236<sub>m</sub>; martyre, 640<sub>m</sub>  
 Maryners, *sb. pl. sailors*, 153<sub>m</sub>;  
 mariners, 154<sub>;</sub>; maroners, 168<sub>m</sub>;  
 209<sub>m</sub>; maronnars, 140<sub>;</sub>; mar-  
 ouners, 198<sub>m</sub>  
 Massanger, *sb. messenger*, 65<sub>m</sub>;  
 messangier, 65<sub>m</sub>; messenger,  
 112<sub>m</sub>; mesanger, 118<sub>;</sub>  
 Mate, *v. to defeat, confound*, 433<sub>m</sub>  
 Mater, *sb. matter*, 25<sub>;</sub>; 89<sub>;</sub>;  
 matier, 83<sub>m</sub>; matiere, 315<sub>m</sub>;  
 mater and cause, 64<sub>m</sub>



- Matyer, *sb.* (fr. *martire*), *torment, martyrdom*, 181<sub>n</sub>;  
 Maulgre, *prep.* *in spite of*, 322<sub>n</sub>;  
 334<sub>n</sub>; 468<sub>n</sub>; 480<sub>n</sub>; 584<sub>n</sub>;  
 magre, 587<sub>n</sub>  
 Mayntene, *v.* *to maintain*, 632<sub>n</sub>  
 Maynteygne, *sb.* (fr. *maintien*),  
*bearing, countenance*, 124<sub>n</sub>;  
 mayntyene and countenance,  
 130<sub>n</sub>; maytene and counte-  
 nance, 207<sub>n</sub>  
 Mayster, *sb.* *master*, 139<sub>n</sub>;  
 maystre, 116<sub>n</sub>; 139<sub>n</sub>; maistre,  
 48<sub>n</sub>; 214<sub>n</sub>; maistres (fr. *mede-*  
*cins*), 166<sub>n</sub>  
 Maystresse, *sb.* *mistress*, 118<sub>n</sub>;  
 189<sub>n</sub>; maystres, 56<sub>n</sub>; maistres,  
 112<sub>n</sub>; maistresse, 112<sub>n</sub>; 114<sub>n</sub>  
 Maystrie, *v.* *to master*, 193<sub>n</sub>;  
 maistred, 118<sub>n</sub>; maystrye and  
 oueroume, 142<sub>n</sub>; mescried  
 (? *mestried*), 55<sub>n</sub>  
 Me, *pron.* *me ought*, 11<sub>n</sub>; 78<sub>n</sub>;  
 93<sub>n</sub>; me muste, 27<sub>n</sub>  
 Medecyne, *sb.* *physician, medical*  
*man*, 80<sub>n</sub>; 621<sub>n</sub>; medicynes  
 and surgions, 243<sub>n</sub>; medicynes  
 and surgens, 356<sub>n</sub>  
 Medle and fightyng, 412<sub>n</sub>; med-  
 lee, 421<sub>n</sub>  
 Meke, *v.* *to render meek*, 62<sub>n</sub>;  
 meked and lowed, 315<sub>n</sub> *Com-*  
*pare humelye*  
 Meke, *adj.* *meek*, were meke and  
 humelid themself, 435<sub>n</sub>  
 Mekenes and humylite, 213<sub>n</sub>  
 Melk, *sb.* *milk*, 31<sub>n</sub>  
 Memoire, *sb.* *memory, account*, 306<sub>n</sub>;  
 315<sub>n</sub>  
 Menaces, *sb.* *pl. threatenings*, 93<sub>n</sub>;  
 417<sub>n</sub>; menasses, 13<sub>n</sub>; 28<sub>n</sub>  
 Mendycite, *sb.* *mendicity*, 22<sub>n</sub>  
 Menestrellys, *sb.* *pl. minstrels*,  
 575<sub>n</sub>  
 Mene, *adj.* *mean, middle*, 541<sub>n</sub>;  
 542<sub>n</sub>  
 Mene, *sb.* *means*, 54<sub>n</sub>; 61<sub>n</sub>; 160<sub>n</sub>;  
 199<sub>n</sub>; 240<sub>n</sub>; menes, 34<sub>n</sub>; mean  
 185<sub>n</sub>; 298<sub>n</sub>; moyens, 16<sub>n</sub>;  
 73<sub>n</sub>; 101<sub>n</sub>; 290<sub>n</sub>; 381<sub>n</sub>;  
 moyens, 127<sub>n</sub>  
 Menyster and doar, 451<sub>n</sub>  
 Merceryes, *sb.* *pl. goods of a mercer*,  
 114<sub>n</sub>  
 Mercy and fortune, 118<sub>n</sub>  
 Meritorye, *adj.* *meritorious*, 35<sub>n</sub>  
 Mernailles, *sb.* *pl. marvels, wonders*,  
 341<sub>n</sub>; 368<sub>n</sub>; merueilleus, 76<sub>n</sub>  
 Merueylleus, *adj.* *marvellous, won-*  
*derful*, 139<sub>n</sub>; merueylleusly,  
 10<sub>n</sub>  
 Meryte and deserte, 668<sub>n</sub>; meryte  
 and thanke, 215<sub>n</sub>  
 Mesadventure and myshappe, 162<sub>n</sub>  
 Mesager, mesanger. *See* *massan-*  
*ger*  
 Meschenous and shamefull, 519<sub>n</sub>  
 Meschunoe, *sb.* *bad luck*, 36<sub>n</sub>;  
 meschance, 307<sub>n</sub>  
 Meschyel, *sb.* *mischiefe, ill-fortune*,  
 530<sub>n</sub>; myschel, 650<sub>n</sub>; mys-  
 chiel, 423<sub>n</sub>; myschyels, 675<sub>n</sub>  
 Meefest and trespass, 43<sub>n</sub>  
 Meshaunt, *adj.* (fr. *meschans*),  
*wicked*, 591<sub>n</sub>; myschant, 48<sub>n</sub>  
 Mespryse and blame (fr. *mespri-*  
*ser*), 159<sub>n</sub>  
 Mester or nede, 528<sub>n</sub>  
 Mestier, *sb.* *trade, occupation*, 433<sub>n</sub>  
 Mete, *v.* *to meet, encounter*, 399<sub>n</sub>;  
 628<sub>n</sub>; mette, 257<sub>n</sub>; 314<sub>n</sub>;  
 573<sub>n</sub>; met, 59<sub>n</sub>  
 Mete, *sb.* *meat*, 85<sub>n</sub>; metes, *pl.*  
 316<sub>n</sub>; metes and proyes, 59<sub>n</sub>  
 Metes, *sb.* *pl. companions* (fr.  
*mettes*), 341<sub>n</sub>  
 Metes and boundes (fr. *mettes*),  
 363<sub>n</sub>  
 Meuable,<sup>1</sup> *adj.* *movable*, 185<sub>n</sub>  
 Meue, *v.* *to move*, 65<sub>n</sub>; meueh,  
 21<sub>n</sub>; meuyng, 19<sub>n</sub>; meuyd,  
 19<sub>n</sub>; 36<sub>n</sub>; 38<sub>n</sub>; 54<sub>n</sub>; 625<sub>n</sub>;  
 meue and renne, 256<sub>n</sub>; meuyd  
 and cyted (fr. *incitoyt*), 19<sub>n</sub>  
 Meur, *adj.* *ripe*, 31<sub>n</sub>; meure and  
 rype, 365<sub>n</sub>; meurely, 15<sub>n</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "meuble de uoir et de richesses" by "have more meuable goodes ne richesses."

- Meyne**, *sb.* household, retinue, company, 143<sub>a</sub>; 151<sub>m</sub>; 223<sub>m</sub>; 511<sub>;</sub>  
**Misericorde**, *sb.* pity, compassion, 590<sub>m</sub>  
**Mo**, *adj.* more, 161<sub>m</sub>; 287<sub>m</sub>; 580<sub>m</sub>; moo, 5<sub>m</sub>; 68<sub>m</sub>; 194<sub>m</sub>; more grete, 49<sub>m</sub>; more gretter, 208<sub>m</sub>; more derer, 488<sub>m</sub>; 458<sub>m</sub>; more fayrer, 531<sub>m</sub>; more harder, 433<sub>m</sub>; more hyber, 269<sub>m</sub>; more nerrer, 331<sub>m</sub>; more sonner, 229<sub>m</sub>  
**Mocque**, *v.* to mock, mocked, 596  
**Mocquerye**, *sb.* 595<sub>a</sub>; mocquerye and fable, 526<sub>m</sub>  
**Moder**, *sb.* 10<sub>;</sub>; moders, 10<sub>;</sub>; moder and noryshar, 4<sub>;</sub>  
**Moder**, *v.* to moderate, 14<sub>m</sub>; 100<sub>;</sub>  
**Molenant**, (*fr. prep.*) in consideration of, 206<sub>a</sub>  
**Molefy**, *v.* to mollify, 634<sub>m</sub>  
**Moleste** and greus, 371<sub>m</sub>  
**Moment** and tyme, 236<sub>m</sub>  
**Monoye**, *sb.* money, 246<sub>m</sub>; 271<sub>;</sub>; 347<sub>m</sub>; moneye, 271<sub>m</sub>; monye, 110<sub>;</sub>  
**Monstrous**, *adj.* monstrous, 17<sub>m</sub>  
**Monyssions** and warnynges, 527<sub>m</sub>  
**Mornyng** and sorowe, 337<sub>m</sub>  
**Morsell**, *sb.* morsel, 413<sub>m</sub>; morsellis, *pl.* 476<sub>m</sub>  
**Mortal**, *adj.* mortal, 8<sub>;</sub>; mortal, 13<sub>m</sub>  
**Mosell**, *sb.* muscle, 278<sub>m</sub>; mosell, 278<sub>m</sub>; mosels, 450<sub>;</sub>  
**Most** best manerd, 127<sub>;</sub>; most best, 140<sub>m</sub>; 213<sub>;</sub>; most deppest, 121<sub>m</sub>; (deppest, 437<sub>m</sub>); moste hardyest, 277<sub>;</sub>; moste fayrest, 238<sub>m</sub>; 371<sub>;</sub>; most grettest, 532<sub>m</sub>; most strengest, 195<sub>;</sub>  
**Mounte** and goo vpon, 422<sub>m</sub>; mounte and ryse, 308<sub>m</sub>; moun-tyd and sette, 252<sub>m</sub>; monte, 490<sub>;</sub>  
**Moutons**, *sb. pl.* sheep, 263<sub>;</sub>; 264<sub>;</sub>  
**Mowe**, *v.* to be able, shall not mowe suffre, 528<sub>m</sub>; coude not ner had not mowe vaynquysabe hym, 621<sub>m</sub>; may, 7<sub>;</sub>; maist, 34<sub>m</sub>; mayste, 26<sub>m</sub>; 58<sub>m</sub>; moochte, 30<sub>m</sub>; 46<sub>m</sub>; mocht, 99<sub>m</sub>; 128<sub>m</sub>; moght, 102<sub>;</sub>; moghte, 269<sub>m</sub>; myghte, 211<sub>m</sub>; myght, 300<sub>m</sub>; might, 227<sub>m</sub>; may or oan, 470<sub>m</sub>; myghte and oowde, 245<sub>m</sub>  
**Moyen**, *sb.* See mene  
**Murderer**, *sb.* murderer, 24<sub>m</sub>; murdrere (*fr.* meurdriere), 63<sub>m</sub>  
**Murdre** or homycyde, 25<sub>m</sub>  
**Mures**, *sb. pl.* walls, 271<sub>m</sub>; mu-rail and wallis, 404<sub>m</sub>  
**Muste**, *v.* me muste, 27<sub>m</sub>; we moste, 191<sub>m</sub>; he most, 33<sub>m</sub>  
**Mustre**, *v.* to muster, mustryd, 143<sub>;</sub>; mustryng and shewyng, 145<sub>;</sub>  
**Mustres** and assembles, 285<sub>m</sub>  
**Musyoque**, *sb.* musik, 536<sub>m</sub>  
**My**, *pron. poss.* 5<sub>m</sub>; 5<sub>m</sub>; myn, 5<sub>m</sub>; 49<sub>;</sub>; 199<sub>;</sub>; the myne (*fr.* les miens), 507<sub>m</sub>  
**Myghte** and puyssance, 242<sub>m</sub>; 390<sub>;</sub>; myght and connyng, 386<sub>m</sub>  
**Myghty** and puyssant, 196<sub>;</sub>  
**Mynde** and remembrance, 374<sub>m</sub>  
**Myne**, *v.* to dig a mine, 17<sub>m</sub>  
**Myne**,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* mine, 472<sub>m</sub>  
**Myneur**, *comparat. less.* 568<sub>;</sub>  
**Mynnysabe**, *v.* to diminish, myn-nysabeth, 518<sub>m</sub>  
**Myracle** and meruaylle, 662<sub>m</sub>  
**Myschant**, *adj.* See meshaunt  
**Mysense**, *sb.* discomfort, 610<sub>;</sub>  
**Mysfait**, *sb.* evil deed, 36<sub>m</sub>  
**Myshappe**, *v.* to meet with misfor-tune, myshappid, 628<sub>m</sub>; 687<sub>;</sub>

<sup>1</sup> The corresponding passage to Caxton—"Ther is no tour so hyghe, but hyt may be beten doun by subtyll myne. Ne ther is no wynde so grete ne so rygorous but hit attemperid," etc.—in "Le Recueil" runs thus: "Si dur ne si fort cuer est entre les humains qui ne soit tost humilie quant cest son plaisir. Il nest vent si rigoureux qui ne sacremppe," etc. Evidently Caxton mistook "cuer" for "tour," and altered the sentence accordingly.

- Myshappe, *sb. misfortune*, 438<sub>12</sub> ; 472<sub>2</sub> ; myshappe ne euyl, 352<sub>27</sub> ; Myssaye or speke euyl, 416<sub>22</sub> ; Mysschapen, *pp. deformed*, 330<sub>11</sub> ;
- NAYLED and attached, 318 ;
- Ne, *adv. and conj. not, nor, e.g. he had no feer ne doubte of no serpent*, 17<sub>22</sub> ; ne had (ben) Jupiter, 41<sub>12</sub> ;
- Nedes, *adv. necessarily*, 42<sub>22</sub> ; 442<sub>22</sub> ; nede, 418<sub>22</sub> ;
- Ner, *adv. nor*, 48<sub>22</sub> ; 49<sub>22</sub> ; 50<sub>22</sub> ;
- Ner, *adj. near*, 106<sub>22</sub> ; 644<sub>17</sub> ; nerrer, 331<sub>22</sub> ; more ner and shorter, 230<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nether—ne, 322<sub>22</sub> ; 335<sub>22</sub> ; 385<sub>27</sub> ; neyther—ner, 95<sub>22</sub> ; neyther—neyther, 329<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nette and clere, 499<sub>11</sub> ; 554<sub>12</sub> ;
- Neur, *adv. neuer*, 106<sub>22</sub> ; 411<sub>22</sub> ;
- Neyheboura, *sb. pl.* 178<sub>22</sub> ; nygheboura, 186<sub>12</sub> ;
- Noblesse, *sb. nobility, magnificence, worthy behaviour*, 316<sub>12</sub> ; 639<sub>12</sub> ;
- Noght, *neg. pron. and adv. nought, nothing*, 25<sub>22</sub> ; nowht, 87<sub>12</sub> ; 186<sub>22</sub> ; nought, 100<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nombre and multitude, 42<sub>27</sub> ; 668<sub>22</sub> ; 672<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nones, for the, *sb. pl. for the nonce*, 286<sub>22</sub> ;
- Not (1 fr. ne-que<sup>1</sup>), 181<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nothyng, *adv. nothyng woman*, 55<sub>12</sub> ; no thyng fader, 146<sub>22</sub> ; no thing Saturne, 154<sub>22</sub> ; nothing his enemye, 289<sub>22</sub> ; no thing for deuocion, 235<sub>12</sub> ; nothyng lyke vnto, 618<sub>12</sub> ; nothyng conquare, 463<sub>22</sub> ;
- Notoriely, *adv. (?) notoriously*, 525<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nouryoe, *sb. nurse*, 30<sub>22</sub> ; nouryoes, 31<sub>22</sub> ; norices, 241<sub>22</sub> ; 242<sub>27</sub> ; 243<sub>22</sub> ; noryoes, 241<sub>12</sub> ;
- Nouryed, *nourished*, 84<sub>21</sub> ;
- Noye ner greue, 283<sub>22</sub> ; noyed and pyned, 337<sub>12</sub> ;
- Noyous, *adj. hurtful, annoying*, 154<sub>12</sub> ; 260<sub>22</sub> ; noyous and soroufull, 11<sub>22</sub> ;
- Noyse and bruyt, 260<sub>22</sub> ; 288<sub>12</sub> ; noyse and murmure, 35<sub>22</sub> ; noyse and tempeste, 212<sub>17</sub> ; See bruyt and noyse ;
- Nyghe and approoche, 188<sub>22</sub> ; nyghed near, 129<sub>12</sub> ;
- Nyghe by = almost, 572<sub>22</sub> ;
- Nygromancia, *sb. magic, sorcery*, 178<sub>22</sub> ; 179<sub>11</sub> ;
- OBEDI and complaise, 120<sub>12</sub> ;
- Obeysance, *sb. obedience*, 7<sub>22</sub> ; 145<sub>22</sub> ; 343<sub>22</sub> ; 403<sub>22</sub> ; 423<sub>22</sub> ;
- Obeysant, *adj. obedient*, 523<sub>12</sub> ; obeissaunt, 7<sub>22</sub> ;
- Oblacions and offrynges, 271<sub>22</sub> ;
- Obprobrye and repreuys, 515<sub>12</sub> (fr. obprobres) ;
- Obecure and darke, 521<sub>22</sub> ;
- Obsequie, *sb. burial*, 81<sub>22</sub> ; obsequye, 11<sub>22</sub> ; 52<sub>22</sub> ; 225<sub>12</sub> ; obseques, 81<sub>22</sub> ;
- Obtempre, *v. (fr. obtemperer) to yield, to be obedient*, 512<sub>22</sub> ;
- Occision, *sb.* 630<sub>22</sub> ; occision and slaughter, 423<sub>22</sub> ; 627<sub>22</sub> ; occysion and slaughter, 350<sub>22</sub> ; 574<sub>22</sub> ; 607<sub>22</sub> ;
- Odour and sauour, 255<sub>12</sub> ;
- Oeuures and werkes, 203<sub>22</sub> ;
- Offende and greue, 595<sub>22</sub> ;
- Offre and make morefyse, 662<sub>11</sub> ;
- Oftymes, *adv. frequently*, 33<sub>22</sub> ; oftymes, 47<sub>22</sub> ;
- Oilles, *sb. pl. oils*, 94<sub>22</sub> ; oylles, 95<sub>22</sub> ;
- Olde auneyent. See auneyent ;
- Olyphant, *sb. elephant*, 299<sub>22</sub> ; olyphant, 221<sub>22</sub> ; olephant, 76<sub>22</sub> ; olifantes, 157<sub>22</sub> ; olyphantee, 410<sub>22</sub> ; elephant, 249<sub>22</sub> ; allephant, 366<sub>12</sub> ; 376<sub>22</sub> ; 434<sub>12</sub> ;
- Ones, *adv. ones*, 12<sub>22</sub> ; 53<sub>22</sub> ; 316<sub>22</sub> ;
- Ony, *adj. any*, 22<sub>22</sub> ;
- Oon, *num. one*, 9<sub>22</sub> ; 14<sub>12</sub> ; 20<sub>12</sub> ;

<sup>1</sup> "Quelle nest icy venue que pour moy" translated into English by Carton : "that she is not comen hether for me !"

- Oeres, *sb. pl. oera*, 18<sub>m</sub>  
 Oost, *sb. host*, 74<sub>m</sub>; 93<sub>m</sub>; 222<sub>m</sub>; 222<sub>m</sub>;  
 ooste, 7<sub>m</sub>; 144<sub>m</sub>; osten, 247<sub>m</sub>  
 Open and publicque, 416<sub>m</sub>; open  
 puissance and playn descouerte  
 strength at eye,<sup>1</sup> 380<sub>m</sub>; openly  
 and aperte, 446<sub>m</sub>  
 Ordeyne and halowe, 50<sub>m</sub>; orde-  
 deygne and make, 15<sub>m</sub>; ordeynd  
 and maad, 40<sub>m</sub>; ordeynd and  
 constytuted, 45<sub>m</sub>; 308<sub>m</sub>; orde-  
 yned gyuen and promysed,  
 261<sub>m</sub>; ordeyned and sette,  
 615<sub>m</sub>; ordeynd and arayed,  
 313<sub>m</sub>  
 Ordonned, *pp. ordered*, 187<sub>m</sub>  
 Ordure, *sb.* 453<sub>m</sub>; ordure and  
 stynkyng flithe, 453<sub>m</sub>; ordures  
 and flithe, 453<sub>m</sub>  
 Orguyell, *sb. pride*, 210<sub>m</sub>; 509<sub>m</sub>;  
 orguyell and pryde, 79<sub>m</sub>; 557<sub>m</sub>  
 Orguyllous, *adj. proud*, orguyllous  
 and proude, 500<sub>m</sub>; 510<sub>m</sub>; 542<sub>m</sub>;  
 557<sub>m</sub>  
 Oroysons and prayers, 235<sub>m</sub>; ory-  
 souns and prayers, 402<sub>m</sub>  
 Orphelins, *sb. pl. orphans*, 343<sub>m</sub>  
 Orrible, *adj. horrible*, 378<sub>m</sub>  
 Orrour, *sb. horror*, 43<sub>m</sub>  
 Ostage, *sb. hostage*, 38<sub>m</sub>  
 Oth, *sb. oak*, 20<sub>m</sub>; othes, 93<sub>m</sub>  
 Othertyme (fr. *autrefois*), 93<sub>m</sub>;  
 other tyme, 126<sub>m</sub>  
 Otherwhile, (1) (fr. *aucunefois*),  
 105<sub>m</sub>; 126<sub>m</sub>; 181<sub>m</sub>; 624<sub>m</sub>; (2)  
 (fr. *à la fois*), 557<sub>m</sub>; 654<sub>m</sub>;  
 otherwhile—some tyme (fr. *vne*  
*heure—vne autre*), 158<sub>m</sub>  
 Othir, *adj. other*, 9<sub>m</sub>; oder,  
 153<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerall, *adv. everywhere* (fr. *par-*  
*tout*), 436<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerome and surmounte, 216<sub>m</sub>;  
 ouerome and tryumphe, 190<sub>m</sub>;  
 ouerome and vaynquyashid,  
 71<sub>m</sub>; 143<sub>m</sub>; ouerome and  
 sublynged, 229<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerest or maistresse, 367<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerlyue, *v. to outlive*, 26<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouer maister, *v. to master, to rule*,  
 227<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerplus, *sb. surplus*, 511<sub>m</sub>. *Com-*  
*pare surplus*, 560<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerthrowen, *pp.* 293<sub>m</sub>; ouer-  
 throwen and smyten down, 314<sub>m</sub>  
 Ouerthwart, *adj. across, over,*  
*against*, 582<sub>m</sub>; 588<sub>m</sub>  
 Outrage, *sb.* 366<sub>m</sub>; outrage, 317<sub>m</sub>  
 Outrageous, *adj. outrageous*, 41<sub>m</sub>;  
 oultragious, 49<sub>m</sub>  
 Outrance, *sb. excess, extremity*,  
 136<sub>m</sub>; outrance, 157<sub>m</sub>  
 Oure, *sb. hour*, 30<sub>m</sub>; 121<sub>m</sub>; oures,  
 132<sub>m</sub>; owres, 118<sub>m</sub>  
 Out of her places or out of joynte,  
 302<sub>m</sub>  
 Owches, *sb. pl. jewels*, 110<sub>m</sub>  
 Owen, *adj. own*, 8<sub>m</sub>; 18<sub>m</sub>; 24<sub>m</sub>;  
 owne, 42<sub>m</sub>  
 Owggly, *adj. ugly*, 330<sub>m</sub>  
 PAART, *sb. part, share*, 310<sub>m</sub>  
 Paas, *sb.* (fr. *pas*) (1) *place, passage*,  
 in this paas, 82<sub>m</sub>; vpon this paas,  
 143<sub>m</sub>; (2) *meeting, assembly*,  
 249<sub>m</sub>; 313<sub>m</sub>; (3) *footprints*,  
 paas and foot, 444<sub>m</sub>; paas and  
 feet, 444<sub>m</sub>; (4) *foot (measure)*,  
*pl.* 468<sub>m</sub>; 508<sub>m</sub>  
 Paacion and promys, 8<sub>m</sub>  
 Palais, *sb. palace*, 36<sub>m</sub>; pallais,  
 35<sub>m</sub>; palays, 34<sub>m</sub>; pallays, 37<sub>m</sub>;  
 palais and dwellyng place, 16<sub>m</sub>  
 Pale and destaynte, 485<sub>m</sub>  
 Palme, *sb. the inner part of the*  
*hand*, sixteen palme of heyght,  
 297<sub>m</sub>  
 Palus, *sb. marsh land*, 390<sub>m</sub>  
 Pament, *sb. pavement*, 467<sub>m</sub>  
 Pappe, *sb. pap, breast, teat*, 645<sub>m</sub>;  
 pappes, 685<sub>m</sub>  
 Parchemyn, *sb. parchment*, 249<sub>m</sub>  
 Parcloos, *sb. enclosure*, 20<sub>m</sub>  
 Pardicion, *sb. perdition*, 446<sub>m</sub>;  
 perdycion and waste, 372<sub>m</sub>  
 Pardurable, *adj. lasting*, 321<sub>m</sub>;  
 perdurable, 89<sub>m</sub>; pardurably,  
 311<sub>m</sub>; 327<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> "Puissance plainement descouerte."

- Pareed, *pp.* (fr. *paree*) adorned, 492<sub>m</sub>  
 Parement, *sb.* adornment, 473<sub>m</sub>  
 Parent or cosyn, 593<sub>m</sub>; parents and frendes, 348<sub>m</sub>; parentes and progenytours, 104<sub>f</sub>  
 Parentele, *sb.* kinemen, 656<sub>m</sub>  
 Pareyll ne like, 541<sub>m</sub>  
 Parfyt, *adj.* perfect, 360<sub>m</sub>; perfily, 180<sub>m</sub>; parfayt and maad, 85<sub>m</sub>  
 Parfound, *adj.* profound, 322<sub>m</sub>; parfondly, 280<sub>m</sub>; parfoundly, 12<sub>m</sub>; parfonde and deepe, 448<sub>1</sub>; parfonde and depe, 446<sub>11</sub>; parfond and grete, 334<sub>10</sub>  
 Parfurnysahid, *pp.* (fr. *parfurnis*), finished, 461<sub>m</sub>  
 Parfyrne and ende, 526<sub>10</sub>  
 Parill, *sb.* peril, danger, 168<sub>m</sub>; parell, 76<sub>10</sub>; 162<sub>10</sub>; paryll, 36<sub>1</sub>; 328<sub>m</sub>; 631<sub>11</sub>; perill, 168<sub>m</sub>; peryll, 229<sub>m</sub>; 623<sub>11</sub>; parels, 119<sub>m</sub>; paretles, 328<sub>1</sub>; parillis, 331<sub>10</sub>; paryllis, 675<sub>m</sub>; 689<sub>10</sub>; paryls, 7<sub>m</sub>; paryls, 52<sub>1</sub>; parell and daunger, 105<sub>m</sub>; peryll and doubte, 519<sub>m</sub>  
 Parolle and word, 215<sub>0</sub>  
 Parsona, *sb.* person, 63<sub>1</sub>  
 Particularytees and synguler thynges, 522<sub>m</sub>  
 Parturbacion, *sb.* perturbation, 659<sub>0</sub>  
 Partye, *sb.* part (fr. *partie*), 157<sub>10</sub>; partie serpentyne, 392<sub>m</sub>; partye, 126<sub>m</sub>  
 Paryllous, *adj.* dangerous, perilous, 96<sub>m</sub>; 128<sub>m</sub>; 328<sub>m</sub>; peryllous, 39<sub>10</sub>  
 Passe temps, *sb.* pastime, recreation, 261<sub>10</sub>; passe temps, 424<sub>m</sub>  
 Passid and dellueryd, 598<sub>m</sub>  
 Passyng, *adv.* exceedingly, 46<sub>m</sub>; 48<sub>m</sub>; 54<sub>1</sub>; 95<sub>1</sub>; passyng merueillous fayr, 321<sub>m</sub>  
 Passyng and swymmyng ouer, 320<sub>0</sub>  
 Pastour and hierdemen, 299<sub>1</sub>; pastour and herdemen, 302<sub>11</sub>  
 Payd,<sup>1</sup> *pp.* paid, 41<sub>m</sub>; rendryd and payd, 272<sub>m</sub>; paye and rendre, 271<sub>11</sub>  
 Payne and traueylle, 210<sub>0</sub>; payne and labour, 631<sub>m</sub>; payne and deuoyr (ll fr. en paine d'auoir), 268<sub>m</sub>; payne and variacion, 28<sub>m</sub>; payne<sup>2</sup> (ll à peine), 36<sub>10</sub>; Paysyble, *adj.* peaceable, 513<sub>1</sub>; paysible, 86<sub>10</sub>; paisible 381<sub>m</sub>; paysibly, 564<sub>1</sub>  
 Pease, *v.* to appease, 390<sub>1</sub>; peastid, 542<sub>0</sub>  
 Pease, *sb.* peace, 86<sub>m</sub>; peas, 631<sub>10</sub>; peas, 15<sub>1</sub>; 39<sub>10</sub>; 631<sub>m</sub>; peas and tranquyllite, 96<sub>1</sub>; peas generale, 86<sub>m</sub>  
 Peock, *sb.* peacock, 19<sub>3</sub>  
 Peert, *adj.* (fr. *appert*), clever, bold, 300<sub>10</sub>  
 Pelowe, *sb.* pillow, 521<sub>11</sub>  
 Penner, *sb.* pencase, 502<sub>m</sub>  
 Pensell, *sb.* a sort of head-gear (fr. *tourelle*)  
 Pensifnes, *sb.* (fr. *pensement*), 125<sub>10</sub>; pensifnes and many thoughtes, 437<sub>m</sub>; pensces and thoughtes, 455<sub>0</sub>  
 Pensyf and thenkyng, 262<sub>1</sub>; pensyf and symple, 371<sub>m</sub>  
 Peple, *sb.* people, 39<sub>10</sub>; peuple, 36<sub>1</sub>; 42<sub>m</sub>; 46<sub>10</sub>; peple and habytauns, 508<sub>10</sub>; peple and folk, 44<sub>m</sub>; peples and oomonte, 307<sub>10</sub>  
 Peple, peple, *v.* to populate, peplid, 510<sub>1</sub>; peple and enhabite, 415<sub>m</sub>; peupled and fyld, 37<sub>m</sub>; peupled and enhabited, 396<sub>m</sub>  
 Perche, *sb.* perch, rod, pole, 494<sub>m</sub>; 495<sub>0</sub>  
 Pere, *sb.* peer, equal, 21<sub>0</sub>  
 Perfily. See parfayt  
 Perfondour, *sb.* profoundness, profundity, depth, 474<sub>m</sub>  
 Perfoundely. See parfound  
 Perisahid, *pp.* (fr. *feru*), 182<sub>m</sub>; perissahid and ded, 81<sub>0</sub>

<sup>1</sup> "Les pellagiens font semblant de estre mal contents de lui Il soit pugny" is translated by Caxton thus: "The pelaygens make semblant that they be euyl payd with hym, he muste be punysshid."

<sup>2</sup> "Car a peine seroit il possible" = "shall be grete payne by possibilite!"

- Persecuteresse, *sb.* *persecutor*, 28<sub>m</sub>  
 Persahe, *v.* *to pierce, penetrate*, 17<sub>10</sub>; *perce*, 433<sub>10</sub>; *perced*, 278<sub>m</sub>; *percid*, 497<sub>11</sub>; *persyd*, 362<sub>;</sub>; *peraid*, 410<sub>m</sub>; *persed*, 219<sub>m</sub>; *persahe ne entre*, 461<sub>m</sub>  
 Pertye. *See* partye  
 Perylous. *See* paryllous  
 Petoualy. *See* pietous  
 Peysant, *adj.* *heavy*, 22<sub>m</sub>; 101<sub>4</sub>; 420<sub>m</sub>; *peysaunt weyght*, 280<sub>;</sub>  
 Pietons or fotemen, 176<sub>;</sub>; *pietons and footemen*, 259<sub>m</sub>  
 Pietous, *adj.* (1) (fr. *pitoyable*) *piti-able*, 44<sub>m</sub>; 196<sub>;</sub>; 470<sub>m</sub>; 499<sub>m</sub>; *pyetous*, 43<sub>;</sub>; *pietoualy*, 236<sub>m</sub>; *petoualy*, 28<sub>m</sub>; (2) (fr. *piteux*) *mournful, compassionate*, 27<sub>;</sub>; 243<sub>;</sub>; 435<sub>m</sub>; *petous*, 32<sub>;</sub>; *pytouse*, 500<sub>;</sub>; 542<sub>m</sub>  
 Pikols and instruments (fr. *mar-teaulz*), *hammers, pickaxes*, 18<sub>m</sub>  
 Piler, *sb.* *pillar, column*, 450<sub>;</sub>; *pylers*, 615<sub>;</sub>; *pillar and columpne*, 396<sub>m</sub>; *pylers or colompnes*, 396<sub>m</sub>  
 Place, *sb.* *place*, had no place (fr. *naoient lieu*), 45<sub>m</sub>; *place or felde*, 252<sub>m</sub>; *out of places or out of joynte*, 302<sub>;</sub>  
 Plaisance, *sb.* *pleasure*, 19<sub>;</sub>; 460<sub>m</sub>; *playsance*, 52<sub>;</sub>; *playsanse*, 120<sub>;</sub>; *pleasance*, 104<sub>m</sub>; *playances*, 120<sub>;</sub>  
 Plater, *sb.* *platter, dish*, 40<sub>m</sub>; *platers*, 316<sub>m</sub>  
 Playne, *adj.* *clear, plain*, *playne destruction*, 132<sub>m</sub>; *at playn desconfiture*, 152<sub>m</sub>; *to plain vtrance*, 153<sub>m</sub>; *in playne gladness*, 85<sub>m</sub>; *playne and vayne ataint*,<sup>1</sup> 181<sub>m</sub>  
 Playne, *v.* *to lament, complain*, 28<sub>;</sub>; *playned*, 43<sub>m</sub>; 236<sub>m</sub>; 657<sub>m</sub>  
 Playstant, *adj.* *pleasant*, 456<sub>;</sub>; *plesante*, 262<sub>11</sub>; *pleasant and agreable*, 74<sub>m</sub>  
 Plegge, *sb.* *pledge*, 603<sub>;</sub>  
 Plenteuousnes, *sb.* *plenteousness*, 40<sub>m</sub>  
 Plese and satysfye, 207<sub>m</sub>; *plaise*, 114<sub>11</sub>  
 Plesir, *sb.* *pleasure*, 32<sub>;</sub>; 37<sub>;</sub>; *pleasir*, 43<sub>4</sub>; *plaisirs*, 73<sub>m</sub>; *playsir*, 18<sub>m</sub>; 663<sub>m</sub>; *plaisirs*, 51<sub>m</sub>; *playsyr*, 108<sub>;</sub>; *playr*, 88<sub>m</sub>  
 Pietar, *sb.* (fr. *plaidleur*), 116<sub>m</sub>  
 Plomettes, *sb.* *pl. round stones* (fr. *plommes rondes*), 77<sub>;</sub>  
 Pollaxes, *sb.* *pl. battle-axes*, 66<sub>;</sub>; *polhaxes*, 67<sub>m</sub>; 317<sub>m</sub>  
 Pompeusly and solempnly, 385<sub>m</sub>  
 Poort, *sb.* *port*, 215<sub>m</sub>; *poorte*, 323<sub>m</sub>; *poort and hauen*, 221<sub>m</sub>; 262<sub>m</sub>; *porte or hauen*, 192<sub>m</sub>; *porte and hauen*, 214<sub>11</sub>  
 Porcion and quantite, 257<sub>m</sub>  
 Porter, *sb.* *porter*, 91<sub>m</sub>; *portiers*, 91<sub>m</sub>; 466<sub>m</sub>; *portyers*, 213<sub>m</sub>  
 Pouldre, *sb.* *powder*, 31<sub>m</sub>; 232<sub>m</sub>  
 Pursue, *v.* *to pursue, pursued*, 59<sub>m</sub>; 196<sub>11</sub>; *poursuyeden, they pursued*, 538<sub>;</sub>  
 Power and puyssance, 99<sub>;</sub>; *power and vertu*, 98<sub>;</sub>  
 Poynt and partie (fr. *en cel part*), 311<sub>;</sub>; *poyntes*,<sup>2</sup> 374<sub>m</sub>  
 Poyntement, *sb.* *appointment*, 651<sub>;</sub>  
 Poys, *sb.* *weight*, 160<sub>11</sub>; 661<sub>;</sub>; *poysse*, 557<sub>m</sub>; *poys and weyghte*, 208<sub>11</sub>  
 Poysse, *v.* *to weigh*, 474<sub>;</sub>; *poysse and weye*, 7<sub>1</sub>  
 Poysen, *sb.* *poison*, 387<sub>1</sub>; *poison*, 378<sub>11</sub>; *poyson*, 387<sub>11</sub>  
 Practique, *v.* *to practice*, 9<sub>11</sub>; *practiqued*, 38<sub>m</sub>; *practioqued*, 225<sub>m</sub>; *practyqued*, 10<sub>11</sub>; 385<sub>m</sub>; *practysed and lerned*, 701<sub>m</sub>  
 Praye and amoneste, 630<sub>11</sub>; *praye and requyre*, 71<sub>m</sub>; 140<sub>m</sub>; 324<sub>m</sub>;

<sup>1</sup> "En la plus vaine attente!"

<sup>2</sup> The English, "than beyng ryche wyth the poyntes of lowe sowedn bytwene variacions of hope and despayr," corresponds to the French, "lors estant riche daguillons damour entresemez de variacions desesperance."

- 326<sub>m</sub>; 510<sub>m</sub>; prayde and requyred, 395<sub>m</sub>; prayed and requyred, 554<sub>m</sub>; prayd and requyred, 435<sub>m</sub>.
- Prayer ne requeste, 512<sub>23</sub>; prayers and requestes, 474<sub>m</sub>; praler and request, 51<sub>11</sub>; pralers and orisonne, 68<sub>m</sub>.
- Predestynat, *adj.* predestinated, 106<sub>m</sub>; 108<sub>m</sub>.
- Preef, *sb.* (fr. approbacion), 91<sub>1</sub>; proues, *pl.* 204<sub>m</sub>; 205<sub>11</sub>.
- Pre-electe and chosen, 23<sub>m</sub>.
- Prees, *sb.* *press, throng*, 193<sub>m</sub>.
- Preest, *sb.* *priest*, 3<sub>m</sub>; preste, 20<sub>m</sub>; 85<sub>m</sub>.
- Preudyciable, *adj.* prejudicial, 116<sub>17</sub>.
- Prenostyque, prenostyke, *v.* *prognosticate*, prenostyqued, 86<sub>m</sub>; prenostykyd, 167<sub>m</sub>.
- Prerogacion, *sb.* (fr. *idem*) ? *prerogative*, 374<sub>11</sub>.
- Presentes and yettes, 126<sub>11</sub>.
- Pressurs, *sb.* *pl.* *pressures, pricks*, 32<sub>m</sub>.
- Prest and redy, (fr. *preste*, 399<sub>m</sub>).
- Pretended (fr. *contendoit*), 11<sub>11</sub>.
- Prene, *v.* *to prove*, 460<sub>2</sub>; proue and assaye, 253<sub>11</sub>.
- Preuelage, *sb.* *privilege*, 206<sub>10</sub>.
- Preysed and had lawde, 259<sub>2</sub>; preysed and exalted, 283<sub>m</sub>.
- Preysyng and loenge, 284<sub>m</sub>; preysyng and loenge, 213<sub>12</sub>; preysyng ne loos, 492<sub>17</sub>.
- Procedeth,<sup>1</sup> (fr. *portes*), 79<sub>m</sub>.
- Proef, 248<sub>m</sub>; 417<sub>m</sub>; proof and assaye.
- Proferre and saye, 50<sub>m</sub>.
- Progenytours, *sb.* *parents*, 105<sub>m</sub>.
- Proye, *sb.* *prey, plunder*, 442<sub>2</sub>; profe, 321<sub>2</sub>; praye, 580<sub>m</sub>; proyes, 437<sub>m</sub>; proies and robberyes, 47<sub>m</sub>.
- Promancie, *sb.* (fr. *peromancie*) *pyromancy*, 178<sub>m</sub>.
- Promesse, *sb.* *promise*, 144<sub>2</sub>; 170<sub>m</sub>; 220<sub>m</sub>; promesses, 623<sub>m</sub>; promys, 633<sub>2</sub>.
- Promette, *v.* *to promise*, 268<sub>1</sub>; promettyst, 137<sub>m</sub>; promyttyng, 28<sub>m</sub>; 129<sub>m</sub>; promitting, 172<sub>m</sub>; promytteth, 250<sub>m</sub>; promyse and swere, 115<sub>11</sub>; promyse and accorde, 603<sub>2</sub>; promysed and sworn, 61<sub>11</sub>; promysed and swere, 62<sub>2</sub>; promette and swere, 305<sub>m</sub>.
- Promotion and furderyng, 12<sub>11</sub>.
- Prone and redy, 701<sub>2</sub>.
- Propice, *adj.* *propitious*, 31<sub>2</sub>; 327<sub>7</sub>; 550<sub>m</sub>; propice and necessarye, 453<sub>17</sub>; propyce and necessarie, 404<sub>12</sub>.
- Propre, *adj.* *oon propre syght* (fr. *vn seul regard*), 83<sub>2</sub>.
- Proprete, *sb.* *property*, 47<sub>m</sub>; propretes, 98<sub>m</sub>.
- Prosperyte and welfare, 519<sub>m</sub>; prosperitees, 456<sub>4</sub>.
- Prouffre, *sb.* *offer, proffer*, 141<sub>m</sub>.
- Prouffytable, *adj.* *profitable*, 10<sub>11</sub>.
- Prouffyten, *they profyt*, 21<sub>m</sub>; 95<sub>m</sub>; 519<sub>4</sub>.
- Proverbs or proverbial sentences:*  
 "Wher the heed is seke or euyll the membres may not be hoole ner good," 35<sub>11</sub>; "whan the heed aketh alle the other membres suffren payne," 44<sub>22</sub>; "helpe thy self and we shall helpe the" (fr. *aide toi et on taidera*), 64<sub>11</sub>; "he that fleeth causeth his enemye to chassee hym" (fr. *qui fuit il treuve qui le chassee*), 64<sub>11</sub>; "for that a man may do this day late hym not put hit ouer tyll to morowe," 64<sub>2</sub>; "the more that men growe in age, the more be they wyse," 96<sub>m</sub>; "God spede the ryght and fortune" (fr. *Adulengne au bon droit bonne fortune*), 97<sub>m</sub>; "he that doeth shewe loue and curtosie ought to be thanked by semblable," 115<sub>2</sub>; "A beggar shold not go away for ones warnyng,"

<sup>1</sup> "Tu portes en toy," corresponds to English "procedeth fro!"

- 116; "of two euillis the lasse euyll is to chese," 120<sub>m</sub>; "Vnto an herte well vnderstanding fewe wordes suffisen" 122<sub>;</sub>; "men saye that lone hurteth no man" (1 fr. on dist quamours nespargnent nulluy), 181<sub>;</sub>; "the dyamond shyneth not tyl hit be polliahyd," 183<sub>m</sub>; the "herte of a noble man taketh pyte and compassion in the dystresse and passion of his semblable," 208<sub>m</sub>; "the begynnyng is fayr, but the ende is fowle," 220<sub>;</sub>; "hit must be begonnen at on ende," 253<sub>m</sub>; "ther is no strook but of the maistre," 266<sub>;</sub>; there is no thyng impossible vnto a vailliant herte," 328<sub>;</sub>; "so weneth he to auenge his shame that so beleueth" (1 fr. tel cuide sa honte vengier qui lacroist), 333<sub>m</sub>; "ther is no thyng so secrete but otherwile it is knowen," 654<sub>;</sub> etc.
- Prouoking = *insulting*, 217<sub>;</sub>
- Prowesse, *sb.* *process, valour*, *proweesse*, 7<sub>;</sub>; 148<sub>;</sub>; *proweessis*, 618<sub>m</sub>; *proweesse and vailliance*, 89<sub>;</sub>; *proweesse and valeur*, 152<sub>;</sub>; *proweesses and strengthes*, 193<sub>;</sub>
- Proyngne? (fr. prerogative), 455<sub>m</sub>
- Prys, *sb.* *prize, price, high esteem*, 253<sub>m</sub>; *pryse*, 451<sub>m</sub>; 519<sub>m</sub>; *prys and reward*, 282<sub>;</sub>
- Pryse, *sb.* *taking, conquest*, 490<sub>;</sub>; 540<sub>m</sub>; *pryse and takyng*, 538<sub>;</sub>
- Pryue, *v.* *to deprive, priued*, 388<sub>m</sub>; *pryued*, 500<sub>m</sub>; *pryued ne put from*, 121<sub>m</sub>
- Pryuy, *adj.* *secret, privy*, 497<sub>;</sub>; *preuy and couert*, 255<sub>;</sub>; *pryuely*, 613<sub>m</sub>; 678<sub>m</sub>; *preuily*, 533<sub>m</sub>; *pryuely ne a couert*, 466<sub>;</sub>
- Pallid and rachid, 301<sub>;</sub>
- Pure and net, 192<sub>m</sub>
- Parposid and trowed, 32<sub>;</sub>; *purposid and concluded*, 439<sub>m</sub>
- Puillanymyte, *sb.* *puillanimity*, 524<sub>;</sub>
- Put, *v.* *to put*, *putted*, 378<sub>;</sub>; they put for their armes (fr. ennoyerent querre leur armes), 48<sub>m</sub>; *putte and sette*, 92<sub>m</sub>; *putte and setted*, 498<sub>m</sub>; *put vnder foot and ouercome*, 189<sub>;</sub>; *put hym vnder and subiugue*, 197<sub>;</sub>
- Putatyl, *adj.* *supposed, reputed*, 285<sub>m</sub>
- Putter in of fyre, *sb.* (fr. bonteur de feu), 447<sub>;</sub>
- Puyssance, *sb.* *power*, 195<sub>m</sub>; *puyssances*, *pl.* 669<sub>m</sub>; *puyssance and myght*, 88<sub>;</sub>; *puyssance and prowesse*, 276<sub>;</sub>; *puyssance and strengthe*, 243<sub>m</sub>; 246<sub>m</sub>; 258<sub>;</sub>; 362<sub>m</sub>; 466<sub>;</sub>
- Puyssant, *adj.* *powerful*, 201<sub>;</sub>; *puyssant and stronge*, 308<sub>m</sub>
- Pyetous. *See* *pietous*
- Pyght, *pt.* (from pytohe), 644<sub>;</sub>
- Pyllie, *v.* *to peel, rob, pill*, *pylled*, 556<sub>;</sub>; *pillyd*, 351<sub>;</sub>; *pylle and robbe*, 442<sub>;</sub>; *pylled and robbed*, 589<sub>m</sub>; 630<sub>m</sub>; 666<sub>m</sub>
- Pytye, *sb.* *pitey*, 196<sub>m</sub>; 243<sub>m</sub>; 342<sub>m</sub>; *pytle*, 160<sub>m</sub>; 611<sub>m</sub>; *pyte ne mercy*, 99<sub>m</sub>; *pyte and charyte*, 169<sub>;</sub>; *pyte and compassion*, 208<sub>m</sub>; 216<sub>m</sub>; *pyte and mysericord*, 208<sub>m</sub>
- QUAKE, *v.* *to tremble, quake, quoke*, 637<sub>;</sub>; *quake and tremble*, 485<sub>;</sub>
- Quarele, *sb.* *quarrel, dispute*, 73<sub>m</sub>; 417<sub>m</sub>; *querele*, 100<sub>m</sub>; 368<sub>m</sub>; *querelle*, 145<sub>;</sub>
- Quarter and place, 422<sub>;</sub>
- Quayer, *sb.* *quire of paper, quayers*, 5<sub>m</sub>; 22<sub>m</sub>
- Quenobe, *v.* *to quench, extinguish*, *quenohid*, 220<sub>m</sub>; 383<sub>m</sub>; 412<sub>m</sub>; 662<sub>;</sub>
- Quyoquen and wake agayn, 369<sub>m</sub> (fr. resuellirent); *quykanyd*, 455<sub>;</sub>
- Qayer boullye,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* (fr. cair boilli),

<sup>1</sup> Compare my quotation, vol. I. p. clxii.



- boiled leather, for making armour,*  
259<sub>4</sub>
- Quyke *adj. alive,* 193<sub>10</sub>
- Quykes of the herte, *! the beating of the hert,* 442<sub>14</sub>
- Quyte, *pp. satisfied, settled,* 416<sub>22</sub>; 585<sub>12</sub>; *quytte,* 138<sub>12</sub>
- RABAISSEMENT and casting down, 49<sub>22</sub>
- Rabatues, *pp. (fr. rabatre), swerdes rabatues (fr. despee rabatue),* 250<sub>12</sub>; *her swerdes were rabatues and not sharp,* 259<sub>1</sub>
- Rached, rachid, rasyd. *Sesarasche*
- Racke, *sb. (?) between the racke and the sides (fr. entre la ratte et les costes),* 644<sub>4</sub>
- Raconte, *v. to recount, tell,* 203<sub>4</sub>
- Radely, *adv. (fr. radement),* 468<sub>12</sub> (*? mod. fr. raide*)
- Radeure, *sb. (fr. radeur),* 390<sub>22</sub>
- Raiport, *sb. report,* 125<sub>22</sub>; *raporte,* 126<sub>2</sub>; (*raportyd,* 133<sub>22</sub>); *reporte,* 133<sub>2</sub>
- Rancours, *sb. pl. (fr. rancunes), ill-will, rancour,* 96<sub>22</sub>
- Rapines, *sb. pl. plunder, violence,* 186<sub>22</sub>
- Rappeel, *sb. calling back,* 590<sub>12</sub>; *rapeel,* 677<sub>22</sub>
- Ratefle, *v. to ratify, make firm,* 40<sub>4</sub>; *ratefied and taken,* 53<sub>12</sub>
- Rauyn and theft, 36<sub>22</sub>; 437<sub>22</sub>
- Rauisshour, *sb. ravisher,* 322<sub>22</sub>; *rauyssheur,* 48<sub>12</sub>
- Raunson, *sb. ransom,* 476<sub>12</sub>
- Raye, *sb. ray, rayes,* 139<sub>1</sub>; *raye or sonne beme,* 308<sub>22</sub>; *raye,*<sup>1</sup> 158<sub>2</sub>
- Rayne, *sb. and v. to rain,* 247<sub>7</sub>; 308<sub>4</sub>; *reyned,* 117<sub>22</sub>; *reynyng,* 165<sub>12</sub>
- Rayne, *sb. kidney, loin,* raynes, 541<sub>2</sub>
- Rayson, *sb. reason, vnderstanding* 96<sub>22</sub>; 184<sub>12</sub>; *rayson and right,* 79<sub>2</sub>
- Raysonably, *adv. reasonably,* 365<sub>12</sub>
- Reboute, *v. (fr. rebouter), to throw back, to make withdraw,* rebouted, 626<sub>2</sub>; *rebowted,* 609<sub>22</sub>; *rebowtne withdraws,* 328<sub>1</sub>; *rebowted and put aback,* 608<sub>22</sub>
- Rebruyre and rore, 333<sub>12</sub>
- Reoche, *v. to care, reach,* 530<sub>22</sub>; *raughtest,* 539<sub>22</sub>; *raught,* 531<sub>22</sub>; *rekketh,* 240<sub>2</sub>
- Reche, *v. to reach, attain (see areche),* raochid, 450<sub>11</sub>; *raught,* 400<sub>22</sub>; 644<sub>4</sub>; *raughte,* 638<sub>22</sub>; *rought,* 300<sub>14</sub>; 508<sub>22</sub>
- Recomenced and began agayn, 320<sub>17</sub>
- Recongnoissances, *sb. pl. (1) witnessing, perceiving,* 341<sub>22</sub>; *recongnyssances and knowischinges,* 199<sub>22</sub>; (2) *signals, ensignes;* *recongnoissances,* 363<sub>22</sub>; *recongnyssances,* 462<sub>12</sub>
- Recounte, *v. to tell, recount,* 329<sub>2</sub>; 499<sub>22</sub>; *racounte,* 203<sub>4</sub>; *recounted,* 246<sub>2</sub>; *recounte and telle,* 337<sub>22</sub>; 463<sub>2</sub>; *recountyng and tellyng,* 244<sub>22</sub>; 483<sub>2</sub>
- Recountre, *v. to meet, encounter,* 640<sub>22</sub>; *recountryd,* 228<sub>1</sub>; 647<sub>22</sub>; *recountrid and mette,* 53<sub>1</sub>
- Recountre, *sb. encountering,* 259<sub>22</sub>; *recountres,* 157<sub>22</sub>
- Reoured or wonne, 325<sub>22</sub>
- Reule, *v. to move, run back,* 407<sub>22</sub>; 619<sub>12</sub>; 643<sub>22</sub>; *reculyng backward,* 445<sub>4</sub>; *reuled,* 599<sub>22</sub>; *reuleden (they reuled)* 619<sub>22</sub>; *reule and goo a back,* 269<sub>22</sub>; 377<sub>22</sub>; 468<sub>12</sub>; 571<sub>22</sub>; *reule and go back,* 588<sub>22</sub>; *reculyng and goyng backward,* 443<sub>22</sub>; *reuyell (!) and goo a back,* 340<sub>22</sub>; *recuyelle (!) and goo aback,* 350<sub>22</sub>; *reculid and wente aback,* 418<sub>22</sub>; 555<sub>22</sub>; *recuyld and put a back,* 485<sub>22</sub>
- Recuyell, *sb. gathering, collection, compilation,* 3<sub>2</sub>; 4<sub>22</sub>; *recula,* 502<sub>1</sub>; 701<sub>17</sub>; *reouyal or gad-*

<sup>1</sup> "Quil ny auoit deuant eulx resistance nulle qui ne fust en desroy," Caxton translates thus: "That afore them was no resistance ne raye holden!"

- ryng to geder, 6<sub>11</sub>; recuyell or  
 gadryng to geder, 296<sub>11</sub>  
 Recuyelle, *v. to gather*, recuyellid,  
 135<sub>11</sub>; recuyelle and gadre,  
 523<sub>2</sub>  
 Reda, *v. to read*, 6<sub>1</sub>; 7<sub>11</sub>; 83<sub>11</sub>;  
 redde, 4<sub>1</sub>; 678<sub>11</sub>  
 Redonde, *v. to redound*, 448<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 dounde, 412<sub>11</sub>; redounded,  
 259<sub>11</sub>  
 Redoubtyd, *pp. redoubted, feared*,  
 3<sub>11</sub>; 7<sub>1</sub>; redoughted, 5<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 doubtyd and drad, 145<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 doubted and drad, 263<sub>11</sub>  
 Redowblid, *pp. (l fr. redoubtez)*,  
 101<sub>1</sub>  
 Reduyse, *v. to bring back, reduce*,  
 481<sub>11</sub>; reduced and brought  
 into one, 53<sub>1</sub>  
 Redy and garnysshid, 390<sub>11</sub>; redy  
 and adoubed, 192<sub>11</sub>  
 Reed, *adj. red*, 13<sub>11</sub>; 78<sub>11</sub>  
 Refleccioned, *pp. (fr. reflectionnee)*,  
 312<sub>1</sub>  
 Refuge, *sb. refuge, protection*, 35<sub>11</sub>  
 Refreshid and renewed, 19<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 newed and fresshid, 334<sub>11</sub>  
 Regard and beholdyng, 138<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 gard and sight, 244<sub>11</sub>; 453<sub>11</sub>;  
 regarde and syghte, 621<sub>11</sub>; re-  
 gard and hede, 27<sub>1</sub>; no regarde  
 ner ensample, 99<sub>11</sub>  
 Regne, *sb. kingdom*, 14<sub>11</sub>; regnes,  
 9<sub>1</sub>; 86<sub>11</sub>; regne and kingdome,  
 87<sub>1</sub>; regnes and contrees, 215<sub>11</sub>  
 Reherce, *v. to tell, rehearse, reher-  
 cen (they told)*, 394<sub>11</sub>; reherced  
 and told, 97<sub>11</sub>  
 Rehersayll, *sb. rehearsal*, 453<sub>11</sub>;  
 rehersaylle, 245<sub>11</sub>  
 Reioye, reioysee, *v. to rejoice*,  
 reioye, 75<sub>11</sub>; 323<sub>11</sub>; reioised,  
 311<sub>11</sub>; 336<sub>11</sub>; 345<sub>11</sub>; reioysee,  
 372<sub>11</sub>; reioysen (*they rejoiced*),  
 438<sub>11</sub>; reioyed and glad, 388<sub>11</sub>  
 Relece and attempers, 206<sub>1</sub>  
 Releue, *v. to lift or raise up, to re-  
 lease*, 306<sub>11</sub>; 407<sub>1</sub>; releued,  
 220<sub>1</sub>; releuyd, 362<sub>11</sub>; 369<sub>1</sub>;  
 452<sub>11</sub>; 639<sub>11</sub>; 648<sub>11</sub>  
 Reluyse, *v. to shine, reluysing and*  
 shynyng, 452<sub>1</sub>; reiuised and  
 shoon, 371<sub>11</sub>  
 Relygion, *sb. consent*, 50<sub>11</sub>; 51<sub>11</sub>;  
 52<sub>11</sub>; 346<sub>11</sub>  
 Relygiousse woman, *sb. nun*, 53<sub>11</sub>;  
 relygiousse maydens, *nuns*, 53<sub>11</sub>  
 Remauldyt, *pp. (fr. remauldicte)*,  
 498<sub>11</sub>  
 Remede, *sb. remedy*, 22<sub>11</sub>; remedye,  
 13<sub>1</sub>; 56<sub>11</sub>; 448<sub>11</sub>; remedye ner  
 recowerance, 152<sub>11</sub>  
 Remembrance and memcrye,  
 426<sub>1</sub>; mynde and remembrance,  
 374<sub>11</sub>  
 Remette, *v. (fr. remettre)*, 204<sub>11</sub>;  
 remysed, 629<sub>11</sub>; 635<sub>11</sub>  
 Remeue, *v. (fr. remuer), to move*,  
 335<sub>1</sub>; 553<sub>1</sub>  
 Rendre and delyuere, 40<sub>1</sub>; rendre  
 and delyuere agayn, 513<sub>1</sub>; ren-  
 dre and deliuere, 289<sub>11</sub>; rendre  
 and yelde, 331<sub>11</sub>; 616<sub>1</sub>; rendre  
 and yelde agayn, 530<sub>1</sub>; rendred  
 and yelden, 31<sub>11</sub>  
 Renge, *sb. rank*, 462<sub>11</sub>; reuges,  
 260<sub>11</sub>; 355<sub>11</sub>  
 Renge, *v. to range, wander, roam*,  
 rengyd, 197<sub>11</sub>; renged, 150<sub>11</sub>;  
 188<sub>11</sub>; rengyd, 478<sub>11</sub>  
 Ronne, *v. to run*, 4<sub>11</sub>; 78<sub>11</sub>; 222<sub>11</sub>;  
 ranne, 78<sub>1</sub>; 661<sub>11</sub>; ran, 53<sub>1</sub>;  
 333<sub>11</sub>; ronne, 14<sub>11</sub>; 46<sub>11</sub>; 212<sub>1</sub>;  
 350<sub>11</sub>; 561<sub>1</sub>  
 Renomee, *sb. repute, renown*, 16<sub>11</sub>;  
 108<sub>11</sub>; 185<sub>11</sub>; renome, 61<sub>11</sub>; re-  
 nomee, 191<sub>11</sub>; renommed, *pp.*  
*renommed, reputed*, 86<sub>1</sub>  
 Renouelement, *sb. (fr. renouelle-  
 ment)*, 485<sub>11</sub>  
 Rente, *v. to rend, tear, inf.* 497<sub>11</sub>;  
 698<sub>1</sub>; rente, *pp.* 496<sub>11</sub>  
 Repayre, *sb. l way, march, route*,  
 514<sub>11</sub>  
 Repease, *v. to appease, repeasid*,  
 678<sub>11</sub>; 679<sub>1</sub>; 698<sub>11</sub>  
 Repelled, *pp. (fr. rappelle), called*  
*back*, 348<sub>11</sub>  
 Replenyshe, *v. to replenish, re-  
 plenysshid*, 532<sub>11</sub>; 631<sub>1</sub>; re-  
 plenesshid, 695<sub>11</sub>; remplisshid,  
 412<sub>11</sub>; 513<sub>1</sub>; remplenesshid, 421<sub>11</sub>

- Replete, *adj.* (of lustynes), 454<sub>m</sub>  
 Replicque, *v.* to reply, 528<sub>4</sub>; replicque ne reheroe, 206<sub>7</sub>  
 Replie a gayn,<sup>1</sup> *v.* 6<sub>m</sub>; replie agayn, 89<sub>11</sub>; repleye agayn, 235<sub>5</sub>; replie agaynst, 701<sub>m</sub>; replied and lyokende, 330<sub>m</sub>  
 Reposayll, *sb.* (fr. repostall), <sup>†</sup> resting place 448<sub>2</sub>  
 Reprerf. *sb.* reproof (fr. ver-goingne), 408<sub>m</sub>  
 Reprehende ne blame, 557<sub>4</sub>  
 Reprehension and castyng down, 49<sub>m</sub>  
 Reprachable wordes (1 fr. plusieurs reproches), 611<sub>11</sub>  
 Reprysid, *pt.* <sup>†</sup> dissuaded, 264<sub>m</sub>  
 Requestes and amonycions, 375<sub>4</sub>  
 Requyre and suplye, 215<sub>2</sub>; requyre and suplye, 7<sub>m</sub>; required or desired, 106<sub>m</sub>; requyred and desired, 222<sub>m</sub>  
 Resambld, resemble, *v.* to resemble, resambld, 543<sub>18</sub>; resembld and was lyke, 239<sub>18</sub>  
 Rescous, *sb.* rescue, deliverance, 157<sub>m</sub>; 449<sub>m</sub>; rescuse, 194<sub>m</sub>; rescows, 596<sub>m</sub>; rescowse, 627<sub>m</sub>; rescouse, 157<sub>5</sub>; 279<sub>18</sub>; 411<sub>m</sub>  
 Rescove and relene, 359<sub>m</sub>  
 Resiste and wythstande, 557<sub>7</sub>  
 Resistance and gaynsayng, 353<sub>m</sub>  
 Resplendant, *adj.* very splendid, shining brilliantly, 311<sub>m</sub>; 352<sub>2</sub>; resplendissant, 469<sub>m</sub>; 484<sub>7</sub>  
 Resplendishour, *sb.* resplendency, 119<sub>7</sub>; resplendour, 60<sub>m</sub>  
 Resseyue, *v.* to receive, 290<sub>5</sub>; 311<sub>m</sub>; receyuyd, 312<sub>7</sub>; 337<sub>m</sub>; resseyued, 81<sub>m</sub>; 332<sub>m</sub>; resseyuyd, 332<sub>12</sub>  
 Ressorte aback, 157<sub>4</sub>; resorte and go abacke, 99<sub>2</sub>; resorte agayn and go aback, 292<sub>14</sub>  
 Restablishe, *v.* to establish again, restore, restablisshed, 222<sub>7</sub>  
 Compare restorre, 652<sub>m</sub>  
 Retourne and comyng agayn, 494<sub>2</sub>; retournyng and comyng agayn, 329<sub>11</sub>  
 Retrayt, *sb.* retreat, signal for retiring from an engagement or to quarters, 80<sub>9</sub>; 201<sub>m</sub>  
 Reuersid,<sup>2</sup> *pp.* (1 fr. reuerie), 181<sub>m</sub>; reuersid and torned up so down, 259<sub>m</sub>  
 Revoque, *v.* to revoke, recall, 25<sub>12</sub>; revoked, 28<sub>m</sub>  
 Rewarded and amended, 396<sub>4</sub>  
 Reyned, reynyng. See rayne  
 Reyse, *v.* to raise, 301<sub>m</sub>; 409<sub>5</sub>; 470<sub>m</sub>; reyse and brake the syege, 379<sub>m</sub>  
 Rial, *adj.* royal, 15<sub>m</sub>; riall, 34<sub>11</sub>; 192<sub>m</sub>; ryal, 37<sub>16</sub>; ryall, 142<sub>m</sub>; 182<sub>16</sub>; 609<sub>m</sub>; royall, 182<sub>2</sub>; 194<sub>m</sub>; 428<sub>m</sub>  
 Riche and large, 112<sub>m</sub>  
 Richesses, *sb. pl.* riches, 51<sub>m</sub>; ryochesses, 82<sub>2</sub>; ryoches, 140<sub>m</sub>  
 Right, *adv.* exactly, very, 48<sub>m</sub>; 50<sub>12</sub>; 306<sub>m</sub>; ryght, 9<sub>m</sub>; 27<sub>m</sub>; 40<sub>12</sub>; etc.  
 Rightwis, *adj.* righteous, 49<sub>m</sub>; right wys, 49<sub>m</sub>  
 (In) Rigour (= fr. en rigeur), 343<sub>m</sub>; rygour and fiermes, 128<sub>m</sub>  
 Robbed and pyllid, 675<sub>7</sub>  
 Robberye and proye, 448<sub>7</sub>  
 Robbeur, *sb.* robber, thief, robbeur, 687<sub>7</sub>; robbours, 441<sub>17</sub>; robbeur and theef, 442<sub>7</sub>  
 Robe, roobe, *sb.* garment, clothing, roobe, 691<sub>5</sub>; robes, 692<sub>16</sub>; robes and garmetes, 262<sub>16</sub>; robes and garmetes, 321<sub>4</sub>; robes and gownes, 263<sub>7</sub>  
 Roche, *sb.* rock, 211<sub>m</sub>; 422<sub>m</sub>; rooche, 330<sub>2</sub>  
 Rochette, *sb.* rocket, i.e. a piece of wood used to blunt the end of a lance in a tournament, to prevent it from doing injury, rochetis (fr. rochets), 250<sub>17</sub>; rochettes of

<sup>1</sup> "Et aucuns en y a qui sahurten seulement a leurs particuliers liures," etc., Caxton translates: "And some ther be that replie a gayn their particuler bookes."

<sup>2</sup> "Peut estre plaine reuerie" corresponds to "may well be reuersid!!"

- tre or of wode (fr. roches de bois), 259<sub>2</sub>  
 Rodd, *sb.* rod (fr. verge), 45<sub>11</sub>  
 Rompure and brekyng, 488<sub>7</sub>  
 Rood tree, *sb.* Christ's cross, 702<sub>10</sub>  
 Roof, *pt.* (fr. ruoit) ? from to rise = tear, break, 219<sub>2</sub>  
 Rore, *v.* to roar, 332<sub>22</sub>; rebruyre and rore, 338<sub>11</sub>; roryng and cryng, 299<sub>22</sub>  
 Roslar, *sb.* (fr. roseau), reed, 21<sub>22</sub>  
 Rost, *v.* to roast, 38<sub>22</sub>; rosted, 43<sub>22</sub>; rostid, 40<sub>22</sub>; rostid and soden, 40<sub>22</sub>  
 Rote, *sb.* root, 446<sub>10</sub>; roote, 446<sub>10</sub>  
 Roted, *pp.* rooted, 12<sub>22</sub>  
 Route, *sb.* rout, company, routes, 76<sub>22</sub>; rowte, 294<sub>22</sub>; rowtes, 35<sub>22</sub>; 362<sub>22</sub>  
 Rowe and sayle, 198<sub>22</sub>; rowed and saylled, 403<sub>10</sub> See saylle and rowe  
 Rowhe, *adj.* (fr. valu), 218<sub>11</sub>  
 Royalte,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* royalty, 439<sub>21</sub>  
 Royame, *sb.* kingdom, realm, 4<sub>22</sub>; 33<sub>22</sub>; royames,<sup>2</sup> 94<sub>22</sub>; 249<sub>22</sub>; royalmes, 15<sub>22</sub>  
 Rude and dulle, 426<sub>10</sub>; rude and brute, 96<sub>10</sub>  
 Ryde, *v.* to ride, 144<sub>11</sub>; ride, 256<sub>22</sub>; rood, 368<sub>10</sub>; 530<sub>22</sub>; 577<sub>22</sub>; ryden, 144<sub>22</sub>; ridyng and goyng, 231<sub>22</sub>  
 Ryfled, *pt.* of to rife, 286<sub>10</sub>  
 Ryse, *v.* to rise, 271<sub>22</sub>; roos, 40<sub>22</sub>; rose, 41<sub>22</sub>; roose, 56<sub>22</sub>; 238<sub>22</sub>; roos, 214<sub>22</sub>; 673<sub>22</sub>; ryse and stande vp, 435<sub>22</sub>  
 Rysshis, *sb.* pl. rushes, 149<sub>17</sub>  
 Rynage, *sb.* shore, bank, 18<sub>22</sub>; 37<sub>22</sub>; 188<sub>22</sub>; 320<sub>22</sub>; 570<sub>22</sub>; 690<sub>22</sub>  
 Ryner or grete lake, 47<sub>10</sub>  
 Ruine, *sb.* ruin, 49<sub>22</sub>; ruyme and perdition, 40<sub>22</sub>; ruyme and trouble, 92<sub>11</sub>  
 SABATH and haliday, 42<sub>22</sub>  
 Sacrefyoe, *v.* to sacrifice, 307<sub>22</sub>; sacrefised, 301<sub>22</sub>; 308<sub>22</sub>; sacrefye, 303<sub>22</sub>; sacryfied, 303<sub>22</sub>  
 Sadly and sore, 269<sub>22</sub>  
 Saafte, *sb.* safety, 401<sub>10</sub>; 583<sub>22</sub>; 665<sub>22</sub>  
 Sage and prudent, 510<sub>22</sub>; sage and wyse, 526<sub>22</sub>; sage debonayre, 544<sub>10</sub>  
 Salewe, *v.* to salute, greet, 352<sub>22</sub>; salwed, 253<sub>17</sub>; 326<sub>22</sub>; 352<sub>22</sub>; salued, 233<sub>22</sub>; salnyed, 235<sub>22</sub>; grette and salued, 484<sub>11</sub>  
 Salute and helthe, 275<sub>22</sub>  
 Sartaynly, *adv.* certainly, 116<sub>22</sub>  
 Saue and rescowe, 76<sub>10</sub>  
 Saucour, *sb.* saviour, 549<sub>22</sub>  
 Saul, *adj.* safe, 106<sub>22</sub>; 117<sub>22</sub>; 124<sub>22</sub>; 172<sub>22</sub>; 605<sub>22</sub>; saulf, 217<sub>22</sub>  
 Saufconduyt, *sb.* safe conduct, 183<sub>11</sub>; 184<sub>22</sub>  
 Sauns faulte, without fail, 478<sub>22</sub>  
 Sauid, *pt.* saved, 37<sub>22</sub>  
 Saye and reporte, 305<sub>22</sub>; saye ner expresse, 121<sub>22</sub>; sayd and spoken, 553<sub>22</sub>; saiden (they said), 219<sub>22</sub>; 246<sub>22</sub>; sayden, 45<sub>22</sub>; 311<sub>22</sub>  
 Saylle and rowe, 170<sub>22</sub>; (salle, 347<sub>22</sub>); saylyd and wente, 320<sub>22</sub>; sayllyng and rowyng, 141<sub>22</sub>; 221<sub>22</sub>; sayled and rowed, 139<sub>22</sub>; 214<sub>22</sub>; 265<sub>22</sub>; 357<sub>22</sub>; 408<sub>22</sub>  
 Sayntuaries, *sb.* pl. sanctuaries, 664<sub>11</sub>  
 Scaffolde, *sb.* stands, raised platforms, 313<sub>22</sub>; scaffolde and places, 252<sub>22</sub>  
 Scales and skynnes, 210<sub>22</sub>  
 Scarce, *sb.* scarcity, 601<sub>17</sub>; skarcete, 322<sub>22</sub>  
 Scarmoushe, *v.* to skirmish, scarmoushe, 383<sub>22</sub>; scarmoushid, 383<sub>22</sub>; scarmoushyd, 354<sub>22</sub>; skarmowahyng, 345<sub>22</sub>; skarmousch, 288<sub>22</sub>

<sup>1</sup> "Inpacyens of his vahapp. and castyng oute of roaylte" (i.e., being expelled from his kingdom!) corresponds to "impacient de son malheur" in the French text.

<sup>2</sup> "Canons bombardes ne grosses artilleries nestoient point encoire en regne" is translated by Caxton thus: "Gonnes bombardes ne grete artillerie was none in thys tyme in the royames!"

- Scarmuche, *sb.* (fr. escarmuche), *skirmish*, 193<sub>7</sub>; 194<sub>8</sub>; scarmusche, 355<sub>8</sub>; 404<sub>10</sub>; scarmouche, 383<sub>2</sub>; skarmusche, 157<sub>2</sub>; 174<sub>4</sub>; 350<sub>1</sub>; skarmuche and tempeste, 136<sub>10</sub>
- Scowre. *See* seure.
- Schamefly, *adv.* (fr. hontusement), *shamefully*, 27<sub>20</sub>
- Sche, *pron. she*, 5<sub>20</sub>
- Scole, *sb. school*, 11<sub>1</sub>
- Scoliers and estudents, 426<sub>20</sub>; (scollers, 396<sub>1</sub>)
- Scyences lyberall, 426<sub>10</sub>
- Sease, *v. to seize*, 51<sub>20</sub>; seasid, 253<sub>20</sub>; 354<sub>10</sub>; sease, (to put in possession), 693<sub>1</sub>
- Seasyng, *sb.* (fr. saisine) *seisin*, 11<sub>20</sub>
- Seohar, *sb. seeker, searcher* 119<sub>10</sub>
- See, seen, *v. to see*, 34<sub>10</sub>; 441<sub>7</sub>; seeth, 13<sub>11</sub>; seyng, 23<sub>10</sub>; ye se, 41<sub>20</sub>; sawe, 18<sub>14</sub>; 30<sub>21</sub>; 34<sub>14</sub>; 46<sub>20</sub>; seen, *pp.* 51<sub>11</sub>; sighe, 46<sub>4</sub>; signe, 28<sub>1</sub>; sygne, 48<sub>17</sub>; seygh, 376<sub>10</sub>; see ner parocoyue, 164<sub>4</sub>; sawe and behelde, 541<sub>3</sub>; sawe and toke heed, 95<sub>4</sub>; seen and behelde, 281<sub>10</sub>
- Seke, seche, *v. to seek*, 69<sub>8</sub>; 70<sub>10</sub>; 477<sub>27</sub>; sechest, 478<sub>10</sub>; secheth, 442<sub>8</sub>; sechyne (they seek), 469<sub>10</sub>; seken, 35<sub>20</sub>; seeken (they seek), 331<sub>20</sub>; sechyng, 110<sub>14</sub>; soughte, 469<sub>10</sub>; seke and feche (fr. enuoyer querre), 61<sub>20</sub>; seke and requyre, 310<sub>1</sub>; seching and pourchas, 267<sub>10</sub>; seekyng and serching, 197<sub>8</sub>
- Seke, *adj. sick invalid*, seke or ouyll, 35<sub>17</sub>
- Sekenes, *sb. sickness, illness*, 11<sub>4</sub>; sekene and maladye, 273<sub>20</sub>
- Semblable, *adj. like*, 26<sub>11</sub>; 35<sub>20</sub>; 115<sub>7</sub>; 166<sub>8</sub>; 208<sub>11</sub>; 215<sub>8</sub>; 481<sub>20</sub>; semblable or lyke, 428<sub>8</sub>; semblably, 13<sub>20</sub>; 68<sub>8</sub>; in semblable wise, 194<sub>10</sub>; 463<sub>10</sub>; semblably or in lyke wyse, 282<sub>20</sub>
- Semblant, *sb. semblance, show, aspect*, 41<sub>20</sub>; 65<sub>20</sub>; semblante, 430<sub>4</sub>; semblautes, 204<sub>1</sub>; semblant ne signe, 456<sub>10</sub>; semblant and lykenes, 550<sub>8</sub>
- Semblance, *sb. appearance*, 488<sub>17</sub>; semblance and likenes, 237<sub>4</sub>; 245<sub>11</sub>; 396<sub>20</sub>; 426<sub>20</sub>; liknes and figures, 237<sub>8</sub>
- Sende and renuoye, 558<sub>10</sub>; 559<sub>20</sub>
- Senewe, *sb. pl. sinawe*, 43<sub>20</sub>
- Sente and sauour, 41<sub>10</sub>
- Sentence and substance, 4<sub>10</sub>; sentence and Iugement, 204<sub>17</sub>; sentences and condempnacions, 146<sub>10</sub>
- Sepulore, *sb. sepulchre*, 669<sub>20</sub>; 670<sub>20</sub>; sepulores, 402<sub>10</sub>; sepulture, 402<sub>17</sub>; sepultures, 402<sub>10</sub>
- Serche, *v. to search*, 15<sub>10</sub>; 36<sub>10</sub>; 186<sub>20</sub>; serchyng 82<sub>11</sub>; 219<sub>11</sub>; serched, 81<sub>4</sub>; serchid, 51<sub>20</sub>; 213<sub>10</sub>
- Serements and othes, 488<sub>10</sub>
- Seremonye, *sb. ceremony*, 186<sub>8</sub>
- Serpent Inhumayn, 392<sub>10</sub>
- Sertayn, *adj. certain*, 116<sub>14</sub>; 521<sub>20</sub>
- Seruage, *sb. servitude, service*, 280<sub>20</sub>; seruage and myserye, 342<sub>20</sub>; seruage and thraldom, 289<sub>8</sub>
- Seruant, *sb. servant, seruant*, 637<sub>1</sub>; seruant and vassale, 525<sub>20</sub>; seruant and varlet, 115<sub>11</sub>
- Seruytude and thraldom, 276<sub>7</sub>; seruytude and bondage, 611<sub>20</sub>
- Sesse, sece, *v. to cease*, 275<sub>20</sub>; 324<sub>10</sub>; cesse, 324<sub>10</sub>; ceasing, 324<sub>10</sub>; sece, 14<sub>10</sub>; 49<sub>1</sub>; seasyng, 615<sub>20</sub>; seced, 273<sub>20</sub>
- Sette, *v. to set, settle*, 33<sub>10</sub>; sette, 4<sub>10</sub>; setted, 46<sub>10</sub>; setting and rengyng, 288<sub>8</sub>; sette them in araye and renged, 361<sub>20</sub>; sette and cowhed, 292<sub>20</sub>; setted and entuned, 324<sub>10</sub>; all exousacions set a part, (fr. cessans) 146<sub>20</sub>
- Seur, *adj. sure*, 86<sub>8</sub>; 108<sub>20</sub>; 150<sub>20</sub>; seure, 126<sub>20</sub>; 319<sub>20</sub>; sure, 119<sub>8</sub>; scowre, 577<sub>20</sub>; sewr, 421<sub>20</sub>; sewer, 450<sub>20</sub>
- Sewerte, *sb. surety*, 655<sub>8</sub>; seuerte, 96<sub>8</sub>
- Seygnourye, *sb. lordship*, 616<sub>20</sub>; seignourye, 591<sub>20</sub>; seignourie, 436<sub>20</sub>; seygnourye and lord-

- shippe, 84<sub>m</sub>; 302<sub>m</sub>; 457<sub>m</sub>; seignouries and lordshippis, 436<sub>m</sub>  
 Shall, *v.* 146<sub>s</sub>; thou shalt, 146<sub>m</sub>; thou shall, 13<sub>s</sub>; schall, 7<sub>m</sub>; shall we? 44<sub>m</sub>; he shold, 14<sub>s</sub>; they shuld, 37<sub>s</sub>; shall or ought, 87<sub>m</sub>  
 Shame and vergoyne, 240<sub>s</sub>; 369<sub>s</sub>  
 Shamefast, *adj.* modest, 55<sub>s</sub>  
 Shapp, *sb.* shape, form, 542<sub>m</sub>  
 Sharpe and flers, 246<sub>m</sub>; sharpe and poynant, 664<sub>s</sub>  
 Shede, *v.* to shed, 307<sub>s</sub>; shedde, 156<sub>m</sub>; 459<sub>m</sub>; 624<sub>m</sub>; 662<sub>m</sub>; shedd, 307<sub>s</sub>; 354<sub>m</sub>; 460<sub>m</sub>; shedde and spradde, 419<sub>s</sub>  
 Sheef, *sb.* sheep, 250<sub>s</sub>  
 Sheep and moutons, 263<sub>s</sub>; 283<sub>m</sub>; 284<sub>m</sub>  
 Shette, *v.* to shut, 103<sub>s</sub>; shette, 233<sub>s</sub>; 281<sub>m</sub>; shytted, 574<sub>m</sub>; shitte, 103<sub>s</sub>; 107<sub>m</sub>; 120<sub>m</sub>; shette, 125<sub>s</sub>; 202<sub>s</sub>; shytte, 35<sub>m</sub>; 163<sub>m</sub>; 494<sub>m</sub>; shette and closed, 108<sub>m</sub>; 650<sub>m</sub>; shitte and kepte, 103<sub>s</sub>  
 Shewe, *v.* to show, 249<sub>s</sub>; 302<sub>m</sub>; shewde, 159<sub>s</sub>; shewid, 258<sub>m</sub>; shewyd, 296<sub>s</sub>; shewe or make semblaunt, 72<sub>m</sub>; shewe and manifeste, 244<sub>s</sub>; shewyng and puttyng outa, 253<sub>m</sub>; shoke and lugged, 253<sub>m</sub>  
 Sholdres, *sb. pl.* shoulders, 79<sub>m</sub>  
 Shorting and lassing, 240<sub>m</sub>  
 Shote, *v.* to shoot, 256<sub>m</sub>; shotte, 147<sub>m</sub>; 256<sub>m</sub>; shoten, 621<sub>s</sub>; shotte and drewe, 247<sub>m</sub>; 376<sub>m</sub>  
*See* drawe  
 Shoter and drawer of a bowe, 506<sub>s</sub>  
 Shotte, *sb.* shot, 147<sub>m</sub>; shotte and stones, 98<sub>m</sub>  
 Shoures, *sb. pl.* (1 fr. laidures), 39<sub>s</sub>  
 Shryche and crye, 129<sub>m</sub>; shryked and cryed, 485<sub>m</sub>  
 Shrynke, *v.* to shrink, shronke, 497<sub>m</sub>; shronken, 43<sub>m</sub>  
 Shyne, *v.* to shine, 247<sub>m</sub>; 267<sub>m</sub>; shone, 247<sub>m</sub>; 267<sub>m</sub>; shone and were bryght, 124<sub>m</sub>; relused and shoon, 371<sub>m</sub>; bryght and shyng, 452<sub>m</sub>; relusing and shyng, 452<sub>m</sub>  
 Shyppe or galeye, 338<sub>s</sub>  
 Siege, *sb.* seat, 145<sub>m</sub>; sieges, 547<sub>s</sub>  
 Siege, *sb.* the siege, 542<sub>m</sub>  
 Siewe, *v.* to follow, stewed, 211<sub>s</sub>; 260<sub>s</sub>; 468<sub>m</sub>; sued, 47<sub>m</sub>; 80<sub>s</sub>; 138<sub>m</sub>; sewe and folowe, 336<sub>s</sub>  
 Siewte, *sb.* suite, following, company, retinue, 368<sub>m</sub>; sute, 194<sub>m</sub>; 274<sub>s</sub>  
 Simylacre, *sb.* image, 85<sub>m</sub>  
 Sithe, *sb.* scythe, 419<sub>m</sub>  
 Sitte, *v.* to sit, 237<sub>s</sub>; sytte, 56<sub>s</sub>; sytyng, 110<sub>m</sub>; satte, 213<sub>s</sub>; 334<sub>s</sub>; sat, 236<sub>m</sub>  
 Slaughter and occision, 462<sub>m</sub>  
 Slears, *sb.* men who slay, 77<sub>s</sub>  
 Slee, *v.* to slay, strike, beat, kill, 23<sub>m</sub>; 35<sub>m</sub>; sle, 25<sub>m</sub>; 59<sub>m</sub>; slewe, 297<sub>s</sub>; 401<sub>s</sub>; slowe, 77<sub>s</sub>; 222<sub>s</sub>; 290<sub>m</sub>; 350<sub>m</sub>; slayn, 22<sub>m</sub>; 35<sub>m</sub>; 52<sub>m</sub>; slec and smyte, 627<sub>m</sub>; aleyng and betyng, 646<sub>m</sub>; aleyng and kyllyng, 350<sub>m</sub>; slewe and hurte, 637<sub>m</sub>; slewe and hurted, 640<sub>m</sub>; 648<sub>s</sub>; slowe and hurte, 66<sub>m</sub>; slayn and dede, 339<sub>s</sub>  
 Slepyng and reste, 166<sub>s</sub>  
 Slide, *v.* to slide, glide, slide, 294<sub>s</sub>  
 Skaroota. *See* scaroota  
 Skarmoushe, skarmuseh. *See* scarmoushe, scarmuche  
 Sklaundres, *sb. pl.* slanders, 511<sub>m</sub>  
 Skynnys or hides, 297<sub>s</sub>  
 Smale and lytyll, 428<sub>m</sub>  
 Smytars, *sb.* people who smite, 77<sub>s</sub>  
 Smyte, *v.* to smite, strike, smote, 306<sub>m</sub>; smeton, 111<sub>s</sub>; smeten, 46<sub>m</sub>; 79<sub>s</sub>; 332<sub>s</sub>; smyten, 354<sub>m</sub>; smyte and laye on, 375<sub>m</sub>; smyte and leye on, 462<sub>s</sub>; smyte and fyghte and assaile, 150<sub>m</sub>; smytyng and tempestiong, 225<sub>m</sub>  
 Smoke and fumes, 449<sub>s</sub>  
 Socoure and helpe, 228<sub>m</sub>  
 Socours and ayde, 209<sub>s</sub>; socours and helpe, 338<sub>m</sub>  
 Soden and bruyld, 497<sub>m</sub>  
 Sodenly, *adv.* suddenly, 43<sub>m</sub>

- Softe nor attempre, 26<sub>u</sub>  
 Softly and fauourably, 253<sub>m</sub>  
 Solace, *sb.* solace, 641<sub>u</sub>; solaae, 311<sub>m</sub>; solaa, 420<sub>u</sub>; soulas, 88<sub>m</sub>; soulas ne comfort, 328<sub>m</sub>  
 Solemyte, *sb.* solemnity, 85<sub>u</sub>  
 Solempne, *adj.* solemn, 85<sub>u</sub>; solempny, 52<sub>m</sub>  
 Solytayre, *adj.* solitary, 424<sub>m</sub>  
 Somacion, *sb.* summons, 145<sub>m</sub>; 222<sub>m</sub>  
 Somance, *sb.* summons, 73<sub>m</sub>  
 Some, *sb.* sum, 678<sub>m</sub>  
 Somene, somone, *v.* to summon, 73<sub>m</sub>; 93<sub>m</sub>; 222<sub>u</sub>; someneth, 146<sub>u</sub>; sommend, 290<sub>m</sub>; somoned, 481<sub>m</sub>  
 Somette or toppe, 414<sub>m</sub>; sommet or toppe, 615<sub>u</sub>  
 Sone, *adv.* soon, 491<sub>m</sub>; sonner, 92<sub>u</sub>; 127<sub>u</sub>; 229<sub>m</sub>; sonnest, 477<sub>m</sub>; 594<sub>u</sub>  
 Sonne, *sb.* the sun, 194<sub>u</sub>  
 Sonne, *sb.* son, 257<sub>u</sub>; sone, 22<sub>m</sub>; 262<sub>m</sub>; soones, 22<sub>m</sub>; 146<sub>u</sub>  
 Soope, *v.* to sup, 458<sub>m</sub>  
 Sophyme, *sb.* sophism, 396<sub>u</sub>; sophymes, 391<sub>m</sub>; sofymes, 391<sub>m</sub>  
 Sorcerye and wycohe craft, 237<sub>m</sub>  
 Sore, *adj. and adv.* sore, grievous, *ad.* very much, 13<sub>u</sub>; 22<sub>m</sub>; 76<sub>m</sub>; sore and strongly, 294<sub>u</sub>; sore and hard, 135<sub>m</sub>; 418<sub>m</sub>  
 Sorow and angre, 40<sub>u</sub>; sorowe and anoye, 473<sub>u</sub>; sorowe and dishonour, 653<sub>m</sub>; sorowe and anguysh, 326<sub>u</sub>; sorow and drede, 78<sub>u</sub>; sorowe and lamentacion, 614<sub>u</sub>; sorowes and fantasies, 87<sub>u</sub>  
 Sorowfull and desolate, 95<sub>u</sub>; sorowfull<sup>1</sup> and woo begon, 360<sub>u</sub>  
 Sorte and lotte, 273<sub>m</sub>; 275<sub>m</sub>; 276<sub>u</sub>  
 Sortes, *sb.* turns, tricks, 237<sub>m</sub>; charmes and sortes, 178<sub>u</sub>; 233<sub>u</sub>  
 Sortyd (fr. sortistes), 12<sub>u</sub>  
 Sory and dolant, 448<sub>m</sub>; sory and sore troublid, 88<sub>m</sub>  
 Souenance, *sb.* keepsake, remembrance (fr. souvenir), 456<sub>u</sub>; souenance and remembrance, 268<sub>u</sub>  
 Souerayn, *adj.* sovereign, superior, excellent, 75<sub>u</sub>; 211<sub>m</sub>; 237<sub>u</sub>; 385<sub>u</sub>; souerainly, 149<sub>m</sub>; souerainly, 177<sub>u</sub>; 469<sub>u</sub>; souerainly, 179<sub>m</sub>  
 Souke, *sb.* milk drawn from the breast, 12<sub>u</sub>; 138<sub>m</sub>  
 Souke, *v.* to suck, 25<sub>u</sub>  
 Souldees, *sb.* pl. wages, hire, 199<sub>u</sub>  
 Souldiour, *sb.* soldier, 199<sub>u</sub>; 354<sub>u</sub>; 357<sub>m</sub>; souldyour, 268<sub>m</sub>; 357<sub>m</sub>; sowdyours, 189<sub>u</sub>; 198<sub>u</sub>  
 Sonn, *sb.* sound, 31<sub>u</sub>; sown, 31<sub>u</sub>; sownes, 542<sub>m</sub>; sowne and bruyt, 118<sub>u</sub>; soun and noyse, 108<sub>m</sub>  
 Soudre, *v.* to rise, 218<sub>u</sub>; soudre and ryse, 252<sub>m</sub>; soured and aroose, 526<sub>u</sub>; soured and aroos, 245<sub>u</sub>  
 Sousprysed, *See* suppressed  
 Soustayned and spared, 160<sub>m</sub>  
 Sowdane, *sb.* pl. sultans, 428<sub>u</sub>  
 Sown, *pp.* sown, 244<sub>m</sub>; 245<sub>u</sub>  
 Sowne and blowe, 349<sub>m</sub>  
 Space ne leyzer, 331<sub>u</sub>  
 Sparole, *sb.* spark, little spark, sparkle (fr. étincelle), 374<sub>m</sub>; sparklis, 393<sub>u</sub>; sparklis (fr. remansilles), 491<sub>u</sub>; sparkles of loue (fr. remansilles de souuenir), 52<sub>u</sub>  
 Sparoled, *pp.* (fr. espars), 620<sub>m</sub>; sparklid (fr. espars), 364<sub>u</sub>; sparklid (fr. esgares), 489<sub>u</sub>; sparklid abroad (fr. esparidient), 175<sub>u</sub>; 307<sub>u</sub>  
 Sparpelid, *pt.* (fr. esparpillier), 152<sub>u</sub> *Compare* disparole  
 Spasme or swowne, 20<sub>m</sub>; 492<sub>m</sub>  
 Spede, *v.* to speed, 258<sub>u</sub>; 268<sub>u</sub>; 311<sub>u</sub>; sped, 231<sub>u</sub>; spedde, 73<sub>u</sub>; 228<sub>u</sub>; sped, 161<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "Athlas fut pense de la playe quil auoit en la teste" by "Athlas was sorowfull and woo begon of the wounde that he had in the heed!"

- Spake, *v.* to speak, spake, 54<sub>m</sub>; 109<sub>m</sub>; spack, 58<sub>m</sub>; 95<sub>m</sub>; spacke, 108<sub>m</sub>; 522<sub>m</sub>; spoke, 660<sub>m</sub>; spakyng and oomyng, 425<sub>m</sub>; spack and sayd, 556<sub>m</sub>.
- Spokinges, *sb. pl.* (fr. parlors), 122<sub>m</sub>.
- Speryt, *sb.* spirit, mind, 27<sub>s</sub>; spyrite, 420<sub>m</sub>; spirytes, 42<sub>m</sub>; 375<sub>m</sub>; esperite, 316<sub>m</sub>.
- Spies, *sb. pl.* 74<sub>m</sub>; spyes, 74<sub>m</sub>; espyes, 75<sub>s</sub>.
- Spille, *v.* to spill, 105<sub>s</sub>; spyll, 22<sub>m</sub>; spild, 77<sub>m</sub>.
- Splayed = displayed, 187<sub>m</sub>.
- Splendure, *sb.* splendour, brightness, 60<sub>m</sub>; (resplendour, 60<sub>m</sub>).
- Spored, *pt.* spurred, 368<sub>m</sub>.
- Sponsid. *See* spouse.
- Spreed, *v.* to spread, 308<sub>m</sub>; sprad, 9<sub>s</sub>; 191<sub>s</sub>; spradde, 264<sub>m</sub>; 559<sub>m</sub>; 615<sub>m</sub>; sprad, 308<sub>m</sub>; spradde, 246<sub>s</sub>; 395<sub>m</sub>; spraded, 19<sub>s</sub>.
- Sprynge, *v.* to leap, spring, 330<sub>m</sub>; sprange, 218<sub>s</sub>; sprongen, 300<sub>s</sub>.
- Spynne or torned spyndell, 194<sub>s</sub>.
- Staffe and guysarme, 157<sub>m</sub>.
- Stagne, *sb.* stagnant pool, 650<sub>m</sub>; stagne or riuer, 38<sub>m</sub>.
- Standardes and penons (fr. estandars penons), 199<sub>m</sub>.
- Stande, *v.* to stand, 414<sub>s</sub>; stand, 368<sub>m</sub>; stant (fr. stet), 33<sub>m</sub>; stante, 177<sub>m</sub>; stondesth, 397<sub>m</sub>; stode, 188<sub>s</sub>; 409<sub>m</sub>; stood, 229<sub>s</sub>; 247<sub>s</sub>; stande and abide, 247<sub>m</sub>.
- Statue or ymage, 366<sub>s</sub>; statues and ymages, 223<sub>m</sub>; 402<sub>s</sub>.
- Stede and place, 447<sub>m</sub>.
- Stedfast and poysyng, 9<sub>s</sub>.
- Stedy, *sb.* avail, 300<sub>m</sub>; andueld or stedy, 434<sub>m</sub>.
- Steel, *sb.* 479<sub>m</sub>; steel (=1 fr. trenchant), 160<sub>m</sub>.
- Steer or gouernail, 168<sub>m</sub>.
- Stele, *v.* to steal, stole, 440<sub>m</sub>; staall, 443<sub>m</sub>; stolen, 441<sub>m</sub>; 445<sub>s</sub>.
- Sternes and helmes, 171<sub>s</sub>.
- Sterres, *sb. pl.* stars, 128<sub>m</sub>.
- Steyres, *sb. pl.* stairs, steps, 333<sub>s</sub>; steyers or grees, 330<sub>s</sub>; steyres and degrees, 333<sub>m</sub>.
- Stok, *sb.* (fr. estoc), 217<sub>m</sub>.
- Stone or syment, 107<sub>m</sub>.
- Stoor, *sb.* store, stock, provision, to set little store, to think little of, 282<sub>m</sub>; 486<sub>m</sub>.
- Storme and tormente, 171<sub>m</sub>.
- Stoupe, *v.* to stoop, 79<sub>m</sub>.
- Stour, *sb.* conflict, commotion, agitation, 210<sub>m</sub>; stoure, 640<sub>m</sub>; stowr, 645<sub>m</sub>; stowre, 609<sub>s</sub>; 648<sub>m</sub>.
- Stracchid, *pp.* stretched, 390<sub>m</sub>.
- Strangle. *See* estrange.
- Strangler. *See* estranger.
- Strayt, *sb.* strait, narrow pass, 144<sub>m</sub>; 147<sub>s</sub>.
- Strayt, *adj.* narrow, strict, 143<sub>m</sub>; 114<sub>m</sub>; 116<sub>m</sub>; 490<sub>s</sub>; strayte and narrow, 422<sub>m</sub>; strayt and nyghe, 250<sub>m</sub>.
- Stredes, *sb. pl.* strides, steps, 256<sub>m</sub>.
- Strenges, *sb. pl.* strings, cords, 326<sub>m</sub>.
- Strength and force, 242<sub>m</sub>; 334<sub>m</sub>; strength and myght, 334<sub>m</sub>; 463<sub>m</sub>; strength and frayes, 193<sub>m</sub>; strength and prowess, 210<sub>m</sub>; strength and puyssance, 365<sub>m</sub>; strength and vigour, 195<sub>m</sub>; strength and vertu, 266<sub>s</sub>; 278<sub>s</sub>; strengthes and courages, 223<sub>m</sub>.
- Strife, *v.* to strive, strof, 33<sub>m</sub>; stroof, 34<sub>s</sub>.
- Stronge, *adj.* 451<sub>s</sub>; strounger, 275<sub>s</sub>; strengere and puissant, 321<sub>s</sub>; strengeste, 255<sub>m</sub>; 277<sub>m</sub>; strengest, 105<sub>m</sub>; 560<sub>m</sub>; strong and deliuer, 255<sub>m</sub>; strong and myghty, 247<sub>m</sub>; 462<sub>m</sub>; strong and puyssant, 76<sub>m</sub>; 200<sub>m</sub>; 248<sub>m</sub>; 263<sub>m</sub>; 371<sub>m</sub>; 406<sub>m</sub>; 505<sub>s</sub>.
- Strook, *sb.* stroke, 76<sub>s</sub>; strokes, 76<sub>m</sub>; strookes, 76<sub>s</sub>; strokes and foynes, 259<sub>m</sub>; strokes and horions, 78<sub>s</sub>.
- Stryf, *sb.* strife, 46<sub>m</sub>; stryff, 377<sub>m</sub>; stryfl and debate, 74<sub>m</sub>; strif or tanchon, 521<sub>m</sub>.



- Styfemoder, *sb.* (fr. *marrastre*),  
*stepmother*, 83<sub>m</sub>; *stepmoder*,  
 304<sub>11</sub>; 348<sub>12</sub>. *Compare* Marterar  
 Styllend and dropped, 615<sub>11</sub>  
 Styllly and prynele, 666<sub>1</sub>  
 Styntie, *v.* to *stint, cease*, 390<sub>1</sub>  
 Subdue and ouarcome, 398<sub>11</sub>;  
 subdued and subluged, 501<sub>1</sub>  
 Subget, *sb.* *subject*, 483<sub>m</sub>; sub-  
 gette, 509<sub>m</sub>; sugettie, 367<sub>11</sub>;  
 subgettes, 523<sub>11</sub>  
 Submette, *submytte*, *v.* to *submit*,  
 367<sub>1</sub>; 603<sub>m</sub>; *submyteth*, 217<sub>11</sub>;  
*submysed*, 52<sub>1</sub>; 521<sub>m</sub>; *sub-*  
*mysid* and *constrayned*, 255<sub>1</sub>  
 Subtylte, *sb.* *subtilyty*, 185<sub>11</sub>; 229<sub>m</sub>;  
*subtyllesse*, 384<sub>11</sub>  
 Subuerte and destroye, 12<sub>1</sub>  
 Sue, *v.* to *follow, sued*, 47<sub>11</sub>; 80<sub>1</sub>;  
 138<sub>11</sub>; *sewe* and *folowe*, 336<sub>1</sub>  
*Compare* siewe  
 Suffiance, *sb.* *sufficiency*, 412<sub>m</sub>;  
*souffiance*, 20<sub>1</sub>  
 Suffisant, *adj.* *sufficient*, 135<sub>11</sub>  
 Suffrages, *sb. pl.* *prayers, requests*,  
 217<sub>m</sub>; *suffragies*, 217<sub>11</sub>  
 Suffre and bere, 142<sub>1</sub>; *suffre* and  
*endure*, 216<sub>11</sub>; *suffre ne abide*,  
 555<sub>11</sub>; *suffren* (*they suffer*), 44<sub>m</sub>  
 Superfluyte of the haboundance  
 272<sub>1</sub>  
 Supplye, *v.* to *supplicate*, 487<sub>m</sub>;  
 503<sub>1</sub>; *requyre* and *supplye*, 7<sub>m</sub>  
 Supposed and leuyd, 86<sub>11</sub>  
 Supprysed, *pp.* 676<sub>m</sub>; *supprised*  
 and *surmounted*, 227<sub>m</sub>; *sous-*  
*prysed*, 130<sub>m</sub>  
 Surhaboundance, *sb.* *superabund-*  
*ance*, 275<sub>11</sub>  
 Suspicion, *sb.* *suspicion*, 13<sub>11</sub>; 90<sub>1</sub>  
 Suster, *sb.* *sister*, 5<sub>11</sub>; *susters*, 15<sub>11</sub>  
 Sute. *See* siewte  
 Swalowe, *sb.* (*fr.* *abisme*), 123<sub>11</sub>;  
 186<sub>11</sub>; *swolowe*, 218<sub>11</sub>; *swalwe*,  
 56<sub>11</sub>; *swolowe* or *abisme*, 218<sub>1</sub>  
*Compare* abisme  
 Swallowed, 218<sub>m</sub>; *swalghed*,  
 278<sub>m</sub>; *swalowed* and *englowted*  
 275<sub>m</sub>; *swalghed* or *englowted*,  
 280<sub>1</sub>  
 Swelle, *v.* to *swell*, 359<sub>1</sub>; *swellyng*  
 (= *fr.* *bouillonant*), 35<sub>m</sub>; *swol-*  
*lyn* and *grete bolned*, 330<sub>m</sub>  
 Swerdes and glayues, 408<sub>m</sub>  
 Swere, *v.* to *swear, sware*, 37<sub>1</sub>;  
 56<sub>m</sub>; 324<sub>11</sub>; 353<sub>m</sub>; *swore*, 14<sub>m</sub>;  
 65<sub>m</sub>; 68<sub>m</sub>; 348<sub>m</sub>; *sworne*, 18<sub>11</sub>;  
*sworn*, 348<sub>m</sub>; *sworen*, 61<sub>m</sub>  
 Swete, *sb.* *sweat*, 211<sub>1</sub>  
 Swette, *pt. sweated*, 521<sub>1</sub>  
 Swymme, *v.* to *swim*, 279<sub>1</sub>;  
*swamme*, 279<sub>1</sub>  
 Symplenes, *sb.* *simplicity*, 512<sub>11</sub>  
 Symplense, *sb.* *simplicity*, 107<sub>m</sub>;  
 501<sub>1</sub>  
 Symylacion, *sb.* *simulation*, 650<sub>11</sub>  
 Syn, *adv.* *since*, 92<sub>1</sub>; 201<sub>m</sub>  
 Synke, *v.* to *sink, sanck*, 279<sub>1</sub>;  
*sonken*, 677<sub>1</sub>  
 Synne and crime, 142<sub>11</sub>; *synne*  
 and *trespace*, 677<sub>m</sub>; *synnes* and  
*vices*, 480<sub>m</sub>  
 Sythen, *adv.* *since*, 118<sub>m</sub>  
 TABOURS, *sb. pl.* *small drums*, 148<sub>1</sub>;  
 151<sub>1</sub>; 164<sub>m</sub>; 200<sub>1</sub>  
 Tache or vyce, 491<sub>11</sub>  
 Take, *v.* to *take*, 6<sub>1</sub>; 7<sub>1</sub>; *toka*, 4<sub>m</sub>;  
 4<sub>1</sub>; 15<sub>m</sub>; 231<sub>m</sub>; *took*, 82<sub>1</sub>;  
*take*, *pp.* 339<sub>11</sub>; *take* and *make*  
*informacion*, 205<sub>1</sub>; *take* and  
*have*, 120<sub>m</sub>; *take* and *resseyue*,  
 112<sub>1</sub>; *take* and *lede away*, 443<sub>1</sub>;  
*takyng* and *pluckyng*, 303<sub>11</sub>;  
*toke* and *acceptid*, 15<sub>m</sub>; *toke*  
 and *wanne*, 67<sub>m</sub>; *taken* and  
*brought*, 273<sub>11</sub>; 422<sub>1</sub>; *taken*  
 and *borowed*, 271<sub>m</sub>; *taken* and  
*bounde*, 339<sub>m</sub>; *taken* and *ladde*  
*away*, 509<sub>m</sub>; *taken* and *rateffed*,  
 53<sub>m</sub>; *taken* and *rauyshed*,  
 105<sub>m</sub>; *taken his wepen* (*! fr.*  
*desbatonner*), 160<sub>m</sub>  
 Taryest and delayest, 659<sub>11</sub>;  
*taryed* and *abode*, 377<sub>11</sub>  
 Taste, *v.* to *feel, touch, taste*, 293<sub>m</sub>;  
*tasted*, 451<sub>11</sub>  
 Taughte and enformed, 176<sub>1</sub>  
 Teeris, *sb. pl.* *tears*, 11<sub>m</sub>; *teeris*  
 and *wepynges*, 470<sub>11</sub>; *teeris*  
 and *weepyngis*, 500<sub>1</sub>  
 Telle and aduertysse, 326<sub>m</sub>; *telle*

- and counte, 438<sub>n</sub>; tolde and recounted, 283<sub>n</sub>; 308<sub>n</sub>; 438<sub>n</sub>.
- Tempeste, *sb.* (fr. tumult), 36<sub>2</sub>; tempeste or thonder, 462<sub>2</sub>; 463<sub>n</sub>.
- Temples and oracles, 104.
- Temporall, *adj.* *temporal*, 315<sub>n</sub>;
- temporel, 13<sub>n</sub>; temporels, 140<sub>n</sub>;
- temprien, 186<sub>n</sub>.
- Tempre, *v.* (fr. tremper), to steep, *disp.* tempred, 32<sub>2</sub>; 195<sub>1</sub>; 387<sub>n</sub>;
- 405<sub>n</sub>; tempred, 295<sub>n</sub>.
- Tenebres and derkenes, 424<sub>n</sub>.
- Tentes and loggys, 149<sub>n</sub>; tentes and loggys, 251<sub>n</sub>.
- Terant, *sb.* *tyrant*, 398.
- Terme, *sb.* 42<sub>2</sub>; terme and tyme, 39<sub>n</sub>; termes and deuyses 317<sub>n</sub>.
- Terryblete, *sb.* *terribleness, terror, dread*, 41<sub>n</sub>.
- Teyde, *imp. tied*, 521.
- Than, *conj.* *than*, 24<sub>1</sub>; 38<sub>n</sub>.
- Than, *adv.* *than*, 5<sub>n</sub>; 12<sub>2</sub>; 17<sub>1</sub>;
- 34<sub>2</sub>; 39<sub>2</sub>; thanne, 129<sub>n</sub>; 486<sub>n</sub>;
- but* than, 309<sub>n</sub>.
- Thanke and graoe, 118<sub>n</sub>; thanke and gree, 112<sub>n</sub>; in thank (fr. on gre), 112<sub>n</sub>.
- That that, *pron. relat.* 42<sub>n</sub>; 73<sub>2</sub>;
- 89<sub>n</sub>; 105<sub>1</sub>; 107<sub>1</sub>; 115<sub>2</sub>; 140<sub>n</sub>;
- 168<sub>2</sub>; 290<sub>n</sub>; 561<sub>n</sub>; that omitted *e.g.*, "ther was no man wyste what to saye," 41<sub>2</sub>; "there was no man myght resiste," 99.
- Thaugh (fr. so), *if*, 257<sub>n</sub>; though, 190<sub>n</sub>; 632<sub>n</sub>.
- The, *th*: thabordyng and metyng, 288<sub>n</sub>; thacoussacion, 282<sub>2</sub>; thacomplishement, 141<sub>2</sub>;
- thadmystracion, 267<sub>n</sub>; thafraie, 317<sub>2</sub>; thallance, 181<sub>n</sub>;
- thanswer, 115<sub>n</sub>; 122<sub>n</sub>; thap-parayll, 228<sub>n</sub>; tharayes, 295<sub>1</sub>;
- tharohers, 147<sub>n</sub>; tharmee, 351<sub>n</sub>;
- thassamble, 143<sub>1</sub>; 223<sub>n</sub>;
- 250<sub>n</sub>; 410<sub>n</sub>; 432<sub>n</sub>; thassault, 94<sub>n</sub>;
- 95<sub>1</sub>; 286<sub>n</sub>; 410<sub>n</sub>;
- 555<sub>n</sub>; thataynte, 109<sub>n</sub>; thantenture, 37<sub>1</sub>;
- 118<sub>n</sub>; 274<sub>2</sub>;
- 305<sub>1</sub>; 328<sub>n</sub>; 389<sub>n</sub>; theffect, 248<sub>2</sub>;
- theffusion, 99<sub>1</sub>; 367<sub>n</sub>;
- 383<sub>1</sub>; 669<sub>n</sub>; themprise, 277<sub>n</sub>;
- 379<sub>n</sub>; 668<sub>n</sub>; thempryntes, 444<sub>2</sub>;
- thempyre and royame, 179<sub>n</sub>;
- thencounteryng, 66<sub>n</sub>;
- thende, 4<sub>n</sub>; 20<sub>2</sub>; 45<sub>n</sub>; 54<sub>2</sub>;
- 106<sub>n</sub>; 117<sub>n</sub>; 145<sub>n</sub>; 196<sub>n</sub>;
- 235<sub>n</sub>; 237<sub>2</sub>; 245<sub>2</sub>; 246<sub>n</sub>; 248<sub>n</sub>;
- 305<sub>n</sub>; 314<sub>2</sub>; 331<sub>n</sub>; 431<sub>n</sub>;
- 438<sub>n</sub>; 439<sub>n</sub>; 441<sub>n</sub>; 452<sub>n</sub>;
- 477<sub>1</sub>; 616<sub>n</sub>; 651<sub>n</sub>; 657<sub>n</sub>;
- 660<sub>n</sub>; 664<sub>n</sub>; 669<sub>n</sub>; 679<sub>n</sub>;
- 680<sub>n</sub>; 681<sub>2</sub>; 701<sub>n</sub>; thensignes and tokenes, 338<sub>n</sub>;
- thenduryng to lyue in his lyf, 106<sub>n</sub>;
- thentent, 382<sub>2</sub>; thentertainment (fr. lentretenance), 65<sub>n</sub>;
- thenterprise, 306<sub>1</sub>; 327<sub>n</sub>; 328<sub>n</sub>;
- 347<sub>n</sub>; thentre, 200<sub>n</sub>; 231<sub>n</sub>;
- 263<sub>n</sub>; 336<sub>n</sub>; 370<sub>n</sub>; 450<sub>n</sub>;
- 527<sub>n</sub>; 642<sub>n</sub>; 676<sub>n</sub>; 684<sub>n</sub>;
- thentrepryse, 478<sub>2</sub>; thentencion, 53<sub>n</sub>;
- 65<sub>n</sub>; 93<sub>n</sub>; 97<sub>n</sub>;
- 478<sub>n</sub>; thentendement, 57<sub>1</sub>;
- thentente, 656<sub>n</sub>; thenuenymous, 83<sub>2</sub>;
- thenuye, 13<sub>n</sub>; 194<sub>2</sub>;
- theschaffing, 456<sub>n</sub>;
- theschuyng, 7<sub>2</sub>;
- thestate, 50<sub>n</sub>; 133<sub>n</sub>;
- 235<sub>n</sub>; thexcellece, 131<sub>n</sub>;
- thexcessive, 374<sub>2</sub>;
- thexcese, 417<sub>n</sub>;
- thexeroyte, 187<sub>2</sub>;
- thextremyte, 189<sub>2</sub>;
- thexyle, 677<sub>n</sub>;
- thincarnation, 261<sub>n</sub>;
- thobeissance, 73<sub>n</sub>;
- thobesquye, 225<sub>n</sub>;
- thocision, 574<sub>n</sub>;
- thoffloyer, 258<sub>n</sub>;
- 261<sub>n</sub>;
- thopposite, 356<sub>1</sub>;
- 370<sub>n</sub>;
- thoppression, 73<sub>n</sub>;
- thoppynyon, 142<sub>n</sub>;
- 601<sub>n</sub>;
- thoracle, 22<sub>n</sub>;
- 104<sub>n</sub>;
- thordenance, 133<sub>n</sub>;
- 408<sub>2</sub>;
- thynduccion, 678<sub>n</sub>;
- thynstance, 207<sub>n</sub>.
- The whiohe (fr. lequel), 30<sub>2</sub>; the whyche, 677<sub>n</sub>.
- Thedir, *adv.* *thither*, 213<sub>n</sub>;
- theder, 214<sub>n</sub>;
- thether, 645<sub>n</sub>; 663<sub>n</sub>.
- Thederward, *adv.* 406<sub>2</sub>; 684<sub>n</sub>; 692<sub>n</sub>.
- Theef and rouare, 172<sub>2</sub>;
- theef and veray rouare and pyrate, 173<sub>2</sub>;
- theues and robeurs, 339.
- Thefte and pillerye, 37<sub>n</sub>;
- 47<sub>n</sub>;
- thefte and pryoe, 480<sub>n</sub>.

- Thens, *adv. thence*, 682<sub>11</sub>  
 Ther, *pron. their*, 11<sub>m</sub>; 14<sub>1m</sub>  
 Therwythinna, 207<sub>9</sub>  
 Thinke, *v. to think*, 239<sub>m</sub>; thenke, 241<sub>10</sub>; 445<sub>2</sub>; 624<sub>m</sub>; thenkyng, 310<sub>7</sub>; thoughte, 211<sub>m</sub>; 255<sub>m</sub>; thought and poysed, 19<sub>1</sub>; thynk and be pensif, 21<sub>17</sub>; thoughte and semed, 231<sub>10</sub>  
 Tho, *adv. then*, 68<sub>1</sub>; 75<sub>m</sub>; 101<sub>m</sub>; 195<sub>1</sub>; 534<sub>1</sub>; thoo, 450<sub>m</sub>  
 Tho, *pron. these, those*, 5<sub>1</sub>; 264<sub>2</sub>; 441<sub>7</sub>; 554<sub>7</sub>; thoo, 9<sub>7</sub>; 656<sub>9</sub>  
 Thonder and tempeste, 117<sub>1</sub>; thondre and tempeste, 47<sub>1</sub>  
 Thorough, *prep.* 185<sub>m</sub>; 221<sub>1</sub>; thurgh, 639<sub>1</sub>; thurgh oute, 536<sub>m</sub>; toughe oute, 572<sub>11</sub>  
 Thoughtes and pensees, 349<sub>m</sub>; thoughtes and pensyfnes, 310<sub>17</sub>  
 Thral, *sb. thrall, slave*, 15<sub>11</sub>  
 Thrested and couched, 292<sub>9</sub>  
 Thries, *num. thrice*, 73<sub>m</sub>  
 Throwes, *sb. pl. throes, the pains of childbirth*, 236<sub>m</sub>  
 Thryttene, *num. thirteen*, 699<sub>9</sub>  
 Thurgh perahid, *pp.* (fr. trespercier), 299<sub>m</sub>; 455<sub>m</sub>  
 Thyn, *pron. thy*, 73<sub>m</sub>  
 Thys, *pron. this*, 9<sub>17</sub>; this, *pl.* (these) 926<sub>10</sub>; thise, 73<sub>11</sub>; these, 18<sub>10</sub>  
 To, *t*: tabide, 50<sub>m</sub>; tacheue, 45<sub>m</sub>; 547<sub>9</sub>; tappese, 273<sub>1</sub>; 275<sub>m</sub>; 669<sub>17</sub>; taproche, 46<sub>11</sub>; tassayle, 46<sub>1</sub>; 77<sub>m</sub>; 98<sub>10</sub>; 134<sub>m</sub>; 210<sub>m</sub>; 547<sub>11</sub>; 561<sub>1</sub>; 587<sub>m</sub>; tassemble, 580<sub>7</sub>; tassiege, 375<sub>9</sub>; tauenge, 516<sub>m</sub>; tenhanse, 13<sub>m</sub>; tenquere, 235<sub>10</sub>; 326<sub>m</sub>; tantende (fr. contendre) 95<sub>m</sub>; teschewe, 7<sub>m</sub>; tobeye, 274<sub>7</sub>  
 To breke, *v. to break to pieces*, to brake, 302<sub>10</sub>; 341<sub>1</sub>; 407<sub>1</sub>; to brack, 468<sub>m</sub>; to brakke, 332<sub>m</sub>; to broken, 691<sub>6</sub>; to broken and brusyd, 549<sub>m</sub>  
 To breste, *v. to burst asunder*, to braste, 332<sub>17</sub>  
 To bruse, *v. to bruise in pieces*, to brusid, 365<sub>m</sub>; to brusyd, 480<sub>m</sub>; to brosid, 356<sub>1</sub>; to brusyd and frusshid, 480<sub>7</sub>  
 To drawe, *v. to draw asunder*, 514<sub>m</sub>  
 To fore, *adv. before*, 14<sub>1</sub>; 20<sub>10</sub>; 611<sub>m</sub>  
 To frussahe, *v. to break in pieces*, to frusshid, 193<sub>m</sub>; 266<sub>1</sub>; 280<sub>m</sub>; 332<sub>m</sub>; 392<sub>m</sub>; 413<sub>10</sub>; 432<sub>m</sub>; 435<sub>1</sub>; 466<sub>m</sub>; 468<sub>10</sub>; 564<sub>11</sub>; to frusshid and brusid, 405<sub>10</sub>; to frusshid and all to brake, 497<sub>9</sub>; to frusshid and braka, 332<sub>m</sub>; 595<sub>10</sub>  
 To geder, *adv. together*, 39<sub>m</sub>; 46<sub>10</sub>; to gyder, 36<sub>m</sub>  
 To hewe, *v. to hew in pieces*, 339<sub>9</sub>; 563<sub>m</sub>; to hewen and broken, 332<sub>10</sub>  
 Token or signe, 532<sub>1</sub>; tokenes and signes, 324<sub>17</sub>; tokens and enseygues, 335<sub>10</sub>  
 Tomble, *v. to tumble*, 607<sub>m</sub>; tombling, 212<sub>1</sub>; tumbled, 212<sub>10</sub>  
 Tonne, *sb. tun, cask*, 586<sub>m</sub>  
 Toppe, *sb. top*, 73<sub>1</sub>  
 To rente, *v. to rend in pieces*, 350<sub>10</sub>; 676<sub>m</sub>; 690<sub>9</sub>; to rente and dischred, 496<sub>m</sub>  
 Torned and reueraid, 437<sub>7</sub>  
 Tornoye, *v.* (fr. tournoyer), 250<sub>10</sub>  
 Tote mowthed,<sup>1</sup> 543<sub>10</sub>?  
 Touched and rehersed, 330<sub>m</sub>  
 Tourbes, *pl.* (fr. tourbes), *herds, flocks*, 452<sub>11</sub>  
 Tourne, *sb. pl.* (fr. tours), *turas*, 520<sub>1</sub>  
 Toward, *adj.* and *prep.* 357<sub>m</sub>; to hym ward, 60<sub>m</sub>; 129<sub>m</sub>; to see ward, 679<sub>m</sub>; to bed ward, 232<sub>1</sub>; to troye ward, 514<sub>m</sub>; 536<sub>10</sub>  
 Traches, *sub. pl. traces, tracks*, 388<sub>11</sub>; 443<sub>m</sub>; traces, 444<sub>m</sub>; traches or thempryntes, 444<sub>6</sub>

<sup>1</sup> The French equivalent for Caxton's "Parys was a passing fayr knyght and strong soft heerid and trewe swyft and swete of speche tote mowthed" is this: "Paris estoit moult beau cheualier blond and vair (according to the MSS. vert)!"

- Transume, *v. to transmute* (fr. *transmuere*) transmused, 47<sub>m</sub>; 231<sub>;</sub>; 233<sub>;</sub>
- Transe, *sb. trance*, 26<sub>m</sub>
- Tranayll, *sb. toil, labour, trouble*, 157<sub>u</sub>; 475<sub>m</sub>; 647<sub>m</sub>; 690<sub>m</sub>; tranayll and labour, 157<sub>u</sub>
- Tranaylle, *v. to travail, labour*, 236<sub>u</sub>; tranayllid, 191<sub>;</sub>; traueyllid, 471<sub>u</sub>; traueillid, 691<sub>u</sub>
- Tranerse, *pp. 105<sub>u</sub>*; traersid and soured,<sup>1</sup> 161<sub>;</sub>
- Trayson, *sb. treason*, 33<sub>m</sub>; 641<sub>u</sub>
- Trayte, *sb. treaty*, 19<sub>;</sub>; traittye, 19<sub>;</sub>; traytte, 44<sub>u</sub>; traytye, 15<sub>;</sub>
- Tree or woode, 659<sub>m</sub>; tre or woode, 259<sub>;</sub>
- Trete, *v. to treat, negotiate*, 34<sub>u</sub>; trete, 39<sub>m</sub>; 50<sub>u</sub>; traytted, 85<sub>m</sub>
- Trenchyng and cuttyng, 345<sub>m</sub>; trenchid and outted, 193<sub>m</sub>
- Tresours, *sb. treasures*, 221<sub>;</sub>; tresora, 224<sub>u</sub>
- Trespas or synne, 274<sub>;</sub>; trespases and synnes, 399<sub>;</sub>
- Trespaste and offended, 692<sub>m</sub>
- Tresuertuous, *adj. (fr. tresvertueux), very virtuous*, 477<sub>u</sub>
- Trewly and loially, 204<sub>m</sub>
- Triste, *adj. sad*, 92<sub>u</sub>; tryste or sorowfull, 24<sub>u</sub>
- Tristres and sorowe, 665<sub>u</sub>
- Trompe, *sb. (fr. trompe), trumpet, "tuba," trompes*, 31<sub>;</sub>; 148<sub>;</sub>; 151<sub>;</sub>; 164<sub>m</sub>; 252<sub>m</sub>
- Trompette, *sb. small trumpet*, 200<sub>;</sub>; 553<sub>;</sub>; trompettes, 362<sub>;</sub>
- Tronchon or stock, 559<sub>;</sub>
- Tronchonnyd, *pp. 157<sub>m</sub>*
- Troublous, *adj. full of trouble or disorder*, 215<sub>;</sub>; 502<sub>u</sub>; 553<sub>u</sub>
- Trouthplyte, *v. to promise, engage*, 312<sub>m</sub>; trouth plight, *pp. 684<sub>m</sub>*; trouth-plighte, *pp. 220<sub>;</sub>*
- Trowe, *v. to trust, believe*, 146<sub>m</sub>; 519<sub>m</sub>; 559<sub>m</sub>; 628<sub>m</sub>; trowed, 33<sub>m</sub>; 105<sub>u</sub>; trowed and beleuyd, 167<sub>;</sub>
- Truste and affyaunce, 45<sub>m</sub>; truste and hope, 652<sub>m</sub>
- Tryewa, *sb. truce*, 616<sub>u</sub>; 618<sub>u</sub>; 643<sub>u</sub>; 657<sub>;</sub>; trewes, 356<sub>u</sub>
- Tucion and slaughter (fr. *tueson*), 469<sub>;</sub>; tusion and slaughter, 292<sub>;</sub>
- Turmentid, *pp. tortured*, 63<sub>m</sub>
- Turquoyes,<sup>2</sup> *sb. (fr. turquoyes), quiver*, 600<sub>;</sub>; bow Turquoyes (fr. *arc turquois*), † bow and Turquoyes, 521<sub>u</sub>
- Tutor, *sb. (fr. tuteur), protector*, 630<sub>m</sub>
- Twyes, *num. twice*, 73<sub>m</sub>; (two tymes, 7<sub>u</sub>)
- Tyme and instant, 238<sub>m</sub>; (tyme, fr. *heure*, 467<sub>;</sub>)
- Tympane, *sb. drum*, 31<sub>;</sub>
- VMBRE and shadowe, 327<sub>m</sub>
- Vnbynde, *v. to unbind*, 216<sub>u</sub>; vnbonde, 336<sub>m</sub>; vnbonde, 216<sub>m</sub>; vnbounden, 339<sub>u</sub>
- Vnclothed and despoilled, 387<sub>m</sub>
- Vncourtouys, *adj. uncourteous*, 68<sub>u</sub>
- Vnderstande, *v. to understand*, 638<sub>;</sub>; vnderstond, *inf. 230<sub>m</sub>*; vnderstonde, *inf. 339<sub>m</sub>*; vnderstode, *pt. 251<sub>u</sub>*; 323<sub>;</sub>; 326<sub>u</sub>; vnderstonde, *pt. 263<sub>u</sub>*; vnderstande, *pp. 265<sub>m</sub>*; 276<sub>m</sub>; 622<sub>m</sub>; vnderstand, *pp. 430<sub>m</sub>*; vnderstonden, *pp. 215<sub>m</sub>*; vnderstonde, *pp. 48<sub>m</sub>*; 229<sub>;</sub>; vnderstandyng and knowleche, 370<sub>m</sub>; vnderstande and knowe, 91<sub>;</sub>; vnderstonde and knowe, 190<sub>m</sub>; vnderstood and knewe, 241<sub>;</sub>
- Vnfamous, *adj. infamous*, 45<sub>u</sub>
- Vnguerdoned and vnrewarded, 311<sub>;</sub>
- Vnhapp, *sb. misfortune*, 412<sub>m</sub>;

<sup>1</sup> "Vng autre jugement traersant sourdz son entendement" is translated by Carton thus: "Another judgement traersid and soured in his entendement!"

<sup>2</sup> This ought to be "tarquois" or "tarquais," from low Latin, *tarcasia*, modern French, *tarquois*.

- 439<sub>m</sub>; 474<sub>s</sub>; vnhapp and ylfare (fr. mal sante), 174<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnhumayn, *adj.* (fr. inhumain), *inhuman*, 103<sub>m</sub>. *Compare* vnmanly  
 Vnloyned (= l fr. au joindre), 259<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnkendene, *sb.* *unkindness*, 128<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnkynde and ingrate, 552<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnmanly, *adj.* (fr. inhumain), *inhuman*, 42<sub>m</sub>; 44<sub>m</sub>; vnmanly furours (fr. humaines fureurs !), 49<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnmesurabl, *adv.* (fr. desmesurement), 78<sub>r</sub>. *Compare* dismesurably  
 Vnnethe, *adj.* and *adv.* *difficult*, *with difficulty*, *scarcely*, 609<sub>s</sub>; 614<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnpatience, *sb.* *impatience*, 49<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnperfightness, *sb.* *imperfection*, 4<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnremembryd (fr. est a oublier), 262<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnto, *prep.* *unto*, *until*, 37<sub>s</sub>; 59<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnwares, *adv.* *unawares*, 192<sub>m</sub>  
 Vnyed to geder, 394<sub>m</sub>; vnyed and knet to geder, 95<sub>m</sub>  
 Vpon heghte (fr. contremont), 405<sub>m</sub>  
 Vse and obserue, 127<sub>m</sub>; vsed and caste, 399<sub>m</sub>; vaid and lyuyd, 487<sub>m</sub>  
 Vtérance, *sb.* *extremity*, 367<sub>s</sub>; vtérance, 153<sub>m</sub>. *Compare* oultérance  
 VACABONDE, *adj.* *vagabond*, 670<sub>m</sub>  
 Vaissale, *sb.* *vassal*, 79<sub>s</sub>; vassale and subgette, 525<sub>m</sub>; seruant and vassale, 525<sub>m</sub>  
 Valeur, *sb.* *value*, 284<sub>m</sub>; (value, 112<sub>m</sub>; valu, 68<sub>m</sub>); valoyr, *valour*, 41<sub>m</sub>; valure, 65<sub>m</sub>  
 Vaqued (l) and studied,<sup>1</sup> 394<sub>s</sub>  
 Variacion, *sb.* *variation*, 125<sub>s</sub>; variacions (fr. variabletes), 51<sub>m</sub>; payne and variacion, 28<sub>m</sub>  
 Varlet, *sb.* *valet*, *servant*, 514<sub>m</sub>; 628<sub>m</sub>; varlettis or seruautes, 628<sub>m</sub>  
 Varyable and ploying (fr. ployant), 21<sub>m</sub>  
 Varyly, *adv.* *verily*, 154<sub>m</sub>  
 Vassayle, *sb.* *vessel*, 494<sub>m</sub>  
 Vawarde, *sb.* *vanguard*, 222<sub>m</sub>  
 Vayllable, *adj.* (fr. vaillable), *beneficial*, 65<sub>s</sub>; 201<sub>m</sub>  
 Vaylliant, *adj.* *valiant*, 42<sub>m</sub>; vaillant, 320<sub>s</sub>; vailliantes men, 69<sub>m</sub>; vayllans, *pl.* 257<sub>m</sub>; vayllyantyst, 163<sub>s</sub>; most vayllyant, 163<sub>m</sub>  
 Vayllyance, *sb.* *valiant behaviour*, *bravery*, 42<sub>m</sub>; vailliance, 257<sub>r</sub>; vaylliance, *valiant deeds*, 671<sub>m</sub>; vaylliantnes, 305<sub>s</sub>  
 Vayne, *sb.* *vein*, 257<sub>m</sub>; 627<sub>m</sub>; vaynes, 17<sub>m</sub>; 23<sub>r</sub>  
 Vaynqueur, *sb.* *victor*, *conqueror*, 284<sub>m</sub>; 435<sub>m</sub>; vainqueur, 267<sub>m</sub>; vaynouers, *pl.* 409<sub>s</sub>; vayquers, *pl.* 517<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysahour, 430<sub>m</sub>; 489<sub>m</sub>; 499<sub>r</sub>; vaynqueresse, 189<sub>m</sub>; vainqueresse, 186<sub>s</sub>; vainqueur and victorious, 88<sub>m</sub>; victorious and vainquer, 223<sub>m</sub>  
 Vaynquysse, *v.* *to vanquish*, *conquer*, 78<sub>m</sub>; venquysahyd, 78<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysshyd, 78<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysse and ouercome, 208<sub>s</sub>; 276<sub>m</sub>; 292<sub>m</sub>; 367<sub>m</sub>; vainquysshid and ouercome, 267<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysshid and ouercome, 157<sub>m</sub>; 335<sub>m</sub>; 621<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysshid and conquer, 360<sub>m</sub>; vaynquysshid and ouerthrowen, 47<sub>s</sub>  
 Venge, *v.* *to avenge*, *revenge*, 156<sub>s</sub>; 339<sub>m</sub>; 512<sub>m</sub>; 633<sub>s</sub>; vengid, 462<sub>m</sub>  
 Vengement, *sb.* *vengeance*, *revenge*, 288<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton's "When he had vaqued there and studied so longe that." etc., corresponds to the French "Quant il eut illec vacque a lestude si longement que de sa doctrine furent alumez tous les atheniens!"

- Verayly, *adv. verily*, 165<sub>m</sub>; 627<sub>m</sub>.  
 Verdour of his begynnynge and  
 temprien strength (fr. en la  
 verdure de sa force temprienne),  
 186<sub>m</sub>.  
 Verray, *adj. and adv. true, very*,  
 22<sub>m</sub>; 25<sub>m</sub>; 56<sub>m</sub>; veray, 278<sub>m</sub>;  
 348<sub>m</sub>; verrey, 75<sub>m</sub>.  
 Verray semblable, *adj.* (fr. vrai-  
 semblable), *probable*, 35<sub>m</sub>;  
 258<sub>m</sub>; verrey semblable, 245<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vertue and strength, 363<sub>m</sub>; 467<sub>m</sub>;  
 vertues and strengthes, 377<sub>m</sub>;  
 vertu and myght, 253<sub>m</sub>; vertu  
 and force, 79<sub>m</sub>; vertu of his  
 strength, 156<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vertuense manieres, 13<sub>m</sub>.  
 Veryte, *sb. truth*, 610<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vestementis nupciall, 185<sub>m</sub>; veste-  
 mentes and clothes, 216<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vesture and clothyng, 53<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vetayll, *sb. victuals*, 356<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vexid and troublid, 68<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vicious and euyl, 307<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vigne,<sup>1</sup> *sb.* (fr. vigne), *vine*, 202<sub>m</sub>;  
 vynes, 177<sub>m</sub>.  
 Viguers and strength, 67<sub>m</sub>; vigour  
 and strength, 260<sub>m</sub>; vygour  
 and strength, 20<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vilayn, *sb.* (1) *peasant*, 261<sub>m</sub>; vil-  
 layn, 305<sub>m</sub>; villayns, 631<sub>m</sub>;  
 villaines, 309<sub>m</sub>; vyllynes, 11<sub>m</sub>;  
 (2) *scoundrel*, vilayne, 639<sub>m</sub>.  
 Villayns, *adj. vile, base, ugly*, 45<sub>m</sub>;  
 vilaynous, 599<sub>m</sub>; villynaly,  
 403<sub>m</sub>; 628<sub>m</sub>.  
 Villonnye, *sb. villainy*, 671<sub>m</sub>;  
 vilonnye, 632<sub>m</sub>; vilonye, 597<sub>m</sub>;  
 vilanye, 282<sub>m</sub>.  
 Villonyed and put to shame, 441<sub>m</sub>.  
 Violld, *pp. violated*, 662<sub>m</sub>.  
 Virgyne and mayde, 215<sub>m</sub>; vir-  
 gynes and maydens, 277<sub>m</sub>.  
 Volente and will, 24<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vouche sauf, *v. to vouchsafe*, 250<sub>m</sub>;  
 vouchidsauf (1 fr. daignoit),  
 353<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vowed and promysed, 347<sub>m</sub>.  
 Voyage, *sb. voyage, journey*, 241<sub>m</sub>;  
 283<sub>m</sub>; viage, 176<sub>m</sub>; 251<sub>m</sub>;  
 429<sub>m</sub>; vyage, 264<sub>m</sub>; 395<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vyllayns, *sb.* (1 fr. les veillans),  
 37<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vyrago, *sb. a violent, impudent  
 woman*, 240<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vyre, *v. to veer*, 338<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vysage and syght, 438<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vytaylled, *pp. provided with vic-  
 tuals*, 37<sub>m</sub>.  
 Vyue force, 480<sub>m</sub>.  
 WACCHE and warde, 94<sub>m</sub>; waoche  
 and wayte, 327<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wages and sowldye, 108<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wagge, *v. to shake*, 212<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wake, *v. to be awake, to wake*,  
 267<sub>m</sub>; waketh, 263<sub>m</sub>; wook,  
 284<sub>m</sub>.  
 Walle and mure, *v.* 271<sub>m</sub>; wallyd,  
 287<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wallys, *sb. pl.* 292<sub>m</sub>; wallys and  
 murall, 94<sub>m</sub>; wallys and bul-  
 werks, 569<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wanhope, *sb. despair*, 21<sub>m</sub>; 27<sub>m</sub>;  
 49<sub>m</sub>.  
 Warde, *sb. guard, watchman*, 338<sub>m</sub>;  
 wardes, 213<sub>m</sub>.  
 Warme and chauffe, 169<sub>m</sub>.  
 Warnyng amonycion, 538<sub>m</sub>.  
 Warre, *sb. war*, 39<sub>m</sub>; werre, 38<sub>m</sub>.  
 Warre, *v. to war, make war*, 163<sub>m</sub>;  
 228<sub>m</sub>; warre and fyght, 645<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wasching and springyng of the  
 wawes, 279<sub>m</sub>.  
 Whan, *adv. when*, 11<sub>m</sub>; 21<sub>m</sub>; 33<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wastyng and destroyng, 340<sub>m</sub>;  
 wasted and destroyed, 389<sub>m</sub>;  
 wastyd and loste, 191<sub>m</sub>.  
 Way ne facion, 409<sub>m</sub>; waye and  
 passage, 213<sub>m</sub>.  
 Weder, *sb. weather*, 157<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wedowes, *sb. pl. widows*, 343<sub>m</sub>;  
 345<sub>m</sub>.  
 Weald, *sb. weald, wood* 4<sub>m</sub>.  
 Weet, *adj. wet*, 281<sub>m</sub>; wette, 279<sub>m</sub>.  
 Wekettia, *sb. pl. See wyket*.  
 Wele, *sb. weal, wealth, happiness*,  
 12<sub>m</sub>; 14<sub>m</sub>; 35<sub>m</sub>; welebe, 10<sub>m</sub>;

<sup>1</sup> The text reads "vigne," which is evidently a misprint.

- welle and helthe, 273<sub>;</sub>; 274<sub>;</sub>;  
welle and vtilite, 213<sub>;</sub>; welle  
and prouffit, 213<sub>;</sub>  
Welle, *adv.* well, 60<sub>;</sub>; well and  
seurly, 317<sub>;</sub>  
Well fortun'd (fr. bien fortune),  
249<sub>;</sub>  
Wene, *v.* to ween, hope, suppose,  
181<sub>;</sub>; weuyng, 218<sub>;</sub>; weneth  
and thynketh, 244<sub>;</sub>; wende,  
129<sub>;</sub> 171<sub>;</sub>; 205<sub>;</sub>; 212<sub>;</sub>;  
214<sub>;</sub>; wend, 421<sub>;</sub>; went, *pp.*  
148<sub>;</sub>; wende, *pp.* 234<sub>;</sub>; 480<sub>;</sub>;  
583<sub>;</sub>; wenyd, 308<sub>;</sub>  
Wentes, *sb. pl.* (fr. tours), *passages*,  
219<sub>;</sub>  
Wepe and sobbe, 28<sub>;</sub>; wepte and  
sobbed, 28<sub>;</sub>; wepe and waylle,  
471<sub>;</sub>  
Weren, *they were*, 540<sub>;</sub>  
Werke, *sb.* work, 4<sub>;</sub>; 7<sub>;</sub>; werk,  
7<sub>;</sub>; 27<sub>;</sub>; 42<sub>;</sub>; werkis and  
labours, 455<sub>;</sub>  
Werke, *v.* to work, werkyng, 17<sub>;</sub>;  
werken (*they work*), 373<sub>;</sub>; worch-  
yng, 339<sub>;</sub>; wrought, 233<sub>;</sub>;  
340<sub>;</sub>; wroughte, 289<sub>;</sub>; 376<sub>;</sub>;  
wrought and achieved, 243<sub>;</sub>;  
wrought and besoyngnerd,  
291<sub>;</sub>; wrought and foughte,  
98<sub>;</sub>  
Werkman, *sb.* working man, 53<sub>;</sub>;  
werkemen and forgiers, 106<sub>;</sub>;  
werkens, 18<sub>;</sub>  
Wete, *v.* to know, 4<sub>;</sub>; 9<sub>;</sub>; 81<sub>;</sub>;  
136<sub>;</sub>; y wot not, 29<sub>;</sub>; wetyng,  
113<sub>;</sub>; wyst, 29<sub>;</sub>; wyste, 41<sub>;</sub>;  
wiste, 55<sub>;</sub>; 82<sub>;</sub>; 102<sub>;</sub>; wist,  
63<sub>;</sub>; wote, 50<sub>;</sub>; 181<sub>;</sub>  
Wexe, *v.* to wax, grow, become, 23<sub>;</sub>;  
24<sub>;</sub>; 73<sub>;</sub>; 160<sub>;</sub>; 234<sub>;</sub>; waxe,  
246<sub>;</sub>; wax, 179<sub>;</sub>; waxed, 179<sub>;</sub>;  
waxe and grewe, 247<sub>;</sub>  
Weye, *v.* to weigh, 264<sub>;</sub>  
Whele, *sb.* wheel, 19<sub>;</sub>  
Where,<sup>1</sup> (l fr. ou) 189<sub>;</sub>
- Whether, *adv.* whether, 89<sub>;</sub>;  
471<sub>;</sub>; wheder, 139<sub>;</sub>; whyder,  
357<sub>;</sub>; 397<sub>;</sub>; 667<sub>;</sub>; whyther,  
485<sub>;</sub>; 683<sub>;</sub>  
While and space, 493<sub>;</sub>  
Whit, *adj.* white, 701<sub>;</sub>  
Whyles, *adv.* and *conj.* whilat,  
661<sub>;</sub>; whilis that, 456<sub>;</sub>; 628<sub>;</sub>;  
694<sub>;</sub>  
Wilde and sanage, 59<sub>;</sub>  
Will, *v.* 21<sub>;</sub>; y wyl, 5<sub>;</sub>; 33<sub>;</sub>;  
thou wylte, 21<sub>;</sub>; thou wille,  
97<sub>;</sub>; ye wil, 12<sub>;</sub>; wole, 22<sub>;</sub>;  
23<sub>;</sub>; 29<sub>;</sub>; 127<sub>;</sub>; 250<sub>;</sub>; 457<sub>;</sub>;  
woll, 430<sub>;</sub>; wolle, 367<sub>;</sub>; wolte,  
358<sub>;</sub>; wold, 10<sub>;</sub>; 14<sub>;</sub>; 37<sub>;</sub>;  
woldest, 13<sub>;</sub>; wold, *pp.* 501<sub>;</sub>;  
willed, *pp.* 204<sub>;</sub>; 335<sub>;</sub>; willyd,  
*pp.* 218<sub>;</sub>; 470<sub>;</sub>; to wylle goo,  
(fr. vouloir aller), 530<sub>;</sub>; had  
wylle consentyd (fr. leust voulu  
consentir), 589<sub>;</sub>; yf he had  
wolde, 589<sub>;</sub>; to wylle burye,  
601<sub>;</sub>; to will to knowe (fr. de  
vouloir savoir), 21<sub>;</sub>; to will  
fulfill your will (fr. a vous bien  
vouloir !), 457<sub>;</sub>; willeth euyl  
wyl (fr. en vouloir), 237<sub>;</sub>; will  
and shall, 249<sub>;</sub>  
Withdrawe, *v.* to withdraw, 170<sub>;</sub>;  
withdrew, 224<sub>;</sub>; 258<sub>;</sub>; wyth-  
drowe, 149<sub>;</sub>; 175<sub>;</sub>; withdrawn,  
239<sub>;</sub>; 401<sub>;</sub>; withdrawe and  
ealonge, 493<sub>;</sub>; withdrawing  
and departyng, 262<sub>;</sub>; with-  
drawen and ferre ebbed, 280<sub>;</sub>  
Witte and vnderstandyng, 254<sub>;</sub>;  
witte ne vnderstandyng, 239<sub>;</sub>  
Wode, *sb.* wood, forest, 415<sub>;</sub>; wood,  
50<sub>;</sub>; wodes and forests, 47<sub>;</sub>  
Wonde, *pt.* (to wind), 387<sub>;</sub>  
Wondre and meruayle, 305<sub>;</sub>; won-  
der and meruayles, 46<sub>;</sub>; won-  
dres and meruailles, 378<sub>;</sub>;  
wondringes (fr. miracion), 44<sub>;</sub>  
Wood, *adj. mad.* 27<sub>;</sub>

<sup>1</sup> Caxton translates "meduse ou les gorgonnes" by "meduse where the gor-  
gonnes!" The sentence ought to run thus: "Such was the entre of the warre  
that was betwene perseus and meduse or the gorgonnes. Fortune whiche  
meduse had cheryshed," etc.

- Wordes and langage, 252<sub>m</sub>;  
 wordes and requestes, 40,  
 World, worlde *sb.* (fr. siecle) 9<sub>;</sub>  
 16<sub>m</sub>; 17<sub>m</sub>; world of gold (fr.  
 siecles dores) 239<sub>m</sub>; world  
 (*people*), 17<sub>m</sub>  
 Worse, *comp.* 68<sub>m</sub>; worse, 243<sub>m</sub>  
 Worslyp and glorye, 376<sub>;</sub>; 628<sub>m</sub>;  
 worship and honour, 149<sub>;</sub>;  
 159<sub>m</sub>; 409<sub>;</sub>; worship and  
 triumphe, 19<sub>;</sub>  
 Worthy and digne, 7<sub>m</sub>; worthy ne  
 digne, 491<sub>m</sub>; 492<sub>m</sub>; worthyly  
 and digne, 462<sub>m</sub>  
 Woundes and hurtes, 191<sub>m</sub>  
 Wrapped and swaded, 242<sub>m</sub>  
 Wreochidnes and myseryes, 448<sub>m</sub>  
 Wringe, *v. to wring*, wronge, *pl.*  
 494<sub>m</sub>; wronge, *pp.* 494<sub>m</sub>  
 Wronge and blame, 558<sub>m</sub>; wronges,  
 509<sub>m</sub>; wronges and obprobres,  
 516<sub>m</sub>  
 Wroth and angry, 553<sub>m</sub>; 681<sub>m</sub>  
 Wryte, *v. to write*, 6<sub>m</sub>; 249<sub>m</sub>;  
 wrote, 681<sub>;</sub>; wretyn, 5<sub>;</sub>; wreton,  
 4<sub>m</sub>; 144<sub>m</sub>; 146<sub>;</sub>; 250<sub>m</sub>; 699<sub>m</sub>;  
 701<sub>m</sub>; wryton, 681<sub>;</sub>  
 Wyoche and sorceresse, 243<sub>;</sub>  
 Wyket, *sb. wicket*, 696<sub>m</sub>; wicketis,  
 468<sub>m</sub>  
 Wylle, *sb. will*, 23<sub>;</sub>; will 22<sub>m</sub>;  
 wyll and desire, 656<sub>m</sub>; will and  
 pleasir, 56<sub>m</sub>; will and pleasir,  
 457<sub>m</sub>; wylle and playsir, 656<sub>m</sub>;  
 wyll and purpoos, 231<sub>;</sub>; wylle  
 and volente, 547<sub>;</sub>  
 Wynbrowes, *sb. pl. eyebrows*, 542<sub>m</sub>  
 Wynd and storme,<sup>1</sup> 381<sub>m</sub>  
 Wyne, *sb. vine*, 308<sub>m</sub>  
 Wynne, *v. to win*, 230<sub>m</sub>; 464<sub>m</sub>;  
 wanne, 67<sub>m</sub>; 295<sub>m</sub>; wonne,  
 211<sub>;</sub>; 435<sub>m</sub>; 460<sub>m</sub>; wynne  
 little gayne, 355<sub>m</sub>  
 Wyse and sage, 108<sub>;</sub>; wyse and  
 prudente, 540<sub>;</sub>; wyse and not-  
 able men (fr. preudeshommes),  
 482<sub>;</sub>  
 Wythsaye, *v. to contradict*, 108<sub>;</sub>;  
 withsaye, 88<sub>m</sub>; wythsayd,  
 129<sub>m</sub>  
 Wytte ne entendement, 127<sub>m</sub>  
 Wytynge and knowleche, 108<sub>m</sub>  
 Y, *pron.* I, 5<sub>m</sub>  
 Yate, *sb. gate*, 112<sub>;</sub>; 323<sub>m</sub>; 350<sub>m</sub>;  
 yates, 35<sub>m</sub>; 329<sub>m</sub>; 645<sub>;</sub>  
 Y cladde, *clad*, 615<sub>m</sub>  
 Ye, *adv. yes*, 125<sub>m</sub>; 629<sub>m</sub>  
 Yeft, *sb. gift*, 112<sub>m</sub>; 165<sub>m</sub>; 521<sub>m</sub>;  
 yefft, 532<sub>m</sub>; yefftes, 364<sub>m</sub>;  
 698<sub>m</sub>; yefftes and presentes,  
 454<sub>m</sub>  
 Yelde, *v. to yield*, 468<sub>m</sub>; yeld,  
 119<sub>;</sub>; yelde, 7<sub>;</sub>; 50<sub>m</sub>; yeldyng,  
 232<sub>;</sub>; yelded, 229<sub>m</sub>; yolden,  
 172<sub>m</sub>; 190<sub>m</sub>; yelde and rendre,  
 282<sub>m</sub>; 335<sub>m</sub>; yelde ayen and  
 rendre, 370<sub>;</sub>; yelde and dely-  
 uere, 93<sub>m</sub>; yelded and delyuerid,  
 325<sub>m</sub>  
 Yeue, *v. to give*, 522<sub>;</sub>; yeue, 116<sub>m</sub>;  
 282<sub>m</sub>; yeueth, 183<sub>m</sub>; yeuyng,  
 188<sub>m</sub>; 231<sub>m</sub>; yat, 138<sub>m</sub>; yeuen,  
 112<sub>m</sub>; 552<sub>m</sub>  
 Yll happe, *sb.* (fr. maleur), *misfor-  
 tune*, 343<sub>m</sub>  
 Y lyke, *alike*, 321<sub>;</sub>  
 Ymage or statue, 85<sub>;</sub>; 426<sub>m</sub>;  
 ymages or statues, 430<sub>;</sub>  
 Ymaginacion, *sb.* ! (fr. machina-  
 cion), 13<sub>m</sub>  
 Ymagined<sup>m</sup> (fr. machine), 14<sub>;</sub>;  
 204<sub>m</sub>  
 Ymagyne and thynke, 297<sub>m</sub>  
 Ynow, *adv. enough*, 198<sub>;</sub>; y now,  
 44<sub>m</sub>; y nough, 51<sub>;</sub>; ynowh,  
 88<sub>;</sub>; 138<sub>m</sub>; ynowgh 532<sub>m</sub>;  
 ynowh and suffiseth, 277<sub>;</sub>  
 Yoman or seruant (fr. varlet)  
 124<sub>m</sub>  
 Youghth, *sb. youth*, 10<sub>m</sub>; 51<sub>;</sub>; 52<sub>;</sub>;  
 youghthes, 55<sub>m</sub>  
 Ypoocrites, *pl. hypocrites*, 165<sub>m</sub>  
 Yre, *sb. wrath*, 89<sub>m</sub>  
 Yrous and fierc, 405<sub>m</sub>; yroualy,  
 300<sub>m</sub>  
 Ysue and go out, 120<sub>m</sub>  
 Ywell, *adj. evil*, 127<sub>m</sub>  
 ZIEKLE, *sb. sickle*, 6<sub>m</sub>

<sup>1</sup> "Vne nuit qui estoit paisible de repose" is translated by Carton, "on a night whan hit was paisible of wynd and storme!"



**BALLANTYNE & HANSON**  
**BALLANTYNE PRESS**  
**LONDON AND EDINBURGH**

13

—

—

—

—



\_\_\_\_\_









3 2044 010 630 895





